



Jeremiah

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	31
Introduction to Jeremiah	31
Jeremiah 1 General Notes	57
Jeremiah 1:1-3	58
Jeremiah 1:4-6	60
Jeremiah 1:7-8	61
Jeremiah 1:9-10	62
Jeremiah 1:11-12	63
Jeremiah 1:13-14	64
Jeremiah 1:15-16	65
Jeremiah 1:17-19	67
Jeremiah 2 General Notes	68
Jeremiah 2:1-3	69
Jeremiah 2:4-6	71
Jeremiah 2:7-8	73
Jeremiah 2:9-11	75
Jeremiah 2:12-13	77
Jeremiah 2:14-17	79
Jeremiah 2:18-19	81
Jeremiah 2:20-22	83
Jeremiah 2:23-25	85
Jeremiah 2:26-28	88
Jeremiah 2:29-31	90
Jeremiah 2:32-34	92
Jeremiah 2:35-37	94
Jeremiah 3 General Notes	96
Jeremiah 3:1-2	97
Jeremiah 3:3-5	99
Jeremiah 3:6-7	101
Jeremiah 3:8-10	102
Jeremiah 3:11-12	104
Jeremiah 3:13-15	105
Jeremiah 3:16	107
Jeremiah 3:17-18	108
Jeremiah 3:19-20	110
Jeremiah 3:21-22	112
Jeremiah 3:23-25	114
Jeremiah 4 General Notes	116
Jeremiah 4:1-3	117
Jeremiah 4:4-6	119

Table of Contents

Jeremiah 4:7-8	121
Jeremiah 4:9-10	123
Jeremiah 4:11-12	124
Jeremiah 4:13-15	126
Jeremiah 4:16-18	128
Jeremiah 4:19-20	130
Jeremiah 4:21-22	132
Jeremiah 4:23-26	134
Jeremiah 4:27-29	136
Jeremiah 4:30-31	138
Jeremiah 5 General Notes	140
Jeremiah 5:1-3	141
Jeremiah 5:4-6	143
Jeremiah 5:7-9	145
Jeremiah 5:10-13	147
Jeremiah 5:14-15	149
Jeremiah 5:16-17	151
Jeremiah 5:18-19	153
Jeremiah 5:20-22	155
Jeremiah 5:23-25	157
Jeremiah 5:26-29	159
Jeremiah 5:30-31	161
Jeremiah 6 General Notes	163
Jeremiah 6:1-3	164
Jeremiah 6:4-5	166
Jeremiah 6:6-8	168
Jeremiah 6:9-10	170
Jeremiah 6:11-12	172
Jeremiah 6:13-15	174
Jeremiah 6:16-19	176
Jeremiah 6:20-22	179
Jeremiah 6:23-24	181
Jeremiah 6:25-26	183
Jeremiah 6:27-30	185
Jeremiah 7 General Notes	187
Jeremiah 7:1-2	188
Jeremiah 7:3-4	189
Jeremiah 7:5-7	191
Jeremiah 7:8-11	193
Jeremiah 7:12-15	195
Jeremiah 7:16-18	197
Jeremiah 7:19-20	199
Jeremiah 7:21-23	201

Jeremiah 7:24-26	202
Jeremiah 7:27-28	204
Jeremiah 7:29-30	205
Jeremiah 7:31-32	207
Jeremiah 7:33-34	209
Jeremiah 8 General Notes	211
Jeremiah 8:1-3	212
Jeremiah 8:4-5	214
Jeremiah 8:6-7	216
Jeremiah 8:8-10	218
Jeremiah 8:11-13	220
Jeremiah 8:14-15	222
Jeremiah 8:16-17	224
Jeremiah 8:18-19	226
Jeremiah 8:20-22	228
Jeremiah 9 General Notes	230
Jeremiah 9:1-3	231
Jeremiah 9:4-6	233
Jeremiah 9:7-9	235
Jeremiah 9:10-12	237
Jeremiah 9:13-14	239
Jeremiah 9:15-16	240
Jeremiah 9:17-18	241
Jeremiah 9:19-20	243
Jeremiah 9:21-22	245
Jeremiah 9:23-24	247
Jeremiah 9:25-26	249
Jeremiah 10 General Notes	251
Jeremiah 10:1-2	252
Jeremiah 10:3-5	253
Jeremiah 10:6-7	255
Jeremiah 10:8-10	257
Jeremiah 10:11-13	259
Jeremiah 10:14-16	261
Jeremiah 10:17-18	263
Jeremiah 10:19-20	264
Jeremiah 10:21-22	266
Jeremiah 10:23-25	267
Jeremiah 11 General Notes	269
Jeremiah 11:1-2	270
Jeremiah 11:3-5	271
Jeremiah 11:6-8	273
Jeremiah 11:9-10	274

Table of Contents

Jeremiah 11:11-13	275
Jeremiah 11:14-16	276
Jeremiah 11:17	278
Jeremiah 11:18-20	279
Jeremiah 11:21-23	281
Jeremiah 12 General Notes	282
Jeremiah 12:1-2	283
Jeremiah 12:3-4	285
Jeremiah 12:5-6	287
Jeremiah 12:7-9	289
Jeremiah 12:10-11	291
Jeremiah 12:12-13	293
Jeremiah 12:14-15	295
Jeremiah 12:16-17	297
Jeremiah 13 General Notes	298
Jeremiah 13:1-4	299
Jeremiah 13:6-7	300
Jeremiah 13:8-11	301
Jeremiah 13:12-14	303
Jeremiah 13:15-17	305
Jeremiah 13:18-19	307
Jeremiah 13:20-21	309
Jeremiah 13:22-24	311
Jeremiah 13:25-27	313
Jeremiah 14 General Notes	315
Jeremiah 14:1-3	316
Jeremiah 14:4-6	318
Jeremiah 14:7-9	320
Jeremiah 14:10-12	322
Jeremiah 14:13-14	324
Jeremiah 14:15-16	326
Jeremiah 14:17-18	328
Jeremiah 14:19-20	330
Jeremiah 14:21-22	332
Jeremiah 15 General Notes	334
Jeremiah 15:1-2	335
Jeremiah 15:3-4	337
Jeremiah 15:5-7	339
Jeremiah 15:8-9	341
Jeremiah 15:10-12	343
Jeremiah 15:13-14	345
Jeremiah 15:15-16	347
Jeremiah 15:17-18	349

Jeremiah 15:19-21	351
Jeremiah 16 General Notes	353
Jeremiah 16:1-4	354
Jeremiah 16:5-6	356
Jeremiah 16:7-9	358
Jeremiah 16:10-11	360
Jeremiah 16:12-13	362
Jeremiah 16:14-15	363
Jeremiah 16:16-18	364
Jeremiah 16:19-21	366
Jeremiah 17 General Notes	368
Jeremiah 17:1-2	369
Jeremiah 17:3-4	371
Jeremiah 17:5-6	373
Jeremiah 17:7-8	375
Jeremiah 17:9-11	377
Jeremiah 17:12-14	379
Jeremiah 17:15-16	381
Jeremiah 17:17-18	383
Jeremiah 17:19-20	385
Jeremiah 17:21-23	386
Jeremiah 17:24-25	387
Jeremiah 17:26-27	388
Jeremiah 18 General Notes	390
Jeremiah 18:1-4	391
Jeremiah 18:5-8	393
Jeremiah 18:9-10	395
Jeremiah 18:11-12	396
Jeremiah 18:13-14	398
Jeremiah 18:15-17	400
Jeremiah 18:18-20	402
Jeremiah 18:21-23	404
Jeremiah 19 General Notes	406
Jeremiah 19:1-3	407
Jeremiah 19:4-5	409
Jeremiah 19:6-9	411
Jeremiah 19:10-11	413
Jeremiah 19:12-13	414
Jeremiah 19:14-15	415
Jeremiah 20 General Notes	416
Jeremiah 20:1-2	417
Jeremiah 20:3-4	418
Jeremiah 20:5-6	420

Table of Contents

Jeremiah 20:7-9	422
Jeremiah 20:10-11	424
Jeremiah 20:12-13	426
Jeremiah 20:14-15	428
Jeremiah 20:16-18	430
Jeremiah 21 General Notes	432
Jeremiah 21:1-2	433
Jeremiah 21:3-5	435
Jeremiah 21:6-7	437
Jeremiah 21:8-10	439
Jeremiah 21:11-12	441
Jeremiah 21:13-14	443
Jeremiah 22 General Notes	445
Jeremiah 22:1-3	446
Jeremiah 22:4-5	448
Jeremiah 22:6-7	450
Jeremiah 22:8-9	452
Jeremiah 22:10	453
Jeremiah 22:11-12	454
Jeremiah 22:13-14	455
Jeremiah 22:15-16	457
Jeremiah 22:17-19	459
Jeremiah 22:20-21	461
Jeremiah 22:22-23	463
Jeremiah 22:24-26	465
Jeremiah 22:27-28	467
Jeremiah 22:29-30	468
Jeremiah 23 General Notes	469
Jeremiah 23:1-2	470
Jeremiah 23:3-4	472
Jeremiah 23:5-6	474
Jeremiah 23:7-8	476
Jeremiah 23:9-10	477
Jeremiah 23:11-12	479
Jeremiah 23:13-15	481
Jeremiah 23:16-18	483
Jeremiah 23:19-20	485
Jeremiah 23:21-22	486
Jeremiah 23:23-24	488
Jeremiah 23:25-27	489
Jeremiah 23:28-30	491
Jeremiah 23:31-32	493
Jeremiah 23:33-34	494

Jeremiah 23:35-36	495
Jeremiah 23:37-40	496
Jeremiah 24 General Notes	497
Jeremiah 24:1-3	498
Jeremiah 24:4-7	500
Jeremiah 24:8-10	502
Jeremiah 25 General Notes	504
Jeremiah 25:1-2	505
Jeremiah 25:3-4	506
Jeremiah 25:5-6	507
Jeremiah 25:7-9	509
Jeremiah 25:10-11	511
Jeremiah 25:12-14	512
Jeremiah 25:15-16	514
Jeremiah 25:17-18	515
Jeremiah 25:19-21	516
Jeremiah 25:22-23	517
Jeremiah 25:24-26	518
Jeremiah 25:27-29	519
Jeremiah 25:30-31	521
Jeremiah 25:32-33	523
Jeremiah 25:34-36	525
Jeremiah 25:37-38	527
Jeremiah 26 General Notes	529
Jeremiah 26:1-3	530
Jeremiah 26:4-6	532
Jeremiah 26:7-9	534
Jeremiah 26:10-12	536
Jeremiah 26:13-15	537
Jeremiah 26:16-17	539
Jeremiah 26:18-19	540
Jeremiah 26:20-21	542
Jeremiah 26:22-24	543
Jeremiah 27 General Notes	544
Jeremiah 27:1-4	545
Jeremiah 27:5-7	547
Jeremiah 27:8	549
Jeremiah 27:9-11	550
Jeremiah 27:12-13	552
Jeremiah 27:14-15	553
Jeremiah 27:16-18	554
Jeremiah 27:19-20	556
Jeremiah 27:21-22	558

Table of Contents

Jeremiah 28 General Notes	559
Jeremiah 28:1-2	560
Jeremiah 28:3-4	562
Jeremiah 28:5-7	563
Jeremiah 28:8-9	564
Jeremiah 28:10-11	565
Jeremiah 28:12-14	566
Jeremiah 28:15-17	567
Jeremiah 29 General Notes	568
Jeremiah 29:1-3	569
Jeremiah 29:4-5	571
Jeremiah 29:6-7	572
Jeremiah 29:8-9	573
Jeremiah 29:10-11	574
Jeremiah 29:12-14	575
Jeremiah 29:15-17	576
Jeremiah 29:18-19	578
Jeremiah 29:20-21	580
Jeremiah 29:22-23	581
Jeremiah 29:24-26	583
Jeremiah 29:27-29	584
Jeremiah 29:30-32	585
Jeremiah 30 General Notes	586
Jeremiah 30:1-3	587
Jeremiah 30:4-5	589
Jeremiah 30:6-7	590
Jeremiah 30:8-9	592
Jeremiah 30:10-11	594
Jeremiah 30:12-13	596
Jeremiah 30:14-15	597
Jeremiah 30:16-17	599
Jeremiah 30:18-19	601
Jeremiah 30:20-22	603
Jeremiah 30:23-24	605
Jeremiah 31 General Notes	606
Jeremiah 31:1-3	607
Jeremiah 31:4-6	609
Jeremiah 31:7	611
Jeremiah 31:8-9	612
Jeremiah 31:10-11	614
Jeremiah 31:12	616
Jeremiah 31:13-14	618
Jeremiah 31:15	620

Jeremiah 31:16-17	621
Jeremiah 31:18-20	622
Jeremiah 31:21-22	624
Jeremiah 31:23-26	626
Jeremiah 31:27-28	628
Jeremiah 31:29-30	629
Jeremiah 31:31-32	630
Jeremiah 31:33-34	631
Jeremiah 31:35-36	633
Jeremiah 31:37	634
Jeremiah 31:38-40	635
Jeremiah 32 General Notes	636
Jeremiah 32:1-2	637
Jeremiah 32:3-5	639
Jeremiah 32:6-7	641
Jeremiah 32:8-9	642
Jeremiah 32:10-12	643
Jeremiah 32:13-15	645
Jeremiah 32:16-18	646
Jeremiah 32:19-21	648
Jeremiah 32:22-23	650
Jeremiah 32:24-25	651
Jeremiah 32:26-28	653
Jeremiah 32:29-30	654
Jeremiah 32:31-32	656
Jeremiah 32:33-35	657
Jeremiah 32:36-37	659
Jeremiah 32:38-40	661
Jeremiah 32:41-42	662
Jeremiah 32:43-44	663
Jeremiah 33 General Notes	665
Jeremiah 33:1-3	666
Jeremiah 33:4-5	667
Jeremiah 33:6-9	669
Jeremiah 33:10-11	671
Jeremiah 33:12-13	673
Jeremiah 33:14-16	674
Jeremiah 33:17-18	676
Jeremiah 33:19-22	677
Jeremiah 33:23-24	679
Jeremiah 33:25-26	680
Jeremiah 34 General Notes	681
Jeremiah 34:1-3	682

Table of Contents

Jeremiah 34:4-5	684
Jeremiah 34:6-7	685
Jeremiah 34:8-9	686
Jeremiah 34:10-11	687
Jeremiah 34:12-14	688
Jeremiah 34:15-16	689
Jeremiah 34:17-19	690
Jeremiah 34:20-22	692
Jeremiah 35 General Notes	694
Jeremiah 35:1-2	695
Jeremiah 35:3-4	696
Jeremiah 35:5-7	697
Jeremiah 35:8-11	698
Jeremiah 35:12-14	700
Jeremiah 35:15-16	702
Jeremiah 35:17	704
Jeremiah 35:18-19	705
Jeremiah 36 General Notes	706
Jeremiah 36:1-3	707
Jeremiah 36:4-6	709
Jeremiah 36:7-8	711
Jeremiah 36:9-10	713
Jeremiah 36:11-12	715
Jeremiah 36:13-15	717
Jeremiah 36:16-19	718
Jeremiah 36:20-22	720
Jeremiah 36:23-24	722
Jeremiah 36:25-26	723
Jeremiah 36:27-29	724
Jeremiah 36:30-31	726
Jeremiah 36:32	728
Jeremiah 37 General Notes	729
Jeremiah 37:1-2	730
Jeremiah 37:3-5	732
Jeremiah 37:6-8	734
Jeremiah 37:9-10	736
Jeremiah 37:11-13	737
Jeremiah 37:14-15	739
Jeremiah 37:16-17	741
Jeremiah 37:18-20	743
Jeremiah 37:21	745
Jeremiah 38 General Notes	746
Jeremiah 38:1-3	747

Jeremiah 38:4-5	749
Jeremiah 38:6	750
Jeremiah 38:7-9	751
Jeremiah 38:10-11	753
Jeremiah 38:12-13	754
Jeremiah 38:14-16	755
Jeremiah 38:17-18	757
Jeremiah 38:19	758
Jeremiah 38:20-21	759
Jeremiah 38:22-23	760
Jeremiah 38:24-26	762
Jeremiah 38:27-28	763
Jeremiah 39 General Notes	764
Jeremiah 39:1-3	765
Jeremiah 39:4-5	767
Jeremiah 39:6-7	769
Jeremiah 39:8-10	770
Jeremiah 39:11-14	771
Jeremiah 39:15-16	773
Jeremiah 39:17-18	775
Jeremiah 40 General Notes	776
Jeremiah 40:1-2	777
Jeremiah 40:3-4	779
Jeremiah 40:5-6	781
Jeremiah 40:7-8	782
Jeremiah 40:9-10	783
Jeremiah 40:11-12	785
Jeremiah 40:13-14	787
Jeremiah 40:15-16	788
Jeremiah 41 General Notes	790
Jeremiah 41:1-3	791
Jeremiah 41:4-5	793
Jeremiah 41:6-7	794
Jeremiah 41:8-9	795
Jeremiah 41:10	796
Jeremiah 41:11-12	797
Jeremiah 41:13-14	798
Jeremiah 41:15-16	799
Jeremiah 41:17-18	800
Jeremiah 42 General Notes	801
Jeremiah 42:1-3	802
Jeremiah 42:4-6	804
Jeremiah 42:7-10	806

Table of Contents

Jeremiah 42:11-12	808
Jeremiah 42:13-14	809
Jeremiah 42:15-17	810
Jeremiah 42:18-19	812
Jeremiah 42:20-22	814
Jeremiah 43 General Notes	816
Jeremiah 43:1-3	817
Jeremiah 43:4-7	819
Jeremiah 43:8-10	821
Jeremiah 43:11-13	823
Jeremiah 44 General Notes	825
Jeremiah 44:1-3	826
Jeremiah 44:4-6	828
Jeremiah 44:7-8	830
Jeremiah 44:9-10	832
Jeremiah 44:11-12	834
Jeremiah 44:13-14	836
Jeremiah 44:15-17	837
Jeremiah 44:18-19	839
Jeremiah 44:20-21	840
Jeremiah 44:22-23	841
Jeremiah 44:24-25	843
Jeremiah 44:26-28	845
Jeremiah 44:29-30	847
Jeremiah 45 General Notes	849
Jeremiah 45:1-3	850
Jeremiah 45:4-5	852
Jeremiah 46 General Notes	853
Jeremiah 46:1-4	854
Jeremiah 46:5-6	856
Jeremiah 46:7-9	858
Jeremiah 46:10	860
Jeremiah 46:11-12	862
Jeremiah 46:13-14	864
Jeremiah 46:15-17	866
Jeremiah 46:18-19	868
Jeremiah 46:20-22	870
Jeremiah 46:23-24	872
Jeremiah 46:25-26	874
Jeremiah 46:27-28	876
Jeremiah 47 General Notes	878
Jeremiah 47:1-2	879
Jeremiah 47:3-4	881

Jeremiah 47:5-7	883
Jeremiah 48 General Notes	885
Jeremiah 48:1-2	886
Jeremiah 48:3-5	888
Jeremiah 48:6-7	890
Jeremiah 48:8-10	892
Jeremiah 48:11-12	894
Jeremiah 48:13-14	896
Jeremiah 48:15-17	897
Jeremiah 48:18-20	899
Jeremiah 48:21-25	901
Jeremiah 48:26-27	903
Jeremiah 48:28-29	905
Jeremiah 48:30-32	906
Jeremiah 48:33	908
Jeremiah 48:34-35	910
Jeremiah 48:36-37	912
Jeremiah 48:38-39	914
Jeremiah 48:40-41	916
Jeremiah 48:42-44	918
Jeremiah 48:45	920
Jeremiah 48:46-47	922
Jeremiah 49 General Notes	924
Jeremiah 49:1-2	925
Jeremiah 49:3-4	927
Jeremiah 49:5-6	929
Jeremiah 49:7-8	931
Jeremiah 49:9-11	933
Jeremiah 49:12-13	935
Jeremiah 49:14-15	937
Jeremiah 49:16	939
Jeremiah 49:17-18	940
Jeremiah 49:19	942
Jeremiah 49:20	944
Jeremiah 49:21-22	945
Jeremiah 49:23-25	947
Jeremiah 49:26-27	949
Jeremiah 49:28-29	950
Jeremiah 49:30-31	952
Jeremiah 49:32-33	954
Jeremiah 49:34-36	956
Jeremiah 49:37-39	958
Jeremiah 50 General Notes	960

Table of Contents

Jeremiah 50:1-2	961
Jeremiah 50:3-5	963
Jeremiah 50:6-7	965
Jeremiah 50:8-10	967
Jeremiah 50:11-13	969
Jeremiah 50:14-15	971
Jeremiah 50:16	973
Jeremiah 50:17-18	975
Jeremiah 50:19-20	977
Jeremiah 50:21-22	979
Jeremiah 50:23-24	981
Jeremiah 50:25-26	982
Jeremiah 50:27-28	984
Jeremiah 50:29-30	986
Jeremiah 50:31-32	988
Jeremiah 50:33-34	990
Jeremiah 50:35-37	992
Jeremiah 50:38-40	994
Jeremiah 50:41-42	996
Jeremiah 50:43	998
Jeremiah 50:44	999
Jeremiah 50:45-46	1001
Jeremiah 51 General Notes	1003
Jeremiah 51:1-2	1004
Jeremiah 51:3-4	1006
Jeremiah 51:5-6	1007
Jeremiah 51:7-8	1009
Jeremiah 51:9-10	1011
Jeremiah 51:11-12	1013
Jeremiah 51:13-14	1015
Jeremiah 51:15-16	1017
Jeremiah 51:17-19	1019
Jeremiah 51:20-21	1021
Jeremiah 51:22-23	1022
Jeremiah 51:24	1023
Jeremiah 51:25-26	1024
Jeremiah 51:27-28	1026
Jeremiah 51:29	1028
Jeremiah 51:30-32	1029
Jeremiah 51:33	1031
Jeremiah 51:34-35	1033
Jeremiah 51:36-37	1035
Jeremiah 51:38-40	1037

Jeremiah 51:41-42	1039
Jeremiah 51:43-44	1040
Jeremiah 51:45-46	1042
Jeremiah 51:47-49	1044
Jeremiah 51:50-51	1046
Jeremiah 51:52-53	1048
Jeremiah 51:54-56	1049
Jeremiah 51:57-58	1051
Jeremiah 51:59-60	1053
Jeremiah 51:61-62	1054
Jeremiah 51:63-64	1055
Jeremiah 52 General Notes	1056
Jeremiah 52:1-3	1057
Jeremiah 52:4-5	1059
Jeremiah 52:6-8	1060
Jeremiah 52:9-11	1062
Jeremiah 52:12-14	1063
Jeremiah 52:15-16	1065
Jeremiah 52:17-19	1066
Jeremiah 52:20-21	1068
Jeremiah 52:22-23	1069
Jeremiah 52:24-25	1070
Jeremiah 52:26-27	1071
Jeremiah 52:28-30	1072
Jeremiah 52:31	1073
Jeremiah 52:32-34	1074
translationQuestions	1075
Jeremiah 1	1075
Jeremiah 2	1077
Jeremiah 3	1079
Jeremiah 4	1081
Jeremiah 5	1083
Jeremiah 6	1085
Jeremiah 7	1087
Jeremiah 8	1089
Jeremiah 9	1091
Jeremiah 10	1094
Jeremiah 11	1096
Jeremiah 12	1098
Jeremiah 13	1100
Jeremiah 14	1102
Jeremiah 15	1104
Jeremiah 16	1106

Table of Contents

Jeremiah 17	1108
Jeremiah 18	1110
Jeremiah 19	1112
Jeremiah 20	1113
Jeremiah 21	1114
Jeremiah 22	1116
Jeremiah 23	1118
Jeremiah 24	1121
Jeremiah 25	1122
Jeremiah 26	1124
Jeremiah 27	1126
Jeremiah 28	1128
Jeremiah 29	1129
Jeremiah 30	1131
Jeremiah 31	1133
Jeremiah 32	1136
Jeremiah 33	1139
Jeremiah 34	1141
Jeremiah 35	1143
Jeremiah 36	1145
Jeremiah 37	1147
Jeremiah 38	1149
Jeremiah 39	1151
Jeremiah 40	1154
Jeremiah 41	1156
Jeremiah 42	1159
Jeremiah 43	1161
Jeremiah 44	1162
Jeremiah 45	1165
Jeremiah 46	1166
Jeremiah 47	1168
Jeremiah 48	1169
Jeremiah 49	1172
Jeremiah 50	1177
Jeremiah 51	1181
Jeremiah 52	1187
translationWords	1189
abomination, abominable	1189
Abraham, Abram	1190
accuse, accusation, accuser	1191
acknowledge	1192
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress	1193
adversary, enemy	1194

afflict, affliction	1195
Ahab	1196
Ai	1197
alarm, alarmed	1198
altar	1199
ambassador, representative	1200
Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess	1201
angry, anger	1202
anguish	1203
appoint, appointed	1204
Arabah	1205
Arabia, Arabian	1206
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic	1207
Ararat	1208
archer	1209
ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh	1210
armor	1211
arrogant	1212
Asa	1213
Ashdod, Azotus	1214
ash, ashes, dust	1215
Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth	1216
Ashkelon	1217
assembly, assemble	1218
assign, assigned	1219
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	1220
avenge, revenge, vengeance	1221
ax	1222
Azariah	1223
Baal	1224
Baasha	1225
Babylon, Babylonian	1226
banquet	1227
barley	1228
barren	1229
Baruch	1230
Bashan	1231
beast	1232
beg, beggar	1233
believe, believe in, belief	1234
beloved	1235
Benjamin	1236
Bethel	1237

Table of Contents

Bethlehem, Ephrathah	1238
betray, betrayer	1239
biblical time: day	1240
biblical time: year	1241
blameless	1242
bless, blessed, blessing	1243
blood	1245
blot out, wipe out	1246
body	1247
bind, bond, bound	1248
bow, bow down	1250
bow and arrow	1251
bread	1252
bride	1253
bridegroom	1254
bronze	1255
brother	1256
burden	1257
burnt offering, offering by fire	1258
bury, buried, burial	1259
call, calling, called, call out	1260
camel	1262
captive, captivity	1263
Translation Suggestions	1264
Carmel, Mount Carmel	1265
cast out, drive out, throw out	1266
cedar	1267
chaff	1268
Chaldea, Chaldean	1269
chariot	1270
chief	1271
children, child	1272
circumcise, circumcision	1273
clan	1274
clean, cleanse	1275
comfort, comforter	1276
command, to command, commandment	1277
commander, command	1278
commit, committed, commitment	1279
companion	1280
compassion, compassionate	1281
confidence, confident	1282
confirm, confirmation	1283

consume	1284
corrupt, corruption	1285
council	1286
counsel, counselor, advice, advisor	1287
courtyard, court	1288
covenant	1289
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love	1291
cow, calf, bull, cattle	1292
create, creation, Creator	1293
creature	1294
Translation Suggestions	1295
crown, to crown	1296
curse, cursed	1297
Cush	1298
cut off	1299
Damascus	1300
Dan	1301
darkness	1302
Daughter of Zion	1303
David	1304
death, die, dead	1305
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	1307
declare, declaration	1308
decree	1309
defile, be defiled	1310
delight	1311
descendant, descended from	1312
desert, wilderness	1313
desolate, desolation	1314
destiny, destine, destined	1315
destroyer	1316
detestable, detest	1317
devastate, devastation	1318
devour	1319
disciple	1320
discipline, self-discipline	1322
dishonor, dishonorable	1323
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer	1324
divorce	1325
donkey, mule	1326
dove, pigeon	1327
dream	1328
drink offering	1329

Table of Contents

drunk, drunkard	1330
dung, manure	1331
eagle	1332
earth, earthly	1333
Edom, Edomite, Idumea	1334
Egypt, Egyptian	1335
Ekron	1336
Elam	1337
elder	1338
chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect	1339
endure, endurance	1340
enslave, in bondage	1341
Ephraim	1342
Esau	1343
everlasting, eternal, eternity	1344
eunuch	1345
Euphrates River	1346
evildoer	1347
evil, wicked, wickedness	1348
exile, the Exile	1350
face	1351
faith	1353
faithful, faithfulness	1355
faithless, faithlessness	1356
false god, foreign god, god, goddess	1357
false prophet	1358
family	1359
famine	1360
fast	1361
ancestor, father, forefather	1362
favor, favorable, favoritism	1363
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh	1364
feast	1365
fig	1366
fire	1367
firstborn	1368
firstfruits	1369
fishermen, fishers	1370
flesh	1371
flock, herd	1372
flood	1373
flute, pipe	1374
fool, foolish, folly	1375

foreigner, foreign, alien	1376
forever	1377
forgive, forgiveness	1378
forsake, forsaken, forsook	1379
foundation, founded	1380
fountain, spring	1381
frankincense	1382
free, freedom, liberty	1383
fruit, fruitful	1384
fulfill	1386
furnace	1387
Gad	1388
gate, gate bar	1389
Gaza	1390
generation	1391
Gibeon, Gibeonite	1392
gift	1393
Gilead	1394
glean, gleaning	1395
glory, glorious	1396
goat, kid	1397
God	1398
gold	1400
Gomorrah	1401
good, goodness	1402
governor, govern, proconsul, government	1404
grace, gracious	1405
grain	1406
grain offering	1407
grape	1408
guilt, guilty	1409
Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites	1410
Hananiah	1411
hand, right hand, to hand over	1412
hard, hardness, harden	1414
harvest	1415
head	1416
heal, cure	1418
heart	1419
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1420
Hebrew	1421
Hezekiah	1422
high places	1423

Table of Contents

high priest	1424
holy, holiness	1426
Holy One	1427
holy place, most holy place	1428
honey, honeycomb	1429
honor, to honor	1430
hoof, hoofed, hooves	1431
hope	1432
horn, horns	1433
horror, horrified	1434
horse	1435
house	1436
house of God, Yahweh's house	1437
humble, humility	1438
idol, idolatrous	1439
image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure	1440
incense	1441
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	1442
iniquity	1444
innocent	1445
intercede, intercession	1447
Isaac	1448
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel	1449
I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh	1450
Jacob, Israel	1451
Jehoiachin	1452
Jehoiakim	1453
Jeremiah	1454
Jericho	1455
Jerusalem	1456
Jonathan	1458
Jordan River	1459
Josiah	1460
joy, joyful	1461
Judah	1462
Judea	1463
judge, judgment	1464
judge	1466
just, justice, justly	1467
kingdom	1468
kingdom of Israel	1470
Judah, kingdom of Judah	1471
king	1473

know, knowledge, make known	1474
labor, laborer	1475
labor pains, in labor	1476
lamb, Lamb of God	1477
lament, lamentation	1479
lampstand	1480
last day, last days, latter days	1481
law, principle	1482
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh	1483
Lebanon	1485
Levite, Levi	1486
life, live, living, alive	1487
light	1489
like, likeness	1490
lion	1491
locust	1492
lord, master, sir	1493
Lord	1494
Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God	1495
love	1496
lover	1498
majesty	1499
Manasseh	1500
Medes, Media	1501
mercy, merciful	1502
messenger	1504
Micah	1505
mighty, might	1506
mind	1507
miracle, wonder, sign	1508
Mizpah	1510
Moab, Moabite, Moabites	1511
mock, ridicule, scoff at	1512
Molech, Moloch	1513
Moses	1514
mourn, mourning	1515
name	1516
nation	1517
Nebuchadnezzar	1518
Negev	1519
neighbor	1520
new covenant	1521
Nile River, River of Egypt	1523

Table of Contents

noble, nobleman	1524
oath, swear, swear by	1525
obey, obedient, obedience	1526
offspring	1527
oil	1528
olive	1529
oppress, oppression, oppressor	1530
palace	1531
pardon	1532
patient, patience	1533
peace, peaceful	1534
people group, peoples, the people, a people	1535
people of God, my people	1537
perish, perishing, perishable	1538
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	1539
Philistines	1540
pillar, column	1541
pit	1542
plague	1543
plead, pleading, plea	1544
plow	1545
pomegranate	1546
possess, possession	1547
power, powers	1548
praise	1549
pray, prayer	1550
precious	1551
prey, to prey on	1552
priest, priesthood	1553
prince, princess	1555
prison, prisoner, imprison	1556
proclaim, proclamation	1557
profane	1558
profit, profitable	1559
Promised Land	1560
promise	1561
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1562
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1564
prostitute, harlot, whore	1565
proud, pride, prideful	1566
proverb	1567
punish, punishment	1568
pure, purify, purification	1570

queen	1571
quench	1572
Rabbah	1573
Rachel	1574
rage	1575
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose	1576
Ramah	1578
ransom	1579
rebel, rebellious, rebellion	1580
rebuke	1581
receive	1582
redeem, redemption, redeemer	1583
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea	1584
reed, reeds	1585
refuge, shelter	1586
reign	1587
reject	1588
rejoice	1589
remnant	1590
repent, repentance	1591
report	1592
reproach	1593
rest	1594
restore, restoration	1595
return	1596
reveal, revelation	1597
reward	1598
righteous, righteousness	1599
rod	1600
royal	1601
ruin, ruins	1602
ruler, rulers, rule	1603
run, running	1604
Sabbath	1605
sackcloth	1606
sacrifice, offering	1607
Salt Sea, Dead Sea	1609
salvation	1610
Samaria, Samaritan	1611
Samuel	1612
save, safe	1613
scribe, expert in the Jewish law	1615
scroll	1616

Table of Contents

seal, to seal	1617
seed	1618
seek, sought	1619
seize	1620
send, send out, sent	1621
serpent, snake, viper	1622
servant, slave, slavery	1623
serve, service	1625
set apart	1626
shadow	1627
shame, shameful, ashamed	1628
Sheba	1629
Shechem	1630
sheep, ram, ewe	1631
shepherd, to shepherd	1632
shield	1634
Shiloh	1635
Sidon, Sidonians	1636
siege, besiege	1637
sign, proof, reminder	1638
silver	1640
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1641
skull	1643
slander, slanderer	1644
slaughter	1645
sleep, asleep, fall asleep	1646
snare, trap	1647
snow	1648
Sodom	1649
Solomon	1650
son, son of	1651
sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft	1653
sow, sower, plant	1654
spear	1655
spirit, spiritual	1656
staff	1658
statute, statutes	1659
stiff-necked, stubborn	1660
stone, stoning	1661
storehouse	1662
strength, strengthen	1663
strife	1665
stronghold, fortress, fortified	1666

stumble	1667
stumbling block, stone of stumbling	1668
suffer, suffering	1669
sword	1670
tabernacle	1671
Tarshish	1672
temple	1673
tent	1675
terror, terrify	1676
test	1677
testimony, testify	1678
thief, thieves, robber	1679
thresh, threshing	1680
throne	1681
time	1682
tomb, grave, burial place	1683
tongue	1684
torment	1685
transgress, transgression	1686
tremble	1687
tribe	1688
trouble, troubles, troubled	1689
true, truth, come true	1690
trumpet	1692
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1693
turn, turn away, turn back	1694
Tyre, Tyrians	1695
uncircumcised, uncircumcision	1696
unclean	1697
understand, understanding	1698
unfaithful, unfaithfulness	1699
ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	1700
unjust, unjustly, injustice	1701
unprofitable	1702
unrighteous, unrighteousness	1703
vain, vanity	1704
veil	1705
vine	1706
vineyard	1707
virgin	1708
vision	1709
voice	1710
vow	1711

Table of Contents

walk	1712
warrior, soldier	1713
waste, wasteland	1714
watch, watchman	1715
watchtower, tower	1716
water, waters	1717
well, cistern	1718
wheat	1719
wine, wineskin, new wine	1720
winepress	1721
winnow, sift	1722
wise, wisdom	1723
witness, eyewitness	1724
woe	1726
womb	1727
word	1728
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture	1729
works, deeds, work, acts	1731
worship	1732
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	1733
wrath, fury	1734
written	1735
wrong, mistreat, hurt	1736
Yahweh	1737
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host	1739
yoke	1740
Zedekiah	1741
Zephaniah	1742
Zion, Mount Zion	1743
translationAcademy	1744
Abstract Nouns	1744
Active or Passive	1747
Apostrophe	1750
Double Negatives	1752
Doublet	1755
Ellipsis	1757
Euphemism	1759
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1761
Hendiadys	1763
Hyperbole	1765
Hypothetical Situations	1768
Idiom	1771
Irony	1773

Litotes	1776
Merism	1778
Metaphor	1780
Metonymy	1785
Parallelism	1787
Personification	1789
Reflexive Pronouns	1791
Rhetorical Question	1794
Simile	1797
Synecdoche	1800
Forms of You	1802
Biblical Distance	1803
Biblical Money	1806
Hebrew Months	1808
How to Translate Names	1811
Numbers	1815
Ordinal Numbers	1818
Translate Unknowns	1821
Background Information	1824
Poetry	1827

translationNotes

Introduction to Jeremiah

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Jeremiah

1. Yahweh calls Jeremiah to be a prophet
 - a) The situation in which Jeremiah will work (1:1–13)
 - b) Yahweh promises to protect him (1:17–19)
2. The message that Jeremiah is to proclaim
 - a) Spiritual adultery (2:1–6:30)
 - b) Yahweh rejects his people (6:1–30)
 - c) Idolatry and rejecting the law of God (7:1–10:16)
 - d) Jeremiah stands between Yahweh and his people (11:1–20:19)
 - e) Jeremiah's confrontations with his people (21:1–29:32)
3. Yahweh promises to restore Judah
 - a) Yahweh will bring the people of Judah back to their land (30:1–24)
 - b) Yahweh will create a new covenant with them (31:1–40)
 - c) The people will come back (32:1–44)
 - d) Kings descended from David will rule again (33:1–26)
4. The suffering of Jeremiah
 - a) Before Yahweh punishes Judah (34:1–36:32)
 - b) While Yahweh punishes Judah (37:1–39:18)
 - c) After Yahweh punishes Judah (40:1–45:5)
5. Jeremiah's messages to the Gentiles
 - a) Egypt (46:1–28)
 - b) Philistia (47:1–28)
 - c) Moab (48:1–47)
 - d) Ammon (49:1–6)
 - e) Edom (49:1–22)
 - f) Damascus (49:23–27)
 - g) Kedar (49:28–33)
 - h) Elam (49:34–39)
 - i) Babylonia (50:1–51:64)
6. The capture and destruction of Jerusalem (52:1–34)

What is the Book of Jeremiah about?

Jeremiah's account begins about 626 BC. After the death of King Josiah, many groups of people in Israel opposed Jeremiah. Some of these wanted to depend on Egypt to protect the nation. Others were idol worshipers, who hated Jeremiah for denouncing their gods. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

During the reign of King Jehoiakim, Jeremiah proclaimed his prophecies about the temple of Yahweh. King Jehoiakim received some of these prophecies in writing and burned the document. The next king, Zedekiah, imprisoned Jeremiah when he called for the king to surrender to Babylon.

When Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylonia, began conquering the region (he invaded Judah in 597 BC and finally captured Jerusalem in 587 BC), he offered Jeremiah housing and money in order to go to Babylon. However, Jeremiah remained in Jerusalem to help the few Jews who were left there.

Shortly after that, Gedaliah, whom Nebuchadnezzar had chosen to be governor over Judah, was murdered. Some Jewish rebels captured Jeremiah and took him to Egypt. Those rebels went to Egypt for protection rather than to live under Nebuchadnezzar's rule. Jeremiah may have died soon after being taken to Egypt, but not before he prophesied that the Babylonians would invade and conquer Egypt.

How should the title of this book be translated?

"The Book of Jeremiah" may also be called the "The book about Jeremiah" or "What the Prophet Jeremiah Said." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote the Book of Jeremiah?

This book contains prophecies spoken by Jeremiah, who was a priest and a prophet living in Judah. According to the witness of the book itself, some of its prophecies had been written down earlier and put into the hands of King Jehoiakim, who burned the document.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts**What is the New Covenant that is presented in the Book of Jeremiah?**

Jeremiah 31 introduced a "new covenant" between Yahweh and Israel. This covenant would be "written" on the hearts of the people, that is, God would create a heartfelt attachment between the people and their God. (See: [new covenant](#))

What relationship do Jeremiah's prophecies have to the other nations besides Israel?

While much of the Old Testament prior to this time is concerned only with the nation of Israel, Jeremiah began to focus on God's judgment on the other nations of the world. Judgment must also come upon these other nations because of their sin. (See: [judge](#), [judgment](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Is the Book of Jeremiah arranged in chronological order?

No, Jeremiah has many instances where it is clearly out of chronological order. Instead, the various prophecies appear to be topically arranged.

Why does the Book of Jeremiah refer to this prophet as “he” or “him”?

There are many instances in the book where the author refers to Jeremiah as “Jeremiah” or “he.” This is unusual if Jeremiah wrote the book. The reason this occurs is perhaps because Baruch, Jeremiah’s secretary, wrote down some parts of the book. Translators should keep the words “Jeremiah” and “he” and not try to smooth over this issue.

List of translationAcademy Topics in Jeremiah

* **Apostrophe** is found in: 06:06

* **Abstract Nouns** is found in: 04:11, 09:04, 14:13, 18:15, 23:05, 25:37, 45:01

* **Active or Passive** is found in: 02:26, 02:32, 03:21, 04:04, 04:11, 04:13, 04:19, 05:16, 05:26, 06:01, 06:06, 06:11, 06:27, 07:31, 08:01, 08:16, 08:20, 09:01, 09:10, 09:19, 10:01, 10:08, 11:18, 11:21, 13:18, 15:15, 16:14, 16:16, 17:01, 17:05, 17:12, 17:15, 17:17, 17:24, 17:26, 18:01, 18:21, 19:06, 19:10, 20:05, 20:07, 20:10, 20:14, 23:05, 25:37, 28:08, 29:22, 30:16, 30:18, 31:04, 31:07, 31:15, 32:01, 32:03, 32:10, 32:13, 32:24, 32:33, 32:43, 35:12, 36:30, 36:32, 37:16, 38:01, 38:17, 38:19, 38:22, 38:27, 40:01, 40:07, 40:11, 40:15, 41:15, 42:18, 43:04, 43:11, 44:01, 44:07, 48:01, 48:33, 48:40, 48:42, 49:20, 50:03, 50:08, 50:14, 50:17, 50:19, 50:23, 50:29, 50:33, 50:35, 50:38, 50:44, 50:45, 51:30, 51:45, 51:54, 52:06

* **Apostrophe** is found in: 02:12, 15:10, 22:29, 31:23

* **Double Negatives** is found in: 30:10, 32:38, 42:04, 46:27, 49:34

* **Doublet** is found in: 01:09, 04:04, 04:19, 05:14, 07:19, 07:29, 10:08, 10:23, 15:08, 15:10, 15:13, 15:19, 17:03, 17:21, 18:05, 18:09, 18:11, 20:07, 20:16, 21:03, 23:03, 25:05, 25:12, 26:13, 29:12, 29:18, 31:18, 32:16, 32:19, 32:31, 32:36, 32:41, 33:04, 33:14, 42:04, 42:11, 42:18, 44:04, 44:13, 46:05, 47:03, 48:03, 50:03, 50:11, 50:19, 50:31

* **Ellipsis** is found in: 05:20, 05:26, 06:20, 07:31, 17:05, 19:12, 22:04, 36:16, 38:04, 39:11, 40:11

* **Euphemism** is found in: 08:14, 13:22, 16:01, 25:30, 25:34, 29:22, 30:10, 34:20, 39:17, 44:11, 44:29, 46:23, 47:05

* **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** is found in: 01:01, 02:12, 02:23, 02:26, 05:20, 05:30, 06:01, 06:04, 07:03, 07:31, 08:16, 09:04, 09:23, 09:25, 14:13, 16:05, 22:24, 25:22, 29:04, 30:10, 31:10, 37:09, 41:17, 42:20, 44:15, 46:10, 48:03, 48:46

* **Hendiadys** is found in: 02:18

* **Hyperbole** is found in: 01:15, 08:18, 12:12, 15:08, 23:09, 31:12, 39:08, 39:11, 40:15, 44:26, 46:11, 48:08, 49:21, 51:17

* **Hypothetical Situations** is found in: 23:21

* **Hypothetical Situations]]** is found in: 23:37

* **Idiom** is found in: 01:01, 01:09, 02:07, 02:35, 03:01, 03:16, 04:01, 04:07, 04:11, 04:16, 05:10, 05:23, 06:06, 06:11, 06:13, 06:23, 06:27, 07:05, 07:24, 07:31, 08:01, 08:16, 08:20, 09:07, 09:17, 09:19, 09:25, 11:03, 12:10, 14:10, 15:08, 15:15, 15:17, 16:07, 16:19, 17:09, 17:17, 17:21, 18:01, 18:09, 18:11, 19:01, 21:01, 21:03, 22:01, 23:05, 27:05, 29:20, 32:16, 32:19, 32:33, 33:19, 34:01, 34:15, 35:12, 36:01, 36:07, 36:30, 37:01, 37:03, 38:06, 38:07, 38:14, 44:01, 44:11, 44:20, 49:17, 49:32, 49:34, 50:03, 51:01

* **Idiom]]** is found in: 34:01

* **Irony** is found in: 02:32, 03:23, 07:21, 08:08, 13:22, 30:06, 34:17

* **Litotes** is found in: 16:16, 18:18, 19:04

* **Merism** is found in: 06:13, 09:01, 16:05, 16:12, 25:32, 31:33, 31:37, 42:01, 42:04, 44:11

* **Metaphor** is found in: 01:17, 02:01, 02:09, 02:12, 02:14, 02:18, 02:20, 02:23, 02:32, 03:06, 04:01, 04:04, 04:07, 04:11, 04:30, 05:01, 05:04, 05:07, 05:10, 05:14, 05:26, 06:01, 06:09, 06:13, 06:16, 06:20, 07:24, 08:06, 08:16, 09:01, 09:04, 09:07, 10:19, 11:14, 12:16, 13:20, 13:25, 14:13, 14:15, 15:13, 15:19, 16:05, 16:16, 16:19, 17:01, 17:03, 17:09, 17:12, 17:15, 18:11, 18:18, 18:21, 20:07, 20:16, 22:06, 23:01, 23:05, 23:09, 23:13, 23:19, 23:37, 24:04, 24:08, 25:10, 25:15, 25:27, 25:32, 26:04, 27:01, 27:09, 28:12, 30:12, 30:14, 30:23, 31:08, 31:27, 32:41, 33:14, 38:22, 42:07, 44:04, 46:20, 46:23, 46:25, 48:18, 48:21, 48:26, 49:23, 50:06, 50:17, 50:23, 50:27, 50:45, 51:01, 51:07, 51:09, 51:13, 51:15, 51:25, 51:33, 51:34, 51:41

* **Metonymy** is found in: 03:23, 04:01, 04:04, 04:30, 05:10, 05:14, 05:16, 05:20, 05:23, 06:01, 06:11, 06:16, 07:05, 07:27, 07:29, 07:33, 08:14, 08:18, 09:04, 09:07, 09:13, 09:15, 09:25, 10:23, 13:08, 14:07, 14:13, 14:15, 16:01, 16:07, 16:19, 17:05, 17:09, 17:24, 18:18, 18:21, 19:04, 19:06, 20:01, 20:03, 20:07, 20:12, 21:11, 21:13, 22:01, 22:04, 22:13, 22:17, 22:20, 22:22, 23:09, 23:11, 23:16, 24:08, 25:07, 25:27, 25:37, 26:16, 26:22, 27:14, 30:06, 30:08, 30:16, 30:18, 31:01, 31:15, 31:23, 32:03, 32:19, 32:22, 32:24, 32:26, 32:29, 32:31, 32:33, 32:36, 32:38, 32:43, 33:10, 33:14, 33:19, 34:01, 34:04, 34:08, 34:15, 35:01, 38:01, 38:04, 38:14, 38:17, 38:22, 39:06, 39:17, 40:05, 40:11, 41:04, 42:11, 42:13, 42:15, 42:20, 43:04, 43:08, 44:22, 44:26, 45:04, 46:10, 46:11, 46:13, 46:15, 46:25, 46:27, 47:05, 48:01, 48:03, 48:06, 48:08, 48:15, 49:12, 49:30, 49:32, 50:16, 51:13, 51:24, 51:29, 51:33, 51:34, 51:43, 51:45, 51:47, 52:09

* **Parallelism** is found in: 02:04, 02:07, 03:23, 04:04, 04:21, 04:27, 05:10, 05:14, 06:13, 06:16, 07:16, 07:27, 08:18, 09:01, 09:10, 09:17, 09:19, 09:21, 12:16, 13:25, 14:04, 15:01, 15:05, 15:19, 16:05, 16:07, 16:10, 16:19, 17:17, 18:11, 18:21, 19:06, 19:14, 20:05, 20:07, 22:08, 22:17, 23:01, 23:05, 29:22, 30:08, 30:10, 30:16, 30:18, 30:20, 31:10, 31:18, 31:33, 33:10, 33:19, 34:12, 35:15, 40:03, 42:07, 42:13, 46:07, 46:10, 47:01, 47:03, 48:08, 48:11, 48:15, 48:30, 48:45, 49:07, 49:17, 49:32, 50:01, 50:11, 50:16, 50:19, 50:38, 50:45, 51:54

* **Parallelism]]** is found in: 21:06

* **Personification** is found in: 02:18, 02:35, 03:01, 04:09, 04:13, 04:27, 05:07, 06:01, 08:08, 09:21, 10:19, 12:10, 12:12, 17:09, 18:13, 23:19, 42:15, 44:29, 46:07, 47:05, 48:11, 51:43, 51:47

* **Reflexive Pronouns** is found in: 15:19, 44:01

- * Rhetorical Question is found in: 02:04, 02:07, 02:09, 02:14, 02:29, 02:32, 02:35, 03:01, 05:01, 05:07, 05:20, 05:30, 06:09, 06:13, 06:20, 07:08, 07:19, 08:04, 08:06, 08:08, 08:14, 08:18, 08:20, 09:10, 10:06, 11:14, 12:03, 12:05, 13:20, 13:22, 13:25, 15:05, 15:10, 15:17, 16:19, 17:09, 17:15, 18:05, 18:13, 18:18, 20:16, 21:13, 22:15, 22:27, 23:16, 23:23, 23:25, 23:28, 23:33, 25:27, 26:07, 26:18, 27:12, 27:16, 30:14, 30:20, 31:18, 31:21, 32:03, 32:26, 33:23, 35:12, 36:27, 37:18, 38:14, 40:13, 40:15, 44:07, 44:09, 44:20, 45:04, 46:05, 46:07, 46:15, 47:05, 48:13, 48:26, 49:01, 49:03, 49:07, 49:09, 49:12, 49:19, 49:23, 50:44
- * Simile is found in: 03:01, 04:13, 04:16, 04:30, 05:16, 06:06, 06:23, 06:27, 08:01, 08:06, 09:21, 13:22, 14:07, 15:17, 15:19, 16:01, 17:05, 17:07, 18:05, 18:15, 20:10, 21:11, 22:06, 23:09, 23:11, 23:13, 23:28, 24:04, 24:08, 25:32, 25:37, 26:04, 26:18, 29:15, 30:06, 31:10, 31:12, 31:18, 43:11, 46:20, 48:06, 48:11, 48:36, 48:40, 49:16, 49:17, 49:19, 49:21, 49:23, 50:08, 50:11, 50:25, 50:35, 50:43, 50:44, 51:13, 51:27, 51:33, 51:34, 51:54, 51:63
- * Simile]] is found in: 15:19
- * Synecdoche is found in: 02:01, 02:26, 08:04, 08:18, 14:01, 14:07, 16:16, 17:01, 17:15, 17:17, 18:01, 18:09, 18:11, 20:03, 20:05, 20:12, 20:16, 21:03, 21:11, 22:06, 22:08, 23:13, 23:16, 23:25, 24:04, 26:10, 26:18, 27:08, 29:15, 29:24, 32:03, 33:04, 34:01, 35:05, 35:08, 42:04, 42:13, 42:15, 44:07, 44:09, 44:11, 44:13, 44:26, 44:29, 46:23, 48:36, 48:45, 49:37, 50:01, 50:14, 50:21, 50:31, 50:35, 50:38, 50:41
- * Forms of You is found in: 02:09, 16:07, 32:03, 32:36, 32:43
- * Forms of You]] is found in: 49:12
- * Biblical Distance is found in: 52:20
- * Biblical Money is found in: 32:08
- * Hebrew Months is found in: 01:01, 28:01, 28:15, 36:09, 36:20, 39:01, 41:01, 52:04, 52:06, 52:12, 52:31
- * How to Translate Names is found in: 01:01, 02:09, 02:14, 06:01, 07:31, 11:21, 15:03, 20:03, 22:20, 25:03, 25:19, 25:22, 25:24, 26:22, 28:01, 29:01, 29:20, 29:24, 31:38, 32:06, 32:10, 34:06, 35:01, 35:03, 35:05, 35:12, 36:09, 36:11, 36:13, 36:25, 37:03, 37:11, 38:01, 38:07, 39:01, 39:04, 39:08, 39:11, 40:07, 40:13, 41:01, 41:10, 41:11, 41:13, 41:17, 42:01, 43:01, 43:04, 43:11, 44:01, 44:15, 44:29, 45:01, 46:07, 46:13, 47:03, 48:01, 48:03, 48:21, 48:30, 48:34, 48:36, 48:40, 49:21, 49:23, 49:26, 49:28, 50:01, 50:21, 51:27, 51:59, 52:01, 52:09, 52:12, 52:15, 52:26, 52:31
- * How to Translate Names]] is found in: 21:01, 26:18, 26:20
- * Numbers is found in: 29:10, 37:14, 38:10, 41:04, 49:34, 52:28
- * Ordinal Numbers is found in: 01:01, 25:01, 36:01, 52:04, 52:12, 52:31
- * Ordinal Numbers]] is found in: 39:01, 52:28
- * Translate Unknowns is found in: 01:11, 31:04
- * Background Information is found in: 09:01, 24:01, 38:07, 41:15
- * Poetry is found in: 17:01, 20:01, 33:01, 36:01, 43:01, 44:01, 45:01, 49:01, 50:01

List of translationWords in Jeremiah

- * abomination, abominable is found in: 02:07, 06:13, 07:08, 08:11, 44:04, 44:22

- * Abraham, Abram is found in: 33:25
- * accuse, accusation, accuser is found in: 02:09, 02:29
- * acknowledge is found in: 03:13, 09:04, 15:15
- * adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress is found in: 02:20, 03:08, 05:07, 07:08, 09:01, 13:25, 23:09, 29:22
- * adversary, enemy is found in: 06:25, 15:10, 17:03, 18:15, 19:06, 20:03, 21:06, 30:14, 30:16, 31:16, 44:29, 48:01, 49:37, 50:06, 51:13
- * afflict, affliction is found in: 14:19
- * Ahab is found in: 29:20
- * Ai is found in: 49:03
- * alarm, alarmed is found in: 04:19
- * altar is found in: 11:11, 17:01
- * ambassador, representative is found in: 27:01
- * Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess is found in: 09:25, 25:19, 27:01, 40:11, 40:13, 41:10, 41:15, 49:01, 49:05
- * angry, anger is found in: 02:35, 03:03, 04:07, 07:19, 10:08, 12:12, 21:03, 25:37, 32:36, 37:14, 46:07, 50:11, 52:01
- * anguish is found in: 06:23, 19:06
- * Arabah is found in: 02:04, 05:04, 17:05, 39:04, 52:06
- * Arabia, Arabian is found in: 25:24
- * Aram, Aramean, Aramaic is found in: 35:08
- * Ararat is found in: 51:27
- * archer is found in: 51:03
- * ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh is found in: 03:16
- * armor is found in: 46:01, 51:03
- * arrogant is found in: 03:03, 13:08, 43:01, 48:28, 48:42
- * Asa is found in: 41:08
- * ash, ashes, dust is found in: 06:25
- * Ashdod, Azotus is found in: 25:19
- * Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth is found in: 17:01
- * Ashkelon is found in: 25:19, 47:05
- * assembly, assemble is found in: 26:16, 30:20, 31:08, 44:15
- * assign, assigned is found in: 41:10, 43:11

- * Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire is found in: 02:18, 02:35, 50:17
- * avenge, revenge, vengeance is found in: 05:07, 05:26, 09:07, 11:18, 15:15, 20:10, 46:10, 48:42, 50:14, 50:27, 51:05, 51:36, 51:54
- * ax is found in: 10:03, 46:20
- * Azariah is found in: 43:01
- * Baal is found in: 02:07, 02:23, 07:08, 09:13, 11:11, 11:17, 12:16, 19:04, 23:13, 23:25, 32:29, 32:33
- * Baasha is found in: 41:08
- * Babylon, Babylonian is found in: 20:03, 21:01, 22:24, 24:01, 25:01, 27:05, 27:12, 27:19, 28:01, 28:10, 29:01, 29:04, 32:01, 32:26, 34:01, 35:08, 36:27, 37:01, 37:16, 37:18, 38:01, 38:17, 39:01, 39:11, 40:01, 40:11, 41:01, 41:17, 42:11, 43:01, 44:29, 46:01, 46:13, 46:25, 49:28, 50:01, 50:11, 50:23, 50:29, 50:45, 51:01, 51:09, 51:24, 51:29, 51:33, 51:41, 51:47, 51:61, 52:01, 52:12, 52:26
- * banquet is found in: 16:07
- * barley is found in: 41:08
- * barren is found in: 03:01, 17:05
- * Baruch is found in: 32:10, 36:04, 36:07, 36:09, 36:13, 36:16, 36:25, 36:27, 36:32, 43:01
- * Bashan is found in: 22:20, 50:19
- * beast is found in: 07:33, 12:03, 16:01, 19:06, 21:06, 28:12, 31:27, 32:43, 33:10, 34:20, 36:27, 50:03, 50:38
- * beg, beggar is found in: 15:10, 27:16
- * believe, believe in, belief is found in: 28:15, 29:30, 40:13
- * beloved is found in: 11:14, 12:07
- * Benjamin is found in: 01:01, 06:01, 17:26, 20:01, 32:08, 32:43, 33:12, 37:11, 38:07
- * Bethel is found in: 48:13
- * Bethlehem, Ephrathah is found in: 41:17
- * betray, betrayer is found in: 03:19, 05:10, 12:05
- * biblical time: day is found in: 01:01, 07:31, 09:25, 36:01, 36:04, 37:16, 39:01, 46:10, 50:31, 52:04, 52:06, 52:12, 52:31
- * biblical time: year is found in: 01:01, 25:01, 28:01, 28:15, 29:10, 36:01, 36:09, 39:01, 45:01, 48:42, 52:04, 52:06, 52:12, 52:28, 52:31
- * blameless is found in: 02:35
- * bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 04:01, 17:07, 20:14, 31:23
- * blood is found in: 02:32, 07:05, 19:04, 22:01, 22:17, 26:13, 46:10, 48:08, 51:34
- * blot out, wipe out is found in: 18:21

- * **body** is found in: 07:31, 09:25, 16:01, 34:04, 34:20
- * **bind, bond, bound** is found in: 05:04, 39:06, 40:01
- * **bow, bow down** is found in: 02:20, 13:08, 16:10, 22:08, 25:05
- * **bow and arrow** is found in: 04:27, 06:23, 09:01, 09:07, 46:07, 50:08, 50:29, 50:41, 51:03, 51:11, 51:54
- * **bread** is found in: 37:21
- * **bride** is found in: 02:32, 07:33, 16:07, 25:10, 33:10
- * **bridegroom** is found in: 07:33, 25:10, 33:10
- * **bronze** is found in: 01:17, 06:27, 15:10, 39:06, 52:09, 52:17
- * **brother** is found in: 07:12, 09:04, 23:35, 29:15, 31:33, 34:17
- * **burden** is found in: 17:21
- * **burnt offering, offering by fire** is found in: 06:20, 07:21, 14:10, 17:26, 19:04, 33:17
- * **bury, buried, burial** is found in: 07:31, 08:01, 14:15, 16:01, 16:05, 19:10, 20:05, 22:17, 25:32, 31:38, 43:08
- * **call, calling, called, call out** is found in: 01:15, 06:27, 07:31, 10:23, 11:14, 14:10, 20:03, 20:16, 25:27, 29:12, 30:14, 32:33, 33:01, 34:15, 35:17, 36:04, 49:28
- * **camel** is found in: 02:23, 49:28
- * **captive, captivity** is found in: 13:15, 15:01, 20:03, 22:10, 22:22, 27:19, 28:03, 28:05, 29:01, 30:10, 30:16, 43:01, 43:11, 46:27, 48:06, 48:11, 48:46, 49:03
- * **Carmel, Mount Carmel** is found in: 02:07, 46:18, 50:19
- * **cast out, drive out, throw out** is found in: 18:05, 23:01, 23:03, 24:08, 32:36
- * **cedar** is found in: 22:06
- * **chaff** is found in: 13:22
- * **Chaldea, Chaldean** is found in: 21:03, 22:24, 24:04, 25:12, 32:03, 32:24, 32:29, 32:43, 33:04, 35:08, 37:03, 37:06, 37:09, 37:11, 37:14, 38:01, 38:17, 38:22, 39:04, 40:09, 41:01, 41:17, 43:01, 50:01, 50:25, 50:35, 50:45, 51:03, 51:24, 51:34, 51:54, 52:06, 52:17
- * **chariot** is found in: 04:13, 17:24, 22:04, 46:07, 47:03, 50:35, 51:20
- * **chief** is found in: 31:07, 37:11, 40:01, 41:10
- * **children, child** is found in: 17:01, 18:21, 30:06, 31:15, 32:16, 47:03, 48:03, 49:01
- * **circumcise, circumcision** is found in: 04:04, 09:25
- * **clan** is found in: 03:13, 31:01, 33:23, 35:01
- * **clean, cleanse** is found in: 02:20, 04:11, 04:13, 13:25, 43:11
- * **comfort, comforter** is found in: 16:07, 31:15

- * **command, to command, commandment** is found in: 01:07, 01:17, 04:11, 07:21, 07:31, 11:03, 14:13, 17:21, 19:04, 23:31, 23:37, 25:07, 26:01, 27:01, 29:22, 32:10, 32:22, 32:33, 34:20, 35:05, 35:08, 36:04, 36:25, 38:10, 47:05, 50:21, 51:59
- * **commander, command** is found in: 40:05, 40:13, 41:11, 41:15, 42:01, 42:07, 43:04, 51:27, 52:12
- * **commit, committed, commitment** is found in: 02:12
- * **companion** is found in: 41:08, 41:15
- * **compassion, compassionate** is found in: 06:23, 13:12, 15:05, 21:06, 30:18, 31:13, 33:25, 42:11, 50:41
- * **confidence, confident** is found in: 17:07
- * **confirm, confirmation** is found in: 11:03, 28:05
- * **consume** is found in: 03:23, 05:14, 05:16, 06:27, 08:16, 10:23, 15:03, 17:26, 19:06, 21:13, 30:16
- * **corrupt, corruption** is found in: 06:27
- * **council** is found in: 23:16
- * **counsel, counselor, advice, advisor** is found in: 18:18, 37:06, 38:14
- * **courtyard, court** is found in: 19:14, 26:01, 32:01, 33:01, 36:09, 36:20, 37:21, 38:06, 38:12, 38:27, 39:11
- * **covenant** is found in: 11:01, 14:21, 22:08, 31:31, 32:38, 33:19, 34:12, 44:22, 50:03
- * **covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love** is found in: 02:01, 09:23, 16:05, 31:01, 32:16, 33:10
- * **cow, calf, bull, cattle** is found in: 03:23, 05:16, 09:10, 31:18, 34:17, 46:15, 46:20, 50:11, 50:27, 52:20
- * **create, creation, Creator** is found in: 31:21
- * **creature** is found in: 12:07
- * **crown, to crown** is found in: 13:18
- * **curse, cursed** is found in: 11:03, 15:10, 17:05, 20:14, 24:08, 25:17, 26:04, 29:18, 29:22, 42:18, 44:07, 44:11, 44:22, 48:08, 49:12
- * **Cush** is found in: 13:22, 38:07, 39:15, 46:07
- * **cut off** is found in: 07:27, 11:18, 17:12, 22:06, 44:07, 47:03
- * **Damascus** is found in: 49:23
- * **Dan** is found in: 04:13, 08:16
- * **darkness** is found in: 02:04, 13:15, 23:11
- * **Daughter of Zion** is found in: 06:01, 06:23
- * **David** is found in: 13:12, 17:24, 21:11, 22:01, 22:04, 22:29, 23:05, 29:15, 30:08, 33:14, 33:25, 36:30
- * **death, die, dead** is found in: 04:09, 08:01, 08:14, 09:21, 11:21, 15:01, 16:01, 16:05, 20:05, 21:06, 22:10, 22:24, 26:07, 26:10, 26:18, 27:09, 28:15, 31:29, 34:04, 37:18, 38:04, 42:15, 43:01, 43:11, 44:11, 52:09, 52:26

- * deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive is found in: 04:09, 05:26, 05:30, 06:13, 07:03, 07:08, 08:08, 09:01, 09:04, 13:25, 14:13, 15:17, 16:19, 17:09, 20:05, 23:13, 23:25, 27:09, 29:08, 37:09, 38:22, 49:16
- * declare, declaration is found in: 01:07, 02:01, 04:01, 04:27, 05:07, 05:10, 06:09, 06:11, 07:08, 13:25, 16:10, 16:14, 19:06, 22:15, 23:01, 23:16, 23:35, 25:12, 25:27, 29:08, 30:01, 30:10, 31:01, 31:13, 31:18, 31:27, 31:33, 32:03, 32:08, 32:29, 32:43, 33:14, 34:04, 35:12, 38:01, 39:17, 42:11, 44:29, 45:04, 46:05, 46:18, 46:23, 46:25, 48:11, 48:15, 48:21, 48:42, 49:01, 49:05, 49:12, 49:26, 49:30, 50:01, 50:08, 50:21, 50:29, 50:35, 51:24, 51:52, 51:61
- * decree is found in: 03:08, 05:04, 05:20, 08:06, 11:17, 13:25, 16:10, 40:01, 44:09, 44:22
- * defile, be defiled is found in: 02:07, 02:23, 03:08, 07:29
- * delight is found in: 12:10
- * descendant, descended from is found in: 07:12, 22:27, 23:07, 29:30, 30:10, 31:16, 31:27, 31:37, 32:38, 33:19, 35:05, 35:18, 36:30
- * desert, wilderness is found in: 02:01, 02:04, 02:23, 03:01, 04:11, 04:23, 09:01, 09:10, 09:25, 12:10, 13:22, 17:05, 22:06, 23:09, 25:24, 31:01, 48:06, 50:11, 50:38, 51:43
- * desolate, desolation is found in: 07:33, 12:10, 25:07, 25:10, 26:07, 33:10, 33:12, 44:22, 50:03, 51:43
- * destiny, destine, destined is found in: 15:01
- * destroyer is found in: 06:25, 12:12, 48:08, 48:30, 51:47, 51:52
- * detestable, detest is found in: 07:29
- * devastate, devastation is found in: 04:13, 04:19, 10:19, 44:04, 47:03, 48:01, 48:08, 48:15, 49:03, 49:12, 51:01, 51:25
- * devour is found in: 02:29, 10:23, 12:12, 46:10, 46:13, 48:45, 49:26, 50:06, 50:17, 50:31, 51:34
- * disciple is found in: 10:08
- * discipline, self-discipline is found in: 02:29, 05:01, 06:06, 07:27, 10:23, 17:21, 30:10, 46:27
- * dishonor, dishonorable is found in: 42:18
- * divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer is found in: 14:13, 27:09, 29:08, 50:35
- * divorce is found in: 03:08
- * donkey, mule is found in: 02:23, 14:04, 22:17
- * dove, pigeon is found in: 08:06, 48:28
- * dream is found in: 23:25, 29:08
- * drink offering is found in: 07:16, 19:12, 32:29, 44:15, 44:18, 44:24
- * drunk, drunkard is found in: 13:12, 23:09, 25:27, 48:26, 51:07, 51:38, 51:57
- * dung, manure is found in: 08:01, 09:21, 16:01, 25:32
- * eagle is found in: 04:13, 48:40, 49:21

- * earth, earthly is found in: 06:16, 08:01, 08:16, 09:01, 09:23, 10:11, 15:03, 16:01, 16:19, 19:06, 23:23, 24:08, 25:24, 26:04, 27:05, 28:15, 29:18, 31:08, 31:37, 32:16, 33:06, 33:25, 34:17, 44:07, 45:04, 46:07, 46:11, 49:21, 50:45, 51:15, 51:25, 51:41, 51:47
- * Edom, Edomite, Idumea is found in: 09:25, 25:19, 27:01, 40:11, 49:07, 49:17, 49:20
- * Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 02:04, 02:18, 02:35, 07:21, 07:24, 09:25, 11:03, 16:14, 23:07, 24:08, 25:19, 26:20, 31:31, 32:19, 34:12, 37:03, 37:06, 41:17, 42:13, 42:15, 43:01, 44:01, 44:11, 44:15, 44:24, 46:01, 46:07, 46:11, 46:13, 46:20, 46:23, 46:25
- * Ekron is found in: 25:19
- * Elam is found in: 25:24, 49:34
- * elder is found in: 19:01, 26:16, 29:01
- * chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect is found in: 33:23
- * endure, endurance is found in: 10:08
- * enslave, in bondage is found in: 30:08
- * Ephraim is found in: 04:13, 07:12, 31:04, 31:08, 31:18, 50:19
- * Esau is found in: 49:07, 49:09
- * everlasting, eternal, eternity is found in: 10:08, 18:15, 23:37, 31:01, 50:03, 51:25
- * eunuch is found in: 34:17, 38:07, 39:11, 41:15
- * Euphrates River is found in: 02:18, 13:01, 46:01, 46:05, 46:10, 51:63
- * evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 01:15, 02:01, 02:12, 02:18, 02:32, 03:01, 04:04, 04:13, 05:10, 05:26, 06:01, 06:27, 07:12, 07:24, 08:01, 08:06, 09:01, 10:03, 11:06, 11:17, 12:01, 12:14, 13:08, 14:15, 15:19, 16:12, 18:05, 18:11, 21:11, 22:22, 23:01, 25:05, 25:30, 26:01, 30:23, 32:29, 33:04, 35:15, 36:01, 36:07, 38:07, 44:01, 44:07, 44:22, 51:24, 52:01
- * evildoer is found in: 20:12
- * exile, the Exile is found in: 13:18, 22:11, 24:01, 24:04, 29:01, 29:12, 39:08, 40:01, 40:07, 46:18, 52:15, 52:26
- * face is found in: 02:26, 03:03, 05:01, 05:20, 21:08, 26:18, 32:31, 33:04, 44:11, 51:50
- * faithful, faithfulness is found in: 03:11, 05:01, 09:01, 32:41, 33:06, 42:04
- * faithless, faithlessness is found in: 02:18, 03:06, 05:04, 08:04, 12:01, 14:07, 29:30, 31:21, 49:03
- * false god, foreign god, god, goddess is found in: 01:15, 02:09, 05:07, 05:18, 07:05, 10:11, 11:09, 13:08, 16:10, 16:19, 19:04, 19:12, 22:08, 25:05, 32:29, 35:15, 43:11, 44:01, 44:15, 46:15, 46:25, 48:34
- * false prophet is found in: 14:13, 29:20, 37:18
- * family is found in: 02:04, 10:23, 35:18, 38:17, 41:01, 51:34
- * famine is found in: 05:10, 11:21, 14:10, 14:15, 14:17, 15:01, 16:01, 18:21, 21:06, 24:08, 27:08, 28:08, 29:15, 32:24, 32:36, 34:17, 38:01, 42:15, 42:20, 44:11, 44:26, 52:06

- * fast is found in: 14:10, 36:04, 36:09
- * ancestor, father, forefather is found in: 02:04, 02:26, 03:19, 07:16, 09:13, 31:08, 31:29, 31:31, 47:03
- * favor, favorable, favoritism is found in: 15:01, 16:12, 22:15, 23:25, 31:01
- * fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 01:07, 03:08, 05:20, 05:23, 10:03, 22:24, 23:03, 26:18, 26:20, 30:10, 36:16, 38:19, 40:09, 41:17, 42:11, 46:27, 51:45
- * feast is found in: 51:38
- * fig is found in: 05:16, 08:11, 24:01, 24:08, 29:15
- * fire is found in: 04:04, 05:14, 06:27, 07:16, 07:31, 11:14, 15:13, 17:03, 17:26, 19:04, 20:07, 21:11, 22:06, 23:28, 29:22, 36:23, 43:11, 44:04, 48:45, 49:01, 49:26, 50:31, 51:30
- * firstborn is found in: 04:30, 31:08
- * firstfruits is found in: 02:01
- * fishermen, fishers is found in: 16:16
- * flesh is found in: 17:05, 19:06, 25:30
- * flock, herd is found in: 03:23, 05:16, 06:01, 10:21, 13:15, 13:20, 23:01, 23:03, 25:34, 31:12, 33:12, 49:20, 49:28, 50:06, 50:45, 51:22
- * flood is found in: 47:01
- * flute, pipe is found in: 48:36
- * fool, foolish, folly is found in: 04:21, 05:04, 05:20, 15:19, 17:09, 50:35
- * foreigner, foreign, alien is found in: 02:20, 05:18, 08:18, 14:07, 30:08, 35:05, 51:01, 51:50
- * forever is found in: 03:03, 07:05, 17:03, 17:24, 20:16, 31:35, 35:05, 49:12
- * forgive, forgiveness is found in: 05:01, 18:21, 31:33, 36:01, 50:19
- * forsake, forsaken, forsook is found in: 01:15, 12:07, 15:05, 51:05
- * foundation, founded is found in: 31:37, 51:25
- * fountain, spring is found in: 02:12, 09:01, 17:12
- * frankincense is found in: 06:20, 17:26, 41:04
- * free, freedom, liberty is found in: 25:27, 34:08
- * fruit, fruitful is found in: 02:07, 05:16, 06:16, 11:14, 11:18, 12:01, 17:07, 21:13, 23:03, 29:04, 29:27, 40:09, 40:11, 48:30
- * furnace is found in: 11:03
- * Gad is found in: 49:01
- * gate, gate bar is found in: 01:15, 07:01, 14:01, 15:05, 17:19, 17:26, 19:01, 20:01, 22:01, 22:04, 22:17, 26:10, 31:38, 36:09, 37:11, 38:07, 39:01, 49:30, 51:30, 51:57, 52:06
- * Gaza is found in: 25:19, 47:01, 47:05

- * generation is found in: 02:29, 07:29, 50:38
- * Gibeon, Gibeonite is found in: 28:01, 41:11, 41:15
- * gift is found in: 25:05, 40:05
- * Gilead is found in: 08:20, 22:06, 46:11, 50:19
- * glean, gleaning is found in: 06:09
- * glory, glorious is found in: 02:09, 13:18, 14:21, 17:12
- * goat, kid is found in: 50:08, 51:38
- * God is found in: 02:14, 03:13, 05:04, 05:18, 05:23, 07:03, 10:08, 11:03, 12:03, 13:12, 14:21, 16:07, 19:01, 19:14, 21:03, 22:08, 23:01, 23:35, 24:04, 25:27, 26:13, 27:01, 27:21, 28:01, 28:12, 29:04, 30:01, 30:20, 31:01, 31:23, 32:13, 32:36, 33:04, 34:01, 35:03, 37:03, 37:06, 39:15, 40:01, 42:01, 43:01, 44:01, 44:24, 45:01, 46:25, 48:01, 50:03, 50:17, 51:05, 51:09, 51:17, 51:33, 51:54
- * gold is found in: 04:30, 10:03, 51:07, 52:17
- * Gomorrah is found in: 23:13, 49:17, 50:38
- * good, goodness is found in: 04:21, 05:23, 06:16, 07:03, 07:05, 10:03, 13:06, 14:10, 15:10, 17:05, 18:09, 18:11, 21:08, 24:04, 26:13, 29:10, 31:12, 32:38, 33:10, 39:15, 40:03, 42:04, 44:26
- * governor, govern, proconsul, government is found in: 40:07, 51:22, 51:27
- * grain is found in: 09:21, 23:28, 50:25
- * grain offering is found in: 33:17
- * grape is found in: 06:09, 08:11, 25:30, 31:29, 49:09
- * guilt, guilty is found in: 31:18, 32:16, 50:06, 51:09, 51:34
- * Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites is found in: 49:23, 52:09, 52:26
- * Hananiah is found in: 28:01, 28:05, 28:15
- * hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 01:09, 06:01, 06:11, 10:08, 11:21, 12:07, 15:05, 15:17, 15:19, 16:19, 18:05, 18:21, 19:06, 20:03, 20:12, 21:03, 21:06, 21:11, 22:01, 22:24, 23:13, 25:05, 25:12, 25:30, 26:13, 26:22, 27:01, 27:05, 29:01, 29:20, 31:10, 31:31, 32:03, 32:19, 32:24, 32:36, 34:01, 34:20, 37:01, 37:16, 38:01, 38:14, 38:19, 38:22, 39:17, 42:11, 43:01, 44:07, 44:29, 46:23, 46:25, 50:01, 51:07, 51:25
- * hard, hardness, harden is found in: 07:24
- * harvest is found in: 02:01, 05:16, 05:23, 08:20, 12:12, 40:09, 40:11, 49:09, 50:16, 51:33
- * head is found in: 30:23, 48:36
- * heal, cure is found in: 03:21, 06:13, 08:14, 08:20, 14:19, 15:17, 17:12, 30:12, 33:06, 46:11, 51:07
- * heart is found in: 03:08, 04:04, 04:19, 05:23, 07:24, 08:18, 09:07, 09:13, 09:25, 11:06, 11:18, 12:01, 12:10, 13:08, 13:22, 14:13, 15:15, 16:12, 17:01, 17:09, 18:11, 20:07, 20:12, 22:17, 23:09, 23:16, 23:25, 24:04, 29:12, 30:23, 31:18, 32:38, 48:28, 49:16, 49:21, 51:45

- * **heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly** is found in: 02:12, 04:23, 07:16, 07:33, 08:01, 08:06, 10:01, 14:21, 15:03, 16:01, 19:06, 19:12, 23:23, 31:37, 32:16, 33:19, 34:20, 44:15, 49:34, 51:09, 51:15, 51:47
- * **Hebrew** is found in: 34:12
- * **Hezekiah** is found in: 15:03, 26:18
- * **high places** is found in: 03:01, 03:06, 07:31, 19:04, 32:33, 48:34
- * **high priest** is found in: 52:24
- * **holy, holiness** is found in: 23:09, 31:23
- * **Holy One** is found in: 50:29, 51:05
- * **holy place, most holy place** is found in: 51:50
- * **honey, honeycomb** is found in: 11:03, 32:22, 41:08
- * **honor, to honor** is found in: 03:19, 13:08, 30:18, 32:38, 33:06, 36:09, 44:09, 48:01, 48:15, 52:32
- * **hoof, hoofed, hooves** is found in: 47:03
- * **hope** is found in: 14:07, 17:12, 29:10, 31:16, 45:04, 50:06
- * **horn, horns** is found in: 17:01
- * **horror, horrified** is found in: 02:12, 05:30, 18:15, 20:03, 25:07, 25:37
- * **horse** is found in: 04:13, 05:07, 06:23, 08:16, 12:05, 17:24, 22:04, 46:07, 47:03, 50:11, 50:35, 51:20
- * **house** is found in: 02:04, 02:26, 03:17, 05:14, 05:20, 07:08, 07:12, 09:25, 10:01, 11:09, 12:07, 13:08, 17:26, 18:05, 20:05, 21:11, 22:13, 22:22, 23:07, 23:33, 31:27, 31:31, 32:01, 33:14, 33:17, 37:14, 37:16, 38:07, 43:08, 48:13
- * **house of God, Yahweh's house** is found in: 07:01, 07:29, 19:14, 20:01, 23:11, 26:01, 26:07, 27:16, 28:01, 28:05, 29:24, 32:33, 33:10, 35:03, 36:04, 36:07, 36:09, 38:14, 41:04, 51:50, 52:12, 52:20
- * **humble, humility** is found in: 06:13, 08:11, 13:18, 30:18, 44:09
- * **idol, idolatrous** is found in: 02:04, 02:26, 03:08, 03:23, 08:18, 10:03, 14:21, 16:16, 18:15, 50:01, 50:38, 51:17
- * **image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure** is found in: 08:18, 10:14, 50:01, 51:17, 51:47, 51:52
- * **incense** is found in: 01:15, 07:08, 11:11, 44:01, 44:07, 44:15, 48:34, 52:17
- * **inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir** is found in: 02:07, 03:17, 10:14, 12:07, 12:14, 16:16, 17:03, 32:08, 49:01, 50:11, 51:17
- * **iniquity** is found in: 02:20, 03:13, 05:23, 09:04, 11:09, 13:22, 14:07, 14:10, 14:19, 16:10, 16:16, 18:21, 25:12, 30:14, 31:29, 33:06, 36:01, 36:30, 50:19, 51:05
- * **innocent** is found in: 02:32, 07:05, 19:04, 22:01, 22:17, 26:13, 51:09
- * **intercede, intercession** is found in: 29:06
- * **Isaac** is found in: 33:25

- * Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 02:01, 02:14, 02:29, 05:14, 06:09, 07:03, 09:15, 10:01, 11:03, 12:14, 13:12, 14:07, 16:07, 16:14, 17:12, 18:13, 19:01, 19:14, 21:03, 23:01, 24:04, 25:15, 25:27, 27:01, 27:21, 28:01, 28:12, 29:04, 30:01, 31:01, 31:21, 31:23, 31:35, 31:37, 32:13, 33:04, 34:01, 34:12, 34:17, 35:12, 37:06, 38:17, 39:15, 42:07, 43:08, 44:01, 44:07, 44:24, 45:01, 46:25, 48:01, 48:26, 50:17, 50:29, 51:05, 51:33, 51:47
- * I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh is found in: 13:25, 48:42
- * Jacob, Israel is found in: 02:04, 05:20, 10:14, 30:06, 30:10, 31:07, 31:10, 33:25, 46:27, 51:17
- * Jehoiachin is found in: 22:24, 24:01, 27:19, 28:03, 29:01, 37:01, 52:31
- * Jehoiakim is found in: 01:01, 22:17, 22:24, 24:01, 25:01, 26:01, 26:20, 27:01, 27:19, 28:03, 35:01, 36:01, 36:09, 36:27, 36:30, 36:32, 37:01, 45:01, 46:01, 52:01
- * Jeremiah is found in: 01:01, 05:18, 06:27, 07:01, 07:16, 11:01, 12:05, 14:01, 15:19, 18:01, 18:18, 19:14, 20:01, 21:01, 24:01, 25:01, 25:30, 26:07, 26:20, 27:01, 28:05, 28:15, 29:01, 30:01, 32:01, 32:26, 33:01, 34:01, 34:12, 35:01, 35:18, 36:01, 36:04, 36:07, 36:16, 36:25, 36:27, 36:32, 37:01, 37:03, 37:06, 37:11, 37:14, 37:16, 37:18, 37:21, 38:01, 39:11, 40:01, 42:01, 43:01, 44:01, 44:15, 44:24, 45:01, 46:01, 46:13, 47:01, 49:34, 50:01, 51:59
- * Jericho is found in: 39:04, 52:06
- * Jerusalem is found in: 01:01, 02:01, 03:17, 04:01, 05:01, 06:01, 06:06, 07:16, 07:33, 08:01, 08:04, 09:10, 11:01, 13:08, 13:25, 14:01, 14:15, 15:03, 17:19, 17:26, 18:11, 19:01, 19:12, 22:17, 23:13, 24:01, 24:08, 25:01, 25:17, 26:18, 27:01, 27:16, 29:01, 32:01, 32:43, 33:10, 33:14, 34:01, 35:08, 35:17, 36:09, 36:30, 37:03, 37:11, 38:27, 39:01, 40:01, 42:18, 44:01, 44:13, 44:15, 51:34, 51:50, 52:01, 52:12, 52:28
- * Jonathan is found in: 37:14, 40:13
- * Jordan River is found in: 12:05, 39:04, 49:19, 50:44, 52:06
- * Josiah is found in: 01:01, 03:06, 22:11, 25:01, 26:01, 27:01, 35:01, 36:01, 36:09, 37:01, 45:01, 46:01
- * joy, joyful is found in: 15:15, 16:07, 20:14, 25:10, 31:07, 33:06, 48:33
- * Judah is found in: 05:20, 07:16, 13:18, 22:17, 26:18, 27:12, 35:12, 39:06, 44:11, 44:20, 44:29, 51:05, 52:26
- * Judea is found in: 32:10, 41:01, 44:01
- * judge, judgment is found in: 02:35, 22:15, 48:46
- * judge is found in: 11:18
- * just, justice, justly is found in: 04:01, 05:01, 07:05, 09:23, 10:23, 21:11, 22:01, 22:15, 23:05, 25:30, 30:10, 33:14, 46:27
- * king is found in: 01:01, 02:26, 03:06, 04:09, 08:01, 08:18, 10:06, 13:12, 13:18, 15:03, 17:19, 19:01, 19:12, 20:03, 21:01, 21:08, 22:01, 22:17, 23:05, 24:01, 25:01, 25:17, 26:01, 26:18, 26:20, 27:01, 27:12, 27:19, 28:01, 28:10, 29:01, 30:08, 32:01, 32:31, 32:36, 33:04, 34:01, 35:01, 36:01, 36:09, 36:11, 36:16, 36:20, 36:23, 36:25, 36:27, 36:30, 36:32, 37:01, 37:03, 37:06, 37:16, 37:18, 37:21, 38:01, 38:10, 38:14, 38:24, 39:01, 39:11, 40:09, 40:11, 40:13, 41:01, 41:17, 44:09, 44:15, 44:20, 44:29, 45:01, 46:01, 46:13, 46:18, 46:25, 48:15, 49:28, 49:34, 50:17, 50:41, 51:11, 51:27, 51:30, 51:57, 52:01, 52:12, 52:26, 52:32

- * kingdom is found in: 01:09, 10:06, 15:03, 18:05, 24:08, 25:24, 27:08, 28:08, 29:18, 34:01, 49:28, 51:20, 51:27
- * kingdom of Israel is found in: 03:06, 04:01, 05:10, 05:18, 09:25, 11:09, 13:08, 18:05, 23:07, 29:22, 30:01, 31:27, 31:31, 32:29, 33:14, 36:01, 41:08, 49:01, 50:03
- * Judah, kingdom of Judah is found in: 01:01, 02:26, 03:06, 04:01, 05:10, 05:18, 07:01, 07:33, 08:01, 09:10, 09:25, 10:21, 11:01, 11:09, 12:14, 13:08, 14:01, 15:03, 17:01, 17:19, 17:26, 18:11, 19:01, 19:12, 20:03, 21:06, 21:11, 22:01, 22:29, 23:05, 24:01, 24:08, 25:01, 25:17, 26:01, 26:10, 27:01, 27:19, 28:01, 29:01, 30:01, 31:23, 31:31, 32:01, 32:29, 32:43, 33:04, 33:14, 34:01, 35:01, 35:17, 36:01, 36:09, 36:27, 36:30, 36:32, 37:01, 37:06, 38:19, 39:01, 40:01, 40:11, 40:15, 42:15, 43:04, 44:01, 44:15, 45:01, 46:01, 49:34, 50:03, 50:33, 51:59, 52:01
- * know, knowledge, make known is found in: 03:13, 05:04, 07:08, 08:06, 09:01, 09:23, 10:14, 11:18, 12:03, 14:17, 15:13, 16:12, 16:19, 17:03, 19:04, 22:15, 22:27, 23:01, 24:04, 26:13, 28:08, 29:22, 31:33, 36:16, 41:04, 42:20, 44:01, 44:18, 44:26, 51:17
- * labor, laborer is found in: 51:57
- * labor pains, in labor is found in: 13:20, 22:22, 48:40, 49:21, 50:43
- * lamb, Lamb of God is found in: 11:18, 51:38
- * lament, lamentation is found in: 04:07, 07:16, 09:17, 16:05, 22:17, 34:04, 46:11, 47:01, 48:18, 48:30, 48:36, 49:03
- * lampstand is found in: 52:17
- * last day, last days, latter days is found in: 23:19
- * law, principle is found in: 44:22
- * law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 02:07, 06:16, 08:08, 09:13, 16:10, 18:18, 26:04, 31:33, 32:22, 44:09
- * Lebanon is found in: 18:13, 22:06, 22:20
- * Levite, Levi is found in: 33:17
- * life, live, living, alive is found in: 01:13, 02:04, 04:07, 05:01, 07:03, 07:24, 08:01, 09:04, 09:25, 10:08, 11:03, 11:18, 12:07, 16:14, 17:09, 17:21, 19:06, 21:06, 21:08, 22:22, 23:05, 23:35, 25:24, 26:18, 27:05, 27:12, 29:04, 29:27, 31:12, 32:22, 32:36, 33:14, 34:20, 35:05, 38:14, 39:17, 40:09, 42:07, 43:01, 44:01, 44:26, 45:04, 46:18, 46:25, 48:06, 48:08, 48:18, 49:01, 49:09, 49:17, 49:30, 50:03, 50:38, 51:01, 51:17, 51:45, 52:32
- * light is found in: 13:15, 25:10
- * like, likeness is found in: 46:07
- * lion is found in: 02:14, 02:29, 04:07, 05:04, 12:07, 25:37, 49:19, 50:17, 50:44, 51:38
- * locust is found in: 51:13, 51:27
- * lord, master, sir is found in: 22:17, 27:01, 30:14, 34:04, 37:18, 38:07
- * Lord is found in: 46:10, 50:31

- * Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God is found in: 01:04, 02:18, 04:09, 07:19, 14:13, 32:16, 44:26, 50:25
- * love is found in: 02:01, 02:23, 02:32, 05:30, 14:10, 20:03, 31:01
- * lover is found in: 03:01
- * majesty is found in: 22:17, 25:34
- * Manasseh is found in: 15:03
- * Medes, Media is found in: 25:24, 51:11, 51:27
- * mercy, merciful is found in: 15:05, 16:05, 20:16, 36:07, 42:11
- * messenger is found in: 02:09, 43:08, 49:14, 51:30
- * Micah is found in: 26:18
- * mighty, might is found in: 09:23, 14:01, 32:16
- * mind is found in: 02:01, 07:31, 11:18, 14:10, 17:09, 18:01, 20:12, 23:16, 23:25, 31:18, 34:10, 44:20
- * miracle, wonder, sign is found in: 21:01, 32:19
- * Mizpah is found in: 40:05, 40:07, 40:11, 40:13, 40:15, 41:01, 41:10
- * Moab, Moabite, Moabiteess is found in: 09:25, 25:19, 27:01, 40:11, 48:01, 48:08, 48:11, 48:13, 48:26, 48:28, 48:33, 48:46
- * mock, ridicule, scoff at is found in: 09:04, 10:14, 20:07, 51:17
- * Molech, Moloch is found in: 32:33, 49:01
- * Moses is found in: 15:01
- * mourn, mourning is found in: 04:27, 08:20, 09:10, 09:17, 09:19, 12:03, 12:10, 14:01, 16:01, 16:05, 22:10, 23:09, 25:32, 31:13, 47:05, 48:38
- * name is found in: 03:17, 07:08, 10:06, 10:14, 11:18, 12:16, 14:07, 15:15, 16:19, 20:03, 20:07, 23:05, 23:25, 25:27, 26:07, 26:16, 29:08, 31:35, 32:16, 32:19, 33:01, 34:15, 44:15, 44:26, 46:18, 48:15, 50:33, 51:17, 51:57, 52:01
- * nation is found in: 01:04, 01:09, 02:09, 03:17, 04:01, 04:16, 05:07, 05:14, 06:16, 06:20, 07:27, 08:01, 09:07, 09:15, 09:25, 10:01, 12:14, 14:21, 16:19, 18:05, 18:13, 22:08, 25:07, 25:32, 26:04, 27:05, 28:08, 29:12, 29:18, 30:10, 31:07, 31:10, 31:35, 33:06, 33:23, 36:01, 43:04, 44:07, 46:01, 46:11, 46:27, 48:01, 49:14, 49:30, 50:01, 50:23, 50:41, 50:45, 51:07, 51:20, 51:27, 51:41, 51:57
- * Nebuchadnezzar is found in: 21:01, 22:24, 24:01, 25:01, 27:05, 27:19, 28:03, 29:01, 29:20, 32:01, 32:26, 34:01, 35:08, 37:01, 39:01, 39:11, 43:08, 44:29, 46:01, 46:13, 46:25, 49:28, 50:17, 51:34, 52:04, 52:12, 52:28
- * Negev is found in: 13:18, 17:26, 32:43, 33:12
- * neighbor is found in: 05:07, 06:20, 07:05, 09:04, 09:07, 12:14, 19:06, 23:25, 29:22, 31:33, 34:15, 49:09, 49:17, 50:38
- * Nile River, River of Egypt is found in: 46:07

- * noble, nobleman is found in: 27:19, 39:06
- * oath, swear, swear by is found in: 04:01, 05:01, 05:07, 07:08, 11:03, 12:16, 32:22, 38:14, 40:09, 44:11, 44:26, 49:12, 51:13
- * obey, obedient, obedience is found in: 11:03, 32:22, 34:10, 35:08, 38:20, 40:03, 42:04
- * offspring is found in: 31:12, 46:27
- * oil is found in: 31:12, 40:09, 41:08
- * olive is found in: 11:14
- * oppress, oppression, oppressor is found in: 06:06, 20:12, 21:11, 22:01, 22:17, 25:37, 50:16, 50:33
- * palace is found in: 22:04, 22:06, 37:16, 52:12
- * pardon is found in: 05:07, 33:06
- * patient, patience is found in: 15:15
- * peace, peaceful is found in: 04:09, 06:13, 08:11, 08:14, 09:07, 14:19, 16:05, 23:16, 25:37, 28:08, 29:06, 30:04, 30:10, 33:06, 34:04, 46:27
- * people group, peoples, the people, a people is found in: 01:01, 04:09, 06:20, 07:16, 08:04, 09:15, 10:03, 11:06, 12:03, 13:08, 14:10, 15:01, 16:05, 16:10, 19:01, 21:06, 23:07, 23:33, 25:01, 26:07, 27:01, 27:12, 28:15, 29:01, 32:19, 33:23, 34:01, 36:01, 36:07, 37:11, 37:18, 39:08, 40:03, 40:11, 40:13, 41:10, 42:01, 43:01, 44:20, 46:15, 46:23, 48:36, 49:01, 49:30, 50:33, 51:13
- * people of God, my people is found in: 02:09, 02:29, 03:13, 04:11, 05:01, 05:26, 06:13, 06:20, 06:27, 07:12, 08:06, 08:11, 11:03, 12:07, 12:14, 13:08, 14:17, 18:15, 23:01, 23:13, 23:31, 24:04, 29:30, 30:01, 30:20, 31:01, 31:13, 31:33, 32:19, 32:38, 33:23, 50:06, 51:45
- * perish, perishing, perishable is found in: 06:20, 09:10, 10:11, 10:14, 13:22, 14:15, 18:18, 27:14, 44:11, 44:26, 48:01, 48:08, 49:26, 51:05, 51:17, 51:54
- * Pharaoh, king of Egypt is found in: 25:19, 37:03, 37:06, 37:11, 43:08, 44:29, 46:01, 46:15, 46:25, 47:01
- * Philistines is found in: 25:19, 47:01, 47:03
- * pillar, column is found in: 01:17, 27:19, 43:11, 52:17
- * pit is found in: 02:04, 18:18, 41:06, 48:42
- * plague is found in: 06:06, 14:10, 19:06, 21:06, 24:08, 27:08, 28:08, 32:24, 32:36, 34:17, 38:01, 42:15, 42:20, 44:13, 51:13
- * plead, pleading, plea is found in: 03:21, 05:26, 36:07, 36:25, 37:18, 38:24, 42:01, 51:36
- * plow is found in: 51:22
- * pomegranate is found in: 52:22
- * possess, possession is found in: 08:08, 12:07, 12:14, 30:01, 32:22, 35:08, 37:11, 49:01
- * power, powers is found in: 05:30, 10:06, 16:19, 18:21, 23:09, 34:01, 48:13, 49:34, 50:14, 51:15
- * praise is found in: 04:01, 13:08, 17:12, 20:12, 30:18, 31:07, 33:06, 51:41

- * pray, prayer is found in: 07:16, 11:14, 14:10, 29:12, 32:16, 37:03, 42:01, 42:20
- * precious is found in: 15:19, 20:05
- * prey, to prey on is found in: 12:07
- * priest, priesthood is found in: 01:01, 02:07, 02:26, 04:09, 05:30, 06:13, 08:01, 08:08, 13:12, 14:17, 18:18, 19:01, 20:01, 21:01, 23:11, 23:33, 26:07, 26:16, 27:16, 28:01, 28:05, 29:01, 31:13, 32:31, 33:17, 34:17, 37:03, 48:06, 49:03, 52:17
- * prince, princess is found in: 02:26, 17:24, 32:31, 43:04, 51:57
- * prison, prisoner, imprison is found in: 01:01, 32:01, 36:04, 37:03, 37:14, 37:18, 52:09, 52:24, 52:32
- * proclaim, proclamation is found in: 02:01, 03:03, 04:04, 04:19, 07:01, 07:08, 07:27, 09:07, 09:10, 11:06, 14:07, 15:15, 17:15, 18:05, 18:18, 19:01, 19:14, 20:07, 22:01, 23:21, 23:31, 25:01, 26:01, 26:13, 27:16, 27:19, 28:05, 29:30, 31:04, 34:06, 34:15, 35:12, 36:04, 36:07, 36:09, 37:01, 38:04, 43:01, 44:20, 46:15, 51:30
- * profane is found in: 19:04
- * profit, profitable is found in: 16:19, 22:17
- * promise is found in: 33:14
- * prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess is found in: 01:04, 02:07, 02:26, 04:09, 05:10, 05:30, 06:13, 07:24, 08:01, 08:08, 11:21, 13:12, 14:13, 18:18, 19:14, 20:01, 23:09, 23:16, 23:21, 23:28, 25:01, 25:12, 25:30, 26:04, 26:16, 27:09, 27:16, 28:05, 28:15, 29:01, 32:01, 32:31, 34:06, 35:15, 36:07, 36:25, 37:01, 37:03, 37:06, 37:11, 37:18, 38:07, 38:14, 42:01, 43:04, 44:04, 45:01, 46:01, 46:13, 47:01, 49:34, 50:01, 51:59
- * prosper, prosperity, prosperous is found in: 44:15
- * prostitute, harlot, whore is found in: 03:01, 05:07
- * proud, pride, prideful is found in: 09:23, 13:18, 48:26, 49:03, 49:16, 50:31
- * proverb is found in: 24:08
- * punish, punishment is found in: 02:18, 02:29, 05:07, 06:13, 08:11, 09:07, 09:25, 10:14, 11:21, 14:10, 17:09, 23:11, 23:33, 25:12, 25:27, 27:08, 29:30, 30:20, 31:18, 36:30, 44:13, 46:20, 46:25, 48:21, 49:07, 50:17, 50:27, 50:31, 51:17, 51:43, 51:47
- * pure, purify, purification is found in: 33:06
- * queen is found in: 13:18, 29:01, 44:15
- * quench is found in: 04:04, 21:11
- * Rabbah is found in: 49:01
- * Rachel is found in: 31:15
- * rage is found in: 07:29
- * raise, rise, risen, arise, arose is found in: 02:26, 06:01, 10:19, 13:22, 18:01, 21:03, 23:03, 23:05, 25:27, 29:15, 31:04, 33:17, 34:20, 41:01, 46:07, 49:28, 49:30, 50:03, 50:21, 50:31, 51:11, 51:63

- * **Ramah** is found in: 31:15, 40:01
- * **ransom** is found in: 31:10
- * **rebel, rebellious, rebellion** is found in: 04:16, 05:23, 28:15, 52:01
- * **rebuke** is found in: 02:18, 29:27
- * **receive** is found in: 05:01, 07:27, 32:33, 35:12
- * **redeem, redemption, redeemer** is found in: 15:19, 31:10
- * **Sea of Reeds, Red Sea** is found in: 49:21
- * **reed, reeds** is found in: 51:30
- * **reign** is found in: 01:01, 23:05, 26:01, 27:01, 28:01, 37:01, 49:34, 51:59, 52:01, 52:31
- * **reject** is found in: 02:35, 04:30, 06:16, 06:27, 07:29, 08:08, 14:19, 31:37, 33:23
- * **rejoice** is found in: 15:17, 31:12, 32:41, 33:10, 48:33, 49:23, 50:11, 51:47
- * **remnant** is found in: 23:03, 25:19, 31:07, 40:11, 40:15, 42:15, 43:04, 44:07, 44:26, 50:19, 50:25
- * **repent, repentance** is found in: 05:01, 08:04, 15:19, 18:11, 34:15
- * **report** is found in: 04:04, 05:20, 09:10, 10:21, 23:25, 23:37, 31:10, 36:13, 36:16, 36:20, 42:20, 46:13, 50:01, 50:27, 50:43, 51:27
- * **reproach** is found in: 15:15, 20:07, 44:07, 44:11, 51:50
- * **rest** is found in: 06:16, 27:09, 45:01, 50:33
- * **restore, restoration** is found in: 15:19, 24:04, 27:21, 30:01, 33:10, 48:46, 49:05, 50:19
- * **return** is found in: 04:01, 37:06
- * **reveal, revelation** is found in: 49:09, 50:35
- * **reward** is found in: 18:18
- * **righteous, righteousness** is found in: 03:11, 04:01, 09:23, 11:18, 12:01, 20:12, 22:01, 22:15, 23:05, 31:23, 33:14
- * **rod** is found in: 48:15
- * **royal** is found in: 10:06, 22:04, 41:01
- * **ruin, ruins** is found in: 04:07, 05:04, 06:06, 09:10, 10:21, 18:01, 19:06, 22:04, 25:17, 30:18, 32:43, 34:20, 38:22, 44:01, 44:04, 46:18, 48:03, 49:20, 50:45, 51:41
- * **ruler, rulers, rule** is found in: 05:30, 22:29, 28:12, 29:10, 51:27, 51:45
- * **run, running** is found in: 46:05
- * **Sabbath** is found in: 17:21
- * **sackcloth** is found in: 04:07, 06:25, 48:36, 49:03
- * **sacrifice, offering** is found in: 06:20, 07:21, 11:11, 14:10, 17:26, 18:15, 19:04, 32:33, 33:10, 41:04, 46:10, 48:34, 51:43

- * Salt Sea, Dead Sea is found in: 48:30
- * salvation is found in: 03:23
- * Samaria, Samaritan is found in: 23:13, 31:04, 41:04
- * Samuel is found in: 15:01
- * save, safe is found in: 02:26, 04:13, 07:08, 08:20, 11:11, 14:07, 15:19, 16:19, 30:10, 33:14, 42:11, 48:06, 51:05, 51:45
- * scribe, expert in the Jewish law is found in: 02:07, 08:08, 36:09, 36:11, 36:20, 36:25, 36:32, 37:14, 37:18
- * scroll is found in: 29:01, 30:01, 32:10, 32:43, 36:01, 36:04, 36:11, 36:13, 36:16, 36:20, 36:23, 36:25, 36:27, 36:32, 45:01, 51:59
- * seal, to seal is found in: 32:10
- * seed is found in: 02:20, 35:05, 35:08
- * seek, sought is found in: 08:01, 37:06
- * seize is found in: 13:20, 20:05, 34:01, 51:30, 51:41
- * send, send out, sent is found in: 01:07, 02:09, 03:01, 07:12, 07:24, 08:16, 09:15, 09:17, 10:11, 14:01, 15:01, 15:08, 16:16, 17:17, 19:14, 23:11, 23:21, 23:37, 24:04, 24:08, 25:03, 25:07, 25:15, 26:04, 27:01, 28:08, 29:01, 34:10, 35:15, 36:13, 36:20, 37:03, 37:06, 37:16, 38:14, 40:01, 40:13, 42:04, 42:20, 43:01, 44:04, 48:11, 49:14, 50:27, 51:01, 51:15, 51:38, 51:63
- * serpent, snake, viper is found in: 08:16, 46:20
- * servant, slave, slavery is found in: 02:14, 07:24, 14:01, 17:03, 21:06, 22:01, 25:03, 26:04, 27:05, 29:18, 30:10, 33:19, 34:08, 35:15, 36:23, 37:01, 37:18, 37:21, 43:08, 44:04, 46:25, 52:12
- * serve, service is found in: 02:20, 08:01, 15:19, 22:11, 25:10, 27:05, 27:14, 28:12, 30:08, 33:19, 35:18, 40:09, 52:17
- * set apart is found in: 01:04, 02:01, 12:03, 17:21
- * shadow is found in: 06:04, 48:45
- * shame, shameful, ashamed is found in: 02:26, 03:03, 06:13, 07:19, 08:08, 08:11, 09:19, 10:14, 11:11, 12:12, 13:25, 14:01, 15:08, 17:12, 17:17, 20:10, 20:16, 22:22, 23:37, 29:18, 31:18, 46:23, 48:13, 49:23, 50:01, 51:17, 51:47, 51:50
- * Sheba is found in: 06:20
- * Shechem is found in: 41:04
- * sheep, ram, ewe is found in: 12:03, 23:01, 25:34, 31:10, 50:17, 51:38
- * shepherd, to shepherd is found in: 02:07, 03:13, 06:01, 10:21, 12:10, 17:15, 22:22, 23:01, 25:34, 31:10, 33:12, 43:11, 49:19, 50:06, 50:44, 51:22
- * shield is found in: 46:07, 51:11
- * Shiloh is found in: 07:12, 26:04, 41:04

- * Sidon, Sidonians is found in: 25:22, 27:01, 47:03
- * siege, besiege is found in: 10:17, 19:06, 32:01, 32:24, 33:04, 39:01, 52:04
- * sign, proof, reminder is found in: 10:01, 44:29
- * silver is found in: 06:27, 32:08, 32:24, 32:43, 52:17
- * sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 02:01, 02:29, 03:23, 04:13, 05:23, 08:14, 14:07, 14:19, 15:13, 16:10, 16:16, 17:01, 18:21, 30:14, 31:33, 32:33, 36:01, 37:18, 40:03, 44:22, 50:06, 50:14, 50:19
- * skull is found in: 02:14
- * slander, slanderer is found in: 06:27, 09:04
- * slaughter is found in: 07:31, 12:03, 15:03, 19:06, 25:34, 31:01, 39:06, 41:06, 48:15, 50:27, 51:38, 51:47, 52:09
- * sleep, asleep, fall asleep is found in: 51:38, 51:57
- * snare, trap is found in: 05:26, 08:08, 18:21
- * snow is found in: 18:13
- * Sodom is found in: 23:13, 49:17, 50:38
- * Solomon is found in: 52:20
- * son, son of is found in: 02:09, 07:29, 19:04, 20:01, 29:01, 46:01, 48:46
- * sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft is found in: 27:09
- * sow, sower, plant is found in: 02:01, 04:01, 12:12, 31:27, 35:05, 50:16
- * spear is found in: 06:23, 46:01, 50:41
- * spirit, spiritual is found in: 51:11
- * staff is found in: 48:15
- * statute, statutes is found in: 32:10, 44:22
- * stiff-necked, stubborn is found in: 03:17, 05:23, 06:27, 07:24, 09:13, 11:06, 16:12, 17:21, 19:14, 23:16
- * stone, stoning is found in: 02:26, 51:63
- * storehouse is found in: 51:15
- * strength, strengthen is found in: 17:05
- * strife is found in: 50:33
- * stronghold, fortress, fortified is found in: 06:04, 16:19, 17:26, 30:18, 34:06, 48:01, 48:18, 48:40, 49:26, 51:52
- * stumble is found in: 06:20, 18:15, 46:05
- * stumbling block, stone of stumbling is found in: 06:20
- * suffer, suffering is found in: 06:06, 15:15, 31:16, 44:18

- * sword is found in: 02:29, 04:09, 05:10, 05:16, 06:25, 09:15, 11:21, 12:12, 14:10, 14:15, 14:17, 15:01, 16:01, 18:21, 19:06, 20:03, 21:06, 24:08, 25:15, 25:27, 25:30, 26:22, 27:08, 29:15, 31:01, 32:24, 32:36, 33:04, 34:04, 34:17, 38:01, 39:17, 41:01, 42:15, 42:20, 43:11, 44:11, 44:26, 46:10, 46:13, 46:15, 47:05, 48:01, 48:08, 49:37, 50:16, 50:21, 50:35, 51:50
- * tabernacle is found in: 04:19
- * Tarshish is found in: 10:08
- * temple is found in: 07:03, 17:12, 24:01, 43:11, 50:27, 51:11, 52:17
- * tent is found in: 04:19, 06:01, 10:19, 30:18, 35:05, 37:09, 49:28
- * terror, terrify is found in: 06:25, 08:14, 14:19, 17:17, 20:10, 30:10, 32:19, 46:05, 46:27, 48:38, 48:42, 49:05, 49:23, 50:35
- * test is found in: 06:27, 09:07, 17:09
- * testimony, testify is found in: 14:07
- * thief, thieves, robber is found in: 02:26, 48:26, 49:09
- * thresh, threshing is found in: 51:33
- * throne is found in: 01:15, 03:17, 13:12, 14:21, 17:12, 17:24, 22:01, 22:04, 22:29, 29:15, 33:17, 36:30, 43:08, 49:37
- * time is found in: 02:01, 08:06, 46:20
- * tomb, grave, burial place is found in: 05:16, 08:01, 20:16, 26:22
- * tongue is found in: 09:01, 23:31
- * torment is found in: 30:20
- * transgress, transgression is found in: 02:07, 03:13, 05:04, 34:17
- * tremble is found in: 05:20, 33:06
- * tribe is found in: 01:15, 10:14, 51:17
- * trouble, troubles, troubled is found in: 02:26, 20:16, 49:23
- * true, truth, come true is found in: 02:20, 04:01, 07:27, 09:04, 10:08, 14:13, 23:28, 28:08, 37:14, 39:15, 42:04, 44:26, 45:04, 50:06
- * trumpet is found in: 04:04, 04:19, 06:01, 06:16, 42:13, 51:27
- * trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness is found in: 05:16, 07:03, 07:08, 09:04, 12:05, 13:25, 17:05, 39:17, 46:25, 48:06, 48:13, 49:03, 49:09
- * turn, turn away, turn back is found in: 02:35, 03:19, 04:07, 06:06, 08:04, 11:09, 12:10, 15:05, 17:05, 17:12, 18:05, 18:18, 21:03, 22:06, 23:13, 23:21, 24:04, 25:05, 26:01, 26:04, 31:18, 32:33, 32:38, 34:15, 35:15, 36:01, 42:07, 44:04, 49:07, 49:30, 50:06, 50:16, 51:34
- * Tyre, Tyrians is found in: 25:22, 27:01, 47:03
- * uncircumcised, uncircumcision is found in: 06:09, 09:25

- * **unclean** is found in: 03:01, 19:12
- * **understand, understanding** is found in: 02:23, 04:21, 05:14, 09:10, 49:07
- * **unfaithful, unfaithfulness** is found in: 09:07
- * **unjust, unjustly, injustice** is found in: 17:09, 22:13
- * **unprofitable** is found in: 02:07
- * **unrighteous, unrighteousness** is found in: 22:13
- * **vain, vanity** is found in: 02:29
- * **veil** is found in: 02:32
- * **vine** is found in: 02:20, 05:10, 06:09, 08:11, 48:30
- * **vineyard** is found in: 05:10, 12:10, 31:04, 32:13, 35:05, 39:08, 52:15
- * **virgin** is found in: 02:32, 14:17, 18:13, 31:04, 31:13, 31:21, 46:11, 51:22
- * **vision** is found in: 14:13, 23:16, 24:01
- * **voice** is found in: 03:13, 03:23, 04:13, 07:21, 08:18, 09:13, 10:11, 11:03, 12:07, 16:07, 18:09, 22:20, 25:10, 25:30, 26:13, 30:04, 31:15, 32:22, 35:08, 40:03, 42:04, 42:13, 42:20, 43:04, 44:22, 51:54
- * **vow** is found in: 44:24
- * **walk** is found in: 02:07, 03:17, 07:05, 08:01, 09:04, 09:13, 11:06, 13:08, 16:12, 18:15, 23:13, 23:16, 25:05, 26:04, 35:15, 44:09
- * **warrior, soldier** is found in: 09:23, 20:10, 51:11, 51:30, 51:54
- * **waste, wasteland** is found in: 48:08, 49:32, 51:29, 51:61
- * **watch, watchman** is found in: 01:11, 06:16, 31:04, 48:18
- * **watchtower, tower** is found in: 31:38
- * **water, waters** is found in: 02:12, 10:11, 14:01, 15:17, 17:07, 46:07, 47:01, 48:34, 50:38, 51:15, 51:36, 51:54
- * **well, cistern** is found in: 02:12, 06:06
- * **wheat** is found in: 12:12, 41:08
- * **wine, wineskin, new wine** is found in: 13:12, 23:09, 25:15, 31:12, 35:01, 40:09, 40:11, 48:11, 48:33, 51:07
- * **winepress** is found in: 48:33
- * **winnow, sift** is found in: 04:11, 15:05
- * **wise, wisdom** is found in: 08:08, 09:10, 09:23, 10:06, 18:18, 32:19, 49:07, 50:35, 51:15
- * **witness, eyewitness** is found in: 06:16, 11:18, 29:22, 32:10, 32:24, 32:43, 42:04, 42:18
- * **woe** is found in: 04:30, 10:19, 13:25, 15:10, 22:13, 23:01, 30:06, 34:04, 45:01, 47:05, 48:01, 48:15, 48:46, 50:27

- * **womb** is found in: 01:04, 20:16
- * **word** is found in: 01:01, 01:09, 02:29, 03:11, 07:01, 07:03, 10:01, 11:01, 13:12, 14:17, 15:15, 16:10, 18:18, 19:01, 19:14, 20:01, 21:01, 23:09, 23:16, 23:21, 23:35, 25:01, 25:30, 26:01, 27:01, 28:08, 29:01, 30:01, 32:01, 35:01, 36:01, 36:11, 36:13, 36:16, 36:20, 36:23, 36:27, 36:32, 37:16, 38:01, 38:14, 38:24, 39:15, 40:01, 44:01, 44:15, 44:24, 45:01, 46:13, 51:59
- * **word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture** is found in: 01:01, 01:11, 02:01, 02:04, 02:29, 05:14, 06:09, 06:16, 07:01, 08:08, 09:19, 11:09, 13:01, 14:01, 16:01, 17:15, 17:19, 18:01, 18:05, 20:07, 21:11, 22:01, 22:29, 23:28, 24:04, 25:03, 27:16, 28:12, 29:10, 29:18, 31:10, 32:06, 32:26, 33:01, 33:19, 34:01, 35:12, 36:01, 36:04, 36:07, 36:27, 37:01, 37:06, 39:15, 42:07, 42:15, 43:01, 46:01, 47:01, 49:34, 50:01
- * **works, deeds, work, acts** is found in: 03:23, 04:04, 04:16, 10:14, 11:18, 12:12, 14:04, 17:09, 17:21, 22:13, 22:22, 25:05, 25:12, 32:19, 35:15, 44:07, 48:08, 48:30, 50:25, 51:09, 51:17, 52:15
- * **worship** is found in: 01:15, 05:18, 07:01, 08:01, 11:09, 13:08, 16:10, 19:12, 22:08, 25:05, 26:01, 30:08, 32:29, 35:15, 44:01, 44:24
- * **worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless** is found in: 08:18, 10:03, 50:38
- * **wrath, fury** is found in: 04:23, 06:11, 07:19, 15:13, 17:03, 18:18, 21:03, 23:19, 25:37, 30:23, 32:31, 32:36, 33:04, 36:07, 42:18, 44:04, 49:37, 51:45
- * **written** is found in: 25:12, 51:59
- * **wrong, mistreat, hurt** is found in: 08:20
- * **Yahweh** is found in: 01:07, 02:01, 02:35, 03:01, 04:01, 05:01, 05:10, 05:18, 05:23, 06:11, 06:16, 06:20, 06:27, 07:01, 07:03, 07:08, 08:01, 08:06, 10:01, 11:01, 12:01, 12:12, 13:01, 14:07, 15:01, 15:10, 15:15, 15:19, 16:05, 16:14, 17:05, 17:19, 18:11, 18:13, 18:21, 19:01, 20:03, 20:10, 21:01, 22:01, 22:08, 22:15, 23:01, 24:01, 24:08, 25:03, 25:27, 25:34, 26:01, 26:10, 27:01, 27:14, 28:05, 28:15, 29:08, 30:01, 30:10, 30:18, 31:01, 31:12, 31:35, 32:01, 32:36, 32:43, 33:01, 33:14, 34:01, 34:08, 34:17, 35:01, 35:17, 36:01, 36:07, 36:09, 36:11, 36:25, 36:30, 37:03, 37:06, 37:09, 37:16, 38:01, 38:14, 40:01, 42:01, 43:01, 44:07, 44:15, 44:24, 45:01, 46:05, 46:13, 46:15, 46:23, 47:05, 48:08, 48:11, 48:21, 48:26, 48:40, 49:01, 49:05, 49:12, 49:14, 49:17, 49:20, 49:28, 49:30, 49:32, 50:08, 50:23, 50:45, 51:01, 51:09, 51:29, 51:36, 51:47, 51:61, 52:01
- * **Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host** is found in: 02:18, 05:14, 06:06, 06:09, 07:03, 07:21, 08:01, 09:07, 09:15, 09:17, 10:14, 11:17, 15:15, 16:07, 19:01, 19:10, 20:12, 23:13, 23:35, 25:07, 25:27, 26:18, 27:01, 27:16, 28:01, 28:12, 29:04, 30:08, 31:23, 31:35, 32:13, 33:10, 35:12, 35:17, 38:17, 39:15, 42:15, 43:08, 44:01, 44:07, 44:11, 44:24, 46:10, 46:18, 46:25, 48:01, 48:15, 49:05, 49:26, 49:34, 50:17, 50:31, 50:33, 51:05, 51:17, 51:33, 51:57
- * **yoke** is found in: 02:20, 05:04, 27:01, 27:08, 28:01, 28:10, 30:08
- * **Zedekiah** is found in: 01:01, 21:01, 24:08, 27:01, 27:12, 28:01, 29:01, 29:20, 32:01, 34:01, 37:01, 37:03, 37:16, 37:18, 37:21, 38:04, 38:14, 38:24, 39:01, 44:29, 49:34, 51:59, 52:01
- * **Zephaniah** is found in: 21:01, 29:24, 29:27, 37:03, 52:24

* Zion, Mount Zion is found in: 03:13, 04:04, 04:30, 06:01, 08:18, 09:19, 14:19, 26:18, 30:16, 31:04, 31:12, 50:03, 50:27, 51:09, 51:24, 51:34

Jeremiah 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 1:4-10, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Jeremiah appointed as prophet

God chose Jeremiah to be his prophet and although many powerful people would be against him, God promised to protect him. This chapter emphasizes that Jeremiah was chosen by God to be his prophet. (See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [chosen one](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [the elect](#) and [promise](#))

Northern kingdoms

This was not a reference to the northern kingdom of Israel; it had already been conquered. It a reference to kingdom located north of Judah. Babylon would come to conquer Judah and it was located to the north.

Opposition

The people were supposed to listen to God's prophet. When he prophesied, they should have repented. Instead, they persecuted Jeremiah. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

Jeremiah 1:1-3

UDB:

¹ This is the message of Jeremiah son of Hilkiyah, who wrote this. He was a priest, from the town of Anathoth in the area where the tribe of Benjamin lives. ² Yahweh started to give him these messages when Josiah had been ruling Judah for almost thirteen years. ³ Yahweh continued to give him messages when Josiah's son Jehoiakim was the king, and he continued to do that until Zedekiah had been the king of Judah for almost eleven years. It was in the fifth month of that year that the people of Jerusalem were exiled to Babylonia.

ULB:

1 ¹ This is the word of Jeremiah son of Hilkiyah; he was one of the priests at Anathoth in the land of Benjamin. ² The word of Yahweh came to him in the days of Josiah son of Amon, king of Judah, in the thirteenth year of his reign. ³ It also came in the days of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah, until the fifth month of the eleventh year of Zedekiah son of Josiah, king of Judah, when the people of Jerusalem were taken away as prisoners.

translationWords:

- word
- Jeremiah
- priest, priesthood
- Benjamin
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- biblical time: day
- Josiah
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- biblical time: year
- reign
- Jehoiakim
- Zedekiah
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Jerusalem
- prison, prisoner, imprison

translationNotes:

- **Hilkiyah ... Amon** - men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Anathoth** - name of a town (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **The word of Yahweh came** - This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. AT: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Yahweh** - This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.
- **came to him** - “came to Jeremiah”
- **the thirteenth ... the eleventh** - (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **his reign** - “Josiah’s reign”
- **It also came** - “The word of Yahweh also came”
- **the fifth month** - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **of Zedekiah** - “of the reign of Zedekiah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 1:4-6

UDB:

⁴ One day Yahweh gave me this message,

⁵ "I knew you before I finished forming you in your mother's womb.

I set you apart for my honor before you were born,

and I appointed you to be my prophet for all the nations."

⁶ I replied, "O, Yahweh my God, do you not see that I am not qualified to speak for you? I am very young!"

ULB:

⁴ The word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

⁵ "Before I formed you in the womb, I chose you;

before you came out from the womb I set you apart; I made you a prophet to the nations." ⁶ "Ah, Lord Yahweh!" I said, "I do not know how to speak, for I am too young."

translationWords:

- [womb](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [nation](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **came to me** - "came to Jeremiah"
- **formed** - "developed" or "shaped"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 1:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Yahweh replied, "Do not say that you are too young, because you must go to everyone to whom I will send you, and you must tell them everything that I tell you to say. ⁸ And you must not be afraid of the people to whom you will speak, because I will protect you from being harmed by them. This will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it!"

ULB:

⁷ But Yahweh said to me,

"Do not say, 'I am too young.' You must go everywhere I send you,
and you must say whatever I command you!

⁸ Do not be afraid of them, for I am with you to rescue you—this is Yahweh's declaration."

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh's declaration** - "what Yahweh has declared" or "what Yahweh has said"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 1:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Then it was as though Yahweh touched my mouth and said, "Listen to me! I have put my message into your mouth. ¹⁰ Today I am appointing you to warn nations and kingdoms. You will tell them that I will completely destroy and get rid of some of them and that I will establish others and cause them to be prosperous."

ULB:

⁹ Then Yahweh reached out with his hand, touched my mouth, and said to me, "Now, I have placed my word in your mouth.

¹⁰ I am appointing you today over nations and over kingdoms,
to uproot and break down, to destroy and overthrow, to build and plant."

translationWords:

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [word](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [nation](#)
- [kingdom](#)

translationNotes:

- **placed my word in your mouth** - AT: "given you my message for you to speak to the people." (See: [Idiom](#))
- **uproot** - pull a plant all the way out of the ground, the opposite of "plant"
- **break down** - the opposite of "build"
- **destroy and overthrow** - Jeremiah uses these words, which mean almost the same thing, to show that this will certainly happen. (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 1:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Then Yahweh showed something to me, and said, “Jeremiah, what do you see?”

I replied, “I see a branch from an almond tree.”

¹² Yahweh said, “That is correct. And because the word for ‘almond’ resembles the word for ‘watching’, it means that I am watching what will happen, and I will make certain that what I have said to you about destroying nations will happen.”

ULB:

¹¹ The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, “What do you see, Jeremiah?” I said, “I see an almond branch.” ¹² Yahweh said to me, “You have seen well, for I am watching over my word to carry it out.”

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [watch, watchman](#)

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **I see an almond branch** - Yahweh shows Jeremiah a spiritual vision.
- **almond** - a nut tree (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **for I am watching over my word** - The Hebrew words for “almond” and “watch over” sound almost the same. God wants Jeremiah to remember that God wants his word to succeed every time he sees an almond branch.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 1:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Then Yahweh spoke to me again and said, “What do you see now?”

I replied, “I see a pot full of boiling water. It is in the north, tipping toward me.”

¹⁴ Yahweh replied, “Yes! It means that from the north great trouble will spread over this land, like boiling water pouring from a pot.

ULB:

¹³ The word of Yahweh came to me a second time and said, “What do you see?” I said, “I see a heated pot, whose surface is churning, tipping away from the north.” ¹⁴ Yahweh said to me, “Disaster will be opened up out of the north on all who live in this land.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 1:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Listen to what I say:

I am summoning the armies of the kingdoms that are north of Judah to come to Jerusalem.

Their kings will set up their thrones at the gates of this city to indicate that they are now the kings of Judah.

Their armies will attack and break down the walls of this city, and they will do the same thing to all the other towns in Judah.

¹⁶ I will punish my people because of all the evil things that they have done; they have abandoned me and they offer offerings of worship to false gods.

They worship idols that they have made with their own hands!

ULB:

¹⁵ For I am calling all the tribes of the northern kingdoms, declares Yahweh. They will come, and everyone will set his throne at the entrance of the gates of Jerusalem, against all the walls that surround it, and against all the cities of Judah. ¹⁶ I will pronounce sentence against them for all their evil in forsaking me, in burning incense to other gods, and in worshipping what they made with their own hands.

translationWords:

- call, calling, called, call out
- tribe
- throne
- gate, gate bar
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- incense
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- worship

translationNotes:

- **everyone** - the leaders of all those northern kingdoms (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **will set his throne at the entrance of the gates** - AT: “will sit in judgment at the entrance to the city”
- **pronounce sentence against them** - “announce how I will punish them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 1:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ So, get up and put on your clothes to get ready for action! Then go to the people of Judah and tell them everything that I tell you to say. Do not be afraid of them, because if you are afraid of them, I will punish you as an example right in front of them! ¹⁸ But listen! I will cause you to be strong, like a city that has strong walls around it. You will be as strong as an iron pillar or a bronze wall. Neither the royal officials or priests nor the general populace will be able to defeat you. ¹⁹ They will oppose you, but they will not be able to defeat you, because I will be with you and will protect you. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it!”

ULB:

¹⁷ Get yourself ready! Stand up and say to them whatever I command you. Do not be shattered before them, or I will shatter you before them! ¹⁸ See! Today I have made you a fortified city, an iron pillar, and bronze walls against the whole land—against the kings of Judah, its officials, its priests, and the people of the land. ¹⁹ They will fight against you, but they will not defeat you, for I will be with you to rescue you—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [bronze](#)

translationNotes:

- **Do not be shattered ... I will shatter** - “Do not be extremely frightened ... I will extremely frighten” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **shatter** - break into small pieces
- **See!** - “Pay attention!”
- **iron ... bronze** - the strongest materials known in those days (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 2:1-31, which is an extended quotation.

The prophecy revealed to Jeremiah is recorded in 2:1-3:5. Despite covering more than one chapter, this should be seen as one unit. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [reveal, revelation](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

The people refuse to learn

The people worshiped other gods, particularly the fertility gods of Baal and Ashtoreth. Even when the nation was punished, the people did not learn. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Israel is compared to a female camel or a wild donkey for being unstable and lustful. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 02:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 2:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message ² to proclaim to everyone in Jerusalem. He said that I should tell them this,

”I, Yahweh, remember in your favor that you followed me and trusted in our covenant long ago.

You tried to please me like a bride tries to please her husband;
You loved me,
and you followed me through the desert.

³ At that time you Israelites were set apart to me;
you belonged to me like the first part of the harvests belong to me.
I promised to punish all those who harmed you, my people,
and send disasters on them.
This is the way it will always be since I, Yahweh, said that it would happen.”

ULB:

² ¹ The word of Yahweh came to me and said,

² ”Go and proclaim in the ears of Jerusalem. Say, ’Yahweh says this:
I have called to mind on your behalf the covenant faithfulness in your youthfulness, your love at the time when we were engaged,
when you went after me in the wilderness, the land that was not sown.

³ Israel was set apart to Yahweh, the firstfruits of his harvest!
All who ate from the firstfruits were held guilty; disaster came upon them—
this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- proclaim, proclamation
- Jerusalem
- Yahweh
- mind
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

- love
- time
- desert, wilderness
- sow, sower, plant
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- set apart
- firstfruits
- harvest
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **to me** - to Jeremiah
- **Go and proclaim in the ears of Jerusalem** - AT: “Go and speak to the people in Jerusalem” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **on your behalf** - “for your benefit” or “in your interest”
- **when we were engaged** - “when we first agreed that we would marry each other,” when the Israelites loved him and were loyal to him (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the land that was not sown** - AT: “the land where no one has sown seed” or “the land where no food was growing”
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ Listen to what Yahweh says, descendants of Jacob, all you people of Israel. You must listen to what Yahweh says.

⁵ He says,

”What sin did I commit that caused your ancestors to turn far away from me?

They worshiped worthless idols,

and they themselves became worthless.

⁶ They had no need to say, ’Yahweh is no longer able to help us, even though it was he who brought us safely out of Egypt

and led us through a desert plain

where there were a lot of pits.

It was Yahweh who led us where there was no water and where it was very dangerous,

through a land where no one lives or even travels.

But Yahweh is useless for us now.’

ULB:

⁴ Hear the word of Yahweh, house of Jacob and every family in the house of Israel.

⁵ Yahweh says this, ”What did your fathers find wrong with me, that they went far from following me?

That they went after useless idols and became useless themselves?

⁶ They did not say, ’Where is Yahweh, who brought us up from the land of Egypt?

Where is Yahweh, who led us to the wilderness, into the land of the Arabah and pits,

in a land of drought and deep darkness,

a land through which no one passes and where no one lives?’

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- house
- Jacob, Israel
- family
- ancestor, father, forefather
- idol, idolatrous
- Egypt, Egyptian
- desert, wilderness
- Arabah
- pit
- darkness
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **house of Jacob and every family in the house of Israel** - These two phrases mean the same thing and are combined for emphasis. AT: “all you descendants of Jacob” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **What did your fathers find wrong with me, that they went far from following me? That they went after useless idols and became useless themselves?** - AT: “I did nothing wrong to your forefathers, so they have offended me by no longer obeying me and by starting to worship useless idols and becoming useless themselves!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **useless** - “worthless”
- **Where is Yahweh, who brought us ... Egypt? Where is Yahweh, who led us ... lives?** - “We should learn what Yahweh wants us to do. He is the one who brought us ... Egypt, and he is the one who led us ... lives.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ But when I, Yahweh, brought you into a very fertile land,

in order that you could enjoy all the fruit and other good things that
you would harvest,

you caused the land that I promised to give to you to be unfit for me

and to become disgusting to me.

⁸ Your priests also did not ask

if I was still with them.

Those who teach God's laws are not faithful to me themselves!

And your leaders have rebelled against me.

Your prophets gave you messages from their god Baal,

and they worship worthless idols.

ULB:

⁷ But I brought you to the land of Carmel, to eat its fruit and other good things!

Yet when you came, you defiled my land, you made my inheritance an abomination!

⁸ The priest did not say, 'Where is Yahweh?' and the experts in the law did not care about me!

The shepherds transgressed against me. The prophets prophesied for Baal and walked after unprofitable things.

translationWords:

- Carmel, Mount Carmel
- fruit, fruitful
- defile, be defiled
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- abomination, abominable
- priest, priesthood
- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- shepherd, to shepherd

- [transgress, transgression](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [walk](#)
- [unprofitable](#)

translationNotes:

- **Yet when you came, you defiled my land, you made my inheritance an abomination!** - AT: "There you sinned and made the land I gave you filthy!" (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **The priest did not say, 'Where is Yahweh?' and the experts in the law did not care about me!** - AT: The priests and other religious leaders did not want to know me." (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Where is Yahweh?** - "We need to obey Yahweh!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **The shepherds transgressed against me** - "Their leaders sinned against me"
- **shepherds** - "leaders"
- **and walked after unprofitable things.** - AT: and prayed to gods that could not help them"
- **walked after** - "obeyed" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ So I, Yahweh, will accuse you in court.

In future years, I will also bring your children and your grandchildren to trial!

That will happen because I, Yahweh, have said that it will happen.

¹⁰ If you go west to the island of Cyprus,

or if you go east to Kedar land,

and if you ask people in those places,

they will tell you that no people from their countries have ever done the wicked things that you people have done!

¹¹ No people of any nation have ever abandoned their gods that they thought were glorious

and started to worship gods that are not really gods,

but you people have abandoned me, your glorious God,

and are worshiping gods that are useless.

ULB:

⁹ So I will still accuse you—this is Yahweh’s declaration—and I will accuse your sons’ sons.

¹⁰ For cross over to the coasts of Kittim and look. Send messengers out to Kedar and find out

and see if there has ever before been anything like this.

¹¹ Has a nation exchanged gods, even though they were not gods?

But my people have exchanged their glory for what cannot help them.

[1]Instead of *their glory*, some ancient copies have *my glory*.

translationWords:

- accuse, accusation, accuser
- son, son of
- send, send out, sent
- messenger

- nation
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- people of God, my people
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- **So I will still accuse you** - “Therefore, I will still accuse the house of Israel” ((See: [Forms of You](#))
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how this is translated in [1:8](#)
- **your sons’ sons** - “your future generations”
- **cross over to the coasts of Kittim** - “travel across the ocean and to the island of Kittim” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Kittim** - Cyprus (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Kedar** - a land far to the east of Israel (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Has a nation exchanged gods ... gods?** - “You will see that no nation has ever exchanged ... gods.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **their glory** - This expression refers to God himself, who was the “glory” of the people of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **what cannot help them** - “gods who cannot help them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2:12-13**UDB:**

¹² It is as though everything in the sky is dismayed about what you have done;

it is as though they tremble and are very horrified. I, Yahweh, see and declare this to you.

¹³ You, my people, have done two evil things:

you have rejected me, the one who is like a fountain where you can obtain fresh water,

and you are worshiping gods that are like pits in the ground

that are cracked and which are not able to hold any water.

ULB:

¹² Shudder, heavens, because of this! Be shocked and horrified—this is Yahweh's declaration.

¹³ For my people have committed two evils against me: They have abandoned the springs of living waters by digging out cisterns for themselves, broken cisterns that cannot hold water!

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- horror, horrified
- commit, committed, commitment
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- fountain, spring
- well, cistern
- water, waters

translationNotes:

- **Shudder, heavens, because of this! Be shocked and horrified** - The speaker is turning and talking to the heaven as if it were a person. (See: [Apostrophe](#))
- **abandoned the springs** - AT: "abandoned me, their spring" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **by digging out cisterns for themselves** - Idols are compared to broken cisterns. AT: by worshiping useless gods” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **cisterns** - “deep hole for storing water”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2:14-17**UDB:**

¹⁴ You Israelite people, you were certainly not slaves when you were born;

so why were you captured by your enemies?

¹⁵ Your enemies roared like lions,

and they destroyed your land.

Now your towns have been burned,

and no one lives in them.

¹⁶ Soldiers from Memphis and Tahpenes, cities in Egypt, have defeated you

and shaved your heads to show that you are their slaves.

¹⁷ But it is because you abandoned me, Yahweh your God,

that these disasters have happened to you, since I had been leading
you to safety.

ULB:

¹⁴ Is Israel a slave? Was he not born at home? So why has he become plunder?

¹⁵ Young lions roared against him. They made a lot of noise and made his land a horror.

His cities are destroyed without any inhabitants.

¹⁶ Also, the people of Memphis and Tahpanhes will shave your skull.

¹⁷ Did you not do this to yourselves

when you abandoned Yahweh your God, while he was leading you along the way?

translationWords:

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- servant, slave, slavery
- lion
- skull
- God

translationNotes:

- **Is Israel a slave? Was he not born at home? So why has he become plunder?** - AT: “You people of Israel were not born slaves; but now you have been plundered by your enemies.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **why has he become plunder?** - AT: “Everything you owned has been taken by force?”
- **Young lions roared against him. They made a lot of noise and made his land a horror. His cities are destroyed without any inhabitants.** - AT: “Your enemies attacked you roaring like young lions. They destroyed your land and burned your towns so that no one can live in them.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **Young lions roared** - A roar is a loud sound made by a wild animal.
- **inhabitants** - people who live in a certain place
- **Memphis and Tahpanhes** - cities in Egypt (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **will shave your skull** - The Egyptians shaved the head of their slaves to mark them as slaves.
- **will shave your skull** - The Hebrew text is interpreted by some modern versions as “have cracked your skull.”
- **Did you not do this to yourselves when you abandoned Yahweh your God, while he was leading you along the way?** - AT: “You cause this yourselves by abandoning Yahweh your God, while he was leading you along the way.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ So why are you trying to make an alliance with the rulers of Egypt who live near the Shihor?

Why are you trying to make an alliance with the rulers of Assyria who live near the Euphrates River?

¹⁹ It is because you have been very wicked that I will punish you.

It is because you have turned away from me that I will condemn you.

When I do that, you will realize that bitter and evil things will happen to you because you have forsaken me, Yahweh, your God,

and you no longer have an awesome respect for me.

That will certainly happen because I, the Lord, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies in heaven, have said it.

ULB:

¹⁸ So now, why take the road to Egypt and drink the waters of Shihor?

Why take the road to Assyria and drink the waters of the Euphrates River?

¹⁹ Your wickedness rebukes you, and your faithlessness punishes you. So think about it; understand that it is wicked and bitter

for you to abandon me, Yahweh your God, and to dread me no more—this is the declaration of Yahweh the Lord of hosts.

translationWords:

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Euphrates River
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- rebuke
- faithless, faithlessness
- punish, punishment
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host

translationNotes:

- **So now, why take the road to Egypt and drink the waters of Shihor? Why take the road to Assyria and drink the waters of the Euphrates River?** - AT: "You should not travel to Shihor to make an alliance with the rulers of Egypt. You should not travel to the Euphrates River to make an alliance with Assyria! (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Shihor** - the southwestern boundary of Canaan, a dry river bed
- **Your wickedness rebukes you, and your faithlessness punishes you.** - Both of these phrases mean that their punishment is the result of their wicked behavior. AT: "Because you have been wicked and unfaithful, I will punish you." (See: [Personification](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **it is wicked and bitter** - Here the word "bitter" describes "wicked." AT: "it is bitterly wicked" or "it is extremely wicked." (See: [Hendiadys](#))
- **dread** - great fear

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ Long ago, you stopped obeying me and you would not allow me to lead you.

You refused to worship me, even though I saved you from being slaves.

Instead, you worship idols that are under trees on the top of every hill.

You love and worship those idols instead of me just like an unfaithful man loves a prostitute instead of his wife.

²¹ It is as though you were a grapevine that I planted when it was a cutting from a very good vine.

So now it is disgusting that you have become like a rotten worthless vine.

²² Your guilt from your sins is like very bad stains on a cloth, and you cannot get rid of those stains even by using very strong soap.

This is true because I, Yahweh, have said it.

ULB:

²⁰ For I broke your yoke that you had in ancient days; I tore your fetters off you. Still you said,

‘I will not serve!’ since you bowed down on every high hill and beneath every leafy tree, you adulterer.

²¹ But I myself had planted you as a choice vine, a completely true seed.

Yet how you have changed toward me, a disloyal one from a foreign vine!

²² For even if you clean yourself in the river or wash with strong soap, your iniquity is a stain before me—this is the declaration the Lord Yahweh.

translationWords:

- yoke
- serve, service
- bow, bow down
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- vine
- true, truth, come true

- [seed](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [clean, cleanse](#)
- [iniquity](#)

translationNotes:

- **For I broke your yoke that you had in ancient days; I tore your fetters off you. Still you said, ‘I will not serve!’** - AT: “Long ago I released you from slavery, but still you refused to worship me!” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **since you bowed down on every high hill and beneath every leafy tree, you adulterer** - “You bowed down to idols and worshiped them like an adulterous wife treats her husband” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **fetters** - chains used to restrain a person or an animal
- **beneath** - below
- **But I myself had planted you as a choice vine, a completely true seed.** - AT: ” I, Yahweh, started you with a very good beginning.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **planted** - to place in the ground to grow
- **a disloyal one from a foreign vine!** - AT: “you have become like a rotten, worthless vine.”
- **disloyal** - traitorous, faithless
- **your iniquity is a stain** - AT: “you are still guilty of sinning” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **stain** - in this usage stain represents the constant reminder of Israel’s sin
- **the declaration the Lord Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2:23-25**UDB:**

²³ You say that you have not sinned.

You claim to be acceptable to God

and that you have not worshiped the images of Baal.

But think about the disgusting things that you do very eagerly in Hinnom Valley outside Jerusalem.

You are like desperate female camels, running here and there to find male camels to sleep with.

²⁴ You are like wild female donkeys in the desert.

They sniff the air to find where the male donkeys are,

and no one can restrain them.

The male donkeys that want them do not tire themselves out searching for them,

because at mating time they find them easily.

²⁵ You constantly run here and there to find idols to worship, with the result that your sandals are worn out,

and your throats have become dry.

I told you to stop doing that but you said that you could not stop,

and you said that you loved those foreign gods

and had to worship them!

ULB:

²³ How can you say, 'I am not defiled! I have not walked after the Baals?'

Look at your behavior in the valleys! Understand what you have done, you swift camel running its own way!

²⁴ You are a wild donkey, accustomed to the wilderness, longing for life and panting after the useless wind!

Who turns her around when she is in heat? Anyone seeking her does not tire himself. They go out to her in her month of heat.

²⁵ You must restrain your feet from becoming bare and your throat from being thirsty!

But you have said, 'It is hopeless! No, I love strangers and go after them!'

translationWords:

- defile, be defiled
- Baal
- understand, understanding
- camel
- donkey, mule
- desert, wilderness
- love

translationNotes:

- **walked after** - "worshipped"
- **Look at your behavior in the valleys! Understand what you have done, you swift camel running its own way!** - AT: "You must look at the things you have done in the valleys outside of Jerusalem. You run back and forth chasing this and that like a swift young camel who does not know where she is going." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **swift** - "fast" or "quick"
- **You are a wild donkey, accustomed to the wilderness, longing for life and panting after the useless wind! Who turns her around when she is in heat? Anyone seeking her does not tire himself. They go out to her in her month of heat.** - AT: "You are like a young female donkey, living in the desert. When she is in heat she is out of control and constantly sniffs the breeze to find a mate. The male donkeys do not even chase after her because she will come to them." (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **longing** - "strong desire for"
- **panting** - breathing hard and quick
- **You must restrain your feet from becoming bare and your throat from being thirsty! But you have said, 'It is hopeless! No, I love strangers and go after them!'** - AT: "I have told you to stop running here and there chasing after false gods, because all that it does is wear out your sandals and make you very thirsty. But you say to me, 'We cannot stop ourselves. We must follow after these Baals and worship them!'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **thirsty** - in need of water
- **strangers** - people we have not met before

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 02 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 2:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ A robber is disgraced when he is caught.

And all of you, including your kings and priests and prophets, are similarly disgraced.

²⁷ You call a piece of wood that is carved to become a sacred idol, your ‘father,’

and you call a stone that you have set up, your ‘mother.’

You have rejected me

but when you experience troubles,

you call for me to rescue you!

²⁸ Why do you not shout to the gods that you made?

Why do you not plead with them to rescue you

when you experience disasters?

For you have as many gods as you have cities and towns in Judah!

ULB:

²⁶ Like the shame of a thief when he is found, so the house of Israel will be ashamed—

they, their kings, their princes, and their priests and prophets!

²⁷ These are the ones who say to the tree, ‘You are my father,’ and to the stone, ‘You gave birth to me.’

For their back faces me and not their faces. Nevertheless, they say in the time of troubles, ‘Arise and save us!’

²⁸ Yet where are the gods that you made for yourselves? Let them arise if they wish to save you in your time of troubles,

for your idols equal your cities in number, Judah!

translationWords:

- shame, shameful, ashamed

- thief, thieves, robber
- house
- king
- prince, princess
- priest, priesthood
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- ancestor, father, forefather
- stone, stoning
- face
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- save, safe
- idol, idolatrous
- Judah, kingdom of Judah

translationNotes:

- **when he is found** - “when he is caught”
- **they** - “the people”
- **These are the ones who say to the tree, ‘You are my father,’ and to the stone, ‘You gave birth to me.’** - AT: “These people are the ones who say to a carved piece of wood, “You are my father,” and to a carved stone, “You gave birth to me.” ” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **their back faces me and not their faces** - AT: “they turn away and do not worship me” or “they turn so I see only their backs, not their faces” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Arise and save us!** - AT: “Yahweh come and save us.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2:29-31**UDB:**

²⁹ You complain that it was wrong for me not to have rescued you,
 but you have all rebelled against me, Yahweh, the one who is speak-
 ing to you right now.

³⁰ I punished some of you,
 but you did not learn anything from my doing that.
 Instead you have killed many of the prophets that I sent to you,
 like fierce lions kill other animals.

³¹ You people of Israel, pay attention to what I say.
 I have certainly never abandoned you in a desert;
 I have never left you in a very dark land.
 So, why do you, my people, say that you are free from my control
 and that you will not return to worship me anymore?

ULB:

²⁹ So why do you accuse me of doing wrong? All of you have sinned against
 me—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

³⁰ I have punished your people in vain. They would not accept discipline.
 Your sword has devoured your prophets like a destructive lion!

³¹ You who belong to this generation! Pay attention to my word, the word of
 Yahweh! Have I been a wilderness to Israel?

Or a land of deep darkness? Why would my people say, ‘Let us wander
 around, we will not go to you anymore’?

translationWords:

- **accuse, accusation, accuser**
- **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning**
- **punish, punishment**
- **vain, vanity**
- **discipline, self-discipline**
- **sword**

- devour
- lion
- generation
- word
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- people of God, my people

translationNotes:

- **So why do you accuse me of doing wrong? All of you have sinned against me** - AT: “Israel you claim that I was wrong when I did not rescue you when you called on me, even though you continue to sin against me.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **destructive** - capable of causing a very large amount of damage
- **You who belong to this generation! Pay attention to my word, the word of Yahweh** - AT: “House of Judah, you must pay attention to what I say to you.”
- **Have I been a wilderness to Israel? Or a land of deep darkness** - AT: “I never abandoned you in the desert or left you in very dark land?” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Why would my people say, ‘Let us wander around, we will not go to you anymore’?** - AT: “Why do you say, ‘We can go where we want to go and not worship Yahweh anymore?’”
- **wander** - move around or go to different places usually without any particular purpose or direction

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2:32-34**UDB:**

³² A young woman would certainly never forget to wear her jewelry,

and a bride would never forget to wear her wedding dress,

but you my people have forgotten me for many years.

³³ You know how to easily find gods from other countries whom you can love.

You can find them more easily than a prostitute can find men to sleep with. You could teach her about infidelity!

³⁴ Although you have on your clothes the blood of poor people whom you have murdered,

people who were innocent! You did not catch them robbing you, but you chose to treat her wickedly.

ULB:

³² Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

³³ How well you make your way to look for love.

You have even taught your ways to wicked women.

³⁴ The blood that was the life of innocent, poor people has been found on your clothes.

These people were not discovered in acts of burglary.

translationWords:

- virgin
- bride
- veil
- love
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- blood
- innocent

translationNotes:

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** - Yahweh is starting to rebuke his people for forgetting him (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **days without number** - “a very long time”
- **How well you make your way to look for love. You have even taught your ways to wicked women.** - Yahweh is saying that the Israelites have become so good at chasing false gods that they could show a prostitute how to go after customers (See: [Irony](#))
- **The blood that was the life of innocent, poor people has been found on your clothes.** - AT: “You are guilty of killing poor and innocent people, people who did nothing to harm you.” Yahweh is saying that the Israelites have killed people who have done nothing against them. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **These people were not discovered in acts of burglary.** - AT: “You did not discover these people stealing” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 2:35-37**UDB:**

³⁵ Yet you say, 'I have done nothing wrong!

I am sure that Yahweh will not be angry with me for much longer.'

But I will punish you severely

for claiming that you have not sinned.

³⁶ Previously you requested the army of Assyria to help you,
but they were not able to help you.

Now you have requested the army of Egypt to help you,
but they will not be able to help you, either.

³⁷ They will capture you, and you will be their prisoners,
led to Egypt, very ashamed with your hands on your heads.

That will happen because Yahweh has rejected those nations that you are
relying on,

and they will not be able to help you at all."

ULB:

³⁵ Instead, in spite of all these things, you keep saying, 'I am blameless.
Surely Yahweh's anger will turn from me.'

But look! You will be judged since you say, 'I have not sinned.'

³⁶ Why do you treat so very lightly this change in your ways?

You will also be disappointed by Egypt, just as you were by Assyria.

³⁷ You will also go out from there dejected, with your hands on your head,
for Yahweh has rejected the ones whom you trusted, so you will not be
helped by them."

translationWords:

- blameless
- Yahweh
- angry, anger
- turn, turn away, turn back

- judge, judgment
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- reject

translationNotes:

- **I am** - “We are”
- **Surely Yahweh’s anger will turn from me** - AT: “Surely Yahweh will stop being angry with us.” (See: [Personification](#))
- **judged** - “punished severely”
- **since** - “because”
- **I have** - “We have”
- **Why do you treat so very lightly this change in your ways?** - Yahweh is scolding the Israelites because they changed from one kingdom to another for help but did not rely on God for help. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **lightly** - without care or concern
- **disappointed** - feeling sad or unhappy because the king of Egypt did not agree to protect them.
- **You will also go out from there** - AT: “You will go out from Egypt”
- **dejected** - sad because you did not get what a promise of Egyptian help.
- **hands on your head** - this shows a people in mourning (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 3:1-5, 12-17, 19-25, which are extended quotations.

The prophecy revealed to Jeremiah is recorded in 2:1-3:5. Despite covering more than one chapter, this should be seen as one unit. The same is true for 3:19-4:3. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Judah told to repent

If Judah repents, God will bring the people back from captivity. They had not yet been taken into captivity. In this book, Israel is a reference to Judah because the northern kingdom of Israel no longer exists. The people group formed by these 10 tribes also no longer really exist. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#))

Adultery

Judah's apostasy is often pictured as adultery. This is a common image in Scripture. When Judah does not worship God, they are compared to an adulterous woman. (See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 03:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 3:1-2**UDB:**

¹ "People know that if a man divorces his wife and then she marries another man,
her first husband certainly must not take her back again to be his
wife again.

She would be ceremonially unclean and she has broken the law of Yahweh.
This nation is like this woman.

But you have more idols than prostitutes have men whom they have slept
with!

So, why should I accept you if you return to me? it is Yahweh who
says this.

² "Look up at the barren hilltops.

On every hilltop you have given yourselves to the idols
in the way a prostitute gives herself to her lovers.

You sat along the roadsides like an Arab nomad who is always waiting in the
desert for someone to come;

but you are waiting to have sex with those who pass by.

Your unfaithfulness is the worship of idols,

and your prostitution is just like your idol worship.

The whole land is made unacceptable to Yahweh,

and your worship of idols is your prostitution and your wickedness
is what made you unclean.

ULB:

³ ¹ "They say, 'A man sends his wife away, so she goes from him and becomes
another man's wife.

Should he return to her again? Is she not completely unclean?' That woman
is this land!

You have acted like a whore with many companions, and now do you want
to return to me?—this is Yahweh's declaration.

² Lift up your eyes to the barren heights and look! Is there is any place where
you have not had illicit sex?

By the roadsides you sat waiting for your lovers, as an Arab in the wilder-
ness.

You have polluted the land with your prostitution and wickedness.

translationWords:

- send, send out, sent
- unclean
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- Yahweh
- barren
- high places
- lover
- desert, wilderness
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking in the previous chapter, Jeremiah 2
- **Is she not completely unclean?** - AT: “She is completely unclean.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **That woman is this land!** - “This land is like that woman!” That is, Yahweh taking the people of Judah back is like a man taking back the wife he earlier divorced. (See: [Personification](#))
- **You have acted like a whore** - “You have given your love and trust to idols the way a prostitute gives her body to men not her husband” (See: [Simile](#))
- **do you want to return to me?** - AT: “I will not accept you when you try to come back to me.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this idea in [1:8](#).
- **Lift up your eyes** - “Look up” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Is there is any place where you have not had illicit sex?** - “You are like a woman who goes everywhere and lets men seize her and sleep with her!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **an Arab** - This refers to bands of robbers in Arabia.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 3:3-5**UDB:**

³ That is why I have not sent you any rain at the times of the year when you needed it.

But you are like prostitutes

who are not at all ashamed for what they have done.

⁴ Now each of you says to me, 'You are my father!

You have loved me ever since I was young!

⁵ So surely you will not be angry with me forever!

You promised you would not obey me, and you did what you said!

And you sinned over and over again!

But you will not quit sinning!"

ULB:

³ So the spring rains were withheld and the late rains did not come.

But your face is arrogant, like a promiscuous woman's face. You refuse to feel shame.

⁴ Now will you not call out to me: 'My father! My closest friend even from my youth!

⁵ Will he be angry with me forever? Will you always keep your anger?'

Look! You have proclaimed you would commit evil, and you have committed it. So continue to do it!"

translationWords:

- arrogant
- face
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- angry, anger
- forever
- proclaim, proclamation

translationNotes:

- **a promiscuous woman** - sleeping with many partners
- **Look!** - "pay attention" or "listen"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 3:6-7

UDB:

⁶ One day when Josiah was the king of Judah, Yahweh said to me, "Have you seen what the people of Israel have done? They have turned away from me, like a woman who has abandoned her husband and sleeps with other men. They have gone up on every hilltop and under every big tree and worshiped idols there. ⁷ I thought that they would return to me, so I said to them, 'Come back to me!' But they refused. The people of Judah were watching all of this.

ULB:

⁶ Then Yahweh said to me in the days of Josiah the king, "Do you see how Israel is faithless to me? She goes to every high mountain and under every leafy tree, and there she acts like a promiscuous woman. ⁷ I said, 'After she does all these things, she will return to me,' but she did not return. Then her faithless sister Judah saw what she did.

translationWords:

- [Josiah](#)
- [king](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [faithless, faithlessness](#)
- [high places](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **She goes** - the people of Israel go (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **every high mountain and under every leafy tree** - The tops of hills and under shade trees were common places for idol worship.
- **her faithless sister Judah saw** - "the people of Judah, who also did not obey me, saw"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 3:8-10

UDB:

⁸ So I sent the people of Israel away to other countries, like a man writes a note saying that he is divorcing his wife and then sends his wife away because she has committed adultery. The people of Judah saw what I did to them, but they are just like the people of Israel. They are not afraid of what I will do to them. They also have turned away from me and are worshiping idols like women who abandon their husbands and go to other men. ⁹ They did not care that worshiping idols offended me, so they have made the entire land unacceptable to me by worshiping idols of wood and stone. ¹⁰ The people of Judah have pretended to return to me, but they have not really done that. This is true because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

⁸ So I saw that for all these reasons she committed adultery. Apostate Israel! I sent her out and gave her a decree of divorce. But her treasonous sister Judah did not fear, and went out and also acted like a promiscuous woman! ⁹ It mattered nothing to her that she defiled the land, so they made idols from the stone and the tree. ¹⁰ Then after all of this, neither did her faithless sister Judah return to me with all her heart, but with a lie!—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- decree
- divorce
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- defile, be defiled
- idol, idolatrous
- heart

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking.
- **Apostate Israel** - “Israel, you have completely stopped obeying me”
- **treasonous** - disloyal
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 03 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 03 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 3:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Then Yahweh said to me, "Jeremiah, the people of Israel have turned away from me, but what the people of Judah have done is worse. ¹² So go and tell this to the people of Israel,

'Yahweh says this to you Israelite people who have turned away from him:

I am merciful.

I will not continue to be angry with you forever.

So return to me.

ULB:

¹¹ Then Yahweh said to me, "Faithless Israel has been more righteous than faithless Judah! ¹² Go and proclaim these words to the north. Say,

'Return, faithless Israel!—this is Yahweh's declaration—I will not always be angry with you.

Since I am faithful—this is Yahweh's declaration—I will not stay angry forever.

translationWords:

- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [word](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 3:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ But you must admit that you are guilty,
 and that you have rebelled against me, Yahweh, your God,
 that you have worshiped idols under big trees everywhere,
 and you have not obeyed me.

You have turned away from me.

¹⁴ But you belong to me,
 so come back to me, my children!
 If you do, I will take you, one from each city and two from each
 clan,
 and bring you back to Jerusalem.

¹⁵ If you do that, I will appoint for you leaders with whom I am pleased
 who will guide you well because they will know and understand
 what pleases me.

ULB:

¹³ Acknowledge your iniquity, for you have transgressed against Yahweh
 your God;
 you have shared your ways with strangers under every leafy tree!
 For you have not listened to my voice!—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

¹⁴ Return, faithless people!—this is Yahweh’s declaration—for I have mar-
 ried you!

I will take you, one from a city, two from a clan, and I will bring you to Zion!

¹⁵ I will give you shepherds after my heart, and they will shepherd you with
 knowledge and insight.

translationWords:

- acknowledge
- iniquity
- transgress, transgression
- God
- voice

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [clan](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

translationNotes:

- **after my heart** - Possible meanings are “who love what I love” or “who want to please me.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 3:16

UDB:

¹⁶ And when you become very numerous in your land,
you will not need to talk about the Sacred Chest that contained the
Ten Commandments.
You will not think about it,
and you will not want to make a new one.’

ULB:

¹⁶ Then it will happen that you will increase and bear fruit in the land in those days—this is Yahweh’s declaration. They will no longer say, “The ark of the covenant of Yahweh!” This matter will no longer come up in their hearts, for they will no longer think about it or pay attention to it. This statement will no longer be made.’

translationWords:

- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **will increase and bear fruit** - The phrase “bear fruit” is an idiomatic way of saying that they will “increase” in number. AT: “will increase greatly in number.” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 3:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ At that time people will say that my throne is in Jerusalem.

People from all nations will come there to worship me,

and they will no longer stubbornly do the evil things that they desire in their inner beings.

¹⁸ At that time you people of Israel and Judah will return from being exiled in lands to the north.

You will return to the land that I gave to your ancestors to belong to them forever.

ULB:

¹⁷ In that time they will proclaim about Jerusalem, ‘This is Yahweh’s throne,’ and all the other nations will gather at Jerusalem in Yahweh’s name. They will no longer walk in the stubbornness of their wicked hearts.

¹⁸ In those days, the house of Judah will walk with the house of Israel. They will come together from the land of the north to the land that I gave your ancestors as an inheritance.

translationWords:

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [throne](#)
- [nation](#)
- [name](#)
- [walk](#)
- [stiff-necked, stubborn](#)
- [house](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

translationNotes:

- **the house of Judah will walk with the house of Israel** - “the people of Judah will live together with the people of Israel”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 03 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 03 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 3:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ You people of Israel, I wanted to accept you to be my children.

I wanted to give you this delightful land.

It is a land more desirable than the land of any other nation!

I wanted you to call me your father,

and I wanted you to never turn away from me.

²⁰ But you have abandoned me like wives who have abandoned their husbands.”

That is what Yahweh said, and I told it to the people of Israel.

ULB:

¹⁹ As for me, I said, ‘How I want to honor you as my son and give you a pleasant land,

an inheritance more beautiful than what is in any other nation!’ I would have said, ‘You will call me “my father”.’

I would have said that you would not turn from following me.

²⁰ But like a woman faithless to her husband,

you have betrayed me, house of Israel—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- honor, to honor
- ancestor, father, forefather
- turn, turn away, turn back
- betray, betrayer

translationNotes:

- **As for me** - the word “me” refers to Yahweh
- **honor you as my son ... like a woman** - This change from male to female is for great emphasis.
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this idea in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 3:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Then God said, "People will hear a noise on the barren hilltops.

It will be the noise made by people weeping and pleading for God to be merciful to them.

They will be admitting that they have forgotten Yahweh their God, and that they turned away from behaving as God wanted them to.

²² You Israelite people, come back to me!

If you do that, I will cause you to never turn away from me again."

The people will reply, "We are returning to you, because you are Yahweh, our God.

ULB:

²¹ A voice is heard on the plains, the weeping and pleading of the people of Israel!

For they have changed their ways; they have forgotten Yahweh their God.

²² "Return, faithless people! I will heal you of treachery!"

"Behold! We will come to you, for you are Yahweh our God!

translationWords:

- plead, pleading, plea
- heal, cure

translationNotes:

- **A voice is heard** - "People hear a noise" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **weeping and pleading** - "crying and begging loudly"
- **Behold!** - The word "Behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 3:23-25**UDB:**

²³ We did not get any help from the idols that we worshiped on the hilltops,

we did not get any help from making all that noise up there. We now recognize that Yahweh our God is the only way Israel will be saved!

²⁴ From the time when we were young, the shameful god Baal has taken away from us everything that our ancestors worked hard to acquire.

He has taken away their flocks of sheep and herds of cattle, their sons and their daughters.

²⁵ So, now we should lie down feeling very ashamed,

because we and our ancestors have sinned against Yahweh our God,

and we have never obeyed him.”

ULB:

²³ Only lies come from the hills, from the many mountains.

Certainly the salvation of Israel is only in Yahweh our God.

²⁴ Yet shameful idols have consumed what our ancestors have worked for—their flocks and cattle, their sons and daughters!

²⁵ Let us lie down in shame. May our shame cover us, for we have sinned against Yahweh our God!

We ourselves and our ancestors, from the time of our youthfulness to this present day, have not listened to the voice of Yahweh our God!”

translationWords:

- salvation
- idol, idolatrous
- consume
- works, deeds, work, acts
- flock, herd
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- voice

translationNotes:

- **Only lies come from the hills** - The people expect guidance and gain from idol worship but only find lies. (See: [Irony](#))
- **Let us lie down in shame. May our shame cover us** - These phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that they are fully aware of their shameful behavior. AT: “Let us be completely humiliated.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **the time of our youthfulness** - “the beginning of the nation”
- **the voice of Yahweh** - AT: “what Yahweh says” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 4:1-3, 4-9, which are extended quotations.

The prophecy revealed to Jeremiah is recorded in 3:19-4:3. Despite covering more than one chapter, this should be seen as one unit. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Yahweh's punishment

This chapter prophecies Yahweh's punishment. This should bring Judah to repentance, but it does not. It is also intended to make the nations fear the power of Yahweh and make them desire to worship him. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#) and [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 04:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 4:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh says, "You Israelite people, if you come back to anyone, it should be to me.

If you get rid of those detestable idols,

if you do not go away from me again,

² and if you declare, 'Just as surely as Yahweh lives, what he says is true and just,

and he teaches righteous living,'

then the people in the other nations of the world will ask me to bless them as I have blessed you,

and they will all come and honor me."

³ This is what Yahweh says to the people of Jerusalem and the other cities in Judah,

"Cause your inner beings to be ready to receive my messages

like farmers plow up hard ground in order that they can plant seed in it.

Just as farmers do not waste good seed by sowing seeds among thorny plants,

I do not want to waste my time telling you messages that you are not ready to receive.

ULB:

⁴ ¹ "If you return, Israel—this is Yahweh's declaration—then it should be to me that you return.

If you remove your detestable things from before me and do not wander from me again,

² and if you swear, 'Yahweh lives in truth, justice, and righteousness,' the nations will ask for my blessing, and they will praise me.

³ For Yahweh says this to each person in Judah and Jerusalem:

'Plow your own ground,

and do not sow among thorns.

translationWords:

- return
- kingdom of Israel
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- oath, swear, swear by
- true, truth, come true
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- nation
- bless, blessed, blessing
- praise
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- sow, sower, plant

translationNotes:

- **If you return, Israel** - “If you will come back to me, people of Israel or ”If you will change your behavior, people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **then it should be to me that you return** - Possible meanings are that 1) this is a repetition of the first phrase: “if you will return to me,” AT: “then come back to me” or “then start worshiping me again,” or 2) this is a command, “then return to me.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **If you remove your detestable things from before me** - This phrase refers to idols as things that deserve strong hatred. AT: “Remove your disgusting idols from my presence” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **do not wander from me again** - “Wander” is a metaphor for being unfaithful. AT: “remain faithful to me” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Plow your own ground, and do not sow among thorns** - Yahweh tells the people to prepare their lives like a farmer prepares the ground for planting. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ Show that your inner beings and your minds are devoted to me.

If you do not do that, my being angry with you
because of all the sins that you have committed
will be like a fire that will be impossible to extinguish.

⁵ Declare this to all the people in Jerusalem and the rest of Judea;
blow the trumpets everywhere in the land to warn the people.
Tell them that they should flee to
the cities that have high walls around them.

⁶ Shout to the people of Jerusalem
and run away now. Do not delay,
because I am about to bring a terrible disaster upon you
that will come from the north.

ULB:

⁴ Be circumcised to Yahweh and remove the foreskins of your heart,

men of Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem, or else my fury will go out like
fire and burn, with no one able to quench it.

This will happen because of the wickedness of your deeds. ⁵ Report in Judah
and let it be heard in Jerusalem.

Say, "Blow the trumpet in the land."

Proclaim, "Gather together. Let us go to the fortified cities." ⁶ Lift up the
signal flag and point it toward Zion, and run for safety!

Do not stay, for I am bringing disaster from the north and a great collapse.

translationWords:

- circumcise, circumcision
- heart
- fire
- quench
- evil, wicked, wickedness

- works, deeds, work, acts
- report
- trumpet
- proclaim, proclamation
- Zion, Mount Zion

translationNotes:

- **Be circumcised to Yahweh and remove the foreskins of your heart** - Yahweh describes the people's devotion to him in terms of the physical sign of covenant. AT: "Dedicate yourselves completely to Yahweh." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Be circumcised ... remove the foreskins of your heart** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the command. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Be circumcised to Yahweh** - AT: "Circumcise yourselves to Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **my fury will go out like fire** - Yahweh's anger is like a fire that destroys everything. AT: "the things that I do because I am angry will be like a fire." (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **Report in Judah and let it be heard in Jerusalem** - These phrases mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the command. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **let it be heard in Jerusalem** - AT: "cause the people in Jerusalem to hear it"
- **disaster ... a great collapse** - These words mean basically the same thing. The phrase "a great collapse" defines what the "disaster" will be. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **from the north** - This refers to enemy armies that would come from the north. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ An army that has destroyed many nations will attack you

like a lion that comes out of its den to attack other animals.

The soldiers of that army

are already marching toward your land.

They will destroy your cities and leave them without any people still living in them.

⁸ So, put on rough clothes

and weep and beat your breasts

to show that you are very sorry for what you have done,

because Yahweh is still very angry with us.

ULB:

⁷ A lion is coming out from his thicket and someone who will destroy nations is setting out.

He is leaving his place to bring horror to your land,

to turn your cities into ruins, where no one will live. ⁸ Because of this, wrap yourself in sackcloth, lament and wail. For the force of Yahweh's anger has not turned away from us.

translationWords:

- lion
- ruin, ruins
- life, live, living, alive
- sackcloth
- lament, lamentation
- angry, anger
- turn, turn away, turn back

translationNotes:

- **A lion is coming** - AT: “A powerful and merciless army approaches” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **thicket** - a set of bushes that grew closely together.
- **setting out** - AT: “starting to march” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **horror** - fear, dread, and shock
- **wail** - loud and long cry of sadness and repentance for having sinned.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Yahweh declares that at the time when Yahweh punishes you, the king of Judah and all his officials will be very afraid.

The priests and the prophets will be terrified.”

¹⁰ Then I replied, “Yahweh my God, you completely deceived the people by telling them that there would be peace in Jerusalem, but now our enemies are ready to slaughter us with their swords!”

ULB:

⁹ Then it will happen in that day—this is Yahweh’s declaration—that the hearts of the king and his officials will die. The priests will be appalled, and the prophets will be horrified.” ¹⁰ So I said, “Ah! Lord Yahweh. Surely you have completely deceived this people and Jerusalem by saying, ‘There will be peace for you.’ Yet the sword is striking against their life.”

translationWords:

- king
- death, die, dead
- priest, priesthood
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- peace, peaceful
- sword

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **the sword is striking against their life** - “our enemies are ready to slaughter us with their swords” (UDB) (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Yahweh told me that when that happens, some will say to the people of Jerusalem,

”A huge army will come to attack you.

They will not be like a gentle breeze that separates the wheat from the chaff.

They will be like a very hot wind that blows in from the desert.

¹² They will be like a strong blast that I will send.

Now I am declaring that I will punish you.”

ULB:

¹¹ In that time it will be said of this people and Jerusalem, ”A burning wind from the plains of the desert will make its way to the daughter of my people. It will not winnow or cleanse them. ¹² A wind far stronger than that will come at my command, and I will now pass sentence against them.

translationWords:

- desert, wilderness
- people of God, my people
- winnow, sift
- clean, cleanse
- command, to command, commandment

translationNotes:

- **it will be said** - “Yahweh will say” (UDB) (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **burning wind from the plains ... wind far stronger** - A fierce and merciless enemy is coming. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **daughter of my people** - The nation is compared to a special bride in an affectionate way. (See: **Idiom**)
- **It will not winnow or cleanse them** - The words “winnow” and “cleanse” both refer to taking away the bad and leaving the good. AT: “It will not take away their sins.” (See **Doublet** and **Metonymy**)
- **A wind ... will come at my command** - Here “command” stands for the action of God commanding the wind to come. (See: **Abstract Nouns**)

- **at my command** - This expression in Hebrew is interpreted by some modern versions as “for me” or “from me.”
- **pass sentence against them** - “announce their punishment”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ And the people in Jerusalem will say, "Our enemies are about to rush down on us; their chariots are like whirlwinds.

Their horses are faster than eagles.

It will be terrible for us!

¹⁴ You people of Jerusalem cleanse your inner beings,

in order that Yahweh will rescue you.

How long will you continue to think about doing evil deeds?

¹⁵ From the city of Dan in the far north to the hills of Ephraim a few miles north of Jerusalem messengers are proclaiming that disasters are coming."

ULB:

¹³ See, he is attacking like clouds, and his chariots are like a storm. His horses are faster than eagles. Woe to us, for we will be devastated! ¹⁴ Cleanse your heart from wickedness, Jerusalem, so that you might be saved. How long will your deepest thoughts be about how to sin? ¹⁵ For a voice is bringing news from Dan, and the coming disaster is heard from the mountains of Ephraim.

translationWords:

- chariot
- horse
- eagle
- devastate, devastation
- clean, cleanse
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- save, safe
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- voice
- Dan
- Ephraim

translationNotes:

- **See, he is attacking like clouds, and his chariots are like a storm** - These two sentences have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. (See" Parallelism) AT: "The enemy army is destructive like a strong wind storm" (See: **Simile**)

- **Woe to us, for we will be devastated** - The people say this when they see the enemy army approaching. AT: The people say. ‘We will certainly be destroyed.’”
- **Cleanse your heart from wickedness, Jerusalem** - God warns the people living in Jerusalem to repent. AT: “Yahweh says to the people living in Jerusalem, ‘You better change how you act.’”
- **a voice is bringing** - “messengers are proclaiming” (UDB) (See: [Personification](#))
- **the coming disaster is heard** - “people heard the coming disaster” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **from Dan ... mountains of Ephraim** - The people would recognize that those places show this warning was getting closer to them.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ So I said this to the people in other nations,

and also announced it in Jerusalem,

”Yahweh says that an army is coming to Jerusalem from far away;

they will shout a battle cry against the cities of Judah.

¹⁷ They will set up tents around Jerusalem like people set up temporary shelters around a field at harvest time.

That will happen because the people of Judah have rebelled against me.

¹⁸ You will be punished very severely;

it will be as though a sword has stabbed your hearts.

But you are causing those things to happen to you

because of the evil things that you have done.”

ULB:

¹⁶ Make the nations think about this: See, announce to Jerusalem that besiegers are coming from a distant land to shout in battle against the cities of Judah. ¹⁷ They will be like the watchmen of a cultivated field against her all around, since she has been rebellious against me—this is Yahweh’s declaration—¹⁸ and your conduct and your deeds have done these things to you. This will be your punishment. How terrible it will be! It will strike your very heart.

translationWords:

- nation
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- works, deeds, work, acts

translationNotes:

- **They will be like the watchmen of a cultivated field against her all around** - AT: “they will lay siege all around the city” (See: [siege](#), [besiege](#)) (See: [Simile](#))
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **strike your very heart** - AT: “crush everything you love” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Then I said to myself, "I am extremely anguished;

the pain in my inner being is very severe.

My heart beats wildly!

But I cannot remain silent

because I have heard our enemies blowing their trumpets

to announce that the battle against Judah will start immediately!

²⁰ Disasters will occur one after another

until the whole land is ruined.

Suddenly all our tents will be destroyed;

even the curtains inside the tents will be ripped apart.

ULB:

¹⁹ My heart! My heart! I am in anguish in my heart. My heart is turbulent within me. I cannot keep quiet for I hear the sound of the horn, an alarm for battle. ²⁰ Collapse after collapse is proclaimed, for all the land is suddenly devastated. They devastate my tabernacle and my tent abruptly.

translationWords:

- heart
- trumpet
- alarm, alarmed
- proclaim, proclamation
- devastate, devastation
- tabernacle
- tent

translationNotes:

- **My heart! My heart! I am in anguish in my heart. My heart is turbulent within me.** - "I am in such pain, I am overwhelmed."
- **turbulent** - full of confusion, violence, or disorder; not stable or steady
- **Collapse after collapse is proclaimed** - "people tell of one city after another being destroyed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the land is suddenly devastated** - "the enemy devastates the land"

- **my tabernacle and my tent** - The words “tabernacle” and “tent” share similar meanings. Possible meanings are “my tent and the curtains inside my tent” or “the place where I live.” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ How long will this battle continue?

How long will I continue to see the enemy battle flags
and hear the sound of their trumpets being blown?

²² Yahweh says: My people are very foolish!

They do not have a relationship with me.

They are like stupid children

who do not understand anything.

They very cleverly do what is wrong,

but they do not know how to do what is good.

ULB:

²¹ How long will I see the standard? Will I hear the sound of the horn? ²² For the foolishness of my people—they do not know me. They are idiotic people and they have no understanding. They have skill at evil, but do not know to do good.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- understand, understanding
- good, goodness

translationNotes:

- **How long will I see the standard? Will I hear the sound of the horn?** - These two sentences have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. AT: “I wish this war would end soon.” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **idiotic people** - “stupid people”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4:23-26**UDB:**

²³ God gave me a vision in which I saw

that the earth was barren and without form.

I looked at the sky,

and there was no light there.

²⁴ I looked at the mountains and hills,

and they shook and moved from side to side.

²⁵ I looked and saw that all there were no more people

and all the birds had flown away.

²⁶ I looked and saw that the fields that previously were fertile had become a desert.

The cities were all ruined;

they had all been destroyed by Yahweh because he was extremely angry.”

ULB:

²³ I saw the land, and see! It was formless and empty. For there was no light for the heavens. ²⁴ I looked at the mountains. Behold, they were trembling, and all the hills were shaking about. ²⁵ I looked. Behold, there was no one, and all the birds of the heavens had fled. ²⁶ I looked. Behold, the orchards were a wilderness and all the cities had been pulled down before Yahweh, before the fury of his wrath.”

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- desert, wilderness
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

- **I saw the land, and see!** - This is an invitation for Jeremiah to look at the vision God is giving him.
- **formless and empty** - This vision is a prophecy of what the land of Israel would be like after the people were all taken into captivity.
- **Behold** - The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4:27-29**UDB:**

²⁷ This is what Yahweh is saying,

”the entire land of Judah will be ruined,
but I will not destroy it completely.

²⁸ I will do to my people what I said that I would do,
and I will not change my mind.

So when that happens, it will be as though the earth will mourn
and the sky will become very dark.

²⁹ When the people hear the sound of the enemy cavalry and archers marching,
they will be terrified as they flee from their cities.

Some of them will find places to hide in the bushes,
and others will run toward the quarries to escape being killed by
their enemies.

All the cities in Judah will be abandoned;
not one person will remain in them.

ULB:

²⁷ This is what Yahweh says, ”All the land will become a devastation, but I will not completely destroy them. ²⁸ For this reason, the land will mourn, and the heavens above will darken. For I have declared my intentions; I will not hold back; I will not turn from carrying them out. ²⁹ Every city will flee from the noise of the cavalry and the archers with a bow; they will run into the forests. Every city will climb up into the rocky places. The cities will be abandoned, for there will be no one to inhabit them.

translationWords:

- mourn, mourning
- declare, declaration
- bow and arrow

translationNotes:

- **land will mourn, and the heavens above will darken** - Jeremiah emphasizes Yahweh's judgment by saying that the earth itself expresses great sorrow. (See: [Personification](#))
- **cavalry** - a group of soldiers riding horses
- **Every city will flee ... Every city will climb up** - This emphasizes that all of the people will be running away.
- **The cities will be abandoned, for there will be no one to inhabit them** - These two clauses have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. AT: "There will be no one left in the cities." (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 4:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ So you who will surely be destroyed,

what will you do then?

Even though you have worn beautiful clothes and jewelry

and paint around your eyes,

those things will not help you,

because the people in other countries that you think love you really
despise you,

and they will try to kill you.

³¹ It is as though I already hear the people in Jerusalem crying very loudly,

as a woman cries when she is giving birth to her first child;

she gasps for breath and pleads for someone to help her,

and she shouts, ‘Something terrible is happening to me; they are
about to murder me!’”

ULB:

³⁰ Now that you have been devastated, what will you do? For though you dress in scarlet, adorn yourself with gold jewelry, and make your eyes look bigger with paint, the men who lusted for you now reject you. Instead, they are trying to take away your life. ³¹ So I hear the sound of anguish, distress as in the birth of a firstborn child, the sound of the daughter of Zion. She is gasping for breath. She spreads out her hands, ‘Woe to me! I am fainting because of these murderers.’”

translationWords:

- gold
- reject
- firstborn
- Zion, Mount Zion
- woe

translationNotes:

- you dress in scarlet ... jewelry ... eyes ... with paint - “you dress like prostitutes”

- **adorn** - “decorate” or “add extras to make something appear more attractive or expensive”
- **men who lusted for you now reject you** - This emphasizes that other nations Israel has depended on for wealth and business will reject them when they see God’s judgment. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **distress as in the birth** - “distress as in the pain and suffering a woman has while giving birth” (See: [Simile](#))
- **I am fainting** - “my life is worn out from grief” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 5:1-31, which is an extended quotation.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Hyperbole

It is possible that Yahweh is speaking in hyperbole when he states, “If you can find a man or anyone who is acting justly and trying to act faithfully, then I will forgive Jerusalem.” The purpose of this is to show how evil Jerusalem had become. (See: [Hyperbole](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faith](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#) and [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Rhetorical questions

Yahweh asks several rhetorical questions in this chapter. This is intended to show Jeremiah the justness of his actions. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 05:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 5:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh said to the people of Jerusalem, "Go up and down every street.

Search in the marketplaces to find people who do what is fair,
who try to be faithful to me.

If you find even one person like that,

I will forgive the people of Jerusalem and not destroy their city.

² But when the people there swear an official oath by Yahweh's life,
they are lying."

³ So I prayed, "Yahweh, you are certainly searching for people who are faithful to you.

You punished your people, but they did not pay any attention.

You crushed them, but they ignored what you were telling them to do.

They were extremely stubborn

and refused to return to you."

ULB:

5 ¹ "Rush about through the streets of Jerusalem; search in her city squares, too. Then look and think about this:

If you can find a man or anyone who is acting justly and trying to act faithfully,

then I will forgive Jerusalem.

² Even if they are saying, 'By the life of Yahweh,' they are making false oaths."

³ Yahweh, do your eyes not look for faithfulness? You struck the people, but they do not feel pain.

You have completely defeated them, but they still refuse to receive discipline. They make their faces harder than rock, for they refuse to repent.

translationWords:

- Jerusalem
- just, justice, justly

- faithful, faithfulness
- forgive, forgiveness
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- oath, swear, swear by
- people of God, my people
- receive
- discipline, self-discipline
- face
- repent, repentance

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah is speaking to the people of Jerusalem. See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **Rush about through** - “Hurry around in”
- **Then look and think about this** - “look and find out”
- **city squares** - Broad and open places in a city where people can gather.
- **If you can find a man or anyone** - “Whether you can find one person”
- **is acting justly** - “does what is just”
- **Even if they** - The word “they” refers to the people of Jerusalem.
- **By the life of Yahweh** - People used this phrase when making an solemn oath in order to ask Yahweh to punish them if they broke the oath. See how you translated this in [4:2](#).
- **do your eyes not look for faithfulness** - Jeremiah uses this question to emphasize that what Yahweh really wants is faithfulness. AT: “you want people to be faithful.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **You struck the people, but they do not feel pain.** - AT: “You punish the people, but they do not pay attention.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **have completely defeated** - “have completely destroyed”
- **to receive discipline** - “to learn their lesson”
- **They make their faces harder than rock** - AT: “They became very stubborn.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 5:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ Then I thought, "We cannot expect these people to act righteously, because they are poor;
they do not have any sense.

They do not know the way Yahweh wants them to conduct their lives;
they do not know what God requires them to do.

⁵ So, I will go and talk to their leaders,
because they surely know how God wants them to conduct their
lives."

But they also have stopped obeying Yahweh,
and they will not allow him to lead them.

⁶ Because of that, lions will come out of the forests and kill them;
wolves from the desert will attack them;
leopards that lurk outside their cities will maul anyone who walks
outside the cities.

Those things will happen because the people have sinned very much against
God
and have turned away from him very frequently.

ULB:

⁴ So I said, "Surely these are only poor people.

They are foolish, for they do not know Yahweh's ways, nor their God's de-
crees.

⁵ I will go to the important people and declare God's messages to them, for
they at least know Yahweh's ways,

the decrees of their God. But they all broke their yoke together; they all tore
apart the chains that bound them to God.

⁶ So a lion from a thicket will attack them. A wolf from the Arabah will ruin
them.

A lurking panther will come against their cities. Anyone who goes outside
his city will be torn apart.

For their transgressions increase. Their acts of faithlessness are unlimited.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- know, knowledge, make known
- God
- decree
- yoke
- bind, bond, bound
- lion
- Arabah
- ruin, ruins
- transgress, transgression
- faithless, faithlessness

translationNotes:

- **So I said** - Jeremiah is speaking.
- **But they all broke their yoke together; they all tore apart the chains that bound them to God.** - The yoke and chains represent the law which bind God and his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **So a lion ... A wolf ... A lurking panther** - These are dangerous animals that can kill people. Possible meanings are 1) “Wild animals will come and kill people” or 2) “an enemy army will come and kill people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **thicket** - a set of bushes that grew closely together.
- **wolf** - a wild dangerous dog
- **lurking** - “waiting”
- **panther** - a large wild dangerous cat
- **unlimited** - not able to be counted

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 5:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Yahweh says, "I cannot forgive these people;

even their children have abandoned me.

When they solemnly declare something, they ask their gods to show that what they say is true.

I gave my people everything that they needed,

but they often went to the high places on the hills, where they worshiped their idols and committed adultery there.

⁸ Just like well fed male horses neigh, wanting to mate with female horses, each of the men desires to sleep with his neighbor's wife.

⁹ Should I not punish them for this?

I will certainly get revenge on this nation whose people behave like that!

ULB:

⁷ Why should I pardon these people?

Your sons have abandoned me and have made oaths by what are not gods.

I fed them fully, but they committed adultery and took on the marks of a house of prostitution.

⁸ They were horses in heat. They roamed about wanting to mate. Each man neighed to his neighbor's wife.

⁹ So should I not punish them—this is Yahweh's declaration— and should I not avenge myself on a nation that is like this?

translationWords:

- **pardon**
- **oath, swear, swear by**
- **false god, foreign god, god, goddess**
- **adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress**
- **prostitute, harlot, whore**

- horse
- neighbor
- punish, punishment
- declare, declaration
- avenge, revenge, vengeance
- nation

translationNotes:

- **Why should I pardon these people** - Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he has no reason to pardon these people. AT: “Because of the things that they do, I cannot pardon these people.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **these people** - the people of Jerusalem
- **Your sons** - Yahweh is speaking to Jerusalem as though she were a woman who had children. AT: “The people of Jerusalem.” (See: [Personification](#))
- **I fed them fully** - “I gave them everything they needed.”
- **and took on the marks of a house of prostitution** - “and went in large groups to the houses of prostitutes”
- **in heat** - “that were ready to mate”
- **mate** - when animals breed or lie together to reproduce
- **Each man neighed to his neighbor’s wife** - Male horses neigh loudly to female horses when they want to sleep with them. AT: “Each man was trying to sleep with his neighbor’s wife.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **So should I not punish them ... and should I not avenge myself on a nation that is like this?** - Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that the things that they are doing are so bad that he will no have mercy and stop himself from punishing them. AT: “Because they do these things, I will punish them ... I will certainly get revenge for myself against them.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 5:10-13**UDB:**

¹⁰ The people of Judah and Israel are like a vineyard.

Go along the rows in their vineyards

and get rid of most of the people,

but do not kill all of them.

These people do not belong to me,

so get rid of them,

like a gardener lops off branches from a vine.

¹¹ The people of Israel and Judah have turned away from me completely.

¹² They have lied about me and said,

'He is not even real!

He will not punish us!

He will not send disasters on us!

We will not experience wars or famines!

¹³ What God's prophets say is nothing but wind!

They do not have messages from God!

And because they have not believed me, all of these things will happen to them!"

ULB:

¹⁰ Go up onto her vineyards' terraces and destroy. But do not bring complete destruction to them.

Trim their vines, since those vines do not come from Yahweh.

¹¹ For the houses of Israel and Judah have completely betrayed me—this is Yahweh's declaration—

¹² and they have denied me. They say, 'He is not real.

Evil will not come on us, nor will we see sword or famine.

¹³ For the prophets have become as useless as the wind and there is no one else to declare Yahweh's messages to us. Let their threats come upon themselves."

translationWords:

- vineyard
- vine
- Yahweh
- kingdom of Israel
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- betray, betrayer
- declare, declaration
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- sword
- famine
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak.
- **Go up onto her vineyards' terraces** - "Get up over her walls." Yahweh is comparing the city of Jerusalem to a vineyard that has a wall around it. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Go up** - Yahweh is speaking to the enemies of people living in Jerusalem.
- **do not bring complete destruction to them** - "do not completely destroy them"
- **Trim their vines, since those vines do not come from Yahweh** - Yahweh compares how the enemies of Jerusalem will rid of her people to how people cut branches off of a vine. AT: "Get rid of all of the evil people because they do not come from Yahweh."
- **For the houses of Israel and Judah** - AT: "For the people of Israel and Judah." (See: [Idiom](#))
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **they have denied me** - This could also be translated as, "they have lied about me."
- **He is not real** - "Yahweh does not exist." This could also be translated as "He will not do these things" or "He cannot do these things"
- **Evil will not come on us, nor will we see sword or famine** - These two sentences say the same thing, the second is more specific than the first. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Evil will not come on us** - This expression means "Bad things will not happen to us."
- **nor will we see sword or famine** - AT: "and we will not experience war or famine." (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 5:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ So, this is what Yahweh, the commander of the armies of angels in heaven, has said to me,

”Because my people are saying those things,

I will give you a message to tell them that will be like a fire,

and these people will be like wood that the fire will burn up completely!

¹⁵ Listen to Yahweh’s declaration, you people of Israel:

I will bring the army of a distant nation to attack you.

It is a very powerful nation that has existed for a long time.

They speak a language that you do not know,

and which you will not be able to understand.

ULB:

¹⁴ So Yahweh, the God of hosts says this, ”Because you have said this, see,

I am about to place my word in your mouth. It will be like a fire, and this people will be like wood! For it will consume them.

¹⁵ See! I am about to bring a nation against you from far away, house of Israel—this is Yahweh’s declaration—

it is a lasting nation, an ancient nation! It is a nation whose language you do not know,

nor will you understand what they say.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- fire
- consume
- nation
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- understand, understanding

translationNotes:

- **Because you** - The word “you” refers to the people of Israel and Judah.
- **have said this** - See what the people said in [5:12](#).
- **see** - AT: “Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”
- **I am about to place my word in your mouth. It will be like a fire** - “I am about to make the words that I have you speak for me into a fire”
- **in your mouth** - The word “your” refers to Jeremiah. “for you to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **this people** - the people of Israel
- **it will consume them** - “the fire will burn up the people of Israel” Yahweh’s word will destroy the people like a fire burns wood. AT: “Because you will destroy the people of Israel when you speak my words.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **against you** - “to attack you.” The word “you” refers to the people of Israel.
- **house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [2:4](#).
- **it is a lasting nation, an ancient nation!** - These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize how long the nation has existed. AT: “it is a very old and enduring nation!” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **a lasting nation** - “an enduring nation” or “a very strong nation”
- **It is a nation whose language you do not know, nor will you understand what they say** - The second phrase says in negative terms the same thing that the first phrase says in positive terms. This emphasizes that they do not know the language of the people who live in that nation. AT: “It is a nation whose language you will not understand.” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 5:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ Their soldiers are all very strong,

and the arrows from their quivers will send many Judean men to their graves.

¹⁷ They will eat the food that you have harvested from your fields, even though it should be your own children who eat your bread. They will kill your flocks of sheep and herds of cattle.

They will eat your grapes and your figs.

They will also destroy your cities that have high walls around them and kill the people with their swords.

ULB:

¹⁶ Its quiver is like an open tomb. They are all soldiers.

¹⁷ So your harvest will be consumed, your sons and daughters also, and your food.

They will eat your flocks and cattle; they will eat the fruit from your vines and fig trees.

They will batter down with a sword your fortified cities that you trusted in.

translationWords:

- tomb, grave, burial place
- harvest
- consume
- flock, herd
- cow, calf, bull, cattle cattle
- fruit, fruitful
- fig
- sword
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

translationNotes:

- **Its quiver is like an open tomb** - The arrows that come from the quiver kill very many people and send them to their grave. AT: "That nation will use arrow to kill very many people." (See: [Simile](#))

- **Its quiver** - The word “Its” refers to the nation that Yahweh will bring to attack Israel.
- **quiver** - a container for holding arrows
- **So your harvest will be consumed** - AT: “So the army of that nation will eat what you expected to harvest.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **They will eat** - The word “They” refers to the army of that nation.
- **They will batter down with a sword your fortified cities** - The sword represents all of the different weapons that people use in war. AT: “They will use their weapons to conquer your strong cities.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **that you trusted in** - “that you thought were strong enough to keep you safe”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 5:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ But even when those things happen, I will not get rid of all of you.

¹⁹ And when the people ask, ‘Why is Yahweh doing this to us?’

you will tell them, ‘You rejected him and worshiped foreign gods in your own land,

so now you will become slaves of foreigners in a land that is not your land.’”

ULB:

¹⁸ But even in those days—this is Yahweh’s declaration—I do not intend to destroy you completely.

¹⁹ It will happen when you, Israel and Judah, say, ‘Why has Yahweh our God done all these things to us?’ that then you, Jeremiah, will say to them, ‘Just as you abandoned Yahweh and worshiped foreign gods in your land, so you will also serve strangers in a land that is not your own.’

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- kingdom of Israel
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- God
- Jeremiah
- worship
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess

translationNotes:

- **in those days** - The phrase “those days” refers to the time when a distant nation will come and attack the people of Israel.
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **do not intend to destroy** - “will not destroy”
- **It will happen when you** - “When you” or “When it happens that you”
- **all these things** - Yahweh sent a foreign army to attack Israel.
- **worshiped foreign gods** - Many versions translate, “served foreign gods,” but here what is meant is worshipping them.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 5:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ Yahweh instructed me to proclaim this message to the people of Israel and Judah,

²¹ "Listen to this, you people who are foolish and who do not have any sense:

You have eyes, but it is as though you cannot see;

you have ears, but it is as though you cannot hear.

²² Why do you not have any awesome respect for me?

You should tremble when you are in my presence!

I, Yahweh, am the one who put a barrier along the shores

so that the waters of the ocean cannot cross it and flood the land.

The waves roll and roar, but they cannot go past that barrier.

ULB:

²⁰ Report this to the house of Jacob and let it be heard in Judah. Say,

²¹ 'Hear this, foolish people! For idols have no will;

there are eyes in them, but they cannot see. There are ears on them, but they do not hear.

²² Do you not fear me—this is Yahweh's declaration—or tremble before my face?

I have placed a border of sand against the sea, an ongoing decree that it does not violate—

even though the sea rises and falls, still it does not violate it. Even though its waves roar, they do not cross it.

translationWords:

- report
- house
- Jacob, Israel
- Judah
- fool, foolish, folly
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- tremble
- face
- decree

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to the people of Israel.
- **Report this** - “Tell this”
- **house of Jacob** - See how you translated this in [2:4](#).
- **let it be heard in Judah** - “announce it in Judah”
- **people! For idols have no will** - “people that has no mind.” AT: “people that cannot understand.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **there are eyes in them, but they cannot see.** - AT: “You have eyes but you do not understand what I am doing”
- **There are ears on them, but they do not hear** - AT: “You have ears but you do not understand what I am telling you”
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **Do you not fear me ... face?** - Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that the people are extremely foolish because they do not fear Yahweh. AT: “It is foolish that you do not fear me ... face!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **or tremble before my face** - AT: “or shake with fear because of me.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **I have placed a border of sand against the sea** - “I placed the sand as the border for the sea”
- **an ongoing decree that it does not violate** - “an everlasting limit that it cannot cross”
- **rises and falls** - “tosses back and forth”
- **not violate it** - AT: “not succeed in overcoming the border.” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 5:23-25**UDB:**

²³ But you people are not like the waves that obey me.

You people are very stubborn and rebellious,
and have constantly turned away from me.

²⁴ You do not say to yourselves,

'Let us have an awesome respect for Yahweh our God,
the one who sends us rain at the times that we need it,
the one who causes the grain to become ripe at the harvest season.'

²⁵ It is because of the wrong things that you have done, that those good things
have not happened;

It is because of the sins that you have committed that you have
been prevented from receiving those blessings.

ULB:

²³ But this people has a stubborn heart. It turns away in rebellion and goes
away.

²⁴ For they do not say in their hearts, "Let us fear Yahweh our God, the one
who brings the rain

—the early rain and the late rains—in their right time, keeping the fixed
weeks of the harvest for us."

²⁵ Your iniquities kept these things from happening. Your sins have stopped
good from coming to you.

translationWords:

- stiff-necked, stubborn
- heart
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- God
- harvest

- [iniquity](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [good, goodness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel.
- **has a stubborn heart** - AT: “is stubborn and rebellious.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **It turns away in rebellion and goes away** - “They turn away and go away.” AT: “They do not obey or listen.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **they do not say in their hearts** - AT: “they do not think to themselves.”
- **keeping the fixed weeks of the harvest for us** - “and makes sure for us that the weeks of harvest happens when they are supposed to”
- **Your iniquities** - The word “Your refers to the descendants of Jacob and the people of Judah. ”your sins”
- **these things** - the rains and the harvest

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 5:26-29**UDB:**

²⁶ Among my people are wicked people who hide along the roads to ambush people

like men who hunt birds put nets to catch them.

²⁷ Like a hunter has a cage full of birds that he has captured,

their homes are full of things that they have gotten by deceiving others

so now they are very rich and powerful.

²⁸ They are big and fat

because they eat rich food, and there is no limit to the evil deeds that they have done.

In court, they do not help ordinary people get judges to decide fairly for them, and they do not try to defend orphans.

They do not even want to listen to them in court.

²⁹ So I will certainly punish them for doing those things.

I, Yahweh, declare that I will certainly get revenge on their nation.

ULB:

²⁶ For wicked men are found with my people. They watch as someone crouches to capture birds;

they set a trap and catch people.

²⁷ Like a cage full of birds, their houses are full of deceit.

So they grow large and become rich.

²⁸ They have become fat; they shine with well-being. They crossed over all bounds of wickedness. They do not plead the cause of the people,

or the cause of the orphan. They prosper even though they have not given justice to the needy.

²⁹ Should I not punish them for these things—this is Yahweh's declaration—and will I not take vengeance for myself on a nation like this?

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- people of God, my people
- snare, trap
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- plead, pleading, plea
- avenge, revenge, vengeance

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak.
- **For wicked men are found with my people** - AT: “For I have found wicked men among my people.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they set a trap and catch people** - AT: “They set things up so that they can take advantage of people.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **grow large and become rich** - “become powerful and rich”
- **they shine with well-being** - “and sleek” or “and smooth.” The people look smooth because their thick fat hides their bones.
- **They crossed over all bounds of wickedness** - “They do things that are even worse than evil.”
- **the cause of the orphan** - This refers to court cases in which orphans ask that justice be done. AT: “they do not support the court cases brought by orphans.” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **Should I not punish ... a nation like this?** - See how you translated “So should I not punish ... a nation that is like this?” in [5:9](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 5:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ Very appalling things are happening in this country:

³¹ Prophets speak only lies

and priests rule by their own authority,

yet you people like that!

But when you start to experience disasters, what will you do?

ULB:

³⁰ Atrocities and horrors have occurred in the land.

³¹ The prophets prophesy with deceit, and the priests rule with their own power.

My people love it this way, but what will happen in the end?

translationWords:

- horror, horrified
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- priest, priesthood
- ruler, rulers, rule
- power, powers
- love

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak.
- **Atrocities and horrors have occurred** - “A dreadful and awful thing has occurred”
- **in the land** - AT: “in the land of Israel.” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **prophesy with deceit** - “prophesy lies”
- **with their own power** - “according to the directions of the prophets”
- **but what will happen in the end** - “but what will you do at the end of all of this?” Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that the people will regret being wicked when it results in punishment. AT: “but you will be in trouble and regret this wicked behavior when it ends with punishment?” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **in the end** - The phrase “the end” refers to the punishment that results from the wicked things that the people have done.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 6:1-30, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Gods and battle

In the ancient Near East, it was commonly believed that a nation's gods were responsible for military victory. It may have been believed that a god would not defend an evil city. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#) and [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 06:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 6:1-3**UDB:**

¹ You people in Jerusalem who are from the tribe of Benjamin,

flee from this city!

Blow the trumpets in the city of Tekoa south of Jerusalem!

Send up a smoke signal in the city of Beth Hakerem

to warn the people of the coming danger!

A powerful army will come against you from the north,

and they will cause great destruction.

² Jerusalem is like a beautiful woman,

but it will soon be destroyed.

³ Enemy kings, the shepherds of foreign people groups, will come with their armies and set up their tents around the city,

and each king will choose a part of the city for his soldiers to destroy as shepherds divide their pastures for their flocks of sheep.

ULB:

6 ¹ Find safety, people of Benjamin, by leaving Jerusalem. Blow a trumpet in Tekoa.

Raise up over Beth Hakerem a signal, since wickedness is appearing from the north; a great crushing is coming.

² The daughter of Zion, the beautiful and delicate woman, will be destroyed.

³ The shepherds and their flocks will go to them;

they will set up tents against her all around; each man will shepherd with his own hand.

translationWords:

- Benjamin
- Jerusalem
- trumpet
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Daughter of Zion
- Zion, Mount Zion
- shepherd, to shepherd
- flock, herd
- tent
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **Find safety** - “Take refuge”
- **Blow a trumpet in Tekoa** - AT: “people living in the town of Tekoa prepare to be attacked”
- **Tekoa** - the name of a town about 18 kilometers south of Jerusalem. The name means “a horn for blowing.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Raise up over Beth Hakerem a signal** - AT: “people living in the town of Beth Hakerem prepare to be besieged”
- **Beth Hakerem** - the name of a town about 10 kilometers south of Jerusalem. The name means “the place of the vineyard.”
- **a signal** - AT: “a signal to warn people that danger is coming.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **since wickedness is appearing** - AT: “since people see disaster coming.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a great crushing** - “great destruction”
- **The daughter of Zion, the beautiful and delicate woman** - Yahweh describes Jerusalem as though she were a woman. AT: “daughter of Zion who is like a beautiful and delicate woman.” (See: [Personification](#))
- **The daughter of Zion** - See how you translated this in [4:31](#).
- **The shepherds and their flocks will go to them** - Kings were often spoken of as shepherds of their people. AT: The kings and their soldiers will surround Jerusalem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **against her all around** - “near to her all around”
- **each man will shepherd with his own hand** - AT: “each king will attack with his own soldiers.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 6:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ The kings will tell their troops,

’Make the sacrifices necessary to get ready for battle.

We should attack them before noontime,

but even if we arrive there late in the afternoon,

⁵ we will attack them at night

and tear down their fortresses.”

ULB:

⁴ ”Dedicate yourselves to the gods for the battle. Arise, let us attack at noon.

It is too bad that the daylight is fading away, that the evening shadows are falling.

⁵ But let us attack at night and destroy her fortresses.”

translationWords:

- shadow
- stronghold, fortress, fortified

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - A king from the attacking army is speaking to the men under his control.
- **Dedicate yourselves to the gods for the battle** - The attacking army tries to ensure that their gods will help them during the war by performing ceremonies and making sacrifices. AT: “Prepare for war by purifying yourselves and sacrificing to the gods.” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **Arise** - “Get up”
- **at noon** - AT: “at noon even though it is very hot.”
- **the daylight is fading away** - “the day is ending”
- **are falling** - “are stretching out”
- **at night** - AT: “during the night even though it is dark.”
- **her fortresses** - “the strong buildings of Jerusalem”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 6:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ Yahweh, the commander of the armies of angels in heaven, says this,

”I will command those soldiers to cut down the trees outside Jerusalem
and to build ramps up to the top of the city walls!

This city must be punished

because everyone there continually oppresses others. q1 ⁷ Its people
keep doing wicked deeds,

just as a well keeps producing water.

The noise from people doing violent and destructive actions is heard everywhere.

I continually see people who are suffering and wounded.

⁸ Listen to what I am warning you, you people of Jerusalem,

because if you do not listen, I will reject you

and cause your land to become desolate,

a land where no one lives.”

ULB:

⁶ For Yahweh of hosts says this: Cut her trees, and heap up siegeworks
against Jerusalem.

This is the right city to attack, because it is filled with oppression.

⁷ Just as a well keeps giving water, so this city keeps producing wickedness.

Violence and disorder are heard in her. Suffering and plague are continually
before me.

⁸ Accept discipline, Jerusalem, or I will turn away from you

and make you into a ruin, an uninhabited land.”

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- Jerusalem
- oppress, oppression, oppressor

- well, cistern
- suffer, suffering
- plague
- discipline, self-discipline
- turn, turn away, turn back
- ruin, ruins

translationNotes:

- **Cut her trees** - “Cut down the trees.” Yahweh is speaking to the army that will attack Jerusalem.
- **siegeworks** - “siege mounds.” These are mounds of dirt that will allow the enemy to attack the walls of Jerusalem.
- **because it is filled with oppression** - “because its people are always oppressing each other”
- **Just as a well keeps giving water, so this city keeps producing wickedness** - A well is supposed to keep producing water. Like a well remains with its water, Jerusalem has remained with its wickedness, even when Yahweh punishes it. (See: [Simile](#) and [Irony](#))
- **Violence and disorder are heard in her** - AT: “I hear violence and robbery in her.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Suffering and plague are continually before me** - AT: “I constantly see sickness and suffering.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Accept discipline, Jerusalem** - Yahweh speaks to Jerusalem as though she was a person. AT: “Learn from your punishment, you people of Jerusalem.” (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **an uninhabited land** - “a land that has no people living in it”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 6:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Yahweh, the commander of the angel armies, says this,

”Your enemies will cause your country to become as desolate as a vineyard from which all the grapes have been completely stripped from the vines.

Their soldiers will seize the possessions of those who remain in Israel after the others have been exiled

like farmers go to the vines again to pick any grapes that were left.

¹⁰ If I command you, Jeremiah, to speak to the Israelite people to warn them, who will listen to me?

It is as though their ears are closed,
and as a result they cannot hear.

They scorn my messages;
they do not want to listen to them at all!”

ULB:

⁹ Yahweh of hosts says this, ”They will certainly glean those who are left in Israel like a vineyard.

Reach out again with your hand to pick grapes from the vines.

¹⁰ To whom should I declare and warn so they will listen?

Look! Their ears are uncircumcised; they are not able to pay attention!

Look! The word of Yahweh has come to them to correct them, but they do not want it.”

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- glean, gleaning
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- grape
- vine
- declare, declaration
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

translationNotes:

- **They will certainly glean those who are left in Israel like a vineyard** - Yahweh compares the people who remain after the enemy has already destroyed Israel to grapes that are left in a vineyard that people have already harvested. AT: “They will certainly come back to attack the people who remain in Israel after they have already destroyed it.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They will certainly** - The word “They” refers to the enemy that Yahweh sends to destroy Israel.
- **Reach out again** - Yahweh is speaking to the enemies who attack Israel.
- **Reach out again with your hand to pick grapes from the vines** - AT: “Come and attack the people of Israel who remain.”
- **To whom should I** - Jeremiah is speaking.
- **To whom should I declare and warn so they will listen** - Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that none of the people of Israel would listen to him even after they survived the attack of their enemies. AT: “There is no one left for me to speak to and warn who might listen.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Look** - Yahweh uses the word “Look” to emphasize what he is saying.
- **Their ears are uncircumcised** - AT: “They refuse to listen” or “They refuse to obey.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Their ears** - The word “Their” refer to the people of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 6:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ After hearing this I became very angry,

as Yahweh is angry, and I could not hold myself back any longer.

So Yahweh said to me,

”Tell the children in the streets and the young men who gather together.

Tell the men and their wives;

tell the very old people, also.

¹² Tell the men that I will give their houses to their enemies,

and I will give their property and their wives to them, also,

when I punish the people who live in this land!

ULB:

¹¹ But I am filled with Yahweh’s fury. I am tired of holding it in. He said, to me, ”Pour it out on the children in the streets

and on the groups of young men. For every man will be taken away with his wife;

and every old person heavy with years.

¹² Their houses will be turned over to others, both their fields and their wives together.

For I will attack the inhabitants of the land with my hand—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- wrath, fury
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **But I** - Jeremiah is speaking.
- **am filled with Yahweh's fury** - AT: "am completely angry together with Yahweh." (See: **Idiom**)
- **I am tired of holding it in** - AT: "I am tired from not expressing the anger of Yahweh"
- **Pour it out on the children in the streets** - "The children in the streets" stands for all children in the city. AT: "Express my anger to the children in the city" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **For every man will be taken away with his wife** - AT: "Because enemies will capture even a man with his wife." (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **every old person heavy with years** - "heavy with years" is an idiom that means "very old." It reinforces the phrase "old person." AT: "every very old person." (See: **Idiom**)
- **will be turned over to others** - "will become the possession of other people"
- **both their fields and their wives together** - AT: "both their fields and their women will become the possession of other people."
- **For I will attack the inhabitants of the land with my hand** - AT: "For I will use my strength to attack the people living in the land." (See: **Metonymy**)
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in **1:8**.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 6:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ Everyone is trying to get money by tricking others,

from the most important people to the least important people;
even the prophets and the priests are trying to deceive people to get money.

¹⁴ They act as though the sins of my people are like small wounds that they can easily treat.

They continually comfort people by saying, ‘I hope things are going well with you,’

when things are not going well.

¹⁵ They should be ashamed about the disgusting things that they do,

but they are not ashamed at all.

They do not even know how to blush.

So, they also will be among those who will be killed.

They will be destroyed when I punish them.”

ULB:

¹³ Yahweh declares that from their smallest to their greatest, each of them is greedy for dishonest gain.

Prophets to priest, everyone practices deceit.

¹⁴ But they have healed the wounds of my people lightly. They say, ‘Peace! Peace!’ when there is no peace.

¹⁵ Were they ashamed when they committed abominations? They were not ashamed at all. They had no shame.

So they will fall with those who fall at the time that I punish them. They will be overthrown,” says Yahweh.

translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- priest, priesthood
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- heal, cure

- people of God, my people
- peace, peaceful
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- abomination, abominable
- humble, humility
- punish, punishment

translationNotes:

- **from their smallest to their greatest** - AT: “all the people of Israel that remain, from the least powerful to the most powerful.” (See: [Merism](#))
- **is greedy for dishonest gain** - “does bad things to other people in order to get money”
- **the wounds of my people** - “the severe problem that my people has”
- **lightly** - The prophets and the priests treat the sins of the people of Israel as though they were a small wound. AT: “as though it were not serious.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **‘Peace! Peace!’ when there is no peace** - “‘All is well! All is well!’ but it is not well”
- **Were they ashamed when they committed abominations?** - “They committed terrible sins, and they were not ashamed” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **They were not ashamed at all. They had no shame** - These two sentences have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. (See: [Parallelism](#)) “They were not ashamed of what they did”
- **will fall** - AT: “will be killed.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **will be overthrown** - “will stumble.” AT: “will perish” or “will lose their power and become helpless.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 6:16-19**UDB:**

¹⁶ This is also what Yahweh said to the Israelite people,

”Stand at the crossroads and look at the people who pass by.

Ask them what was the good behavior that their ancestors had long ago.

And when they tell you, behave that way.

If you do that, you will find rest for yourselves.

But you said that you did not want to do that!

¹⁷ I sent my prophets who were like watchmen.

They told you to listen carefully when the trumpets blow to warn you that your enemies are approaching,

but you did not want to listen.

¹⁸ Therefore, you people in the other nations, listen to this:

Pay attention to what is going to happen to the Israelite people.

¹⁹ Listen, all of you!

I am going to cause disasters to happen to the Israelite people.

That is what will happen to them because they have refused to listen to what I told them.

They have refused to obey my laws.

ULB:

¹⁶ Yahweh says this, ”Stand at the road crossing and look; ask for the ancient pathways.

‘Where is this good way?’ Then go on it and find a resting place for yourselves.

But the people say, ‘We will not go.’

¹⁷ I appointed for you watchmen to listen for the trumpet.

But they said, ‘We will not listen.’

¹⁸ Therefore, nations, listen! See, you witnesses, what will happen to them.

¹⁹ Hear, earth! See, I am about to bring disaster to this people—the fruit of their thoughts.

They paid no attention to my word or law, but they instead rejected it.”

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- good, goodness
- rest
- appoint, appointed
- watch, watchman
- trumpet
- nation
- witness, eyewitness
- earth, earthly
- fruit, fruitful
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- reject

translationNotes:

- **Stand at the road crossing** - Yahweh is speaking to the people of Israel.
- **Stand at the road crossing ... We will not go** - The paths and roads refer to the way that people live their lives. Yahweh wants the people of Israel to ask what would be a good way to live their lives and for them to live that way. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **ask for the ancient pathways** - “ask about what your ancestors did” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **I appointed for you watchmen ... will not listen** - Yahweh describes the prophets as watchmen who were sent to warn the people of danger. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **appointed for you** - The word “you” refers to the people of Israel.
- **to listen for the trumpet** - “listen to the sound of the trumpet.” Yahweh is commanding the people of Israel to pay attention to the warning that he gave them through the prophets.
- **Therefore, nations, listen! See, you witnesses, what will happen to them. Hear, earth!**
See - These three sentences all are telling the people of other nations to witness what Yahweh will do to the rebellious people of Judah. (See: **Parallelism** and **Apostrophe**) “You other nations see what I will do to my people”
- **I am about to bring disaster to this people** - “soon I will punish these people severely”
- **you witnesses** - “you who are witnesses”
- **will happen to them** - The word “them” refers to the people of Israel.
- **Hear, earth** - AT: “Hear, people that live on the earth.” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **the fruit of their thoughts** - Yahweh uses the word “fruit” as a way of referring to the result of their thoughts. AT: “the disaster is the consequence of their thoughts.”
- **They paid no attention to my word or law, but they instead rejected it** - “They did not obey what I told them to do.” (See: **Parallelism**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 6:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ You Israelite people, when you burn frankincense that came from Sheba
 and when you offer to me sweet-smelling anointing oil that came
 from far away,
 I will not be pleased with your sacrifices.
 I will not accept the sacrifices that are completely burned on the altar;
 I am not pleased with any of your sacrifices.

²¹ Therefore, I will put obstacles on the roads on which my people will travel.
 Men and their sons and people's neighbors and friends will stumble
 over those obstacles and fall down;
 everyone will die."

²² Yahweh also says this,
 "You will see a huge army marching toward you from the north.
 An army of a great nation very far away is preparing to attack you.

ULB:

²⁰ "What does this frankincense going up from Sheba mean to me? Or these
 sweet smells from a distant land?

Your burnt offerings are not acceptable to me, nor are your sacrifices.

²¹ So Yahweh says this, 'See, I am about to place a stumbling block against
 this people.

They will stumble over it—fathers and sons together. Inhabitants and their
 neighbors will also perish.'

²² Yahweh says this, 'See, a people is coming from a northern land.

For a great nation has been stirred up to come from a distant land.

translationWords:

- frankincense
- Sheba

- burnt offering, offering by fire
- sacrifice, offering
- stumbling block, stone of stumbling
- people of God, my people
- stumble
- neighbor
- perish, perishing, perishable
- Yahweh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation

translationNotes:

- **What does this frankincense going up from Sheba mean to me? Or these sweet smells from a distant land?** - AT: "I do not want frankincense from Sheba or the good smelling oil from a land far away." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **these sweet smells** - This sweet smells were used to worship God at the temple.
- **are not acceptable to me** - "do not please me" or "do not make me happy"
- **See** - The word "See" here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: "Indeed"
- **I am about to place a stumbling block against this people** - "I am about to put obstacles in front of this people." Yahweh describes the difficulties that he will give to the people of Israel as "stumbling blocks." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **stumbling block** - difficulties
- **over it** - "over them"
- **fathers and sons together** - AT: "fathers and sons with both stumble." (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **Inhabitants and their neighbors** - "Neighbors and their friends"
- **been stirred up to come from a distant land** - "has become active in order to come from places far to the north"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 6:23-24**UDB:**

²³ They have bows and arrows and spears;

they are very cruel, and do not act mercifully to anyone.

As they ride along on their horses,

the horses' feet sound like the roaring of the ocean waves;

they are riding in battle formation

to attack you people of Jerusalem.”

²⁴ The people of Jerusalem say to each other,

”We have heard reports about the enemy;

so we are very frightened, with the result that we are weak.

We are very afraid, and worried,

like women who are about to give birth to babies.

ULB:

²³ They will pick up bows and spears. They are cruel and have no compassion. Their sound is like the sea roar,

and they are riding on horses in formation as fighting men, daughter of Zion.”

²⁴ We have heard the news about them. Our hands fall limp in distress. Anguish seizes us as a woman bearing a child.

translationWords:

- bow and arrow
- spear
- compassion, compassionate
- horse
- Daughter of Zion
- anguish

translationNotes:

- **They will pick up** - “They will be holding.” The word “They” refers to the people in the army of the nation that will come from the north.
- **Their sound is like the sea roar** - AT: “The sound that they make is a loud roar like the sound of the ocean.” (See: [Simile](#))
- **in formation as fighting men** - “the army is organized so that the men are ready for battle”
- **daughter of Zion** - “against you, daughter Zion” or “in order to attack you, daughter of Zion.” See how you translated “daughter of Zion” in [4:31](#).
- **We have heard** - The word “We” probably refers Jeremiah speaking for all the people of Judah.
- **fall limp in distress** - “are limp because we are anxious”
- **Anguish seizes us** - AT: “We are in anguish.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **as a woman bearing a child** - “like a woman who is giving birth” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 6:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ So, do not go out into the fields! Do not go on the roads,

because the enemy soldiers have swords and they are everywhere;

they are coming from all directions, and we are extremely afraid.”

²⁶ So I, Jeremiah, say say to you, ”My dear people, put on rough clothes and sit in ashes to show that you are sorry for your sins.

Mourn and cry very much,

as a woman would cry if her only son had died.

For your enemies are very near,

and they are going to destroy everything. Prepare for your own funerals.”

ULB:

²⁵ Do not go out to the fields, and do not walk on the roads,

for the swords of the enemy and terror are all around.

²⁶ Daughter of my people, fasten on sackcloth and roll about in the dust of a funeral for an only child.

Perform a bitter funeral for yourself, for the destroyer will come suddenly upon us.

translationWords:

- sword
- adversary, enemy
- terror, terrify
- sackcloth
- ash, ashes, dust
- destroyer

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is probably Yahweh speaking to the daughter of Zion who represents all of the people of Jerusalem.

- **Daughter of my people** - See how you translated this in [4:11](#).
- **fasten on sackcloth and roll about in the dust of a funeral for an only child.** - “Be very sad”
- **for the destroyer will come suddenly upon us** - “because the enemy army will suddenly come to attack us.” Jeremiah says these words to the people of Jerusalem.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 6:27-30**UDB:**

²⁷ Then Yahweh said to me,

”Jeremiah, I have caused you to become like someone who heats metal very hot to completely burn the impurities.

You will examine my people’s behavior.

²⁸ You will find out that they are very stubborn rebels:

they are always slandering others.

Their inner beings are as hard as bronze or iron;

they all continually deceive others.

²⁹ A metalworker causes the bellows to blow very hard to make the fire very hot to completely burn up the impurities.

But just as a fire does not cause all the waste material to run off,

it is impossible to separate the people from their wicked deeds.

³⁰ I, Yahweh, have rejected them;

I say that they are like worthless silver.”

ULB:

²⁷ ”I have made you, Jeremiah, one who tests my people like one would test metal, so you will inspect and test their ways.

²⁸ They are all the most stubborn of people, who go about slandering others.

All of them are bronze and iron, acting corruptly.

²⁹ The bellows are scorched by the fire that is burning them; the lead is consumed in the flames.

The refining continues among them, but it is useless, because the evil is not removed.

³⁰ They will be called rejected silver, for Yahweh has rejected them.”

translationWords:

- Jeremiah
- people of God, my people
- test

- stiff-necked, stubborn
- slander, slanderer
- bronze
- corrupt, corruption
- fire
- consume
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- call, calling, called, call out
- reject
- silver
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **one who tests my people like one would test metal** - “a person who will test my people.” Yahweh is comparing Jeremiah to a person who tests silver to find out how pure it is. The people are like the silver that Jeremiah is testing and their sins are the impurities in the silver. (See: [Simile](#))
- **will inspect** - “will discover”
- **their ways** - AT: “the things that they do.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **who go about slandering others** - “and constantly slander other people”
- **bronze and iron** - Neither of these metals are the silver that Yahweh wants. Silver represents the righteousness that Yahweh desires. AT: “impure and wicked.”
- **The bellows are scorched by the fire that is burning them; the lead is consumed in the flames** - The fire that refines the silver is so hot that it burns the bellows. (Bellows are a device used to blow large amounts of air into a burning fire.) A refiner adds lead to silver ore in order to draw out impurities, but the refiner has run out of lead. These phrases emphasize that the refiner is working very hard to refine the silver.
- **The refining continues among them** - “The refiner continues to refine”
- **because the evil is not removed** - AT: “because the bad parts do not go away.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **They will be called rejected silver** - AT: “People will call them ‘worthless silver’”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 7:29-34, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Justice in society

Jeremiah commanded the people of Jerusalem to live justly. Without justice, they did not truly have faith in Yahweh. Without this faith in Yahweh, the temple and its rituals were useless. (See: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faith](#) and [temple](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Do not pray for this people”

Yahweh wanted the people to repent. This statement, the others that follow, may be taken in another way. They are intended to show that it is too late for the people, and their punishment will come regardless of their response. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 07:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 7:1-2

UDB:

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said to me, ² "Go to the entrance of my house and give this message to the people: You people of Judah, who worship here, listen to this message from Yahweh.

ULB:

7 ¹ This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh, ² "Stand at the gate of Yahweh's house and proclaim this word! Say, 'Hear the word of Yahweh, all you of Judah, you who enter these gates to worship Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [word](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [worship](#)

translationNotes:

- **This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh** - "This is the message that Yahweh sent to Jeremiah"
- **this word** - the message that Yahweh is just about to give to Jeremiah
- **Stand ... Say** - Yahweh is giving these commands to Jeremiah.
- **to worship Yahweh** - "in order to worship Yahweh"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7:3-4

UDB:

³ This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says to you: 'If you improve your ways and start doing what is right, I will allow you to remain living in your land. ⁴ But some people are repeatedly saying to you, 'The temple of Yahweh is here, so we will be safe; he will not allow us and the temple to be destroyed.' But do not pay attention to what they say, because they are deceiving you.

ULB:

³ Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: Make your ways and practices good, and I will let you continue to live in this place. ⁴ Do not entrust yourself to deceitful words and say, "Temple of Yahweh! Temple of Yahweh! Temple of Yahweh!"

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- good, goodness
- life, live, living, alive
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- word
- temple
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the message that Yahweh wants Jeremiah to give to the people of Judah.
- **Make your ways and practices good** - "Lead a good life and do good deeds"
- **this place** - This refers to the land of Israel, which has the temple as its center.
- **Do not entrust yourself to deceitful words and say** - "Do not let yourselves trust in false words by saying"
- **Temple of Yahweh! Temple of Yahweh! Temple of Yahweh!** - The people repeat this phrase three times to emphasize the point. It is implied that, since the temple belongs to Yahweh, he will be able to protect it and the people of Judah will be safe. AT: "This is the temple of Yahweh so it is absolutely certain that no one can destroy it and we are safe." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7:5-7

UDB:

⁵ I will act mercifully to you only if you change your behavior and stop doing evil things, and if you start to act fairly toward others, ⁶ and if you stop oppressing foreigners who live in your country, and orphans and widows, and if you stop murdering people and worshiping foreign gods. ⁷ If you do what I have told you, I will allow you to stay in this land that I promised to your ancestors long ago that it would belong to them and their descendants forever.

ULB:

⁵ For if you actually make your ways and practices good; if you completely execute justice between a man and his neighbor— ⁶ if you do not exploit the one staying in the land, the orphan, or the widow and do not pour out innocent blood in this place, and do not walk after other gods to your own harm— ⁷ then I will let you stay in this place, in the land that I gave to your ancestors from ancient times and forever.

translationWords:

- good, goodness
- just, justice, justly
- neighbor
- innocent
- blood
- walk
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- forever

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words to the people of Judah.
- **if you completely** - "if you actually"
- **make your ways and practices good** - See how you translated this in [7:3](#).
- **if you completely execute justice** - "if you treat people fairly"
- **if you do not exploit the one staying** - "treat fairly the foreigners who are staying"
- **orphan** - children whose fathers has died
- **do not pour out innocent blood** - AT: "do not kill innocent people." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **do not walk after** - AT: "do not worship." (See: [Idiom](#))
- **to your own harm** - "so that bad things happen to you"
- **this place** - This refers to the land of Israel, which has the temple as its center.
- **will let you stay** - "will let you live"

- **and forever** - “and forever into the future”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7:8-11

UDB:

⁸ People are repeatedly telling you, ‘The temple is here, so we are safe,’ and you are trusting that what they are saying is true. But those people are deceiving you; what they say is worthless. ⁹ You think that you can steal things, murder people, commit adultery, tell lies in court, and worship Baal and all those other gods that you did not know about previously. ¹⁰ Then you think you can come here and stand in front of this temple, which is my temple, and say ‘Nothing bad will happen to us!’, while you continue to do all those disgusting things. ¹¹ Perhaps you do not know that you have made this temple, which is my temple, to become like a cave where thieves hide. But I, Yahweh, am telling you that I have seen all these things!

ULB:

⁸ Behold! You are trusting in deceitful words that do not help you. ⁹ Do you steal, kill, and commit adultery? Do you swear deceitfully and offer incense to Baal and walk after other gods whom you have not known? ¹⁰ Then do you come and stand before me in this house where my name is proclaimed and say, “We are saved,” so you can do all of these abominations? ¹¹ Is this house, which carries my name, a den of bandits in your eyes? But behold, I have seen it—this is Yahweh’s declaration.’

translationWords:

- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- oath, swear, swear by
- incense
- Baal
- know, knowledge, make known
- house
- name
- proclaim, proclamation
- save, safe
- abomination, abominable
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Judah through the prophet Jeremiah.

- **Behold!** - The word “Behold” shows that the following questions are very important.
- **You are trusting in deceitful words that do not help you.** - “You think that I will save Jerusalem because I will protect my temple. But that is a lie!”
- **Do you steal, kill, and commit adultery?** - “You steal, kill, and commit adultery” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Do you swear deceitfully and offer incense to Baal and walk after other gods whom you have not known?** - “You lie even in your oaths and worship Baal and other new gods.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Then do you come and stand before me in this house where my name is proclaimed and say, “We are saved,” so you can do all of these abominations?** - “Then you come to my house and say ‘Yahweh will save us’ so that you can continue to sin greatly.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Is this house, which carries my name, a den of bandits in your eyes?** - “This house is ... a den of bandits in your eyes!” or “You act as though you think my house ... should be a place where bandits can go to hide!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **bandits** - “robbers” or “people who steal things from others”
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [:en:bible:notes:jer:01:07|1:8].

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7:12-15

UDB:

¹² Long ago I put my sacred tent in the district of Shiloh, to be a place where people would worship me. Think about how I destroyed it because my people, the Israelite people, did many wicked things there. ¹³ And while you were continually doing those wicked things, I told you about it many times, but you refused to listen. I called out to you, but you refused to answer me. ¹⁴ Therefore, just as I destroyed Shiloh, I will now destroy this temple that was built for people to worship me, this temple that you trust in, in this place that I gave to you and your ancestors. ¹⁵ And I will expel you from this land and send you to other countries far away from me, just as I did to your relatives, the people of Israel.”

ULB:

¹² ‘So go to my place that was in Shiloh, where I allowed my name to stay there in the beginning, and look at what I did to it because of the wickedness of my people Israel. ¹³ So now, on account of your doing all of these practices—this is Yahweh’s declaration—I spoke to you time and time again, but you did not listen. I summoned you, but you did not answer. ¹⁴ Therefore, what I did to Shiloh, I will also do to this house that is called by my name, the house in which you have trusted, this place that I gave to you and your ancestors. ¹⁵ For I will send you out from before me just as I had sent out all your brothers, all the descendants of Ephraim.’

translationWords:

- Shiloh
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- people of God, my people
- house
- send, send out, sent
- brother
- descendant, descended from
- Ephraim

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to Judah through the prophet Jeremiah.
- **So go to** - AT: “So remember” or ” So think about”
- **on account of your doing all of these practices** - “because you were doing all of those things”
- **time and time again** - “again and again”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ Yahweh said to me, "Jeremiah, do not pray for these people any longer. Do not call out on their behalf or plead for me to help them, because I will not pay any attention to you. ¹⁷ Do you see the wicked things that they are doing in the streets of Jerusalem and in the other towns in Judah? ¹⁸ The children gather firewood and their fathers make fires on the altars to burn sacrifices. The women knead dough to make cakes to offer to their goddess Asherah who is called the Queen of Heaven. And on their altars they pour out offerings of wine to their other idols. All of those things cause me to become extremely angry!

ULB:

¹⁶ As for you, Jeremiah, do not pray for this people, and do not lift up a lamenting wail or say a prayer on their behalf, and do not petition me, for I will not listen to you. ¹⁷ Do you not see what they are doing in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem? ¹⁸ The children are gathering wood and the fathers kindling the fire! The women are kneading dough to make cakes for the queen of the heavens and pour out drink offerings for other gods so that they will provoke me.

translationWords:

- Jeremiah
- pray, prayer
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- lament, lamentation
- Judah
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, forefather
- fire
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- drink offering

translationNotes:

- **do not pray for this people, and do not lift up a lamenting wail or say a prayer on their behalf, and do not petition me** - These four clauses say the same thing. AT: "do not pray to me asking me to bless these people" (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **do not lift up a lamenting wail** - "do not cry out with sadness"
- **on their behalf** - "for their benefit" or "in their interest"
- **do not petition me** - "do not ask me"
- **will provoke me** - "will anger me"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ But I am not the one whom they are hurting; they are really hurting themselves by doing these things for which they should be very ashamed!" ²⁰ So Yahweh the Lord says this: "Because I am extremely angry with what happens at this place, I will punish these people severely; my being very angry will be like a fire that will not be extinguished, and I will destroy the people, their animals, their fruit trees, and their crops."

ULB:

¹⁹ Are they truly provoking me?—this is Yahweh's declaration—is it not themselves whom they are provoking, so that shame is on them? ²⁰ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 'See, my anger and wrath will gush out onto this place, on both man and beast, on the tree in the fields and the fruit on the ground. It will burn and never be extinguished.'

translationWords:

- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)

translationNotes:

- **truly provoking me? ... they are provoking** - "truly troubling me? ... they are troubling"
- **Are they truly provoking me?** - AT: "They are not really troubling me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **is it not themselves whom they are provoking, so that shame is on them?** - AT: "They trouble themselves by their shameful behavior."
- **See** - This word call attention to what follows, AT: "Listen carefully because this is important"
- **my anger and wrath will gush out onto this place** - AT: "I will punish the people of this place."
- **anger and wrath** - These words mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of his anger. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **It will burn** - The word "it" refers to "Yahweh's anger and wrath".
- **never be extinguished** - "never stop burning" or "never stop being angry"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 07 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 7:21-23

UDB:

²¹ Therefore, this is what Yahweh, commander of the armies of angels, the God of Israel, says: "Take away your offerings that you bring to burn completely on your altars and your other sacrifices; do not give them to me; eat them yourselves!" ²² When I led your ancestors out of Egypt, it was not offerings to be completely burned on the altar or other sacrifices that I wanted from them. ²³ What I told them was, 'Obey me; if you do that, I will be your God and you will be my people. If you do the things that I want you to do, everything will go well for you.'

ULB:

²¹ Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel says this, 'Add your burnt offerings to your sacrifices and the meat from them.' ²² For when I brought your ancestors out from the land of Egypt, I did not require anything from them. I gave them no command about matters of burnt offerings and sacrifices. ²³ I only gave them this command, "Listen to my voice, and I will be your God and you will be my people. So walk in all the ways that I am commanding you, so that it may go well with you."

translationWords:

- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [voice](#)

translationNotes:

- **Add your burnt offerings to your sacrifices and the meat from them.** - Although Yahweh required sacrifices, he no longer wanted their sacrifices because the people remained disobedient after coming to the Temple. (See: [Irony](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7:24-26

UDB:

²⁴ But your ancestors would not pay any attention to me. They continued to do the evil things that they wanted to do, everything that in their stubborn inner beings they desired to do. Instead of coming closer to me, they went further away from me. ²⁵ From the day that your ancestors left Egypt until now, I have continued to send my prophets to you repeatedly. ²⁶ But you, my people, have not listened to me or paid attention to what I said; you have been stubborn, and you have done more sinful things than your ancestors did.”

ULB:

²⁴ But they did not listen or pay attention. They lived by their own stubborn plans of their wicked hearts, so they went backwards, not forward. ²⁵ Ever since the day when your ancestors went out from the land of Egypt until this day, I have sent every one of my servants, my prophets, to you. I persisted in sending them. ²⁶ But they did not listen to me. They paid no attention. Instead, they hardened their necks. They were more wicked than their ancestors.’

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- stiff-necked, stubborn
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- heart
- Egypt, Egyptian
- send, send out, sent
- servant, slave, slavery
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- hard, hardness, harden

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to remind the people of Judah of the way that the people of Israel rebelled.
- **by their own stubborn plans of their wicked hearts** - “according to their own plans because they were wicked and stubborn”
- **so they went backwards, not forward** - “and so they turned their backs to me and not their faces.” AT: “and so they refused to pay attention to me, instead of eagerly obeying me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **every one of my servants** - “all of my servants”
- **persisted in sending them** - “diligently sent them every day”

- **my prophets, to you** - The word “you” refers to the people of Judah and all of their ancestors.
- **they did not listen** - The word “they” refers to all of the people of Israel had lived since their ancestors came out of Egypt.
- **hardened their necks** - AT: “stubbornly refused to listen.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **They were more wicked** - “Each generation was more wicked”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7:27-28

UDB:

²⁷ Then Yahweh said to me, "When you tell all this to my people, they will not listen to you. When you call to them, they will not answer. ²⁸ Say to them, 'You people of Judah have not obeyed Yahweh, your God; you have not accepted it when he tried to correct you. No one among you is truthful; you do not say anything that is true; you speak only lies.'

ULB:

²⁷ So proclaim all these words to them, but they will not listen to you. Proclaim these things to them, but they will not answer you. ²⁸ Say to them This is a nation that does not listen to the voice of Yahweh its God and does not receive discipline. Truth is destroyed and cut off from their mouths.

translationWords:

- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [nation](#)
- [receive](#)
- [discipline, self-discipline](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)
- [cut off](#)

translationNotes:

- **So proclaim all these words to them, but they will not listen to you. Proclaim these things to them, but they will not answer you.** - These two sentences say the same thing, The second emphasizes the message of the first. AT: "Tell them my message but the will not listen and change their evil ways." (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **the voice of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [3:25](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Truth is destroyed and cut off from their mouths** - These two sentences have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. AT: "The people tell only lies" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ So, tell them to cut off their hair to show that they are mourning; tell them to go up into the barren hills and sing a sad funeral song,

Because I have completely rejected this generation of people who have made me angry.” ³⁰ Yahweh says this: ”The people of Judah have done many things that I say are evil. They have set up their disgusting idols in my temple, causing it to become an unacceptable place to worship me.

ULB:

²⁹ Cut off your hair and shave yourself, and throw away your hair. Sing a funeral song over the open places.

For Yahweh has rejected and abandoned this generation in his rage. ³⁰ For the sons of Judah have done evil in my eye—this is Yahweh’s declaration—they have set their detestable things in the house where my name is proclaimed, in order to defile it.

translationWords:

- reject
- generation
- rage
- son, son of
- detestable, detest
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- defile, be defiled

translationNotes:

- **sons of Judah** - “descendants of Judah”
- **rejected and abandoned** - These two words share similar meanings and emphasize that Yahweh will have nothing more to do with the people. (See: **Doublet**)
- **abandoned** - “left alone” or “ignored”
- **in my eye** - “in my sight” or “in my thoughts” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in **1:08**.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7:31-32

UDB:

³¹ They have built altars at Topheth in Hinnom Valley outside Jerusalem, and they sacrifice their sons and daughters on those altars. I never commanded them to do that; it was not even in my thoughts! ³² So they should beware! There will be a time when that place will no longer be called Topheth or the Hinnom Valley; instead, it will be called the Valley of Slaughter. There will be a huge number of people who will be buried there, with the result that there will be no space to bury more bodies.

ULB:

³¹ Then they built the high place of Topheth that is in the Valley of Ben Hinnom. They did this to burn their sons and daughters in fire—something that I did not command, nor did it enter my mind. ³² So see, days are coming—this is Yahweh’s declaration—when it will no longer be called Topheth or Valley of Ben Hinnom. It will be the Valley of Slaughter; they will bury bodies in Topheth until there is no room left.

translationWords:

- high places
- fire
- command, to command, commandment
- mind
- biblical time: day
- call, calling, called, call out
- slaughter
- bury, buried, burial
- body

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to describe the evil things that the people of Judah have done.
- **the high place of Topheth** - This is the name of a place where the people of Israel sacrificed their children to a false god by burning them with fire. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the Valley of Ben Hinnom** - This is the name of a valley south of the city of Jerusalem, where people sacrificed to false gods.
- **in fire** - AT: “in fire as sacrifices.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **nor did it enter my mind** - AT: “and I never even thought of commanding it” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **So see** - The word “see” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Indeed”

- **days are coming** - AT: “someday in the future.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **it will no longer be called** - AT: “people will no longer call it.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Valley of Slaughter** - “Valley of Killing”
- **they will bury bodies** - “the people of Judah bury dead people”
- **no room left** - “no space left”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 7:33-34

UDB:

³³ The corpses of my people that are not buried and are left on the ground will be eaten by vultures and wild animals, and there will be no one to shoo them away. ³⁴ There will be no one singing and laughing anymore in the streets of Jerusalem; there will be no more joyful voices of bridegrooms and brides in Judah, because the land will be completely destroyed.”

ULB:

³³ The corpses of this people will be food for the birds of the skies and the beasts of the earth, and there will be no one to frighten them away. ³⁴ I will put an end to the cities of Judah and the streets of Jerusalem, the sounds of exaltation and jubilation, the sounds of the groom and the bride; since the land will become a desolation.”

translationWords:

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [beast](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [bridegroom](#)
- [bride](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak.
- **The corpses** - “The dead bodies”
- **this people** - the people of Judah
- **the birds of the skies** - See how you translated “the birds of the heavens” in [4:25](#).
- **the beasts of the earth** - “the wild animals of the land”
- **to frighten them away** - “to scare them away”
- **I will put an end to** - “I will remove from”
- **the sounds of exaltation and jubilation** - “the sounds of people rejoicing and being happy”
AT: “people there who are happy”
- **the sounds of the groom and the bride** - AT: ”people getting married (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 07 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 07 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 8:5-22, which are extended quotations.

The prophecy revealed to Jeremiah is recorded in 8:5-9:12. Despite covering more than one chapter, this should be seen as one unit. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [reveal, revelation](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Hyperbole

The author frequently uses hyperbole in this chapter to describe the complete destruction of Jerusalem. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 08:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 8:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh says, "After your enemies have destroyed you, then they will break open the graves of your kings and other officials who lived in Judah, and the graves of your priests and prophets and other people who lived there. ² They will take out their bones from their graves and dishonor them by scattering them on the ground under the sun and the moon and the stars—those are the gods which my people loved and served and worshiped. No one will gather up their bones and bury them again; they will remain scattered on the ground like dung. ³ And all the people of this wicked nation who are still alive and whom I have exiled to other countries will say, 'We would prefer to die than to continue to stay alive here in these countries.' That will be true because I, Yahweh, have said it."

ULB:

8 ¹ "At that time—this is Yahweh's declaration—they will bring out from the graves the bones of the kings of Judah and its officials, the bones of the priests and the prophets, and the bones of the inhabitants of Jerusalem. ² Then they will spread them out in the light of the sun and moon and all the stars of the skies; these things in the sky that they have followed and served, that they have walked after and sought, and that they have worshiped. The bones will not be gathered or buried again. They will be like dung on the surface of the earth. ³ In every remaining place where I have driven them, they will choose death instead of life for themselves, all who are still left over from this evil nation—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- tomb, grave, burial place
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- priest, priesthood
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Jerusalem
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- serve, service
- walk
- seek, sought
- worship
- bury, buried, burial
- dung, manure
- earth, earthly
- death, die, dead

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [nation](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah has just told the people of Judah what will happen to the land.
- **At that time** - At the time when the events in [7:32 to 34](#) happen.
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **they will bring** - This word "they" here refers to the people who will destroy Jerusalem.
- **its officials** - "the princes of Judah"
- **will spread them out** - The word "them" refers to the bones of the people of Judah.
- **these things in the sky that they have followed and served** - "these things in the sky that they loved and which they served." The word "they" here refers to the people of Judah.
- **that they have walked after** - AT: "and that they have faithfully obeyed." See how you translated "walked after" in [2:23](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **and sought** - "and that they have inquired of"
- **The bones will not be gathered or buried** - AT: "No one will gather their bones and bury them." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **They will be like dung** - Yahweh is showing how unpleasant they will be. (See: [Simile](#))
- **like dung** - "like manure" or "like poop"
- **on the surface of the earth** - "all over the ground"
- **where I have driven them** - The word "them" refers to the people of Judah.
- **they will choose death instead of life for themselves, all who are still left over from this evil nation** - "those who are still left from this evil family will want to die instead of stay alive"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 8:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Yahweh said to me, "Jeremiah, tell the people that this is what I, Yahweh, am saying to them: 'When people fall down, they get up again, do they not?'"

When people are going along a road and find out that they are walking on the wrong road, they go back and find the correct road, do they not ?

⁵ Yes, they do, so why do these people of Judah continue trusting in those idols that have deceived them?

They continue turning away from me and betray my covenant, even though I have warned them of what will happen.

ULB:

⁴ So say to them, 'Yahweh says this: Does anyone fall and not get up? Does anyone get lost and not try to return?'

⁵ Why has this people, Jerusalem, turned away in permanent faithlessness?

They hold on to treachery and refuse to repent.

translationWords:

- **people group, peoples, the people, a people**
- **Jerusalem**
- **turn, turn away, turn back**
- **faithless, faithlessness**
- **repent, repentance**

translationNotes:

- **So say** - Yahweh is speaking to Jeremiah.
- **to them** - "to the people of Judah"
- **Does anyone fall and not get up?** - AT: "You know that when someone falls, he gets back up." (See: **Rhetorical Question** and **Litotes**).
- **Does anyone get lost and not try to return?** - AT: "When someone is lost, he tries to return to the right path."
- **Why has this people, Jerusalem, turned away in permanent faithlessness?** - Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that the way that the people of Judah are acting does not make sense. AT: "It does not make sense that this people of Jerusalem have turned away in permanent faithlessness."

- **Jerusalem** - The word “Jerusalem” refers to the people of Judah. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **hold on to treachery** - “continue to worship false gods” or “cling to lies”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 8:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ I have listened carefully to what they say, but they do not say what they should say. Not one of them is sorry for having sinned.

No one says, "I have done wicked things." They are sinning and doing what they want to;

Charging into sinful behavior with the excitement of a horse that is running into a battle.

⁷ All the birds that fly south for the winter know the time that they need to fly south,

and they all return at the right time the following year. But my people are not like those birds! They do not know what I, Yahweh, require them to do.

ULB:

⁶ I paid attention and listened, but they did not speak right; no one was sorry for his wickedness,

no one who says, "What have I done?" All of them go where they wish,

like a stallion rushing toward battle.

⁷ Even the stork in heaven knows the right times; and the doves, swifts, and cranes.

They go on their migrations at the right time, but my people do not know Yahweh's decrees.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- time
- dove, pigeon
- people of God, my people
- know, knowledge, make known
- Yahweh
- decree

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking about the people of Judah.
- **did not speak right** - “did not say what is right”
- **for his wickedness** - “because of his wickedness”
- **What have I done** - AT: “I have done a terrible thing.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **All of them go where they wish** - “The entire people continues to run.” Yahweh compares their eagerness to do evil with running. AT: “All of the people continues to eagerly do the same evil.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **like a stallion rushing toward battle** - The people are extremely eager to do evil like a stallion that runs toward a battle because he is very eager to get to the battle. (See: [Simile](#))
- **stallion** - The word “stallion” refers to a male horse.
- **Even the stork in heaven knows the right times; and the doves, swifts, and cranes** - “the birds know when they should leave the cold country for the warm country.
- **stork ... doves, swifts, and cranes** - All of these are different types of birds which fly to a warm place before their other place gets too cold.
- **go on their migrations** - “go from a cold country to a warm country”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 8:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ Your men who teach you the laws that Moses wrote have been saying false things about those laws.

So, why do they continue saying, “We are very wise because we have the laws of Yahweh”?

⁹ Those teachers, who think that they are wise, will be ashamed and dismayed when they are taken to other countries by their enemies

Because they sinned by rejecting what I told them. Truly, they were not very wise to do that!

¹⁰ So, I will give their wives to other men; I will give their fields to the enemy soldiers who conquer them.

All the people, including those who are important and those who are not important and even my prophets and priests, deceive others in order to obtain their possessions.

ULB:

⁸ How can you say, “We are wise, for the law of Yahweh is with us”?

Indeed, see! The deceitful pen of the scribes has created deceit.

⁹ The wise men will be ashamed. They are dismayed and trapped.

See! They reject Yahweh’s word, so what use is their wisdom?

¹⁰ So I will give their wives to others, and their fields to those who will possess them,

for from the youngest to the greatest, all of them are exceedingly greedy!
From the prophet to the priest, all of them practice deceit.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- snare, trap
- reject
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

- possess, possession
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- priest, priesthood

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about the people of Judah.
- **How can you say, "We are wise, for the law of Yahweh is with us"?** - "Why do you say, we are wise! And we have the law of Yahweh?" AT: "You should not say that you are wise and that you have the law of Yahweh." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **How can you say** - The "you" here refers to the people of Judah.
- **The deceitful pen of the scribes has created deceit** - The pen represents the words that the scribes write. AT: "The false things that the scribes have been writing have given you false ideas about the law of Yahweh." (See: [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **The wise men will be ashamed** - "These men who think they are wise will feel ashamed" (See: [Irony](#))
- **They are dismayed and trapped** - "Enemies will defeat them and take them away"
- **so what use is their wisdom?** - AT: "so their so called wisdom does not do them any good."
- **those who will possess them** - "the people who will take control of their land"
- **for from the youngest ... all of them practice deceit** - See how you translated this in [6:13](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 8:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ They act as though the sins of my people are not serious, like wounds that do not need to be cleaned and bandaged.

They tell the people that everything will go well with them, but that is not true; things will not go well with them.

¹² They should be ashamed when they do disgusting things, but they do not even know how to show on their faces that they are ashamed about their sins.

So, they will be killed, and their corpses also will lie among the corpses of others who have been slaughtered by their enemies. They will be killed when I punish them.

¹³ I will allow their enemies to take away the figs and grapes that the people would have harvested from their fields. Their fruit trees will all wither.

They will not receive all the blessings that I prepared for them. This will certainly happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

¹¹ For they treated the fracture of the daughter of my people as if it were a trivial thing.

They said, “Peace, Peace,” but there was no peace.

¹² Were they ashamed when they practiced abominations? They were not ashamed. They had no humility. So they will fall at the time of their punishment, with those who have already fallen. They will be overthrown, says Yahweh.

¹³ I will remove them completely—this is Yahweh’s declaration—there will be no grapes on the vine, nor will there be figs on the fig trees. For the leaf will wither, and what I have given to them will pass away.

translationWords:

- people of God, my people
- peace, peaceful
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- abomination, abominable
- humble, humility

- [punish, punishment](#)
- [grape](#)
- [vine](#)
- [fig](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about the people of Judah.
- **For they treated the fracture of the daughter of my people ... says Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:14-15](#).
- **the leaf will wither** - "the leaf will dry up"
- **and what I have given to them will pass away** - The meaning of the hebrew is uncertain. Possible meanings are 1) "I gave instructions to my people, but my people disobeyed the instructions" or 2) "therefore, I have given these people over to their enemies, so their enemies can trample over them."

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 8:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Then the people will say, "Why should we wait here in these small towns? We should go to the cities that have high walls around them, but even if we do that we will be killed there,

Because Yahweh our God has decided that we must be destroyed; it is as though he has given us a cup of poison to drink, because we sinned against him.

¹⁵ We hoped that things would go well for us, but things have not gone well.

We hoped that we would recover and be strong again, but only things that terrify us are happening to us.

ULB:

¹⁴ Why are we sitting here? Come together; let us go to the fortified cities, and we will become silent there in death.

For Yahweh our God will silence us. He will make us drink poison, since we have sinned against him.

¹⁵ We are hoping for peace, but there will be nothing good.

We are hoping for a time of healing, but see, there will be terror.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- peace, peaceful
- heal, cure
- terror, terrify

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues his message by telling us what the people of Judah will say at the time of their punishment.
- **Why are we sitting here** - AT: "We should not stay here." (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **Come together; let us go to the fortified cities** - See how you translated this in **4:5**.
- **fortified cities** - "the cities with high walls and soldiers to defend it"
- **and we will become silent there in death** - AT: "and we will die there." (See: **Euphemism**)
- **For Yahweh our God will silence us** - AT: "because Yahweh our God will put us to death."

- **He will make us drink poison** - “He will make us drink poison” refers to God’s judgment.
(See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **but see, there will be** - “but understand, there will be”
- **but there will be nothing good** - “but nothing good will happen”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 8:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ People far north in the Israelite city of Dan can already hear the snorting of the horses of those who are preparing to attack us. It is as though the entire land is shaking as their army approaches;

they are coming to destroy our land and everything in it, the people and the cities.”

¹⁷ Yahweh says, ”I will send those enemy soldiers to Judah, and they will be like poisonous snakes among you.

No one will be able to stop them from attacking you; they will attack you like snakes do, and kill you.”

ULB:

¹⁶ The snorting of his stallions is heard from Dan. The whole earth shakes at the sound of the neighing of his strong horses.

For they will come and consume the land and its wealth, the city and the ones living in it.

¹⁷ For see, I am sending out snakes among you, vipers that you cannot charm.

They will bite you—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- Dan
- earth, earthly
- horse
- consume
- send, send out, sent
- serpent, snake, viper

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues his message about the punishment coming to Judah.
- **The snorting of his stallions is heard from Dan** - AT: “People in Dan hear the sound of the enemy army coming to attack Judah.” (See: **Active or Passive** and **Metaphor**)
- **stallions** - male horses

- **The whole earth shakes** - AT: “The people of the land shake with fear” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **at the sound of the neighing of his strong horses** - “when they hear the sound of the enemy’s strong horses”
- **neighing** - the sound that a horse makes
- **For they will come** - The word “they” refers to the invading army.
- **and consume the land** - “and destroy the land.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **I am sending out snakes among you** - The snakes represent the enemy soldiers. AT: “I am sending out enemy soldiers to fight you.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **vipers that you cannot charm** - AT: “vipers that you cannot send away with magic.”
- **vipers** - a kind of snake that is poisonous and has large fangs
- **They will bite you** - AT: “They will attack you” or “They will destroy you.”
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 8:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ My grief for the people of Judah has overwhelmed any sense of happiness. I am very sad in my inner being.

¹⁹ Throughout our land, the people ask, "Has Yahweh abandoned Jerusalem?

Is he, our city's king, no longer there?" Yahweh replies, "If they want me to be in Jerusalem, why do the people worship idols and foreign gods?"

ULB:

¹⁸ My sorrow has no end, and my heart is sick.

¹⁹ See! The screaming voice of the daughter of my people from a far distant land! Is not Yahweh in Zion?

Or is not her king in her? Why then would they offend me with their carved figures and foreign worthless idols?

translationWords:

- heart
- voice
- Zion, Mount Zion
- king
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- idol, idolatrous

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah and Yahweh have a conversation about the people of Judah.
- **My sorrow has no end, and my heart is sick** - This difficult passage in Hebrew is interpreted in different ways by modern versions.
- **My sorrow has no end** - The word "my" refers to Jeremiah. AT: "I am very sad." (See: **Hyperbole**)
- **and my heart is sick** - The word "my" refers to Jeremiah. AT: "I feel sick deep down inside me." (See: **Synecdoche**)

- **See! The screaming voice of the daughter of my people from a far distant land!** - Jeremiah is speaking about the people of Judah. Possible meanings are 1) “The people of Judah call out from exile in a far-away land” or 2) “The people of Judah call out from all over the land of Israel.”
- **daughter of my people** - Israel as a daughter. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Is not Yahweh in Zion** - Jerusalem is referred to as Zion. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Is not Yahweh in Zion? Or is not her king in her?** - Jeremiah tells what the people of Judah are saying. The two parallel questions show that the people of Judah are wondering why Yahweh is not saving them. AT: “Why does Yahweh not save us if he is the king in Jerusalem?” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Why then would they offend me with their carved figures** - The word “me” refers to Yahweh. AT: “If they want me to save them, then they must not offend me by worshiping their idols.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 8:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ The people say, “The harvest season is finished, the summer has ended, but Yahweh still has not rescued us from our enemies.”

²¹ I cry because my people have been crushed. I mourn, and I am completely dismayed.

²² I ask, “Surely there is medicinal balm in the region of Gilead! Surely there are doctors there!”

But my people have been badly wounded in their spirits, and nothing can heal them.

ULB:

²⁰ The harvest has passed on, summer is over. But we have not been saved.

²¹ I am hurt because of the hurt of the daughter of my people. I mourn at the horrible things that have happened to her; I am dismayed.

²² Is there no medicine in Gilead? Is there no healer there?

Why will the healing of the daughter of my people not happen?

translationWords:

- harvest
- save, safe
- wrong, mistreat, hurt
- mourn, mourning
- Gilead
- heal, cure

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues talking about the people of Judah.
- **The harvest has passed on** - “Harvest time is over”
- **But we have not been saved** - Jeremiah tells what the people of Judah are saying. The word “we” refers to the people of Judah. AT: “But Yahweh has not saved us.” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **I am hurt because of the hurt of the daughter of my people** - The word “I” refers to Jeremiah. AT: “I feel very upset because the people of Judah are experiencing horrible things.” (See: **Idiom**)

- **Is there no medicine in Gilead? Is there no healer there?** - AT: “There is medicine in Gilead! There are doctors in Gilead!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Why will the healing of the daughter of my people not happen** - AT: “But my people have spiritual wounds that medicine and doctors cannot heal.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 9:1-12, 17-24, which are extended quotations.

The prophecy revealed to Jeremiah is recorded in 8:5-9:12. Despite covering more than one chapter, this should be seen as one unit. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Funeral

This chapter pictures Jerusalem as having a funeral with its typical songs. This is an image used to describe the describe their destruction. It is a time of great sadness.

Circumcision

Circumcision is used here in an unusual way. Since circumcision was intended to be a display of faith, the author uses the term to differentiates between those who have faith in Yahweh and those who don't. This is a type of metaphor. Those who have a circumcised heart have faith in Yahweh while those with an uncircumcised heart do not have faith in Yahweh, regardless of whether they are physically circumcised. (See: [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#), [faith](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 09:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 9:1-3**UDB:**

¹ "I wish that my head could produce as many tears as water from a spring, and that my eyes were like a fountain of tears,

since I cry night and day for all of my people who have been killed by their enemies.

² I wish that I could leave my people and forget them, and go and live in a shack in the desert,

because they have not remained faithful to Yahweh; they are a mob of people who deceive others.

³ They use their tongues to tell lies just as people shoot arrows with bows.

They are powerful, but not because they are faithful, but they go about doing wicked things. "They do not know me," Yahweh says.

ULB:

⁹ ¹ If only my head could produce water, and my eyes be a fountain of tears!
For I wish to weep day and night for those among the daughter of my people who have been killed.

² If only someone would give me a place for travelers in the wilderness to stay, where I could go to abandon my people.

If only I could leave them, since all of them are adulterers, a band of traitors!

³ Yahweh declares, "They tread on their bows of lies with their tongues,
but it is not because of any faithfulness of theirs that they grow strong on the earth.

They go from wicked act to another. They do not know me."

translationWords:

- fountain, spring
- desert, wilderness
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- tongue
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- bow and arrow
- faithful, faithfulness

- earth, earthly
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh and Jeremiah continue talking about the people of Judah.
- **If only my head could produce water, and my eyes be a fountain of tears** - This is Jeremiah speaking. AT: "I wish I could make more tears!" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **day and night** - AT: "all the time." (See: [Merism](#))
- **the daughter of my people** - See how you translated this in [4:11](#).
- **who have been killed** - AT: "whom the enemy has killed." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **If only someone would give me** - This is still Jeremiah speaking. "I wish someone would give me"
- **a place for travelers in the wilderness to stay** - This refers to a building for people traveling in the wilderness, where they can stop and sleep overnight.
- **abandon my people** - "leave my people"
- **a band of traitors** - "a group of people who betray other people"
- **Yahweh declares** - See you translated this same idea in [1:8](#).
- **They tread on their bows of lies with their tongues** - Telling lies is spoken of as being done by the tongues of the wicked. Also, since a spoken lie cannot be taken back, telling lies is spoken of as if it were shooting arrows. Men shooting bows must step on their bows in order to fasten the bowstrings, so liars are referred to here as if they were stringing their bows using their tongues. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **it is not because of any faithfulness of theirs** - This passage implies that these people are not faithful to God. AT: "they are not faithful to Yahweh." (See: [Background Information](#))
- **it is not because of any faithfulness of theirs** - This expression in Hebrew is interpreted by some modern versions as "they are not powerful in the truth."
- **They go from wicked act to another** - Committing one evil action after another is spoken of as if the evildoers were going from one action to another. AT: "They keep doing evil things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 9:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ Do not trust your neighbors and even your brothers! They all are as deceitful as Jacob was.

They slander each other and tell lies about each other.

⁵ They deceive their friends and never tell the truth.

They lie continually and, because of that, they have become skilled liars; they do one oppressive deed after another until they grow tired from sinning so much.

⁶ Jeremiah, everyone living around you is a deceiver. Not one of them will admit that I am God.

ULB:

⁴ Each of you, be on guard against your neighbor and do not trust in any brother.

For every brother is certainly a deceiver, and every neighbor walks in slander.

⁵ Each man mocks his neighbor and does not speak the truth.

Their tongues teach deceitful things. They are exhausted from committing iniquity.

⁶ Your dwelling is in the midst of deception; in their deceit they refuse to acknowledge me. This is Yahweh's declaration."

translationWords:

- neighbor
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- brother
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- walk
- slander, slanderer
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- true, truth, come true
- iniquity
- life, live, living, alive
- acknowledge

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking with Jeremiah about the people of Judah.
- **Each of you** - The word “you” refers to the people of Judah.
- **be on guard against your neighbor and do not trust in any brother** - “be careful not to trust your fellow Israelites, and do not even trust your own brother”
- **every neighbor walks in slander** - Habitually telling lies about each other is spoken of as if it were walking in slander. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Each man mocks his neighbor and does not speak the truth** - “All of the people mock each other, and they do not tell the truth”
- **Their tongues teach deceitful things** - AT: “They teach things that are not true.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **They are exhausted from committing iniquity** - “They are tired from committing so much sin”
- **Your dwelling is in the midst of deception** - Yahweh is speaking to Jeremiah. Living among liars is spoken of as if it were living in the middle of deception. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))[Metaphor](#))
- **in their deceit they refuse to acknowledge me** - “By telling all of these lies, the people of Judah refuse to obey me as God.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **This is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 9:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Therefore I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, say this:

Listen carefully to what I say: I will test my people, like a metalworker puts metal in a hot fire to completely burn out the impure bits.

Because of all the evil things that my people have done, there is absolutely nothing else that I can do.

⁸ What they say injures people like poisoned arrows do.

They say to their neighbors, 'I hope things will go well for you,' while they are planning to kill them.

⁹ Should I not punish them for doing that?

Yes, I should certainly get revenge on the people of a nation that does things like that!"

ULB:

⁷ So Yahweh of hosts says this, "See, I am about to test them. I will examine them.

How else should I act for the daughter of my people?

⁸ Their tongues are sharpened arrows; they speak unfaithful things.

With their mouths they proclaim peace with their neighbors, but with their hearts they lie in wait for them.

⁹ Should I not punish them because of these things—this is Yahweh's declaration—

and should I not avenge myself on a nation that is like this?

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- test
- bow and arrow
- unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- proclaim, proclamation
- peace, peaceful
- neighbor
- heart

- [punish, punishment](#)
- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [nation](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about the people of Judah.
- **daughter of my people** - See how you translated this in [4:11](#).
- **Their tongues are sharpened arrows** - The tongue hurts people with lies in the same way that sharpened arrows hurt people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **With their mouths they proclaim peace with their neighbors** - AT: “They say with their words that they want peace with their neighbors.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **but with their hearts they lie in wait for them** - AT: “but what they really want is to destroy their neighbors.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Should I not punish them because of these things ... should I not avenge myself on a nation that is like this?** - See how you translated similar words in [5:9](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 9:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ So, I will weep and wail for the people who live in the mountains and in the pastures, because those areas will be desolate, and no one will live there. There will be no cattle there to call to each other, and all the birds and wild animals will have fled to other places.

¹¹ Yahweh also says, "I will cause Jerusalem to become a heap of ruins, and only jackals will live there.

I will destroy the towns of Judah, with the result that they will be completely deserted;

no people will live there."

¹² I said, "Only people who are very wise can understand these things.

Only those who have been taught by Yahweh can explain these things to others.

The wise people are the only ones who can explain why the land will be completely ruined

with the result that everyone will be afraid to travel through it."

ULB:

¹⁰ I will sing a song of mourning and wailing for the mountains, and a funeral song will be sung for the meadows.

For they are burned so no one can pass through them. They will not hear the sound of any cattle.

The birds of the skies and the animals have all fled away.

¹¹ So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals.

I will make Judah's cities ruined places without inhabitants."

¹² Who is the wise man that understands this? What does Yahweh's mouth proclaim to him so he might report it?

Why has the land perished? It is destroyed like the wilderness, where there is no one to pass through it.

translationWords:

- [mourn, mourning](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [understand, understanding](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [report](#)
- [perish, perishing, perishable](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about the people of Judah. In verse 12, Jeremiah makes a comment.
- **I will sing a song ... for the meadows** - Yahweh is mourning for the land of Israel as if it were a person who died. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Personification](#))
- **meadows** - “fields where the animals graze”
- **For they are burned** - “Because someone has burned the meadows and pastures.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **They will not hear the sound of any cattle** - “Nobody will hear the sound of cattle”
- **a hideout for jackals** - “a place for jackals to hide”
- **jackals** - fierce wild dogs
- **places without inhabitants** - “places where no people live”
- **Who is the wise man that understands this?** - AT: “If your prophets are really wise, they should know why the land is ruined.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **What does Yahweh’s mouth proclaim to him so he might report it?** - AT: “If Yahweh really speaks to your prophets, they should be able to tell you what Yahweh says about the destruction of the land.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Why has the land perished?** - AT: “But your prophets are not wise and Yahweh does not speak to them, so they do not know why the land is in ruins.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 9:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Yahweh replied, "These things will happen because my people have rejected my laws which I gave to them; they have not obeyed me or my instructions. ¹⁴ Instead, they have stubbornly done the things that they wanted in their inner beings to do. They have worshiped the idols that represent the god Baal, which is what their ancestors did.

ULB:

¹³ Yahweh says, "It is because they have abandoned my law that I set before them, because they do not listen to my voice or walk by it. ¹⁴ It is because they have walked by their stubborn hearts and have followed the Baals as their fathers taught them to do.

translationWords:

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- voice
- walk
- stiff-necked, stubborn
- heart
- Baal
- ancestor, father, forefather

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about the people of Judah.
- **It is because they have abandoned** - "The land is destroyed because the people of Judah did not obey"
- **they do not listen to my voice** - AT: "they do not pay attention to the things I tell them." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **or walk by it** - AT: "or live the way I tell them to live."
- **they have walked by their stubborn hearts** - AT: "they have been stubborn and lived the way they want to live."
- **and have followed the Baals** - "and have worshiped the false gods"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 9:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ So now listen to what I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God of the Israelites, say: What I will do will be like giving these people bitter things to eat and poison to drink: ¹⁶ I will scatter them to many nations which neither they nor their ancestors have known anything about; I will enable their enemies to strike them with swords until I have destroyed them.”

ULB:

¹⁵ Therefore Yahweh of hosts, the God of Israel, says this, 'See, I am about to make this people eat wormwood and drink poisonous water. ¹⁶ Then I will scatter them among the nations that they have not known, neither they nor their ancestors. I will send out a sword after them until I have completely destroyed them.”

translationWords:

- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [nation](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [sword](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about the people of Judah.
- **wormwood** - a plant that tastes bitter
- **Then I will scatter them among the nations** - “Then I will force them to leave here and live in many different countries”
- **I will send out a sword after them** - AT: “I will send an army of soldiers to fight against them.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 9:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says:

”Think about what is happening,

then summon those women who mourn when someone has died.

¹⁸ Tell them to come quickly and start to wail,

with the result that tears will stream down from your eyes.

ULB:

¹⁷ Yahweh of hosts says this, ”Think about this: Summon

funeral singers; let them come. Send out for women skilled at lamenting; let them come.

¹⁸ Let them hurry and sing a mournful song over us,

so our eyes may run with tears and our eyelids flow with water.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- send, send out, sent
- lament, lamentation
- mourn, mourning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh tells the people of Judah to mourn for the coming destruction of the land.
- **Summon funeral singers; let them come. Send out for women skilled at lamenting; let them come** - AT: “Get women who are trained in mourning and bring those women here.” (See: **Parallelism**)
- **Summon funeral singers** - “Call women who are professional singers at funerals”
- **let them come** - AT: “tell the women to come.” (See: **Idiom**)
- **Send out for women skilled at lamenting** - AT: “Send people out to get women who are skilled at mourning.”
- **Let them hurry and sing a mournful song over us** - Yahweh says what the people of Judah will say when the destruction comes. AT: “Tell the women to hurry and sing a song to mourn for us.”

- **so our eyes may run with tears and our eyelids flow with water** - AT: “so we will cry very hard.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 9:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Listen to the people of Jerusalem calling out, saying,

'We have been ruined!

We have experienced a terrible disaster!

Now we are very ashamed,

because our houses have been destroyed by our enemies, and we are being forced to leave our land.'

²⁰ You women, listen to what Yahweh says.

Pay attention to his words.

Teach your daughters to wail.

Teach each other how to sing funeral songs.

ULB:

¹⁹ For the sound of wailing is heard in Zion, 'How we are devastated.

We are greatly ashamed, for we have abandoned the land since they tore down our houses.'

²⁰ So you women, hear Yahweh's word; pay attention to the messages that come from his mouth.

Then teach your daughters a mourning song, and each neighbor woman a funeral song.

translationWords:

- Zion, Mount Zion
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- mourn, mourning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about the people of Judah.
- **For the sound of wailing is heard in Zion** - AT: "People are crying loudly in Jerusalem."
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **How we are devastated** - Yahweh tells what the people of Judah will say when the land is destroyed. AT: “We are very upset.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **We are greatly ashamed, for we have abandoned the land since they tore down our houses** - “Our shame is great, because enemies destroyed our houses and we had to leave the land of Israel”
- **hear Yahweh’s word; pay attention to the messages that come from his mouth** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize the command to listen to what Yahweh says. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **Then teach your daughters a mourning song, and each neighbor woman a funeral song** - These two phrases share similar meanings. They emphasize that the proper response to Yahweh’s message of judgment is mourning. AT: “Then teach other people how to mourn.” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 9:21-22

UDB:

²¹ You must learn to sing funeral songs because people will be dying in your houses and in palaces.

There will be no more children playing in the streets,
there will be no more young men gathering in the city squares.

²² There will be corpses scattered across the fields like dung;
their dead bodies will lie there like grain that has been cut by reapers,
and there will be no one still alive to bury them.

ULB:

²¹ For death has come through our windows; it goes into our palaces.
It destroys children from outside, and young men in the city squares.

²² Declare this, 'This Yahweh's declaration—the corpses of men will fall like
dung in the fields,
and like grain stalks after the reapers, and there will be no one to gather
them.'

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- dung, manure
- grain

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about the people of Judah.
- **For death has come through our windows** - Yahweh says what the people of Judah will say when he destroys the land. The people of Judah will compare death to a person who can climb in windows to attack the people inside. (See: **Personification**)
- **palaces** - fancy houses where kings live. Death will come to rich and poor alike.
- **It destroys children from outside** - "Death is killing children in the streets."
- **and young men in the city squares** - "and death is killing young men in the city squares."
- **city squares** - marketplaces
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in **1:8**.
- **the corpses of men will fall like dung ... like grain stalks after the reapers** - "dead bodies will fall all over the place." (See: **Parallelism**)

- **corpses of men will fall like dung in the fields** - “dead bodies will drop everywhere like animal poop drops all over the fields.” (See: [Simile](#))
- **and like grain stalks after the reapers** - “and like stalks of grain fall everywhere after the farmers cut them down.”
- **and there will be no one to gather them** - “and there will be nobody to gather the dead bodies”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 9:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Yahweh says this:

”Wise men should not boast about their being wise,
strong men should not boast about their being strong;
and rich people should not boast about their being rich.

²⁴ Instead, those who want to boast should boast about their knowing me
and about understanding that I am Yahweh,
that I am kind and just and righteous,
that I faithfully love people,
and that I am delighted with people who act that way.

ULB:

²³ Yahweh says this, ”Do not let the wise man take pride in his wisdom,
or the warrior in his might. Do not let the wealthy man take pride in his
riches.

²⁴ For if a man takes pride in anything, let it be in this, that he has insight
and knows me.

For I am Yahweh, who acts with covenant loyalty, justice and righteousness
on earth. For it is in these that I take pleasure

—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- proud, pride, prideful
- warrior, soldier
- mighty, might
- know, knowledge, make known
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are the words of Yahweh.
- **Do not let the wise man take pride in his wisdom** - “A wise man should not be proud because he is wise”
- **Do not let the wealthy man take pride in his riches** - “A rich man should not be proud because he is rich”
- **that he has insight and knows me** - “that he understands who I am and lives in a way that is pleasing to me”
- **For I am Yahweh** - AT: “Because people should understand that I am Yahweh.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **For it is in these that I take pleasure** - “And it is pleasing to me when people act with covenant loyalty, justice and righteousness”
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 9:25-26

UDB:

25-26 There will be a time when I will punish all those people who have changed their bodies by circumcising them but who have not changed their inner beings: the Egyptian, the Moab, of Edom, and of the Ammon people groups, all those who live close to desert areas far from Judah. I will even punish the people of Israel because they are only circumcised on the outside, and physically, and not on the inside, in their inner self.”

ULB:

²⁵ ”See, days are coming—this is Yahweh’s declaration—when I will punish all the circumcised who are such only in their body. ²⁶ I will punish Egypt and Judah, Edom, the people of Ammon, Moab, and all the people who cut the hair on their heads very short. For all these nations are uncircumcised, and all the house of Israel has an uncircumcised heart.”

translationWords:

- biblical time: day
- punish, punishment
- circumcise, circumcision
- body
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- life, live, living, alive
- desert, wilderness
- nation
- house
- kingdom of Israel
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- heart

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are the words of Yahweh.
- **days are coming** - AT: “There will be a time” (UDB) (See: **Idiom**)
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in **1:8**.

- **when I will punish all the circumcised who are such only in their body** - This refers to the people of Israel who have entered into Yahweh's covenant by getting circumcised physically, but who have not followed his laws.
- **and all the people who cut the hair on their heads very short** - This probably refers to people who cut their hair short in order to honor a pagan god. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **and all the people who cut the hair on their heads very short** - Some modern versions interpret this Hebrew expression as "and all the people who live on the edge of the wilderness."
- **For all these nations are uncircumcised** - Foreigners being uncircumcised was a sign that they were not in Yahweh's covenant. AT: "Because these nations did not enter into a covenant with Yahweh through circumcision."
- **and all the house of Israel has an uncircumcised heart** - An uncircumcised heart represents the character of a person that does not obey Yahweh's laws. AT: "and all the people of Israel have not kept the covenant with Yahweh by obeying him." (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 10:1-25, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Yahweh's power

This chapter contrasts the great power of Yahweh with the powerlessness of any other false god. It is intended to question why the Jews would worship any other god. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 10:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 10:1-2**UDB:**

¹ You people of Israel, listen to what Yahweh says:

² "Do not act like the people of other nations act, and do not be terrified by strange things that you see in the sky,

even though they cause the people of other nations to be terrified.

ULB:

10 ¹ "Hear the word that Yahweh is announcing to you, house of Israel.

² Yahweh says this, 'Do not learn the ways of the nations,

and do not be dismayed by the signs in the heavens, for the nations are dismayed by these.

translationWords:

- [word](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [nation](#)
- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh has just reminded the people of Judah as well as Egypt, Edom, Ammon, Moab and all people that they will be punished.
- **Do not learn the ways of the nations** - Do not follow what the heathen nations are believing"
- **dismayed** - "worried" or "frightened"
- **by the signs in the heavens** - "by strange things in the sky"
- **for the nations are dismayed by these** - "for the people of the nations are afraid of the strange things they see in the sky" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 10:3-5**UDB:**

³ The customs of the people of other nations are worthless. For example, they cut down a tree in the forest.

Then a skilled worker cuts a section of it and uses his chisel to carve an idol from that section.

⁴ Then people decorate the idol with silver and gold.

Then they fasten it securely with nails in order that it will not topple over.

⁵ Then the idol stands there like a scarecrow in a field of cucumbers.

It cannot speak,
and people must carry it,
because it cannot walk.
Do not be afraid of idols,
because they cannot harm anyone,
and they cannot do anything good to help anyone.”

ULB:

³ For the customs of the peoples are worthless. For someone cuts a tree down in a forest; The hands of a craftsman do this with an ax.

⁴ Then they decorate it with silver and gold. They strengthen it with hammer and nails so it will not fall over.

⁵ These idols are like scarecrows in a cucumber field, for they can say nothing. They have to be carried, for they cannot take any steps at all.

Do not fear them, for they cannot bring about evil, nor are they able to do anything good.”

translationWords:

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- ax
- gold
- idol, idolatrous
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [good, goodness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh has just reminded them not to learn the ways of the nations nor be worried by things that happen in the sky.
- **craftsman** - a man skilled in his work
- **scarecrows** - A scarecrow is a man-like figure made to scare birds and prevent them from eating the crops. (See: [Simile](#))
- **cucumber** - a vegetable that is usually long, with green skin and white flesh that contained much water

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 10:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Yahweh, there is no one like you.

You are great, and you are very powerful.

⁷ You are the king of all the nations!

Everyone should revere you,

because that is what you deserve.

Among all the wise people on the earth

and in all the kingdoms where they live,

there is no one like you.

ULB:

⁶ There is no one like you, Yahweh. You are great, and your name is great in power.

⁷ Who does not fear you, king of the nations? For this is what you deserve, for there is no one like you among all the wise men of the nations or all their royal kingdoms.

translationWords:

- name
- power, powers
- king
- wise, wisdom
- royal
- kingdom

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah has just been talking about idol worship.
- **Who does not fear you, king of the nations?** - Jeremiah does not expect an answer to this question. It is more like a statement. AT: "Everyone should fear you, king of the nations" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **what you deserve** - "what you have earned"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 10:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ Those people who think that they are very wise are stupid and foolish.

The idols that they worship are only made of wood!

Those idols certainly cannot teach them anything.

⁹ People hammer silver from Tarshish and gold from Uphaz into sheets,
and then they give those sheets of silver and gold to skilled workers
to cover the idols.

Then they put on those idols expensive purple robes
that are made by skilled workers.

¹⁰ But Yahweh is the only true God;
he is the all-powerful God,
the king who rules forever.

When he is angry, all the earth shakes;
and the people of the nations cannot endure what he does when
he is angry with them.

ULB:

⁸ They are all the same, they are brutish and stupid, disciples of idols that
are nothing but wood.

⁹ They bring hammered silver from Tarshish, and gold from Uphaz made by
artificers,

the hands of refiners. Their clothes are blue and purple cloth. Their skillful
men made all of these things.

¹⁰ But Yahweh is the true God. He is the living God and eternal king.

The earth quakes at his anger, and the nations cannot endure his anger.

translationWords:

- disciple
- Tarshish
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- true, truth, come true

- God
- life, live, living, alive
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- angry, anger
- endure, endurance

translationNotes:

- **They are all the same, they are brutish and stupid** - The words “brutish” and “stupid” mean basically the same thing and emphasize how foolish the people are for worshiping idols. AT: “Every one of them is very stupid.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **disciples of idols that are nothing but wood.** - “they try to learn from an idol which is just a piece of wood”
- **artificers** - “skilled craftsmen”
- **Tarshish ... Uphaz** - places where silver and gold are mined
- **gold from Uphaz made by artificers, the hands of refiners** - “gold from Uphaz that skilled craftsmen and refiners have made” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Their clothes are blue and purple cloth** - “The people dress the idol in beautiful clothes”
- **quakes** - “shakes”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 10:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ You Israelite people, tell this to those people: “Those idols did not make the sky and the earth, and they will disappear from the earth.”

¹² But Yahweh made the earth by his power;

he made firm ground to stand on by his wisdom

and stretched out the sky by his understanding.

¹³ When he speaks loudly, there is thunder in the sky;

he causes clouds to form over every part of the earth.

He sends lightning with the rain

and releases the winds from his storehouses.

ULB:

¹¹ You will speak to them like this, “The gods that did not make the heavens and earth

will perish from the earth and from under these heavens.”

¹² The maker of earth in his power established dry land in his wisdom and spread the heavens in his understanding.

¹³ His voice makes the roar of waters in the heavens, and he brings up the mists from the ends of the earth.

He makes lightning for the rain and sends out wind from his storehouse.

translationWords:

- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- earth, earthly
- perish, perishing, perishable
- voice
- water, waters
- send, send out, sent

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God is speaking to Jeremiah.
- **The maker of earth in his power established dry land in his wisdom and spread the heavens in his understanding.** - AT: "The Creator is strong and wise. He made the earth and sky."
- **His voice makes the roar of waters in the heavens** - AT: "He controls the storms in the sky by speaking"
- **and he brings up the mists from the ends of the earth** - AT: "He makes clouds everywhere on earth."
- **storehouse** - a building where things are kept

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 10:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ People are as senseless as animals and know nothing of what God desires!

those who make idols are always disappointed

because their idols do nothing for them.

The images that they make are not real gods;

they are lifeless.

¹⁵ Idols are worthless; they are just objects that make a mockery of the true God;

there will be a time when they all will be destroyed.

¹⁶ But the God whom we Israelites worship is not like those idols;

he is the one who created everything that exists;

we, the tribe of Israel, belong to him;

he is the commander of the angel armies.

ULB:

¹⁴ Every man has become ignorant, without knowledge. Every metalworker is put to shame by his idols.

For his cast poured images are frauds; there is no life in them.

¹⁵ They are useless, the work of mockers; they will perish at the time of their punishment.

¹⁶ But God, the portion of Jacob, is not like these, for he is the molder of all things.

Israel is the tribe of his inheritance; Yahweh of hosts is his name.

translationWords:

- know, knowledge, make known
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- works, deeds, work, acts
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- perish, perishing, perishable
- punish, punishment

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [name](#)

translationNotes:

- **has become ignorant** - “is lacking knowledge” or “does not know”
- **the portion of Jacob** - “whom the people of Israel worship”
- **the molder of all things** - “the creator of all things” or “the one who created all things”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 10:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Yahweh says this to the people of Jerusalem:

”The army of your enemies surrounds your city,
so gather up your possessions and prepare to leave the city.

¹⁸ I will soon throw you out of this land
and cause you to experience great troubles,
with the result that you will begin to think of me again.”

ULB:

¹⁷ Gather your bundle and leave the land, you people who have been living under the siege.

¹⁸ For Yahweh says this, ”See, I am about to throw the inhabitants of the land out this time.

I will cause them distress, and they will find it to be so.”

translationWords:

- [siege, besiege](#)

translationNotes:

- **Gather your bundle** - “Gather your belongings”
- **See** - The word “See” is to emphasize the following statement.
- **I am about to throw the inhabitants of the land out this time** - AT: “I will cause the people living in the land to leave that land.”
- **inhabitants of the land** - “people who live in the land”
- **distress** - “great pain or suffering”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 10:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ The people replied, "It is as though we have been badly wounded,

and we are very grieved;

It is as though we have a very serious illness,

and we must endure the pain.

²⁰ It is as though our great tent is destroyed;

the ropes that held it up have been cut;

our children have gone away from us and will not return;

there are no people left to rebuild our great tent.

ULB:

¹⁹ Woe to me! Because of my broken bones, my wound is infected.

So I said, "Surely this is agony, but I must bear it."

²⁰ My tent is devastated, and all of my tent cords are cut in two.

They have taken my children away from me, so they no longer exist. There is no longer anyone to spread out my tent or to raise up my tent curtains.

translationWords:

- woe
- devastate, devastation
- tent
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah is speaking as if he were the whole tribe of Israel. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Woe to me! Because of my broken bones, my wound is infected** - AT: "We are in deep trouble like a person whose bones are broken and infected." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **My tent is devastated, and all of my tent cords are cut in two** - The enemy has completely destroyed my city" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **They have taken** - "the enemies have taken"
- **There is no longer anyone to spread out my tent or to raise up my tent curtains** - AT: There is no one to rebuild our city." (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 10:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Our leaders have become just like animals;

they no longer ask Yahweh to guide them,
so they will no longer prosper,
and all those over whom they rule will be scattered.

²² Listen! Our enemies' armies in the north are making a very great noise
as they march toward us.

The towns in Judah will be destroyed,
and they will become a place where jackals live.”

ULB:

²¹ For the shepherds have become stupid. They do not seek Yahweh.
so they have no success; all their flocks are scattered.

²² The report of news has arrived, ”See! It is coming, a great earthquake is
coming from the land of the north

To make the cities of Judah into ruins, hideouts for jackals.”

translationWords:

- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [report](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)

translationNotes:

- **are scattered** - “are separated and went in different directions”
- **jackals** - a type of wild dog found in Africa

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 10:23-25**UDB:**

²³ Yahweh, I know that no person controls what will happen to him;

no one is able to direct the events that he will experience.

²⁴ So correct us, but do it gently.

Do not correct us when you are angry,

because we would die if you did that.

²⁵ Punish all the nations whose people do not acknowledge that you are God;

punish all the nations whose people do not worship you,

because they are completely destroying us people of Israel

and they are causing our land to soon be only a desert.

ULB:

²³ I know, Yahweh, that a man's path does not come from himself. No person walking directs his own steps.

²⁴ Discipline me, Yahweh, with justice, not in your anger or you would destroy me.

²⁵ Pour your fury on the nations that do not know you and on the families that do not call on your name.

For they have devoured Jacob and consumed him so as to completely destroy him and demolish his habitation.

translationWords:

- discipline, self-discipline
- just, justice, justly
- family
- call, calling, called, call out
- devour
- consume

translationNotes:

- **Pour your fury on the nations** - AT: "Punish the people of the nations severely" (See: **Metonymy**)

- **devoured Jacob and consumed him so as to completely destroy him** - Here the words “devour” and “consume” both mean the same thing as “completely destroy.” Jeremiah repeats this idea three times to emphasize the utter destruction of Israel. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **demolish his habitation** - “demolish the land where he lives”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 11:15-17,20-21, which are extended quotations.

Special concepts in this chapter

The covenant

The covenant Yahweh made with Moses is prominent in this chapter. Because the people disobeyed this covenant, God will not help them. (See: [covenant](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 11:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 11:1-2**UDB:**

¹ This is another message that Yahweh told me: ² "Listen to the agreement that I made with the ancestors of the people of Jerusalem and the other cities in Judah. Then tell that agreement to them again.

ULB:

11 ¹ This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh, and he said, ² "Listen to the words of this covenant, and declare them to each man in Judah and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [word](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **the inhabitants of Jerusalem** - "the people who live in Jerusalem"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 11:3-5**UDB:**

³ Then tell them that I, Yahweh, the God whom the Israelite people worship, said that I will curse everyone who does not obey what was written in that agreement that I made with them. ⁴ It is the same agreement that I made with their ancestors when I brought them out of Egypt. What happened to them in Egypt was terrible; it was as though they were living in a hot furnace. When I brought them out of Egypt, I told them to obey me, and to do everything that I had commanded them to do. I also told them that if they obeyed me, they would be my people and I would be their God. ⁵ Now tell these people that if they obey me, I will do what I promised to do for their ancestors. I will enable them to continue living in this very fertile land in which they now live.”

I replied, “Yahweh, I trust you that what you have said will happen.”

ULB:

³ Say to them, ‘Yahweh, God of Israel says this: Cursed is anyone who does not listen to the words of this covenant. ⁴ This is the covenant that I commanded your ancestors to keep the day I brought them out from the land of Egypt, from the furnace for smelting iron. I said, “Listen to my voice and do all of these things just as I have commanded you, for you will be my people and I will be your God.” ⁵ Obey me so that I may confirm the oath that I swore to your ancestors, the oath that I would give them the land flowing with milk and honey, where you live today.” Then I, Jeremiah, answered and said, “Yes, Yahweh!”

translationWords:

- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- curse, cursed
- command, to command, commandment
- Egypt, Egyptian
- furnace
- voice
- people of God, my people
- obey, obedient, obedience
- confirm, confirmation
- oath, swear, swear by
- honey, honeycomb
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **smelting** - heating iron to liquid form
- **the land flowing with milk and honey** - This means that the land will be rich and productive, so there will be enough food for everyone. AT: “the land that is excellent for cattle and farming” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 11:6-8

UDB:

⁶ Then Yahweh said to me, "Go into the streets of Jerusalem and to the other cities in Judah. Proclaim my message to the people. Tell them to listen to the agreement that I made with their ancestors and to obey it. ⁷ When I brought their ancestors out of Egypt, I solemnly pleaded with them many times to obey me, and I am still pleading with them now. ⁸ But they did not obey me or even pay any attention to me. Everyone continued to be stubborn and to do the evil things that they wanted to do. I commanded them to do what was written in the agreement, but they refused. So I punished them in all the ways that I promised that I would."

ULB:

⁶ Yahweh said to me, "Proclaim all these things in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem. Say, 'Listen to the words of this covenant and carry them them out. ⁷ For I have been giving solemn commands to your ancestors from the day I brought them up from the land of Egypt until this present time, persistently warning them and saying, "Listen to my voice.'" ⁸ But they did not listen or pay attention. Each person has been walking in the stubbornness of his wicked heart. So I brought all the curses in this covenant that I commanded to come against them. But the people still did not obey."

translationWords:

- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [walk](#)
- [stiff-necked, stubborn](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [heart](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

translationNotes:

- **solemn** - "serious"
- **Each person has been walking in the stubbornness of his wicked heart.** - "Each person has refused to change and continues to do the evil things that they want to do"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 11:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Then Yahweh said to me, "The people of Jerusalem and the other cities in Judah are rebelling against me. ¹⁰ Their ancestors refused to do what I told them to do, and now these people have returned to committing the sins that their ancestors committed. They are worshiping other gods. The people of Israel disobeyed the agreement that I made with their ancestors, and now the people of Judah have done the same thing.

ULB:

⁹ Next Yahweh said to me, "A conspiracy has been discovered among the men of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. ¹⁰ They have turned to the iniquities of their earliest ancestors, who refused to listen to my word, who instead walked after other gods to worship them. The house of Israel and the house of Judah broke my covenant that I established with their ancestors.

translationWords:

- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#)
- [worship](#)
- [house](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **conspiracy** - a secret plan to do something that is harmful or illegal
- **the inhabitants of Jerusalem** - "the people who live in Jerusalem"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 11:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ So now I, Yahweh, am warning them that I will cause disasters to come to them, and they will not escape. And when they call out for me to help them, I will not pay attention. ¹² When that happens, the people in Jerusalem and other cities in Judah will offer sacrifices and burn incense to their gods and ask for their help, but those gods will not be able to save them when those disasters come to them. ¹³ There are now as many gods in Judah as there are towns in Judah; the people of Jerusalem have erected as many altars to burn incense to those gods as there are streets in Jerusalem.

ULB:

¹¹ Therefore Yahweh says this, 'See, I am about to bring disaster on them, disaster from which they will not be able to escape. Then they will call out to me, but I will not listen to them. ¹² The cities of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem will go and call out to the gods to which they had given offerings, but they will certainly not be saved by them at the time of their disaster. ¹³ For you Judah, the number of your gods has increased to equal the number of your cities. You have made the number of shameful altars in Jerusalem, incense altars for Baal, equal to the number of her streets.

translationWords:

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [save, safe](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [altar](#)
- [incense](#)
- [Baal](#)

translationNotes:

- See - AT: "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 11:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Jeremiah, do not pray for these people, and do not plead with me to rescue them. If you plead with me, I will not pay attention; and if they call out to me for help when they are in distress, I will not listen to them.”

¹⁵ Then Yahweh said,

”The people of Judah whom I love certainly no longer have a right to come to my temple,

because they continually do many evil things.

They think that continually making sacrifices of meat to me certainly will protect them from disasters,

with the result that they will be able to rejoice.

¹⁶ I previously said that they were like an olive tree full of green leaves

with a lot of good olives on it,

but now I will send their enemies to attack them furiously;

it is as though I will break off their branches, and their city will be destroyed by fire.

ULB:

¹⁴ So you yourself, Jeremiah, must not pray for this people. You must not wail or pray on their behalf. For I will not be listening when they call on me in their disaster.

¹⁵ Why is my beloved one, the one who has had so many wicked intentions, in my house?

The meat of your sacrifices cannot help you. You rejoice because of your evil actions.

¹⁶ In the past Yahweh called you a leafy olive tree, beautiful with lovely fruit.

But he will light a fire on it that will sound like the roar of a storm; its branches will be broken.

translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- beloved
- call, calling, called, call out

- olive
- fruit, fruitful
- fire

translationNotes:

- **So you ... on their behalf** - Translate this the same way you translated “And you ... on their behalf” in 7:16.
- **You must not wail** - “You must not make a loud cry of sadness”
- **Why is my beloved one, the one who has had so many wicked intentions, in my house?** - This question may be expressed as a statement of rebuke. AT: “My beloved one, the one who has had so many wicked intentions, should not be in my house.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Why is my beloved one, the one who has had so many wicked intentions, in my house?** - This passage in Hebrew is very difficult, and many versions interpret it in different ways.
- **house** - temple
- **my beloved one** - The people of Israel are spoken of as if they were a single woman greatly beloved. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **In the past Yahweh called you a leafy olive tree** - In the Old Testament, people were often spoken of as if they were trees or plants. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **will light a fire on it** - This expression continues the metaphor of the tree. The fire stands for the destruction of the people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 11:17**UDB:**

¹⁷ It is as though the people of Judah and Israel were a beautiful olive tree that I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, planted,

but now, by burning incense to their god Baal, they have caused me to become very angry.

So now I have decided to destroy them.”

ULB:

¹⁷ For Yahweh of hosts, the one who planted you, has decreed disaster against you because of the wicked acts that the house of Israel and the house of Judah have committed—they have angered me by giving offerings to Baal.”

translationWords:

- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [decree](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [Baal](#)

translationNotes:

- **the one who planted you** - AT: “the one who placed you to live in the land of Israel and Judah”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 11:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ Yahweh revealed to me that my enemies were planning to kill me. ¹⁹ Before he did that, I was like a lamb that was being led away to be slaughtered; I did not know what they were planning to do. I did not know that they were saying, "Let us get rid of this tree and its fruit," so I did not know that they intended to kill me, in order that no one would remember me.

²⁰ Then I prayed, "Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, you judge people justly,

and you examine everything that we are thinking.

Allow me to watch you getting revenge on the people who want to kill me, because I trust that you will do for me what is right."

ULB:

¹⁸ Yahweh made me know these things, so I know them. You, Yahweh, made me see their deeds. ¹⁹ I was like a gentle lamb being led to a butcher. I did not know that they had formed plans against me, "Let us destroy the tree with its fruit! Let us cut him off from the land of the living so his name will be no longer remembered."

²⁰ Yet Yahweh of hosts is the righteous judge who examines the heart and the mind.

I will witness your vengeance against them, for I have presented my case to you.

translationWords:

- know, knowledge, make known
- works, deeds, work, acts
- lamb, Lamb of God
- fruit, fruitful
- cut off
- life, live, living, alive
- name
- righteous, righteousness
- judge
- heart
- mind
- witness, eyewitness
- avenge, revenge, vengeance

translationNotes:

- **being led to a butcher** - AT: “that my enemies were leading to a butcher” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **his name will be no longer remembered** - AT: “People will no longer remember his name” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 11:21-23

UDB:

²¹ It was the men of my own town, Anathoth, who wanted to kill me, and they told me that they would kill me if I did not stop prophesying what Yahweh told me to say. ²² So Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, said about them, "I will punish them. Their young men will be killed in wars, and their children will die because they have no food. ²³ I have set a time when I will bring disasters to the people of Anathoth, and when that happens, none of them will remain alive."

ULB:

²¹ Therefore Yahweh says this concerning the people of Anathoth who are seeking your life, "They say, 'You must not prophesy in the name of Yahweh, or you will die by our hand.' ²² Therefore Yahweh of hosts says this, 'See, I am about to punish them. Their vigorous young men will die by the sword. Their sons and their daughters will die by famine. ²³ None of them will be left, because I am bringing disaster against the people of Anathoth, a year of their punishment.'"

translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- death, die, dead
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- punish, punishment
- sword
- famine

translationNotes:

- **Anathoth** - a special city for priests to live in (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **vigorous young men** - men at the strongest time of their lives
- **None of them will be left** - AT: "I will leave none of them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 12:1-13, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Jeremiah complains that evil men prosper

Jeremiah complains that evil men prosper. He questions Yahweh's justice. Yahweh's response: if Jeremiah is upset by the people of Anathoth, how will he face enemies in Jerusalem. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#))

Yahweh's grace to the other nations

Yahweh gives a gracious offer to the Gentile nations. If the other nations who have been against Judah leave their idols and worship God, then God will allow them to return to their lands. (See: [grace](#), [gracious](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 12:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 12:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh, whenever I tell you that I am unhappy about what is happening to me,
you always act justly.

So now allow me to ask about one more thing that I do not understand:

Why are wicked people often very prosperous?

Why do things go very well for dishonest people?

² You allow them to prosper

like trees that grow tall and bear a lot of fruit.

They always say good things about you,

but in their inner beings, they are really far from you.

ULB:

¹² ¹ You are righteous, Yahweh, whenever I bring disputes to you.

I must certainly tell you of my reason to complain: Why do the ways of the wicked succeed? All the faithless people are successful.

² You planted them and they took root. They continue to produce fruit.

You are near to them in their mouths, but far away from their hearts.

translationWords:

- righteous, righteousness
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- faithless, faithlessness
- fruit, fruitful
- heart

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah speaks to Yahweh.
- **far away from their hearts** - “they do not love or respect you”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 12:3-4**UDB:**

³ But Yahweh, as for me, you know what is in my inner being.

You see what I do and you are able to know what I am thinking.

So drag away those wicked people,

like people drag away sheep that they are going to butcher.

Set them aside like sheep that are about to be slaughtered!

⁴ This land is becoming very dry and even the grass is withering.

The wild animals and the birds have all died

because the people are very wicked.

All this has happened because the people have said,

“Yahweh does not know what we are doing!”

ULB:

³ Yet you yourself know me, Yahweh. You have seen me and have examined my heart.

Take them away like sheep to the slaughter. Set them apart for the day of slaughter.

⁴ How long will the land go on drying up, and the plants in every field wither because of the wickedness of its inhabitants?

Beasts and bird have been taken away. Indeed, the people say, “God does not know what will happen to us.”

translationWords:

- know, knowledge, make known
- sheep, ram, ewe
- slaughter
- set apart
- mourn, mourning
- beast
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues speaking to Yahweh.
- **Take them away like sheep to the slaughter** - “Prepare to punish those wicked people”
- **How long will the land go on drying up ... because of the wickedness of its inhabitants?**
- “The draught caused by the wickedness of the people has lasted too long.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Beasts and birds have been taken away** - The wild animals and birds have died from the draught.
- **wither** - “dry up”
- **God does not know what will happen to us.** - “God does not see the sins we do.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 12:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Then to show me that I needed to be prepared to endure even greater difficulties, Yahweh said to me,

”It is as though you have become exhausted from racing against men;
so how will you be able to race against horses?

If you only prepare to run on open ground,

what will happen to you when you are running through the thick
foliage near the Jordan River?

⁶ Already your brothers and other members of your own family oppose you.

They plot against you and they say bad things about you.

So even if they say nice things about you,

do not trust them!

ULB:

⁵ Yahweh said, ”indeed, if you, Jeremiah, have run with foot soldiers and they have tired you out, how can you compete against horses?

If you fall down in the safe countryside, how will you do in the thickets along the Jordan?

⁶ For even your brothers and your father’s family have betrayed you and have loudly denounced you.

Do not trust in them, even if they say nice things to you.

translationWords:

- Jeremiah
- horse
- Jordan River
- betray, betrayer
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

translationNotes:

- **how can you compete against horses? ... how will you do in the thickets along the Jordan?** - These two questions are intended to make statements. AT: “you will never compete well against horses ... you will fail in the thickets along the Jordan.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **If you fall down in the safe countryside** - Some modern versions interpret this passage in Hebrew as “If you feel secure in the safe countryside.”
- **the safe countryside** - This refers to the open countryside, where it is easy to travel quickly, in contrast to the overgrown thickets along the Jordan River, where it is difficult to move.
- **thickets** - many bushes or small trees growing close together

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 12:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ I have abandoned my Israelite people,

the people whom I chose to belong to me.

I have allowed their enemies to conquer the people whom I love.

⁸ My people have become to me like a lion in the forest.

It is as though they roar at me like a lion,

so now I hate them.

⁹ My chosen people have become like speckled hawks

that are surrounded by vultures waiting to eat their flesh after they are dead.

Tell all the wild animals to come

and eat the flesh of their corpses.

ULB:

⁷ I have abandoned my house; I have forsaken my inheritance.

I have given my own beloved people into the hands of her enemies.

⁸ My inheritance has become to me like a lion in a thicket;

she sets herself against me with her own voice, so I hate her.

⁹ My prized possession is a hyena, and birds of prey circle around her overhead.

Go, gather all the living creatures in the fields, and bring them in to eat them.

translationWords:

- house
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- beloved
- people of God, my people
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- lion
- voice
- possess, possession

- [prey, to prey on](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [creature](#)

translationNotes:

- **I have abandoned my house; I have forsaken my inheritance. I have given my own beloved people into the hands of her enemies.** - These three sentences have similar meanings. The first and second one strengthens the thought in the third. (See” Parallelism) AT: “I have allowed my people’s enemies to conquer them.”
- **hyena** - a type of dog from Asia and Africa that eats the flesh of dead animals
- **birds of prey** - birds that attack and eat animals

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 12:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Many rulers from other countries have come with their armies and devastated my people
whom I care for like a farmer takes care of his vineyard.

They have caused my beautiful land to become a barren desert where no one lives.

¹¹ They have caused it to become completely empty;

So now it is as though I am mourning the death of a loved one.

The whole land is desolate,

and no one worries about it.

ULB:

¹⁰ Many shepherds have destroyed my vineyard. They have stomped all over my portion of land;

they turned my delightful portion into a wilderness, a desolation.

¹¹ They have made her a desolation. I mourn for her; she is desolate.

All the land has been made desolate, for there is no one who takes it to heart.

translationWords:

- shepherd, to shepherd
- vineyard
- turn, turn away, turn back
- delight
- desert, wilderness
- desolate, desolation
- mourn, mourning
- heart

translationNotes:

- **They have stomped all over** - “they have crushed under their foot” or “they have destroyed”
- **my portion of land** - “the ground I planted”
- **They have made her** - The word “her” refers to the Promised Land (See: **Personification**)
- **she is desolate** - The word “she” refers to the Promised Land
- **takes it to heart** - “cares” or “pays any attention” (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 12:12-13**UDB:**

¹² The soldiers of our enemies have marched across all the barren hilltops.

But I, Yahweh, am using those armies to punish your land from one end to the other,

and no one will escape.

¹³ It is as though my people planted wheat,

but now they are harvesting thorns.

They have become very tired because of much hard work,

but they have gained nothing from all that work.

They will be very disappointed because their harvests will be very small,

and that will happen because I, Yahweh, am extremely angry with them.”

ULB:

¹² Destroyers have come against all the bare places in the wilderness,
for Yahweh’s sword is devouring from one end of the land to the other.

There is no safety in the land for any living creature.

¹³ They have sown wheat but harvest thornbushes. They are exhausted from work but have gained nothing.

So be ashamed of your gain because of Yahweh’s anger.”

translationWords:

- destroyer
- Yahweh
- sword
- devour
- sow, sower, plant
- wheat
- harvest
- works, deeds, work, acts
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- angry, anger

translationNotes:

- **bare** - “not covered” or “empty”
- **Yahweh’s sword is devouring** - Yahweh is using these armies to punish his people (See: [Personification](#))
- **from one end of the land to the other** - This refers to all of the Promised Land (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **They have** - “My people have”
- **thornbushes** - a large plant that is covered in sharp points
- **exhausted** - “worn out” or “tired”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 12:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ This is also what Yahweh said to me: "I will punish the evil nearby nations that have been trying to take away the land that I gave to my Israelite people. I will force them to leave their own lands. But I will throw the people of Judah out of their lands, also. ¹⁵ But later I will act mercifully toward those nations again, and I will bring them back to their own lands again. Each clan will come back to its own land.

ULB:

¹⁴ Yahweh says this against all my neighbors, the wicked ones who strike at the possession that I made my people Israel inherit, "See, I am the one who is about to uproot them from their own ground, and I will pull up the house of Judah from among them. ¹⁵ Then after I uproot those nations, it will happen that I will have compassion on them and bring them back; I will return them—each man to his inheritance and his land.

translationWords:

- neighbor
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- possess, possession
- people of God, my people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- nation
- compassion, compassionate

translationNotes:

- **strike at** - attack and capture
- **made my people Israel inherit** - AT: "gave my people Israel as an inheritance"
- **uproot** - See how you translated this in [1:10](#).
- **pull up the house of Judah from among them** - allow the people of Judah to leave their enemies' lands and return to Judah
- **pull up** - or "uproot"
- **I uproot those nations** - AT: "I make those nations leave their lands and move to different places"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 12:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ And if the people of the other nations whose armies have invaded Israel learn the religious customs of my people, and if they learn that I am listening when they solemnly promise that they will do something, like they taught my people to believe that their god Baal was listening when they made solemn promises, I will cause them to become prosperous, and they also will be my people. ¹⁷ But I will expel any nation whose people refuse to obey me, and I will destroy that nation and its people. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

¹⁶ It will come about that if those nations carefully learn the ways of my people, to swear by my name ‘As Yahweh lives!’ just as they have taught my people to swear by Baal, then they will be built up in the midst of my people. ¹⁷ But if any do not listen, then I will uproot that nation. It will certainly be uprooted and destroyed—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- oath, swear, swear by
- name
- Baal

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God’s word about Judah’s neighbors.
- **It will come about that if ... Baal, then they** - “This is what will happen ... Baal: they” or “If ... Baal, then this is what will happen: they”
- **midst** - middle
- **they will be built up in the midst of my people** - “I will make them wealthy and they will live among my people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **I will uproot that nation. It will certainly be uprooted and destroyed** - “I will certainly and completely exile and destroy that nation” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 13:15-27, which is an extended quotation.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Symbolism

The action of hiding the undergarment was intended to be a symbolic event. It was supposed to get the Jews' attention and be a lesson for them to learn. Jeremiah performed the action, but it was not the action itself that was important. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 13:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 13:1-4

UDB:

¹ One day Yahweh said to me, “Go and buy a linen waistcloth. Put it on, but do not wash it.” ² So I bought a very nice waistcloth, which is what Yahweh told me to do, and I put it on.

³ Then later Yahweh gave me another message. ⁴ He said, “Go to the Euphrates River and hide your waistcloth in a crevice in the rocks.” ⁵ So I went to the river and did what Yahweh told me to do.

ULB:

13 ¹ Yahweh said this to me, “Go and buy a linen undergarment and put it on around your waist, but do not put it in water first.” ² So I bought an undergarment as Yahweh directed, and I put it on around my waist. ³ Then the word of Yahweh came to me a second time and said, ⁴ “Take the undergarment that you purchased that is around your waist, get up and travel to the Euphrates. Hide it there in a rock crevice.” ⁵ So I went and hid it in the Euphrates just as Yahweh had commanded me.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Euphrates River](#)

translationNotes:

- **linen** - a type of very fine cloth
- **undergarment** - clothing that people wear under their clothes; underwear
- **waist** - the middle part of the body, usually the narrowest, between the hips and chest
- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **rock crevice** - a space between rocks or a crack in a rock, big enough to put something into it

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 13:6-7

UDB:

⁶ A long time later, Yahweh said to me, “Go back to the river and get the waistcloth that I told you to hide there.” ⁷ So I went to the Euphrates River and dug out the waistcloth from the crevice in which I had hidden it. But it was ruined, and useless.

ULB:

⁶ After many days, Yahweh said to me, “Get up and go back to the Euphrates. Take from there the undergarment that I had told you to hide.” ⁷ So I went back to the Euphrates and dug out the undergarment where I had hid it. But behold! The undergarment was destroyed; it was no good at all.

translationWords:

- [good, goodness](#)

translationNotes:

- **undergarment** - See how you translated this in [13:01](#)
- **behold!** - The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 13:8-11**UDB:**

⁸ Then Yahweh gave me this message: ⁹ "What happened to your waistcloth shows that I will destroy the things that the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah are very proud of. ¹⁰ Those wicked people refuse to pay attention to what I say. They stubbornly do just what they desire to do; they worship other gods. Therefore, they will become completely useless, like your waistcloth. ¹¹ Just like a waistcloth clings closely to a man's waist, I wanted the people of Israel and Judah to cling closely to me. I wanted them to be my people, people who would praise me and honor me. But they would not pay attention to me.

ULB:

⁸ Then the word of Yahweh came to me again and said, ⁹ "Yahweh says this: In the same way I will destroy the great arrogance of Judah and Jerusalem. ¹⁰ This wicked people who refuses to listen to my word, who walk in the hardness of their heart, who go after other gods to worship them and bow down to them—they will be like this undergarment that is good for nothing. ¹¹ For just as an undergarment clings to someone's hips, so I have made all the house of Israel and all the house of Judah cling to me—this is Yahweh's declaration—to be my people, to bring me fame, praise, and honor. But they would not listen to me.

translationWords:

- arrogant
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- walk
- heart
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- worship
- bow, bow down
- house
- kingdom of Israel
- people of God, my people
- praise
- honor, to honor

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).

- **arrogance** - “pride”
- **of Judah and Jerusalem** - “people of Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **who walk in the hardness of their heart** - “who are continuously stubborn”
- **all the house of** - “all the people of”
- **cling to me** - “stay close to me”
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 13:12-14

UDB:

¹² So, tell this to them: ‘Yahweh, the God whom you Israelite people worship, says that every leather wineskin should be filled with wine.’ And when you tell that to them, they will reply, ‘Of course we know that all wineskins should be filled with wine!’ ¹³ And then you must tell them, ‘No, that is not what Yahweh means. What he said means that he will cause this land to be filled with people who are drunk. That will include all of you—the king who sits on the throne that King David previously sat on, the priests and the prophets, and even the common people of Jerusalem.’ ¹⁴ He is saying, ‘I will cause a drunken brawl among you. Even parents will brawl with their children. I will not pity you or act mercifully toward you at all; pitying you will not prevent me from getting rid of you.’”

ULB:

¹² So you must speak this word to them, ‘Yahweh, the God of Israel, says this: Every jar will be filled with wine.’ They will say to you, ‘Do we not indeed know that every jar will be filled with wine?’ ¹³ So say to them, ‘Yahweh says this: See, I am about to fill with drunkenness every inhabitant of this land, the kings who sit on David’s throne, the priests, prophets, and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem. ¹⁴ Then I will smash each man against the other, fathers and children together—this is Yahweh’s declaration—I will not pity them or have compassion, and I will not spare them from destruction.’”

translationWords:

- word
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- drunk, drunkard
- king
- David
- throne
- priest, priesthood
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- compassion, compassionate

translationNotes:

- **fill with drunkenness every inhabitant of this land** - AT: “cause all the people of this land to be drunk”

- **the kings who sit on David's throne** - "the kings of the nation of Judah"
- **smash each man against the other, fathers and children together** - AT: "each person will fight the other; even parents and children will fight against each other"
- **I will not pity** - "I will not feel sorry for"
- **will not spare them from destruction** - AT: "will not withhold punishment" or "will allow them to be destroyed" or "will allow them to face destruction"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 13:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ You people of Judah, pay very careful attention.

Do not be proud, because Yahweh has spoken to you.

¹⁶ It is as though he is ready to bring darkness on you
and to cause you to stumble and fall as you walk on the hills when
it is becoming dark.

So praise Yahweh your God before that happens.

If you do not do that, you will look for light,
but all you will see is darkness and gloom.

¹⁷ And if you still refuse to heed what he says,
what will happen to you because of your being proud will cause me
to cry when I am alone.

My eyes will be filled with tears
because you, Yahweh's people,
whom he takes care of like a shepherd takes care of his flock,
will all be captured by your enemies and taken to other countries.

ULB:

¹⁵ Listen and pay attention. Do not be arrogant, for Yahweh had spoken.

¹⁶ Give honor to Yahweh your God before he brings darkness,
and before he causes your feet to stumble on the mountains at twilight.
For you are hoping for light, but he will turn the place into a deep darkness,
into a dark cloud.

¹⁷ So if you will not listen, I will weep alone because of your arrogance.
My eyes will certainly weep and flow with tears, for Yahweh's flock has been
taken captive.

translationWords:

- darkness
- light
- flock, herd
- captive, captivity

translationNotes:

- **Do not be arrogant** - “Do not feel that you are better, smarter, or more important than others”
- **he brings darkness** - “he causes darkness to come” Darkness symbolizes deep trouble and despair. AT: “He brings big troubles”
- **before he causes your feet to stumble** - AT: “before he causes you to hit your foot on something while walking or running so that you fall”
- **he will turn the place into a deep darkness** - “he will cause the place to be completely dark” AT: “he will cause you to despair”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 13:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ You people of Judah, say to the king and to his mother,

”Come down from sitting on your thrones

and humbly sit in the dirt,

because your enemies will soon snatch from your heads your glorious crowns.”

¹⁹ The towns in the southern Judean wilderness will be surrounded by your enemies,

and no one will be able to get through their lines to rescue the people in those towns.

You people of Judah will be captured and taken away;

you will all be exiled.

ULB:

¹⁸ ”Say to the king and to the queen mother, ‘Humble yourselves and sit down,

for the crowns on your head, your pride and glory, have fallen off.’

¹⁹ The cities in the Negev will be shut up, with no one to open them. Judah will be taken captive, all of her into exile.

translationWords:

- king
- queen
- humble, humility
- crown, to crown
- proud, pride, prideful
- glory, glorious
- Negev
- Judah
- exile, the Exile

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is continuing to talk to Jeremiah. He is telling Jeremiah what to say to the king of Judah and the king's mother.
- **for the crowns on your head, your pride and glory, have fallen off** - "You will no longer be king and queen mother" (See symbolic action)
- **queen mother** - the mother of the king.
- **The cities in the Negev will be shut up** - "Your enemies will shut the cities in the Negev up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Judah will be taken captive** - "The enemies will take Judah captive" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 13:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ You leaders of Jerusalem, open your eyes and look:

the enemy armies are ready to march down from the north.

When that happens, what will happen to the people of Judah who are like a beautiful flock of sheep,

people that he gave to you to take care of?

²¹ What will you say when Yahweh appoints people from other countries to rule over you,

people who you mistakenly thought were your friends?

You will suffer very much pain,

like a woman who is about to give birth to a baby.

ULB:

²⁰ Lift up your eyes and look at the ones coming from the north.

Where is the flock he gave to you, the flock that was so beautiful to you?

²¹ What will you say when God places over you those whom you had taught to be your friends?

Are these not the beginnings of the labor pains that will seize you just like a woman in childbirth?

translationWords:

- flock, herd
- labor pains, in labor
- seize

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking to the people of Jerusalem.
- **Lift up your eyes** - “understand what will be happening to you” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **Where is the flock he gave to you, the flock that was so beautiful to you?** - “All the people have been taken away.” **Rhetorical Question**)

- **What will you say when God places over you those whom you had taught to be your friends?** - AT: “The people you thought were your friends will conquer you and rule over you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Are these not the beginnings of the labor pains that will seize you just like a woman in childbirth?** - Yahweh is telling them that their capture is just the beginning of the pain they will go through. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 13:22-24**UDB:**

²² You will ask yourselves, “Why is this happening to us?”

I will reply that it is because of your many sins.

That is why soldiers of the invading armies will lift up the skirts of your women and rape them.

²³ A man from Ethiopia certainly cannot change the color of his black skin,
and a leopard certainly cannot change its spots.

Similarly, you cannot start doing what is good,
because you have always done what is evil.

²⁴ Yahweh says, “I will scatter you like chaff
that is blown away by the wind from the desert.

ULB:

²² Then you might say in your heart, ‘Why are these things happening to me?’

It will be for the multitude of your iniquities that your skirts are raised up and you have been violated.

²³ Can the people of Cush change their skin color, or a leopard change its spots?

If so, then you yourself, although accustomed to wickedness, would be able to do good.

²⁴ So I will scatter them like chaff that perishes in the desert wind.

translationWords:

- heart
- iniquity
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Cush
- chaff
- perish, perishing, perishable
- desert, wilderness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to talk to Jeremiah. He is telling Jeremiah what to say to the king of Judah and the king's mother.
- **skirts are raised up** - AT: "soldiers of the invading armies will raise up the skirts of your women". The Judean women's clothes will be torn off so the Babylonian soldiers can seize them and sleep with them. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **Can the people of Cush change their skin color** - AT: "The people of Cush cannot change their skin color" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **a leopard change its spots** - AT: "A leopard cannot change its spots" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Ellipsis](#))
- **If so, then you yourself, although accustomed to wickedness, would be able to do good.** - AT: "You cannot do good because of your wickedness." (See: [Irony](#))
- **scatter them like chaff that perishes in the desert wind** - Yahweh is saying He will scatter His people throughout the world. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 13:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ That is what is certainly going to happen to you,

the things that I have determined will happen to you,
because you have forgotten me,
and you are trusting in false gods.

²⁶ It is as though I myself will pull your skirts up over your faces
and cause you to be very ashamed because everyone will be able
to see your private parts.

²⁷ I have seen that you act like men who are eager to commit adultery;
you are like male horses that whinny when they desire to mate with
a female horse.

I have seen that you worship disgusting idols in the fields and on the hills.
You people of Jerusalem, terrible things will happen to you because you will
not be obedient and live a good life!

How long will it be until you are acceptable to me again?"

ULB:

²⁵ This is what I have given to you, the portion I have decreed for you—this
is Yahweh's declaration—

because you have forgotten me and trusted in deceit.

²⁶ So also I myself will strip your skirts off you, and your private parts will
be seen.

²⁷ Your adultery and neighing, the shamefulness of your promiscuous be-
havior on the hills and in the fields! I will cause them to be seen,
these detestable things! Woe to you, Jerusalem! You have not been clean.
How long will this continue?"

translationWords:

- decree
- I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- woe
- Jerusalem
- clean, cleanse

translationNotes:

- **This is what I have given to you, the portion I have decreed for you** - AT: "This is what I am making happen to you" (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).
- **I myself will strip your skirts off you, and your private parts will be seen.** - AT: "I will expose your wickedness." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **neighing** - This is the sound of a male horse desiring a female horse. AT: "lusting."
- **How long will this continue?** - How long will it be before you are clean again (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 14:1-10, 17-22, which are extended quotations.

Special concepts in this chapter

False prophets

The false prophets promised there would not be any war or drought. They gave people a false sense of hope, when they needed to repent. Because of this, Yahweh sent a drought and said that the false prophets would die of drought and war. This showed that these were not true prophets of Yahweh. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [promise](#), [hope](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 14:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 14:1-3**UDB:**

¹ After there had been no rain in Judah for a long time, Yahweh gave Jeremiah this message:

² The people in Judah are very distressed;
 people are sitting on the ground and mourning;
 in all of Jerusalem people are crying loudly.

³ The rich people send their servants to wells to get water,
 but all the wells are dry.

The servants return with empty pitchers;
 they cover their heads

 because they are ashamed and humiliated.

ULB:

14 ¹ This is the word of Yahweh that came to Jeremiah regarding the drought,

² "Let Judah mourn; let her gates fall apart. They are wailing for the land;
 their cries for Jerusalem are going up.

³ Their mighty ones send out their servants for water.

When they go to the trenches, they cannot find water. They all return unsuccessful;

they cover their heads ashamed and dishonored.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Jeremiah
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- mourn, mourning
- gate, gate bar
- Jerusalem
- mighty, might
- send, send out, sent
- servant, slave, slavery
- water, waters
- shame, shameful, ashamed

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh, through the prophet Jeremiah, has just talked about the adultery of the people.
- **the word of Yahweh that came to** - “the message that God spoke to” See how you translated this in [1:2](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **fall apart** - “fall into pieces”
- **their cries for Jerusalem are going up** - “They are calling out loudly in prayer for Jerusalem”.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 14:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ The ground is extremely dry and cracked open

because there has been no rain.

The farmers are ashamed that they cannot raise a crop,
so they also cover their heads.

⁵ Even the doe abandons their newborn babies,
because there is no grass in the fields for them to eat.

⁶ The wild donkeys stand on the barren hills,
panting like thirsty jackals.

They become blind
because there is no grass to eat.

ULB:

⁴ Because of this the ground is cracked, for there is no rain in the land.

The plowmen are ashamed and cover their heads.

⁵ For even the doe leaves her young in the fields and abandons them, for there is no grass.

⁶ The wild donkeys stand on the bare plains and they pant in the wind like jackals.

Their eyes fail to work, for there is no vegetation.”

translationWords:

- donkey, mule
- works, deeds, work, acts

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh, through the prophet Jeremiah, has continued to tell the people about the drought.

- **the doe leaves her young in the fields and abandons them** - AT: “the deer leaves her young in the field” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **jackals** - fierce, wild dogs

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 14:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ The people say, "Yahweh, if we have turned away from you and sinned many times,
we now know that we are being punished because of our sins!

Please help us

in order that everyone can see that you are very great and keep
your promises.

⁸ You are the one whom we Israelites confidently expect to do good things
for us

when we have many troubles.

So, why do you not help us?

You act as though you are a stranger in our land,

like you are someone who is staying here for only one night.

⁹ Are you also surprised about the terrible things that are happening to us?

Why do you act like you are unable to save anyone, even though
you are a strong warrior?

Yahweh, you are here among us,

and others know that we are your people,

so do not abandon us!"

ULB:

⁷ Even though our iniquities testify against us, Yahweh, act for the
sake of your name.

For our faithless actions increase; we have sinned against you.

⁸ Hope of Israel, the one who saves him in the time of distress,

why will you be like a stranger in the land, like a foreign wanderer
who stretches out and spends just one night?

⁹ Why will be you like a confused man, like a warrior who is not
able to rescue anyone?

For you are in our midst, Yahweh! Your name has been proclaimed
over us. Do not leave us.

translationWords:

- iniquity
- testimony, testify
- Yahweh
- name
- faithless, faithlessness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- hope
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- save, safe
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- proclaim, proclamation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh, through the prophet Jeremiah, has just told the people about the drought.
- **for the sake of your name** - “in order that everyone can see that you are very great and keep your promises. ” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Hope of Israel** - This is another name for Yahweh. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the one who saves him** - “the savior” or “the one who rescues him”
- **why will you be like ... like a warrior who is not able to rescue anyone?** - The word “like” here means “similar to.” (See: [Simile](#) and [Parallelism](#)).
- **confused** - unable to understand or to think clearly
-

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 14:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ And this is what Yahweh says to those people:

”You love to wander away from me;
 you run from one idol to another.
 Therefore, now I will no longer accept you,
 and I will punish you for your sins.”

¹¹ Then Yahweh said to me, ”Do not pray for these people anymore. ¹² When they fast, I will not pay any attention. When they bring to me their offerings of animals to be completely burned on the altar and their offerings of flour, I will not accept them. Instead, I will get rid of them by wars, by famines, and by diseases.”

ULB:

¹⁰ Yahweh says this to this people: “Since they love to wander, they have not held back their feet from doing so.”

Yahweh is not pleased with them. Now he calls to mind their iniquity and has punished their sins. ¹¹ Yahweh said to me, ”Do not pray for good on behalf of this people. ¹² For if they fast, I will not listen to their wailing, and if they offer up burnt offerings and food offerings, I will not take pleasure in them. For I will put an end to them by sword, famine, and plague.”

translationWords:

- love
- call, calling, called, call out
- mind
- iniquity
- punish, punishment
- pray, prayer
- good, goodness
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- fast
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- sacrifice, offering
- sword
- famine
- plague

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah has been praying and asking Yahweh not to leave them alone.
- **they love to wander** - “they love to act in a way that is against God’s will”
- **calls to mind** - “remembers” or “recalls” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **on behalf of** - “to assist” or “to help”
- **wailing** - See how you translated this in [14:01](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 14:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Then I replied to him, “Yahweh my God, their prophets are telling the people that they will not experience wars or famines. They are telling the people that you will surely allow us to have peace in our land for many years.”

¹⁴ Yahweh replied to me, “Those prophets say that they are speaking what I tell them to say, but they are telling lies. I did not send them, so what they are saying is false. They say that they have received visions from me, and that they are telling things that I have revealed to them, but that is not true. They are saying foolish things that they have only thought of themselves.”

ULB:

¹³ Then I said, “Oh, Lord Yahweh! See! The prophets are saying to the people, ‘You will not see sword; there will be no famine for you, for I will give you true security in this place.’” ¹⁴ Yahweh said to me, “The prophets prophesy deceit in my name. I did not send them out, nor did I give them any command or speak to them. But deceitful visions and useless, deceitful divination coming from their own minds are what they are prophesying to you.”

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- false prophet
- true, truth, come true
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- command, to command, commandment
- vision
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer
- heart

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh has just told Jeremiah not to pray for the people of Judah.
- **You will not see sword** - Here “sword” stands for warfare, and “see” stands for “experience” or “suffer.” AT: “You will not experience any war” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **security** - Living in prosperity with the absence of any threatening enemies is spoken of as if it were an object that someone could give to another person. (See: **Abstract Nouns**)
- **prophesy deceit** - The quality that marks false prophecies is spoken of as if it were itself a prophecy. AT: “prophesy deceitfully” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)

- **I did not send them out** - Translators may decide to include the unstated destination and purpose of this action. AT: “I did not send them to prophesy to other people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **deceitful visions and useless, deceitful divination coming from their own minds** - Here visions and divination are spoken of as if they were objects that could go from one place to another. AT: “deceitful visions and useless, deceitful divination that these prophets themselves have imagined” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **visions ... divination** - These expressions stand for actions that are spoken of as if they were things. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **their own minds** - Here minds are spoken of as if they were a place instead of the ability to think of ideas. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 14:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ So this is what I say about those prophets who are predicting what will happen, saying that I told them those things: They are saying that we Israelites will not die from wars or famines, but I did not send those prophets. And they themselves will die from wars or from famines. ¹⁶ And the people to whom they are predicting these things, they and their wives and their sons and their daughters, will also die from wars or from famines. Their corpses will be thrown into the streets of Jerusalem, and there will not be anyone to bury them. I will punish them like they deserve to be punished.

ULB:

¹⁵ Therefore Yahweh says this, "About the prophets prophesying in my name but whom I did not send out—those who say there will be no sword or famine in this land: These prophets will perish by sword and famine. ¹⁶ Then the people to whom they prophesied will be thrown out in the streets of Jerusalem because of famine and sword, for there will be no one to bury them—they, their wives, their sons, or their daughters—for I will pour out their wickedness on them.

translationWords:

- sword
- famine
- perish, perishing, perishable
- Jerusalem
- bury, buried, burial
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah has just been talking to Yahweh about the things the false prophets have been prophesying.
- **prophesying in my name** - Here "name" stands for the idea of authority. AT: "prophesying while claiming my authority to do so" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **there will be no sword** - Here "sword" stands for the idea of warfare. AT: "there will be no war" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will pour out their wickedness on them** - Moral qualities such as wickedness are often spoken of in Hebrew as if they were liquids. Also, the quality of wickedness stands here for the punishment deserved by wicked people. AT: "I will punish them the way the deserve to be punished". (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 14:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ So, Jeremiah, tell this to them about yourself:

‘Day and night my eyes are full of tears.

I cannot stop crying.

I cry for my people,

who are very precious to me, as if they were my daughters.

I cry for them because they have been severely wounded;

and they will not recover or heal from this severe wound.

¹⁸ If I go out into the fields,

I see corpses of people who have been slaughtered by our enemies.

If I walk along the streets of the city,

I see corpses of people who died from hunger.

The prophets and the priests travel through the land, preaching to people,

but they do not know what they are doing .”

ULB:

¹⁷ Say this word to them: ‘Let my eyes flow with tears, night and day.

Do not let them stop, for there will be a great collapse of the virgin daughter of my people—

a great and incurable wound.

¹⁸ If I go out to the field, there are the ones who were killed by the sword!

If I come to the city, there are the diseases that are caused by famine.

Both the prophet and the priest wander about the land, and they do not know.”

translationWords:

- word
- virgin
- people of God, my people
- sword
- famine
- priest, priesthood
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **incurable wound** - a cut or break in skin that cannot be cured
- **wander** - move around without purpose

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 14:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Then I prayed this:

”Yahweh, have you completely rejected the people of Judah?

Do you really despise the people of Jerusalem?

Why have you wounded us very badly,

with the result that we will never be healed?

We hoped that we would have peace,

but there was no peace.

We hoped that there would be a time when we would be healed,

but all that we received were things that terrified us.

²⁰ Yahweh, we admit that we are wicked people,

and that our ancestors also did many wicked things.

We have all sinned against you.

ULB:

¹⁹ Have you completely rejected Judah? Do you hate Zion?

Why will you afflict us when there is no healing for us? We hoped for peace, but there was nothing good—

and for a time of healing, but see, there is only terror.

²⁰ We admit, Yahweh, our offenses, the iniquity of our ancestors, for we have sinned against you.

translationWords:

- reject
- Zion, Mount Zion
- afflict, affliction
- heal, cure
- peace, peaceful
- terror, terrify
- iniquity
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 14:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ But Yahweh, in order that we may honor you,

do not despise us.

Do not dishonor the city where your glorious throne is.

Please do not forget us,

and do not break your agreement with us.

²² Those idols that have been brought from other nations certainly cannot bring rain to us,

and the sky certainly cannot cause rain to fall.

Yahweh our God, you are the only one who can do things like that.

So we will confidently expect you to help us.”

ULB:

²¹ Do not reject us! For the sake of your name, do not make your glorious throne a disgrace.

Remember and do not break your covenant with us.

²² Is there among the idols of the nations anyone who can make the heavens give the spring rain?

Are you not the one, Yahweh our God, who does this? We hope in you, for you have done all these things.

translationWords:

- glory, glorious
- throne
- covenant
- idol, idolatrous
- nation
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues his prayer to Yahweh.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 15:2-21, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Do not pray for the people

God told Jeremiah not to pray for the people because God was punishing them. This was meant to be an illustration for Jeremiah. Jeremiah was not to pray because the punishment was already determined. Yahweh also explains that even the great Moses could not help the sinful Jews. (See: [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

Yahweh uses gentile nations

Yahweh is going to use the Gentile nations to punish Judah. This would have been very offensive to the Jews. They would have also been surprised to learn that Yahweh was using the Gentile nations to punish his people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 15:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 15:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh said this to me: "Even if Moses and Samuel could come back from their graves and stand in front of me and plead with me for these Israelite people, I would not act mercifully toward these people. I would tell you to send them away from me. Cause them to leave me! ² And if they ask you, 'Where shall we go?', tell them, 'This is what Yahweh says:

The ones that I say must die, will die:

The ones that I say must die in wars, will die in wars.

The ones that I say must die from hunger, will die from hunger.

The ones that I say must be captured and taken to other countries, will be captured and taken to other countries.

ULB:

15 ¹ Then Yahweh said to me, "Even if Moses or Samuel were standing in front of me, I would still not be in favor of this people. Send them out from before me, for them to go away. ² It will happen that they will say to you, 'Where should we go?' Then you must say to them, 'Yahweh says this:

Those destined for death should go to death; those destined for the sword should go to the sword.

Those destined for famine should go to famine; and those destined for captivity should go to captivity.'

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Samuel
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- send, send out, sent
- destiny, destine, destined
- death, die, dead
- sword
- famine
- captive, captivity

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah has just been praying to Yahweh.
- **Send them out from before me, for them to go away** - “Send them away from me! Let them go forth!” He repeats this idea for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Those destined for death** - AT: “The people whom God said must die” or “the ones certain to die”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 15:3-4

UDB:

³ I will send four things that will get rid of them: I will send enemy soldiers using swords to kill them. I will send wild dogs to drag away their corpses. I will send vultures to eat their corpses. And I will send other wild animals to eat what remains of their corpses. ⁴ Because of the wicked things that King Manasseh did in Jerusalem, I will cause people in all the kingdoms of the earth to be horrified concerning what will happen in Judah to my people.

ULB:

³ For I will assign them to four groups—this is Yahweh’s declaration—the sword to slaughter some, the dogs to drag some away, the birds of the skies and the beast of the earth to consume and destroy some. ⁴ I will make of them a horrifying thing to all the kingdoms of the earth, because of what Manasseh son of Hezekiah, king of Judah, did in Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- slaughter
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- consume
- kingdom
- Manasseh
- Hezekiah
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh has just told them he will send some of them to death, some to die by the sword, some to die by famine, and some to be captives.
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **I will make of them a horrifying thing to all the kingdoms of the earth, because of what Manasseh son of Hezekiah, king of Judah, did in Jerusalem** - AT: “And I will make them a frightful thing to all the kingdoms of the earth because of what Manasseh the son of Hezekiah, king of Judah, did in Jerusalem.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **I will assign them to four groups** - AT: “I will appoint four groups over them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 15:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ You people of Jerusalem, no one will feel sorry for you.

No one will weep for you.

No one will wish that you would not be hurt.

⁶ You people have abandoned me;

you have continued to walk away from me.

So, I will lift up my fist to smash you;

I am tired of acting mercifully toward.

⁷ At the gates of your cities, I will scatter you like a farmer scatters the chaff from his grain by winnowing it.

You, my people, have refused to turn away from your evil behavior.

So, I will get rid of you,

and I will even cause your children to be killed.

ULB:

⁵ For who will have compassion for you, Jerusalem? Who will grieve for you?

Who will turn to ask about your welfare?

⁶ You have forsaken me—this is Yahweh's declaration—you have gone back from me.

So I will strike you with my hand and destroy you. I am tired of having mercy on you.

⁷ So I will winnow them with a pitchfork at the gates of the land.

I will bereave them. I will destroy my people since they will not turn from their ways.

translationWords:

- compassion, compassionate
- turn, turn away, turn back
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- mercy, merciful

- winnow, sift
- gate, gate bar

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh has just told them he will assign them to four groups to kill them—the sword, dogs, birds, and beasts.
- **For who will have compassion for you, Jerusalem? Who will grieve for you? Who will turn to ask about your welfare?** - AT: “No one should have compassion on you, the people who live in Jerusalem. No one should mourn for your destruction. No one should ask why you became such a miserable people.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **You have forsaken me ... you have gone back from me** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the people have, indeed, forsaken Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **pitchfork** - a farm tool with a long handle and sharp metal prongs, used especially for lifting and tossing grain in the air for winnowing.
- **I will bereave them** - “I will cause their children to die” or “I will let their enemies kill their children”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 15:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ I will cause there to be more widows in Judah

than there are grains of sand on the seashore.

I will bring on you an enemy army

that will destroy your young men and cause their mothers to weep.

I will cause you to suddenly experience great suffering and become very terrified.

⁹ A woman who has seven children will become faint and gasp for breath;

it will be as though her daylight will become darkness,

because most of her children will be dead,

and she will be disgraced and humiliated.

And her children who are still alive, I will enable your enemies to kill them.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

⁸ I will make their widows number more than the sands of the seashore. Against the mothers of young men I will send

the destroyer at noonday. I will make shock and horror suddenly fall on them.

⁹ The mother who has borne seven children will waste away. She will gasp. Her sun will set while it is still day.

She will be ashamed and embarrassed, for I will give those who remain to the sword in the presence of their enemies

—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- send, send out, sent
- shame, shameful, ashamed

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh has just told them no one will care about them and that he will destroy his people since they would not turn from their wicked ways.
- **widows** - women whose husbands have died
- **more than the sands of the seashore** - AT: “more than you can count” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **fall on them** - “happen to them” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **She will be ashamed and embarrassed** - The words “ashamed” and “embarrassed” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of shame. AT: “She will be completely ashamed.” (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 15:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ I said to my mother, "I am very sad;

I wish that you had not given birth to me;

everyone in this land opposes me and quarrels with me.

I have not made anyone angry by lending or borrow money and then quarreling about it,

but everyone curses me anyway."

¹¹ But Yahweh replied to me,

"Jeremiah, I will take care of you.

And at times when you have the most troubles,

I will come on your behalf and protect you from your enemy.

¹² But Judah's enemies, who are as strong as iron or bronze, will attack Judah from the north,

no one will be able to stop them.

ULB:

¹⁰ Woe to me, my mother! For you have borne me, I who am a man of controversy and argument through all the land.

I have not lent, nor has anyone lent to me, but they all curse me.

¹¹ Yahweh said: "Will I not rescue you for good?

I will certainly make your enemies beg for help in the time of calamity and distress.

¹² Can one smash iron? Especially iron from the north that is mixed with bronze?

translationWords:

- woe
- curse, cursed
- Yahweh
- good, goodness
- adversary, enemy
- beg, beggar
- bronze

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In these verse, Jeremiah speaks to Yahweh about his suffering, and Yahweh answers him.
- **Woe to me, my mother** - Jeremiah pretends to speak to his mother as a way to emphasize how sad he is. (See: [Apostrophe](#))
- **a man of controversy and argument** - The words “controversy” and “argument” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize how much Jeremiah is arguing. AT: “a man with whom everyone argues all the time.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **lent** - to give a loan to someone
- **Will I not rescue you for good?** - The implicit answer to this question is “yes”. AT: “I will certainly rescue you for good!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **your enemies** - Those are the enemies of Jeremiah who disagreed with his prophecies.
- **in the time of calamity and distress** - Here the words “calamity” and “distress” mean basically the same thing. They emphasize the amount or intensity of the calamity. AT: “in the time of great calamity.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Can one smash iron?** - The implied answer is “no”. Also, the iron represents the firmness of God’s judgment. AT: “My judgment cannot be broken, just like iron cannot be smashed” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **Especially iron from the north that is mixed with bronze?** - This second question makes the first even stronger, and uses extra strong iron in the metaphor. AT: “Even more, my judgment is like super strong iron” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 15:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ I will give all the valuable possessions of your people to their enemies,
without them paying for it.

Your people will lose everything valuable
because of all the sins that they have committed throughout the
country.

¹⁴ I will tell their enemies to force them to become their prisoners,
to take them to other lands that they have not experienced,
and force them to become their slaves.

That will happen because I am extremely angry with your people;
my anger is like a burning fire.”

ULB:

¹³ I will give to your enemies your wealth and treasures as free plunder.

I will do this because of all your sins committed within all your borders.

¹⁴ Then I will make you serve your enemies in a land that you do not know,
for a fire will ignite, kindled in my wrath against you.” [1]Instead of *Then I will make you serve your enemies*, some ancient copies have *Then I will make your enemies take you*.

translationWords:

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- know, knowledge, make known
- fire
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In these verse, Yahweh speaks to the nation of Israel as if it were one person.
- **wealth and treasures** - The words “wealth” and “treasures” mean the same thing and refer to anything that people consider to be valuable. (See: **Doublet**)

- **plunder** - things that you steal from a city after conquering it
- **a land that you do not know** - “to a land that is strange to you”
- **for a fire will ignite, kindled in my wrath against you** - The wrath of God is spoken of as if it were a destructive fire. AT: “I will destroy you because I am very angry with you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 15:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Then I said, "Yahweh, you know what is happening to me.

Please come and help me.

Punish those who are persecuting me.

Please do not continue to be patient with them

and do not allow me to die now.

It is for your sake that I am suffering.

¹⁶ Yahweh my God, you are the commander of the angel armies;

when you spoke to me,

I was delighted with your message; it caused me to be joyful,

and I eagerly accepted what you said

because I belong to you.

ULB:

¹⁵ You yourself know, Yahweh! Call me to mind and help me. Bring vengeance for me against my pursuers.

In your patience do not take me away. Acknowledge that I have suffered reproach for you.

¹⁶ Your words have been found, and I consumed them. Your words were a joy to me,

a joy to my heart, for your name is proclaimed on me, Yahweh God of hosts.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- avenge, revenge, vengeance
- patient, patience
- acknowledge
- suffer, suffering
- reproach
- word
- joy, joyful
- heart
- name

- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah speaks to Yahweh.
- **Call me to mind** - AT: "Remember me" or "Consider me and my situation" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **my pursuers** - "those who search after me to harm me"
- **In your patience do not take me away.** - AT: "Please do not continue to be patient with them and do not allow me to die now."
- **Your words have been found** - AT: "I have heard your message." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I consumed them** - "I understood your message"
- **your name is proclaimed on me** - "people identified me as one who belongs to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 15:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ When the people were carousing together,

I never joined them;

I sat alone, because you are the one who controls what I do.

I was very angry with those people because of their sins.

¹⁸ So, why do you allow me to continue to suffer?

It seems that my wounds cannot be healed.

Sometimes you help me, sometimes you do not help me.

It seems that you are as undependable as a brook that has water in it only during certain seasons;

you are like a spring that has dried up.”

ULB:

¹⁷ I did not sit in the circle of those who celebrated or rejoiced.

I sat in solitude because of your powerful hand, for you filled me with indignation.

¹⁸ Why is my pain ongoing and my wound incurable, refusing to be healed?

Will you be like deceitful waters to me, waters that dry up?

translationWords:

- rejoice
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- heal, cure
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- water, waters

translationNotes:

- **I did not sit in the circle of** - AT: “I did not spend time with” (See: **Idiom**)
- **Why is my pain ongoing and my wound incurable, refusing to be healed?** - AT: “My pain is ongoing and my wound incurable. I cannot be healed.” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)

- **Will you be like deceitful waters to me, waters that dry up?** - AT: “Your promises to me are like a stream I go to for a drink only to find it dried up?” (See: [Simile](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 15:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ Then Yahweh replied to me saying this:

”If you begin again to trust in me,

I will restore you,

in order that you can continue to serve me.

If you proclaim good messages and not worthless ones,

you will continue to be the one who speaks what I tell you to say.

You must cause the people to pay attention to what you say;

you must not pay attention to what they say.

²⁰ They will fight against you,

but I will protect you, like people are protected from their enemies
by a bronze wall.

They will not defeat you,

because I will be with you,

and I will protect and rescue you.

²¹ Truly, I will keep you safe from those wicked people,

I will rescue you when you are seized by cruel people.

That will happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

¹⁹ Therefore Yahweh said this, ”If you repent, Jeremiah, then I will restore you, and you will stand before me and serve me.

For if you separate the foolish things from the precious things, you will be like my mouth. The people will come back to you,

but you yourself must not go back to them.

²⁰ I will make you like an impenetrable bronze wall to this people, and they will wage war against you.

But they will not defeat you, for I am with you to save and rescue you—this is Yahweh’s declaration—

²¹ for I will rescue you from the hand of the wicked and redeem you from the hand of the tyrant.”

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [repent, repentance](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [precious](#)
- [save, safe](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [redeem, redemption, redeemer](#)

translationNotes:

- **you will be like my mouth** - Jeremiah is compared to the mouth of Yahweh because he will be used to speak Yahweh's message. AT: "you will speak for me" (See: [Simile](#))
- **you yourself** - The pronoun, "yourself", is used here to emphasize the command was specifically for Jeremiah. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))
- **like an impenetrable bronze wall to this people** - Yahweh compares Jeremiah to a wall because the people will not be able to defeat him. (See: [Simile](#))
- **they will wage war against you. But they will not defeat you** - AT: "They will fight against you, but they will not defeat you." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **save and rescue** - The words "save" and "rescue" mean the same thing and emphasize the safety that God promises. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **rescue you from ... and redeem you from** - These phrases have similar meanings and are used together to emphasize the safety that God provides. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **tyrant** - a ruler who demands absolute obedience and is not friendly for the people under his rule

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 15 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 16:19-21, which is an extended quotation. This quotation also continues in chapter 17 and these should be seen as one section.

Special concepts in this chapter

Coming punishment

The punishment that is prophesied in this chapter will happen quickly. The author gives many illustrations which describe how quickly this punishment will come. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Israel restored

God will bring his people back from captivity. Even though the punishment of Judah will be great, Yahweh promised a future restoration. (See: [promise](#) and [restore](#), [restoration](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 16:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 16:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said to me, ² "Do not get married and have children in this land, ³ because this is what I, Yahweh, say about the children who are born in this city, and about their mothers and fathers: ⁴ Many of them will die from terrible diseases. And no one will mourn for them. No one will even bury their corpses; the corpses will lie on the ground, scattered like manure. Others will die in wars or from hunger, and then their corpses will become food for vultures and wild animals."

ULB:

16 ¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, ² "Do not take a wife for yourself, and do not have sons or daughters for yourself in this place. ³ For Yahweh says this to the sons and daughters who are born in this place, to the mothers who bear them, and to the fathers who caused them to be born in this land, ⁴ "They will die diseased deaths. They will not be mourned or buried. They will be like dung on the ground. For they will come to an end by sword and famine, and their corpses will be food for the birds of the skies and the beasts of the earth."

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- death, die, dead
- mourn, mourning
- bury, buried, burial
- dung, manure
- sword
- famine
- body
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- beast
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **They will be like dung on the ground** - The sons and daughters born in the land are compared to dung because they will not be buried after they die. (See: [Simile](#))
- **For they will come to an end** - This is a mild way to say that they will die. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **by sword** - The word "sword" refers to an enemy army. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 16:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ This is also what Yahweh said to me: "Do not go to funerals to mourn or to show those whose relatives have died that you feel sorry for them, because I have stopped protecting them, and I have caused that things will not go well for them. I have stopped faithfully loving them and acting mercifully toward them. ⁶ Very many people will die in this land, including those who are important and those who are not important. And no one will mourn for them, or even bury their corpses. No one will cut himself or shave his head to show that he is very sad.

ULB:

⁵ For Yahweh says this, 'Do not enter any house where there is mourning. Do not go about lamenting, and do not sympathize for these people. For I have gathered up my peace, covenant faithfulness, and acts of tender mercy, from this people!—this is Yahweh's declaration—⁶ so the great and the small will die in this land. They will not be buried, nor will anyone mourn for them. No one will cut themselves or shave their heads for them.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- mourn, mourning
- lament, lamentation
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- peace, peaceful
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- mercy, merciful
- death, die, dead
- bury, buried, burial

translationNotes:

- **I have gathered up my peace, covenant faithfulness, and acts of tender mercy** - Yahweh gather different ways he has blessed the people of Israel to mean he will not bless the people of Israel anymore. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **the great and the small** - This refers to all kinds of people and uses size to refer to how important they are. Either great importance or small importance. (See: [Merism](#))
- **nor will anyone mourn for them. No one will cut themselves or shave their heads for them** - These two statements have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. AT: "No one will mourn for them in any way." (See: [Parallelism](#))

- **cut themselves or shave their heads for them** - These are customs the people used to show they were very sad. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 16:7-9

UDB:

⁷ No one will bring food to comfort those who are mourning, not even if it is their father or their mother who is mourning. No one will give them a cup of wine to cheer them up.

⁸ And do not go into the houses where people are feasting. Do not eat or drink anything with them.

⁹ I want you to do this because this is what I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, say: ‘While you are still alive and seeing it happen, I will cause there to be no more singing and laughing in this land. There will be no more joyful voices of bridegrooms and brides.’

ULB:

⁷ No one must share any food in mourning to comfort them because of the deaths, and none must give a comforting cup to his father or his mother in order to comfort them. ⁸ You must not go to a banquet house to sit with them in order to eat or drink.’ ⁹ For Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this, ‘See, before your eyes, in your days and in this place, I am about to put an end to the sound of joy and celebration, the voices of the groom and bride.’

translationWords:

- comfort, comforter
- banquet
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- joy, joyful
- voice
- bride

translationNotes:

- **No one must share any food in mourning to comfort them because of the deaths ... none must give a comforting cup to his father or his mother** - These two sentences have a similar meaning. It was customary to take food or wine to people whose relative has died. Yahweh has removed all comfort from the people because of their sin. AT: “Do not comfort people when their relative dies” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel** - See how you translated this in [7:3](#).
- **See** - AT: “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”
- **before your eyes** - Here the word “your” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. AT: “in front of you” or “where you can see” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **in your days** - AT: “during your lifetime” (See: [Idiom](#))

- **voices of the groom and bride** - This refers to people celebrating at weddings. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 16:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ When you tell these things to the people, they will ask, ‘Why has Yahweh declared that these terrible things will happen to us? What have we done for which we deserve to be punished like this? What sin have we committed against Yahweh our God?’

¹¹ Then this is what you must tell them that I am replying to them: ‘It is because your ancestors turned away from me, Yahweh. They worshiped other gods and served them. They abandoned me and did not obey my commands.

ULB:

¹⁰ Then it will happen that you will report all these words to this people, and they will say to you, ‘Why has Yahweh decreed all this great disaster against us? What is our iniquity and sin that we sinned against Yahweh our God?’ ¹¹ So say to them, ‘Because your ancestors abandoned me—this is Yahweh’s declaration—and they went after other gods and worshiped and bowed down to them. They abandoned me and have not kept my law.

translationWords:

- word
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- decree
- iniquity
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- declare, declaration
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- worship
- bow, bow down
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **worshiped and bowed down to them** - The words “bowed down to” mean basically the same thing as “worshiped” and describes the posture that people used in worship. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 16 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 16 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 16:12-13

UDB:

¹² But you who are living now have done more wicked things than your ancestors did! Each of you stubbornly does the evil things that he desires and refuses to pay attention to what I say. ¹³ So, I will throw you out of this land, and I will send you to a land that you and your ancestors have never known about. There you will worship other gods day and night. And I will not act mercifully toward you.'

ULB:

¹² But you yourselves have brought about more wickedness than your ancestors, for see, each person is walking by the stubbornness of his wicked heart; there is no one who listens to me. ¹³ So I will throw you from this land to a land that you have not known, neither you nor your ancestors, and you will worship other gods there by day and night, for I will not give any favor to you.'

translationWords:

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [walk](#)
- [stiff-necked, stubborn](#)
- [heart](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)

translationNotes:

- **see** - The word “see” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Indeed”
- **the stubbornness of his wicked heart** - See how you translated this in [11:8](#).
- **who listens to me** - “who does what I tell him to do”
- **throw you from this land** - “force you to leave this land”
- **by day and night** - AT: “all the time” or “continually” (See: [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 16:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ But there will be a time when people who are solemnly promising to do something will no longer say, ‘I will do this, just as surely as Yahweh lives—the one who brought the Israelite people here from Egypt.’ ¹⁵ Instead, they will say ‘I will do this, just as surely as Yahweh lives—the one who brought us Israelite people back to our own land, from the lands to the north and from all the other lands to which he had exiled us.’ They will be able to say that because some day I will bring your descendants back to this land that I gave to your ancestors.

ULB:

¹⁴ Therefore see! The days are coming—this is Yahweh’s declaration—when it will no longer be said, ‘As Yahweh lives, the one who brought up the people of Israel from the land of Egypt.’ ¹⁵ For as Yahweh lives, the one who brought up the people of Israel from the land of the north and from the lands where he had scattered them, I will bring them back to the land that I gave to their ancestors.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

translationNotes:

- **see!** - The word “see” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Indeed”
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **when it will no longer be said** - AT: “when people will no longer say” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **As Yahweh lives** - See how you translated this in [12:16](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 16:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ But now I am summoning your enemies who will seize them like fishermen catch fish. I am summoning those who will search for them on every mountain and hill, and in every cave, like hunters search for animals to kill. ¹⁷ I am watching them carefully. I see every sin that they commit. They will not be able to hide from me. ¹⁸ Because of all the wicked things that they have done, I will punish them twice as much as I would punish other people. I will do that because they have caused my own land to become unacceptable to me because of their worshiping lifeless statues of detestable gods, and also because they have filled my land with the other evil things that they have done.”

ULB:

¹⁶ See! I will send for many fishermen—this is Yahweh’s declaration—so they will fish the people out. After this I will send for many hunters so they will hunt for them among all the mountains and hills, and in rock crevices. ¹⁷ For my eye is on all their ways; they cannot be hidden from before me. Their iniquity cannot be concealed from before my eyes. ¹⁸ I will first pay back double for their iniquity and sin for their polluting of my land with their disgusting idol figures, and for their filling my inheritance with their disgusting idols.”

translationWords:

- send, send out, sent
- fishermen, fishers
- iniquity
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- idol, idolatrous
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

translationNotes:

- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **many fishermen ... many hunters** - Yahweh compares the people who will take the Israelites into captivity to people who are skilled at trapping their prey. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **my eye is on all their ways** - AT: “I am watching everything they do” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **they cannot be hidden from before me** - Here the word “they” may refer either to the people or to their actions. AT: “they cannot hide their ways from me” or “I see all that they do” (See: [Litotes](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

- **Their iniquity cannot be concealed from before my eyes** - AT: "I see all their sins" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **their filling my inheritance with their disgusting idols** - This phrase describes the "iniquity and sin" that the people had committed.
- **my inheritance** - This refers to the land of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 16:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ Then I prayed, saying, "Yahweh, you are the one who strengthens me and protects me ;

you are the one to whom I go when I have troubles.

Some day people from nations all over the world will come to you and say,

'Our ancestors left us only something that was false;

they worshiped idols that are completely worthless .

²⁰ No one can make their own gods;

the gods that they make are only idols; they are not real gods."

²¹ Then Yahweh said, "Now I will show my power to the people of Judah;

I will show them that I am truly very powerful .

Then, finally, they will know that I, Yahweh, am the true God."

ULB:

¹⁹ Yahweh, you are my stronghold and my refuge, my place of safety in the day of distress.

The nations will go to you from the ends of the earth and say, "Surely our ancestors inherited deceit.

They are empty; there is no profit in them.

²⁰ Do people make gods for themselves? But they are not gods.

²¹ Therefore see! I will cause them to know in this time, I will cause them to know my hand and my power,

so they will know that Yahweh is my name."

translationWords:

- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- refuge, shelter
- save, safe
- nation
- earth, earthly
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- profit, profitable

- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- know, knowledge, make known
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- power, powers
- name

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh, you are my stronghold** - Here Jeremiah begins speaking to Yahweh.
- **my stronghold and my refuge, my place of safety** - Jeremiah speaks of Yahweh as a place where enemies cannot attack him. He repeats the same idea three times. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Doublet](#))
- **the ends of the earth** - AT: “everywhere on earth” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **our ancestors inherited deceit** - Here the word “deceit” refers to false gods. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **They are empty; there is no profit in them** - Here the words “They” and “them” refer to the false gods that the ancestors taught them to believe in. The two phrases mean basically the same thing, with the second explaining how they “are empty.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Do people make gods for themselves?** - Jeremiah asks this question to emphasize that people cannot make gods for themselves. AT: “People can not make gods for themselves.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Therefore see!** - Here Yahweh begins speaking. The word “see” adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Therefore, indeed,”
- **I will cause them to know** - Here the word “them” refers to the people from the nations. Yahweh repeats this phrase for emphasis.
- **my hand and my power** - Here the word “hand” refers to power and authority. The two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize Yahweh’s great power. AT: “my great power.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Doublet](#))
- **they will know that Yahweh is my name** - Here the word “name” refers to Yahweh’s entire person. AT: “they will know that I am Yahweh, the true God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 16 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 17:1-18, which is an extended quotation. This quotation is a continuation of chapter 16:19-21 and these should be seen as one section.

Special concepts in this chapter

Trusting God or humans

Trust is an important part of this chapter. Those who trust in human wisdom will not prosper. Those who trust in God will have all of their needs met. (See: [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [wise, wisdom](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

The person who depends on the power of other people is compared to a bush in the desert which always has to struggle for life. But the person who trusts in God is like a tree growing by a stream and has all his needs supplied. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 17:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 17:1-2

UDB:

¹ Yahweh said, "It is as though a list of the sins committed by the people of Judah is engraved with an iron chisel, or engraved using the fine point of a very hard stone,

on their inner beings and on the altars where they worship their idols.

² Even their children fondly remember when they went to the altars for their gods, and to the poles that represent the goddess Asherah at which their parents worshiped,

at the high places on the hills, where idols are worshiped, that are underneath all the big trees

and on all the high hills.

ULB:

17 ¹ "The sin of Judah is written with an iron stylus having a diamond point. It is engraved on the tablet of their hearts and on the horns of your altars.

² Their children remember their altars and their Asherah poles by the leafy trees

on the high hills.

translationWords:

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- heart
- horn, horns
- altar
- children, child
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **The sin of Judah is written ... on the horns of your altars** - The fact that the people never stop committing the same sins makes it seem as if a record of those sins has been carved onto their hearts and their idols' altars. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **The sin of Judah is written** - This may be expressed in active form. AT: “The people of Judah have written their sin” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **It is engraved** - This may be expressed in active form. AT: “They have engraved it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **engraved on the tablet of their hearts** - The ingrained sinful habits of the people are spoken of as their sins had been engraved on their own hearts and minds. The word “hearts” refers to the whole person, their thoughts, emotions, and actions. AT: “engraved in their very beings” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **on the horns of your altars** - The word “horns” refers to the projections on the corners of the altars.
- **on the high hills** - Some modern versions add the first phrase of the following verse to this phrase, translating “on the high hills and the mountains in the open land.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17:3-4**UDB:**

³ Their children remember these places on the hills. So I will allow your enemies to capture the mountain where you worship and the area around it,

and all your wealth and your treasures. It will be like the spoils of war for them

because of the sins that you people have committed throughout your land, and they will kill you.

⁴ The wonderful land that I gave to you will no longer belong to you.

I will tell your enemies to take you to a land that you do not know about, and you will become their slaves.

I will do that because I am extremely angry with you; my being angry is like a fire that will burn forever.”

ULB:

³ My mountain in the open country and all your wealth along with all of your treasures,

I will give as plunder to others.

That is the price of your high places

and the sin that is throughout all your territories.

⁴ You will lose the inheritance that I gave to you.

I will enslave you to your enemies in a land that you do not know, for you have ignited a fire in my wrath, which will burn forever.”

translationWords:

- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- servant, slave, slavery
- adversary, enemy
- know, knowledge, make known
- fire
- wrath, fury
- forever

translationNotes:

- **all your wealth along with all of your treasures** - The words “wealth” and “treasures” mean the same thing and refer to anything that they consider valuable. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **plunder** - This refers to things that people steal or take by force.
- **the sin that is throughout all your territories** - AT: “you have sinned everywhere”
- **the inheritance** - This refers to the land of Israel.
- **you have ignited a fire in my wrath, which will burn** - Yahweh compares his judgment to a fire that destroys. AT: “by making me angry, it is as if you have started a fire that will burn you up” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ This is also what Yahweh says:

”Those who trust in human beings to help them are cursed,
those who rely on their own strength
and turn away from me with their inner beings.

⁶ They are like dry bushes in the desert,
they are people who will not experience any good things.
Those people will live in the barren desert
in a salty area, where no one can safely abide.

ULB:

⁵ Yahweh says, ”The person who trusts in mankind is accursed;
he makes flesh his strength but turns his heart away from Yahweh.

⁶ For he will be like a small bush in the Arabah and will not see anything
good coming.

He will stay in the stony places in the wilderness, barren land without in-
habitants.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- curse, cursed
- flesh
- strength, strengthen
- turn, turn away, turn back
- Arabah
- good, goodness
- desert, wilderness
- barren

translationNotes:

- **The person who trusts in mankind is accursed** - AT: "I will curse any person who trusts in mankind" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he makes flesh his strength** - Here the word "flesh" refers to people. AT: "he depends on mere humans for strength" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **turns his heart away from Yahweh** - Here the word "heart" refers to the thoughts and emotions. AT: "turns his devotion away from Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **like a small bush** - The person who trusts in man instead of Yahweh will be like a plant that struggles to survive in an infertile land. (See: [Simile](#))
- **barren land** - AT: "he will be useless like a bush in the wilderness" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ But Yahweh is pleased with those who trust in him,

and who confidently expect him to take care of them.

⁸ Those people are like fruit trees that have been planted along a riverbank,
trees that have roots that go down into the wet ground beside the
water.

They are trees whose leaves remain green when it becomes hot,

trees that continue to bear fruit when there are many months in
which there is no rain.

ULB:

⁷ But the person who trusts in Yahweh is blessed, for Yahweh is his reason
for confidence.

⁸ For he will be like a plant beside waters along the stream; his roots will
spread out.

He will not see that heat is coming, for his leaves will be luxurious.

Then in the year of drought he will not be anxious, nor will he stop producing
fruit.

translationWords:

- bless, blessed, blessing
- confidence, confident
- water, waters
- fruit, fruitful

translationNotes:

- **he will be like a plant beside waters** - The person who trusts in Yahweh will always prosper, just like a tree does when it is planted by a river. It is not affected when there is no rain. (See: [Simile](#))
- **He will not see that heat is coming** - “He will not be disturbed by hot weather is coming”
- **he will not be anxious** - “he will not be worried”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ Human minds are extremely corrupt,

and we cannot change that.

It is also completely impossible for anyone to understand that.

¹⁰ But I, Yahweh, search what is in everyone's inner being,

and I examine what they are thinking.

I will give all people reward or punishment,

what they deserve for what they have done."

¹¹ I know some people who become rich by doing things that are unjust.

They are like birds that hatch eggs that they did not lay.

So, when those people have lived only half of the years that they expect to live, they will disappear.

Then other people will realize that those people have been foolish.

ULB:

⁹ The heart is more deceitful than anything else. It is sick; who can understand it?

¹⁰ I am Yahweh, the one who searches through the mind, who tests the kidneys.

I give to each person according to his ways, according to the fruit of his deeds.

¹¹ A partridge hatches an egg that she did not lay. Someone may become rich unjustly,

but when half his days are over, those riches will abandon him, and in the end he will be a fool."

translationWords:

- heart
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- mind
- test
- punish, punishment
- works, deeds, work, acts
- unjust, unjustly, injustice
- life, live, living, alive
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **The heart is more deceitful** - Here the word “heart” refers to the minds and thoughts of people. AT: “The human mind is more deceitful” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **who can understand it?** - The speaker uses this question to emphasize that no one can understand the human heart. AT: “no one can understand it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **who tests the kidneys** - The emotions are spoken of as if they are centered in the kidneys. AT: “who tests people’s desires” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **his ways** - Here a person’s behavior is spoken of as if it were the paths that he habitually follows. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the fruit of his deeds** - Here the results of a person’s actions are spoken of as if they were the fruit of a tree. AT: “what he has done” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **A partridge hatches an egg ... become rich unjustly** - This analogy of a bird that hatches another bird’s eggs is meant to illustrate a rich man who makes his money by robbing others.
- **when half his days are over** - Here “days” stands for someone’s entire life. AT: “when he has lived only half of his life” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **riches will abandon him** - The riches are spoken of as if they were servants who would abandon their owner. AT: “he will lose his wealth” (See: [Personification](#))
- **in the end** - “at the end of his life”
- **he will be a fool** - “he will be shown to be a fool”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Yahweh, your temple is like a glorious throne

that has been on a high hill since it was built.

¹³ You are the one whom we Israelite people confidently expect to bless us,

and all those who turn away from you will be disgraced and feel what it is like to be separated from you,

because they have abandoned you, who are like a fountain where people obtain fresh water.

¹⁴ Yahweh, please heal me, because if you heal me, I will truly be healed.

If you rescue me, I will truly be safe, because you are the only one whom I praise.

ULB:

¹² "The place of our temple is a glorious throne, elevated from the beginning.

¹³ Yahweh is the hope of Israel. All who abandon you will be ashamed. Those in the land who turn away from you will be cut off.

For they are abandoning Yahweh, the fountain of living waters. ¹⁴ Heal me, Yahweh, and I will be healed! Rescue me, and I will be rescued. For you are my song of praise.

translationWords:

- temple
- glory, glorious
- throne
- hope
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- turn, turn away, turn back
- cut off
- fountain, spring
- heal, cure
- praise

translationNotes:

- **The place of our temple is a glorious throne** - Jeremiah compares the temple to a “glorious throne” because it is there that Yahweh dwells and rules. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The place of our temple** - This refers to Zion in Jerusalem.
- **All who abandon you** - Here the word “you” refers to Yahweh.
- **Those in the land who turn away from you will be cut off** - AT: “You will cut off those in the land who turn away from you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **fountain of living waters** - Jeremiah compares Yahweh to a fresh water spring. AT: “fountain of fresh, running water” or “the source of all life” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will be healed ... I will be rescued** - AT: “you really will have healed me ... you really will have recused me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **my song of praise** - “the one whom I praise”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ People often ridicule me and say,

”You tell us messages that you say came from Yahweh,

but why have the things that you predicted not happened?

¹⁶ Yahweh, you appointed me to take care of your people like a shepherd takes care of his sheep; I have not abandoned that work,

and you know that I have not previously wanted this time of disaster to come to people who ridicule me.

And you know everything that I have said to your people.

ULB:

¹⁵ See, they are saying to me, ‘Where is the word of Yahweh? Let it come!’

¹⁶ As for me, I did not run from being a shepherd following you. I did not long for the day of disaster.

You know the proclamations that came from my lips. They were made in your presence.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- shepherd, to shepherd
- proclaim, proclamation

translationNotes:

- **See** - AT: “Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”
- **they are saying to me** - Here the word “me” refers to Jeremiah and the word “they” to his enemies.
- **Where is the word of Yahweh?** - The people use this question to ridicule Jeremiah because the things that he said had not yet happened. AT: “Where are the things that Yahweh told you would happen?” or “The things that Yahweh told you would happen have not happened.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Let it come** - AT: “Let them happen”
- **a shepherd following you** - Yahweh called Jeremiah to lead the people, like a shepherd leads his sheep. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **I did not long for** - “I did not desire”
- **the proclamations that came from my lips** - AT: “the proclamations that I spoke” or “the things that I proclaimed” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **They were made** - AT: “I made them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Do not cause me to be terrified!

When disasters come, you are the one to whom I will go to be safe.

¹⁸ So now, cause those who persecute me to be ashamed and dismayed,
but do not do things to me that will cause me to be ashamed and
dismayed.

Cause them to be terrified!

Do to them many things that will completely destroy them!

ULB:

¹⁷ Do not be a terror to me. You are my refuge on the day of calamity.

¹⁸ May my pursuers be ashamed, but do not let me be ashamed. May they
be dismayed, but do not let me be dismayed.

Send the day of disaster against them and shatter them with a double share
of destruction.”

translationWords:

- **terror, terrify**
- **refuge, shelter**
- **shame, shameful, ashamed**
- **send, send out, sent**

translationNotes:

- **on the day of calamity** - “Day” represents the span of time for God’s judgment to take place. AT: “in times of calamity” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **May my pursuers be ashamed, but do not let me be ashamed** - AT: “Bring shame on my pursuers, but do not bring shame on me” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **May they be dismayed, but do not let me be dismayed** - This phrase means basically the same thing and the previous one and is used for emphasis. AT: “Make them very afraid, but do not make me afraid” (See: **Parallelism** and **Active or Passive**)
- **shatter them with a double share of destruction** - AT: “shatter them with complete destruction” or “destroy them twice as much” (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ This is what Yahweh said to me: "Go to the city gates in Jerusalem. First go to the gate where the kings of Judah go in and out of the city, and then go to each of the other gates. ²⁰ Say to the people at each gate, 'You kings of Judah and everyone else who is living in Jerusalem and all you other people of Judah who enter these gates, listen to this message from Yahweh!

ULB:

¹⁹ Yahweh said this to me: "Go and stand in the gate of the people where the kings of Judah enter and where they exit, then in all the other gates of Jerusalem. ²⁰ Say to them, 'Hear the word of Yahweh, kings of Judah and all you people of Judah, and every resident of Jerusalem who comes in through these gates.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [king](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17:21-23

UDB:

²¹ He says, "Listen to this warning carefully if you want to live! Stop doing work on Sabbath days! Stop carrying loads through these gates on those days! ²² Do not carry loads out of your houses or do any other work on Sabbath days! Instead, cause Sabbath days to be holy. I commanded your ancestors to do that, ²³ but they did not listen to me or obey me. When I did things to correct them, they stubbornly refused to pay attention to what I said or to accept it.

ULB:

²¹ Yahweh says this: "Be careful for the sake of your lives and do not carry a burden on the Sabbath day to bring it to the gates of Jerusalem. ²² Do not bring a load out from your house on the Sabbath day. Do not do any work, but set apart the Sabbath day, just as I commanded your ancestors to do." ²³ They did not listen or pay attention, but stiffened their neck so they would not hear me nor accept discipline.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [burden](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [stiff-necked, stubborn](#)
- [discipline, self-discipline](#)

translationNotes:

- **for the sake of your lives** - AT: "to protect your lives" or "if you value your lives" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **They did not listen or pay attention** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the people refused to listen. AT: "They refused to listen" or "They refused to obey." (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ But I say that if you obey me, and if you do not carry loads through these gates on Sabbath days or do any other work on Sabbath days, and if you dedicate the Sabbath days to me, ²⁵ kings of Judah and their officials will continue to go in and out of these gates. There will always be someone who is a descendant of King David ruling here in Jerusalem. Kings and their officials will go in and out of these gates, riding in chariots and on horses, and there will be people living in this city forever.

ULB:

²⁴ It will happen that if you truly listen to me—this is Yahweh’s declaration—and do not bring a load to the gates of this city on the Sabbath day but instead set apart the Sabbath day to Yahweh and not do any work on it, ²⁵ then kings, princes, and those who sit on David’s throne will come to the gates of this city in chariots and with horses, they and their leaders, men of Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem, and this city will be inhabited forever.

translationWords:

- prince, princess
- David
- throne
- chariot
- horse
- forever

translationNotes:

- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **who sit on David’s throne** - See how you translated this in [13:13](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **this city will be inhabited forever** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “people will inhabit this city forever” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 17:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ And people will come to Jerusalem bringing offerings to be completely burned on the altar and other offerings. They will bring to the temple grain offerings and incense and offerings to thank me. People will bring these offerings from the towns in Judah and the villages near Jerusalem and from the land where the tribe of Benjamin lives and from the western foothills and from the southern Judean wilderness. ²⁷ But if you do not pay attention to what I say, and if you refuse to dedicate the Sabbath days to me, and if you continue to carry loads through these gates into the city on Sabbath days, I will burn these gates completely. The fire will spread to the palaces, and no one will be able to put out that fire.”

ULB:

²⁶ They will come from the cities of Judah and from all around Jerusalem, from the land of Benjamin and the lowlands, from the mountains, and from the Negev, bringing burnt offerings and sacrifices, grain offerings and frankincense, thanks offerings to the house of Yahweh. ²⁷ But if you do not listen to me—to set apart the Sabbath day and do not carry heavy loads and do not enter the gates of Jerusalem on the Sabbath day—then I will light a fire in its gates, and it will consume the fortresses of Jerusalem, and it cannot be put out.”

translationWords:

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- Benjamin
- Negev
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- sacrifice, offering
- frankincense
- house
- gate, gate bar
- fire
- consume
- stronghold, fortress, fortified

translationNotes:

- **I will light a fire in its gates** - “I will start a fire in the gates of Jerusalem”
- **that will not be extinguished** - AT: “that people cannot extinguish” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 17 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 18:13-17, 19-23, which are extended quotations.

Special concepts in this chapter

Attacking Jeremiah

Things were so bad in Judah, they even attacked Jeremiah. To attack Yahweh's prophet was to attack Yahweh himself. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

Like a potter can change what he is making from one type of pot to another, God can change his plans and not punish people if they repent. The image of God as a potter and mankind as clay is an important one in Scripture. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#) and [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 18:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 18:1-4

UDB:

¹ Yahweh gave another message to me. He said, ² “Go to the shop of the man who makes clay pots. I will give you a message there.” ³ So I went to that shop, and I saw the man who makes pots. He was working at the wheel that he uses to form pots. ⁴ But when he finished making one jar, it was not as good as he hoped it to be. So, he took the clay and formed it into another jar, shaping it as he desired to.

ULB:

18 ¹ This is the word of Yahweh that came to Jeremiah and said, ² “Arise and go out to the potter’s house, for I will have you hear my word there.” ³ So I went out to the potter’s house, and behold! The potter was working on the potter’s wheel. ⁴ But the object of clay that he was molding was ruined in his hand, so he changed his mind and made another object that seemed good in his eyes to do.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Jeremiah
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- ruin, ruins
- mind

translationNotes:

- **This is the word of Yahweh that came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **the potter’s house** - A potter is someone who makes pots and other useful, small things from clay. AT: “the workshop of the potter”
- **behold!** - The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.
- **on the potter’s wheel** - The potter’s wheel is a small table that spins, a potter uses it to make pots. AT: “at his table” or “to make pots”
- **molding** - “forming” or “shaping”
- **was ruined in his hand** - AT: “fell apart in his hand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **so he changed his mind** - AT: “so he made a different choice” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **good in his eyes** - The eyes stand for the potter himself. AT: “good to him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 18:5-8

UDB:

⁵ Then Yahweh gave me this message: ⁶ "Perhaps the people of Israel think that I cannot do to them like this man who makes pots has done. But what they think is wrong. I can control what happens to them like this man controls what he does with the clay in his hands. ⁷ There may be a time when I proclaim that I will get rid of a nation or kingdom, like someone pulls up a plant with its roots, and smash it, and destroy it. ⁸ But if the people of that nation repent of doing evil things, I will not send to them the disasters that I planned to send.

ULB:

⁵ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ⁶ "Should I not be able to act like this potter with you, house of Israel?—this is Yahweh's declaration. See! Like clay in a potter's hand—that is how you are in my hand, house of Israel. ⁷ At one moment, I may proclaim something about a nation or a kingdom, that I will drive it out, tear it down, or destroy it. ⁸ But if the nation about which I have made that proclamation turns from its evil, then I will relent from the disaster that I was planning to bring upon it.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- house
- kingdom of Israel
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- proclaim, proclamation
- nation
- kingdom
- cast out, drive out, throw out
- turn, turn away, turn back
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **Should I not be able to act like this potter with you, house of Israel?** - With this question, Yahweh emphasizes his authority to do as he pleases with Israel. AT: "I am allowed to act toward you, house of Israel, like the potter acts toward the clay" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **See!** - The word "see" here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: "Indeed!"

- **Like clay in a potter's hand—that is how you are in my hand** - This phrase repeats what was implicit in the previous phrase in the form of a simile. (See: [Simile](#))
- **I may proclaim something** - AT: “perhaps I proclaim something” or “for example, I proclaim something”
- **tear it down, or destroy it** - These two expressions basically mean the same thing and emphasize how destructive God's judgment will be. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **relent from** - “withhold” AT: “not bring”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 18:9-10

UDB:

⁹ And there may be a time when I proclaim that I will establish a nation or kingdom and cause it to be strong. ¹⁰ But if the people of that nation start to do evil things and refuse to obey me, then I will not bless them as I said that I would do.

ULB:

⁹ At another moment, I may proclaim something about a nation or a kingdom, that I will build it up or plant it. ¹⁰ But if it does evil in my eyes by not listening to my voice, then I will stop the good that I had said I would do for them.

translationWords:

- [voice](#)
- [good, goodness](#)

translationNotes:

- **build it up or plant it** - These two verbs basically mean the same thing and emphasize God's blessing. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **plant it** - This phrase compares God's blessing to carefully placing a plant in a garden. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **evil in my eyes** - The eyes of Yahweh refer to Yahweh himself. AT: "things that I consider to be evil" or "evil according to me" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **not listening to my voice** - AT: "not obeying my commands" or "not paying attention to what I said" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 18:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Therefore, Jeremiah, go and warn all the people in Jerusalem and in other places in Judah. Say to them, ‘This is what Yahweh says: I am planning a disaster that I will send to you. So, each of you should turn from your evil behavior and start doing what is right, in order that good things will come to you instead!’

¹² But the people will say back to you, ‘It is useless for you to say these things to us. We will continue to be stubborn and behave as wickedly as we want to.’”

ULB:

¹¹ So now, speak to the men of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem and say, ‘Yahweh says this: See, I am about to form disaster against you. I am about to devise a plan against you. Repent, each person from his wicked path, so your ways and your practices will bring good to you.’ ¹² But they will say, ‘This is no use. We will act according to our own plans. Each one of us will do what his evil, stubborn heart desires.’

translationWords:

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- Yahweh
- repent, repentance
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- good, goodness
- heart

translationNotes:

- **See** - AT: “Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”
- **I am about to form disaster against you. I am about to devise a plan against you** - Both of these sentences describe the same thing to emphasize how dangerous this warning is. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **form disaster** - Yahweh refers to disaster as something he forms as a person would form clay. AT: “shape” or “create” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **devise** - “think of” or “plan” or “create”
- **his wicked path** - AT: “his wicked way of living” (See: **Idiom**)
- **your ways and your practices** - The words “ways” and “practices” basically mean the same thing and emphasize that their whole way of living has to change. (See: **Doublet**)
- **But they will say** - The word “they” refers to the inhabitants of Judah and Jerusalem.

- **This is no use** - AT: “We have no hope”
- **what his evil, stubborn heart desires** - This person is referred to by the part of his body associated with emotions. AT: “by his wicked desires” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 18:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ So this is what Yahweh said in response:

”Ask the people who live in other nations if they have ever heard of such a thing.

My Israelite people, who have been pure like virgins, have done a terrible thing!

¹⁴ The snow certainly never completely disappears from the rocky slopes of the mountains in Lebanon.

The cold streams that flow down from those distant mountains never cease flowing.

ULB:

¹³ Therefore Yahweh says this, 'Ask the nations, who has ever heard of such a thing as this?

The virgin Israel has committed a horrible act.

¹⁴ Does the snow in Lebanon ever leave the rocky hills on its sides?

Are the mountain streams coming from far away ever destroyed, those cold streams?

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- nation
- virgin
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- snow
- Lebanon

translationNotes:

- **Ask the nations, who has ever heard of such a thing as this?** - This question stands for a statement. AT: “Nowhere on earth has anyone ever heard of such a thing like this.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **The virgin Israel** - It was common to refer to nations as if they were women. However, “virgin” makes a person think about a young woman who has never married and so has never had the opportunity to be faithless to her husband. Therefore, calling Israel a virgin is an ironic use of language. AT: “Israel, who falsely pretends to be fully devoted to God” (See: [Personification](#) and [Irony](#))
- **Does the snow in Lebanon ever leave the rocky hills on its sides?** - This question stands for a statement. AT: “The snow of Lebanon clearly never leaves the rocky hills on its sides” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Are the mountain streams coming from far away ever destroyed?** - This question stands for a statement. AT: “Nothing can ever destroy those mountain streams coming from far away.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 18:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ But my people are not as reliable as those streams:

They have abandoned me.

They burn incense to honor worthless idols.

It is as though they have stumbled as they walked along well known and reliable roads

and now, instead, they are walking on dirt paths.

¹⁶ Therefore, their land will become desolate,

and people who see it will hiss to ridicule it from now on.

All the people who pass by will be appalled;

they will shake their heads to show that they are shocked.

¹⁷ I will scatter the people when their enemies attack them

like dust is scattered by an east wind.

And when they experience all these disasters,

I will turn my back on them and refuse to help them.”

ULB:

¹⁵ Yet my people have forgotten me. They have made offerings to useless idols and been made to stumble in their paths;

they have left the ancient paths to walk lesser paths.

¹⁶ Their land will become a horror, an object of everlasting hissing.

Everyone who passes by her will shudder and shake his head.

¹⁷ I will scatter them before their enemies like an eastern wind. I will show them my back, and not my face, on the day of their disaster.”

translationWords:

- people of God, my people
- sacrifice, offering
- idol, idolatrous
- stumble
- walk

- [horror, horrified](#)
- [everlasting, eternal, eternity](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

translationNotes:

- **stumble in their paths** - Here the word “their” refers to “my people.”
- **will become a horror** - AT: “will become something that horrifies people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **hissing** - This is a sound that shows strong disapproval.
- **passes by her** - Here the word “her” refers to “Their land.”
- **I will scatter them before their enemies like an eastern wind** - Yahweh compares himself to wind from the east that scatters dust and debris. (See: [Simile](#))
- **will scatter them** - Here the word “them” refers to “my people.”
- **I will show them my back, and not my face** - This action symbolizes that God will refuse to help his people.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 18:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ Then the people said, “Come, we should plan to attack Jeremiah. We have many priests who teach us God’s laws, wise men who give us good advice, and prophets who tell us what will happen. We do not need Jeremiah! So we should slander him and not pay attention to anything that he says.”

¹⁹ Then I prayed, “Yahweh, please listen to me!

And listen to what my enemies are saying about me.

²⁰ I am doing things that are good,

so it is disgusting that they are paying me back by doing evil things to me.

It is as though they have dug a pit for me to fall into and die.

Do not forget that one time I stood in front of you and pleaded for you to help them,

and I tried to prevent you from punishing them, even though you were very angry with them.

ULB:

¹⁸ So the people said, “Come, let us make plots against Jeremiah, since the law will never perish from the priests, or advice from the wise men, or words from the prophets. Come, let us attack him with our words and no longer pay attention to anything he proclaims.”

¹⁹ Pay attention to me, Yahweh, and listen to the voice of my enemies.

²⁰ Will disaster from them really be my reward for being good to them? For they have dug a pit for me.

Remember how I stood before you to speak for their welfare, to cause your fury to turn away from them.

translationWords:

- Jeremiah
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- perish, perishing, perishable
- priest, priesthood
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- wise, wisdom
- word

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- proclaim, proclamation
- reward
- pit
- wrath, fury
- turn, turn away, turn back

translationNotes:

- **let us make plots against Jeremiah** - “let us make plans to harm Jeremiah”
- **the law will never perish from the priests, or advice from the wise men, or words from the prophets** - AT: “the priests will always have the law, the wise men will always give advice, and the prophets will always speak” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **attack him with our words** - “say things that will harm him” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Pay attention to me** - Here Jeremiah begins speaking to Yahweh.
- **Will disaster from them really be my reward for being good to them?** - Jeremiah asks this question to emphasize that good actions should not be repaid with bad things. AT: “Disaster from them should not be my reward for being good to them.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **dug a pit for me** - AT: “dug a pit to trap me and kill me” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **to cause your fury to turn away from them** - AT: “so that you would not punish them in your anger” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 18:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ So now, allow their children to die from hunger!

Or cause them to be killed by their enemies' swords!

Cause their wives to become widows, whose children are all dead!

Cause their husbands to be killed in battles!

²² Cause people to scream in their homes

when enemy soldiers suddenly come into their houses!

Cause all these things to happen to them because they want to kill me.

It is as though they have dug a pit for me to fall into,

and they have hidden traps along my path.

²³ Yahweh, you know all the things that they are planning to do to kill me.

Do not forgive them for their crimes

or blot out the record of their sins.

Cause them to be destroyed;

punish them because of your being angry with them!"

ULB:

²¹ Therefore hand over their children to famine, and give them to the hands of those who use the sword.

So let their women become bereaved and widows, and their men be killed, and their young men killed by the sword in battle. ²² Let a distressed shout be heard from their houses, as you suddenly bring raiders against them.

For they have dug a pit to capture me and have hidden traps for my feet.

²³ But you, Yahweh, you know all of their plans against me to kill me.

Do not forgive their iniquities and sins. Do not wipe their sins away from you.

Instead, let them be overthrown before you. Act against them in the time of your wrath.

translationWords:

- hand, right hand, to hand over
- children, child
- famine
- power, powers
- sword
- snare, trap
- Yahweh
- forgive, forgiveness
- iniquity
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- blot out, wipe out

translationNotes:

- **give them over to the power of the sword** - “Sword” represents warfare. AT: “cause them to die in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **let their women become bereaved and widows** - “let the children and husbands of their women die”
- **their men be killed, and their young men killed by the sword** - AT: “people kill their men, and kill their young men with swords” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **a distressed shout be heard** - AT: “people hear a distressed shout” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **For they have dug a pit to capture me and have hidden traps for my feet** - Jeremiah’s enemies are trying to capture him like a person would capture a wild animal. Jeremiah repeats the same idea twice for emphasis. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **they have dug a pit** - See how you translated this in [18:20](#).
- **Do not wipe their sins away from you** - This phrase means the same thing as the previous phrase. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **let them be overthrown before you** - AT: “let people overthrow them in your presence” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 18 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

People horrified

The destruction of Jerusalem will be so complete that it will leave dead bodies everywhere that it will horrify people who see it.

Links:

- **[Jeremiah 19:01 Notes](#)**

Jeremiah 19:1-3

UDB:

¹ This is another message that Yahweh gave to me: "Go and buy a clay jar from a man who makes them. Then take with you some of the elders of the people and leaders of the priests. ² Go out of the city past the Broken Pottery Gate, to the place overlooking the dump for broken pottery in the Hinnom Valley. Then give them a message. ³ Say to them, 'This message is for you kings of Judah and other people of Jerusalem. Listen to what Yahweh is saying! The God of Israel, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says that he will bring a terrible disaster on Jerusalem. Those who hear about it will be stunned.

ULB:

19 ¹ Yahweh said this, "Go and purchase a potter's clay flask while you are with the elders of the people and the priests. ² Then go out to the Valley of Ben Hinnom at the entry of the Broken Pottery Gate, and there proclaim the words that I will tell you. ³ Say, 'Hear the word of Yahweh, kings of Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem! Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this, "See, and I am about to bring disaster on this place, and the ears of everyone who hears of it will tingle.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- elder
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- priest, priesthood
- gate, gate bar
- proclaim, proclamation
- word
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **Valley of Ben Hinnom** - See how you translated this in [7:31](#).
- **See** - AT: "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"
- **the ears of everyone who hears of it will tingle** - AT: "it will shock everyone who hears of it" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 19 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 19 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 19:4-5

UDB:

⁴ That will happen because you Israelite people have stopped worshiping me, and have caused this place to be a place where you worship foreign gods. You burn sacrifices to gods that neither you nor your ancestors nor even the kings of Judah ever heard about. And you have filled this place with the blood of innocent people whom you have killed. ⁵ You have built houses on the top of many hills to honor your god Baal, and at those places you have killed your own children and offered them to be sacrifices to Baal. I never commanded you to do that, I never spoke about doing that, and never even considered allowing that!

ULB:

⁴ I will do this because they have abandoned me and profaned this place. In this place they offer sacrifices to other gods that they did not know. They, their ancestors, and the kings of Judah have also filled this place with innocent blood. ⁵ They built the high places of Baal to burn their sons in the fire as burnt offerings to him—something that I did not command or mention, nor did it enter my mind.

translationWords:

- profane
- sacrifice, offering
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- know, knowledge, make known
- innocent
- blood
- high places
- Baal
- son, son of
- fire
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- command, to command, commandment

translationNotes:

- **they have abandoned me** - Here the word “they” refers to the people of Judah.
- **filled this place with innocent blood** - AT: “murdered many innocent people in this place” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **something that I did not command** - AT: “something that I forbid them to do” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **nor did it enter my mind** - Here the word “mind” refers to Yahweh’s thoughts. AT: “nor did I ever think about it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 19 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 19 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 19:6-9**UDB:**

⁶ So, beware, because I, Yahweh, say that there will be a time when this garbage dump will no longer be called Topheth or Hinnom Valley; it will be called Slaughter Valley. ⁷ In this place I will ruin the plans of you people who live in Jerusalem and in other places in Judah. I will allow your enemies who want to kill you to kill many of you with their swords. Then I will allow your corpses to remain on the ground to be food for vultures and wild animals. ⁸ I will completely destroy Jerusalem and cause it to become a heap of ruins that people will despise. All the people who pass by will be appalled, and they will be shocked when they see that the city has been destroyed. ⁹ I will enable your enemies who want to kill you to surround the city for a long time. Then the food will be all gone, and you people will be extremely hungry, with the result that you people in the city will eat the flesh of your own children and your neighbors' children.'

ULB:

⁶ Therefore, see, the days are coming—this is Yahweh's declaration—when this place will no longer be called Topheth, the Valley of Ben Hinnom, for it will be the Valley of Slaughter. ⁷ In this place I will make the plans of Judah and Jerusalem useless. I will make them to fall by the sword before their enemies and by the hand of the ones seeking their lives. Then I will give their corpses as food to the birds of the heavens and the beasts of the earth. ⁸ Then I will make this city a ruin and the object of hissing, for everyone passing by it will shudder and hiss regarding all of its plagues. ⁹ I will make them eat the flesh of their sons and daughters; each man will consume the flesh of his neighbor in the siege and in the anguish brought on them by their enemies and the ones seeking their lives.'"

translationWords:

- declare, declaration
- slaughter
- sword
- adversary, enemy
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- beast
- earth, earthly
- ruin, ruins
- plague
- flesh
- consume
- neighbor

- [siege, besiege](#)
- [anguish](#)

translationNotes:

- **see** - AT: “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **this place will no longer be called** - AT: “people will no longer call this place” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Topheth ... the Valley of Ben Hinnom ... the Valley of Slaughter** - See how you translated these names in [7:31](#).
- **I will make them to fall by the sword before their enemies** - AT: “I will make their enemies kill them with swords” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **by the hand of the ones seeking their lives** - This phrase means basically the same thing as the previous phrase. AT: “I will allow those who want to kill them to kill them” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Ellipsis](#) and [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **hissing** - The “S” sound, which shows strong disapproval.
- **I will make them eat** - “I will make the people who live in Jerusalem eat”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 19 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 19 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 19:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Jeremiah, after you tell that to them, while the people who are with you are watching, smash the jar that you brought. ¹¹ Then say to them, "This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says: Just like this jar has been smashed and cannot be repaired, I will smash this city of Jerusalem and other places in Judah. You will bury some of your corpses here in this dump, until there is no more space to bury any more corpses.

ULB:

¹⁰ Then you will break the clay flask in the sight of the men who went with you. ¹¹ You will say to them, "Yahweh of hosts says this: I will do this same thing to this people and this city—this is Yahweh's declaration—just as Jeremiah shattered the clay flask so that it could not be repaired again. People will bury the dead in Topheth until there is no place left for any more dead.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)

translationNotes:

- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **it could not be repaired again** - AT: "no one can repair it again" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 19 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 19 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 19:12-13

UDB:

¹² That is what I will do to this city and to you people who live here. I will make you unfit to worship me, and this city will be like you, just as Topheth is. ¹³ The houses in Jerusalem and the palaces of the kings of Judah will be unfit, like this place will be. All the houses where you burned incense on the rooftops to honor the stars that you worshiped, and where you poured out wine to be an offering to your gods, will become unfit for anyone who worships me to live in.”

ULB:

¹² This is what I will do to this place and its inhabitants when I make this city like Topheth—this is Yahweh’s declaration— ¹³ so the houses of Jerusalem and of the kings of Judah will become like Topheth—all the houses on whose rooftops the unclean people worship all the stars of the heavens and pour out drink offerings to other gods.”

translationWords:

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [king](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [worship](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#)

translationNotes:

- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **and of the kings of Judah** - AT: “and the houses of the kings of Judah” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 19:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Then I returned from the garbage dump where Yahweh had sent me to tell them that message, and I stood in the courtyard of Yahweh's temple and said this to all the people who were there:
¹⁵ "This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says: 'I will bring a disaster to this city and to the villages around it like I promised, because you people have stubbornly refused to pay attention to what I said to you.'"

ULB:

¹⁴ Then Jeremiah went from Topheth, where Yahweh had sent him to prophesy. He stood in the courtyard of Yahweh's house and he said to all the people, ¹⁵ "Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this, 'See, I am about to bring to this city and to all of its towns all the disaster that I have proclaimed against it, since they stiffened their neck and refused to listen to my words.'"

translationWords:

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [stiff-necked, stubborn](#)
- [word](#)

translationNotes:

- **See** - AT: "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"
- **stiffened their neck and refused to listen** - The phrase "refused to listen" means basically the same thing as "stiffened their neck" and explains how the people did so. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 19 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 19 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 20:7-18, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Pashhur

This chapter prophesied punishment against a specific leader named Pashhur. He was in charge of protecting the temple and had Jeremiah beaten and arrested. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [temple](#))

Jeremiah's reaction

Jeremiah's reaction contrasts with the reaction of the Jews in general. Although Jeremiah was not happy with Yahweh's actions, he still trusted in Yahweh. On the other hand, the Jews were not happy with the prophecies Yahweh gave to Jeremiah, so they beat the prophet. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 20:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 20:1-2

UDB:

¹ Pashhur son of Immer, was a priest who supervised the temple guards. He heard these things that I had prophesied. ² So he arrested me. Then he commanded guards to whip me and fasten my feet in stocks at the Benjamin Gate of Yahweh's temple.

ULB:

20 ¹ Pashhur son of Immer the priest—he was a leading officer—heard Jeremiah prophesying these words before Yahweh's house. ² So Pashhur beat Jeremiah the prophet and then placed him in the stocks that were at the Upper Gate of Benjamin in Yahweh's house.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- priest, priesthood
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- word
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- gate, gate bar
- Benjamin

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **he was a leading officer** - Here the word "he" refers to Pashur.
- **Pashhur beat Jeremiah** - Possible meanings are 1) that Pashhur himself beat Jeremiah or 2) that Pashhur ordered other men to beat Jeremiah. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **stocks** - Stocks are a wooden frame with holes in it that people use to lock up a prisoner's hands, feet, and head.
- **Upper Gate of Benjamin** - This gate is different from the gate in the city wall that shared the same name.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 20:3-4

UDB:

³ The next day, when Pashhur released me, I said to him, "Pashhur, Yahweh is giving you a new name. From now on, your name will be 'Surrounded by Terror,' ⁴ because Yahweh says this to you: 'I will cause you and your loved ones to be terrified. You will watch them being killed by your enemies' swords. I will enable the army of the king of Babylon to capture the people of Judah. Those soldiers will take some of the people to Babylon, and they will kill others with their swords.

ULB:

³ It happened on the next day that Pashhur brought Jeremiah out of the stocks. Then Jeremiah said to him, "Yahweh has not called your name Pashhur, but you are Magor Missabib. ⁴ For Yahweh says this, 'Look, I will make you an object of horror, you and all of your loved ones, for they will fall by the sword of their enemies and your eyes will see it. I will give all of Judah into the hand of the king of Babylon. He will make them captives in Babylon or attack them with the sword.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- call, calling, called, call out
- name
- horror, horrified
- love
- sword
- adversary, enemy
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- captive, captivity

translationNotes:

- **It happened** - This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **you are Magor Missabib** - This name means "terror on every side" or "surrounded by terror." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Look** - AT: "Take note to what I am about to tell you"
- **they will fall by the sword of their enemies** - AT: "their enemies will kill them with swords" (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **your eyes will see it** - AT: “you will see it” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **I will give all of Judah into the hand of the king of Babylon** - Here the word “hand” refers to power. AT: “I will enable the king of Babylon to conquer all of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 20:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ And I will enable their soldiers to take away other things in Jerusalem: all your wealth and the produce of your hard work. They will take to Babylon all the very valuable things that belonged to your kings. ⁶ And as for you, Pashhur, they will take you and all your family to Babylon. You and your family and all your friends who have prophesied things that are lies will die there and be buried there.”

ULB:

⁵ I will give him all the wealth of this city and all of its riches, all of its precious items and all the treasures of the kings of Judah. I will place these things in the hand of your enemies, and they will seize them. They will take them and bring them to Babylon. ⁶ But you, Pashhur, and all the inhabitants of your house will go into captivity. You will go to Babylon and die there. You and all of your loved ones to whom you prophesied deceitful things will be buried there.”

translationWords:

- precious
- seize
- house
- death, die, dead
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- bury, buried, burial

translationNotes:

- **I will give him** - Here the word “him” refers to the king of Babylon.
- **all the wealth ... all of its riches, all of its precious items and all the treasures** - Yahweh repeats the same basic idea four times for emphasis. That is Babylon will take away all the wealth of Israel, including the King’s possessions. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **I will place these things in the hand of your enemies** - Here the word “hand” refers to possession. AT: “I will allow your enemies to take possession of these things” or “I will give these things to your enemies” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **You and all of your loved ones to whom you prophesied deceitful things will be buried there** - AT: “There, people will bury you and all of your loved ones to whom you prophesied deceitful things” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 20:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ One day I said this to Yahweh:

”Yahweh, when you chose me to be a prophet, you deceived me so that I would agree to do this work.

You forced me to become a prophet.

But now everyone ridicules me.

They make fun of me all the day.

⁸ When I tell people your messages, I shout saying,

‘Yahweh is going to cause you to experience violence and destruction!’

So because I tell them those messages from you,

they insult me and scoff at me all the day.

⁹ But if I would say, ‘I will never mention Yahweh or say anything about him,’

it would be as though your message would burn in my inner being like a fire;

it would be like a fire in my bones.

Sometimes I try to remain silent and not proclaim your messages,

but I am not able to do that.

ULB:

⁷ ”You deceived me, Yahweh. I was indeed deceived. You seized me and defeated me.

I have become a laughingstock. The people mock me every day, all the day.

⁸ For whenever I have spoken, I have called out and proclaimed, ‘Violence and destruction.’

Then Yahweh’s word has become for me reproach and mocking every day.

⁹ If I say, ‘I will not think about Yahweh anymore. I will no longer proclaim his name.’

Then it is like a fire in my heart, held within my bones. So I struggle to contain it but I cannot.

translationWords:

- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- proclaim, proclamation
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- reproach
- name
- fire
- heart

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah Speaks to Yahweh
- **I was indeed deceived** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “You indeed deceive me” (UDB) or “you really did deceive me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **You deceived me, Yahweh. I was indeed deceived** - Some modern versions interpret these Hebrew expressions as “You persuaded me, Yahweh. I was indeed persuaded.”
- **laughingstock** - This is a person whom others laugh at and make fun of.
- **The people mock me every day, all the day** - This phrase means basically the same thing as the previous phrase. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **called out and proclaimed** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he proclaimed Yahweh’s message boldly. AT: “openly proclaimed” or “proclaimed loudly” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Yahweh’s word has become for me reproach and mocking every day** - Here “word” refers to the message of Yahweh. AT: “People reproach and mock me every day because I proclaim Yahweh’s message” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **for me reproach and mocking** - The words “reproach” and “mocking” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that people have ridiculed Jeremiah for proclaiming Yahweh’s message. AT: “a reason for people to ridicule me” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **I will no longer proclaim his name** - Possible meanings are 1) “I will no longer say anything about him” (UDB) or 2) “I will no longer speak as his messenger” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **it is like a fire in my heart, held within my bones** - Jeremiah speaks of Yahweh’s message as if it were an uncontrollable fire. AT: “Yahweh’s word is like a fire that burns deep within me” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 20:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ I hear many people whispering about me,

saying 'He is the man who proclaims that there will be things that cause us to be terrified everywhere.

We must tell the authorities what he is saying! We must denounce him!'

Even my best friends are waiting for me to say something that is wrong.

They are saying, 'Perhaps we can cause him to say something wrong, and if he does, we will be able to defeat him.'

¹¹ But you, Yahweh, are helping me like a strong warrior,

so it is as though he will cause those who persecute me to stumble, and they will not defeat me.

They will be completely disgraced because of being unable to gain any advantage over me;

and other people will never forget that they were disgraced.

ULB:

¹⁰ I have heard rumors of terror from many people all around. 'Report! We must report it!'

Those who are close to me watch to see if I will fall. 'Perhaps he can be tricked.

If so, we can overpower him and take our revenge on him.'

¹¹ But Yahweh is with me like a powerful warrior, so the ones pursuing me will stagger.

They will not defeat me. They will be greatly ashamed, because they will not succeed.

They will have unending shame, it will never be forgotten.

translationWords:

- **terror, terrify**
- **avenge, revenge, vengeance**
- **Yahweh**
- **warrior, soldier**
- **shame, shameful, ashamed**

translationNotes:

- **Report. We must report it** - Jeremiah's enemies say these words.
- **Perhaps he can be tricked ... take our revenge on him** - Jeremiah's enemies say these words.
- **Perhaps he can be tricked** - "Perhaps we can trick him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Yahweh is with me like a powerful warrior** - Yahweh is like a powerful warrior who protects Jeremiah and defeats his enemies. (See: [Simile](#))
- **it will never be forgotten** - "people will never forget it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 20:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Yahweh, commander of the angel armies,

you examine all those who are righteous;

you know all that is in their inner beings and what they think.

Allow me to see you getting revenge on those who want to harm me,

because I came to you to petition for what is right.”

¹³ Sing to Yahweh!

Praise Yahweh!

He rescues poor and needy people,

from those who are wicked.

ULB:

¹² But you, Yahweh of hosts, you who examine the righteous and who see the mind and the heart.

Let me see your vengeance on them since I have shown my case to you.

¹³ Sing to Yahweh! Praise Yahweh!

For he has rescued the lives of those who are oppressed from the hand of evildoers.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- righteous, righteousness
- mind
- heart
- praise
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- evildoer

translationNotes:

- **who see the mind and the heart** - AT: “who knows what people think and desire” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **rescued the lives of those who are oppressed** - AT: “rescued oppressed people” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **from the hand of evildoers** - Here the word hand refers to power. AT: “from the power of evildoers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 20:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ But I hope that the day that I was born will be cursed.

I do not want anyone to celebrate that day when my mother gave birth to me.

¹⁵ And as for that man who brought to my father the news,

and caused him to be very happy, by saying

“Your wife has given birth to a son for you,”

I hope that he also will be cursed.

ULB:

¹⁴ Let the day when I was born be cursed.

Do not let the day that my mother bore me be blessed.

¹⁵ Let the man who informed my father be cursed,

the one who said, ‘A male child has been born to you,’ causing great joy.

translationWords:

- curse, cursed
- bless, blessed, blessing
- joy, joyful

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues speaking to Yahweh.
- **Let the day when I was born be cursed** - AT: “Curse the day I was born” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Do not let the day that my mother bore me be blessed** - AT: “Do not bless the day that my mother bore me.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Let the man who informed my father be cursed** - AT: “Curse the man who informed my father” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 20:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ Allow him to be destroyed like the cities that Yahweh destroyed long ago,
without acting mercifully toward them.

Cause that man to hear the people wailing in the morning,
and to hear the enemy soldiers shout their battle cries at noon.

¹⁷ I want that to happen to him because he did not kill me when I was born.
I wish that I had died in my mother's womb,
and that my mother's body would have been like my grave.

¹⁸ I have continually experienced much trouble and sorrow,
and I am disgraced now when I am about to die;
why was it necessary for me to be born?

ULB:

¹⁶ Let that man be like the cities that Yahweh overthrew when he would not have mercy.

May he hear a call for help in the dawn and the shout of battle at noontime.

¹⁷ May this happen, since Yahweh did not kill me in the womb or make my mother my tomb,

a pregnant womb forever.

¹⁸ Why is it that I came out from the womb to see troubles and agony,
so that my days are filled with shame?"

translationWords:

- mercy, merciful
- call, calling, called, call out
- womb
- tomb, grave, burial place
- forever
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- shame, shameful, ashamed

translationNotes:

- **that man** - This refers to the man who informed Jeremiah's father of Jeremiah's birth.
- **the cities that Yahweh overthrew** - This refers to Sodom and Gomorrah.
- **he would not have mercy** - Here the word "he" refers to Yahweh.
- **May he hear a call for help** - Here the word "he" refers to "that man."
- **make my mother my tomb** - Jeremiah's mother's womb would have held his dead body like tombs hold the bodies of dead people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Why is it that I came out from the womb to see troubles and agony ... shame?** - Jeremiah uses this question to complain that there was no good reason for him to be born. AT: "There was no reason for me to be born only to see troubles and agony ... shame." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **to see troubles and agony** - The words "troubles" and "agony" mean basically the same thing and emphasize the amount and severity of suffering. AT: "to experience so much suffering." (See: [Doublet](#))
- **my days are filled with shame** - AT: "my life is filled with shame" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 20 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 21:11-14, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Jerusalem doomed

God will fight against Jerusalem and will use the nation of Babylon to fight his battle. If the Jews wanted to live, they must surrender to Babylon. Most of the Jews would have rather died than to surrender to Babylon. Usually, fighting against a Gentile nation was a sign of trust in Yahweh's power. In this instance, it was a sign of trust in Yahweh to surrender. (See: [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#) and [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 21:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 21:1-2

UDB:

¹ Yahweh gave me another message when King Zedekiah of Judah sent a man named Pashhur son of Malkijah, and a priest named Zephaniah son of Maaseiah, to talk to me. They pleaded with me, saying, ² “The army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon is attacking Judah. Please speak to Yahweh for us. Ask him if he will help us. Perhaps he will force Nebuchadnezzar’s army to leave by performing a miracle for us, like the miracles he performed previously.”

ULB:

21 ¹ This is the word that came from Yahweh to Jeremiah when King Zedekiah sent Pashhur son of Malkijah and Zephaniah son of Maaseiah the priest to him. They said to him, ² “Seek advice from Yahweh on our behalf, for Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon is making war on us. Perhaps Yahweh will do miracles for us, as in times past, and will make him withdraw from us.”

translationWords:

- [word](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [king](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)
- [Zephaniah](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Pashhur** - This is not the same Pashhur that was mentioned in [20:1](#)
- **Seek advice from Yahweh on our behalf** - AT: “Please speak to Yahweh for us. Ask him if he will help us”
- **as in times past** - AT: “as he did in the past” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **will make him withdraw from us** - AT: “will make him go away”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 21 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 21 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 21:3-5

UDB:

³ I replied to them, "Go back to King Zedekiah. Tell him, ⁴ 'This is what Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, says: "I will cause your weapons to be useless in fighting against the king of Babylon and his army that is outside the walls of Jerusalem, attacking. I will enable them to enter into the center of this city. ⁵ I myself will fight against your army with my very great power, because I am very angry with you.

ULB:

³ So Jeremiah said to them, "This is what you must say to Zedekiah, ⁴ 'Yahweh, God of Israel, says this: See, I am about to turn back the instruments of war that are in your hand, with which you are fighting against the king of Babylon and the Chaldeans who are closing you in from outside the walls! For I will gather them in the middle of this city. ⁵ Then I myself will fight against you with a raised hand and a strong arm, and with wrath, fury, and great anger.

translationWords:

- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- turn, turn away, turn back
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- wrath, fury
- angry, anger

translationNotes:

- **the instruments of war that are in your hand** - AT: "the soldiers that you command" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **closing you in** - "coming close to you"
- **with a raised hand and a strong arm** - Both of these phrases are idiomatic expressions that refer to great power. AT: "with very great power." (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))
- **with wrath, fury, and great anger** - These words all mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the great intensity of his anger. AT: "with extremely great anger." (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 21 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 21 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 21:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ I will send a very terrible plague on the people of this city, and on their domestic animals, and many of them will die.” ⁷ And Yahweh says there are many people in this city who want to kill you. So, he will enable the army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon and other people in this city to capture you, King Zedekiah, and your officials, and all the other people who do not die from the plague. His army will slaughter your soldiers; they will not act mercifully toward you or pity you at all.’

ULB:

⁶ For I will attack the inhabitants of this city, both man and beast They will die in a severe plague. ⁷ After this—this is Yahweh’s declaration—Zedekiah king of Judah, his servants, the people, and whoever remains in this city after the plague, the sword, and the famine, I will give them all into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and into the hand of their enemies, and into the hand of those seeking their life. Then he will kill them with the edge of the sword. He will not pity them, spare them, or have compassion.’

translationWords:

- **beast**
- **death, die, dead**
- **plague**
- **Judah, kingdom of Judah**
- **servant, slave, slavery**
- **people group, peoples, the people, a people**
- **sword**
- **famine**
- **hand, right hand, to hand over**
- **adversary, enemy**
- **life, live, living, alive**
- **compassion, compassionate**

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: **Parallelism**
- **inhabitants of this city** - AT: “those who live in Jerusalem”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 21 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 21 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 21:8-10

UDB:

⁸ And tell this to all the people: 'Yahweh says that you must decide whether you want to die or to remain alive. ⁹ Everyone who remains in Jerusalem will die. They will be killed in battles or die from being hungry or from diseases. But those who surrender to the army of Babylon that is surrounding your city will remain alive. They will escape dying. ¹⁰ This will happen because I, Yahweh, have decided to cause this city to experience disasters, not to experience something good. The army of the king of Babylon will capture this city and will destroy it completely by fire.'"

ULB:

⁸ Then to this people you must say, 'Yahweh says this: See, I am about to place before you the way of life and the way of death. ⁹ Anyone staying in this city will die by the sword, famine, and plague; but anyone going out and falling on his knees before the Chaldeans who have closed in against you will live. He will escape with his life. ¹⁰ For I have set my face against this city in order to bring disaster and not to bring good—this is Yahweh's declaration. It has been given into the hand of the king of Babylon and he will burn it.'

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [face](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [king](#)

translationNotes:

- **this people** - AT: "the people of Jerusalem"
- **I am about to place before you the way of life and the way of death** - Yahweh is offering the people of Jerusalem a choice that will determine whether they live or die.
- **falling on his knees before** - AT: "surrendering to"
- **closed in against** - AT: "attacked from all sides"
- **I have set my face against** - AT: "I have determined to oppose" or "I have turned against"
- **He will escape with his life** - The one who surrenders to the Babylonians will escape with his life, even though he will lose all his possessions.
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 21 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 21 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 21:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Yahweh also told me to say this to the family of the king of Judah: "Listen to this message from Yahweh! ¹² This is what he says to you descendants of King David:

'Every day, make fair decisions for the people whom you judge.

Help those who have been robbed.

Rescue them from robbers and abusers.

If you do not do that,

I will be angry and punish you with a fire that will be impossible to extinguish,

because of all the sins that you have committed.

ULB:

¹¹ Concerning the house of the king of Judah, listen to the word of Yahweh.

¹² House of David, Yahweh says, 'Bring about justice in the morning.

Rescue the one who has been robbed by the hand of the oppressor,
or my fury will go out like fire and burn,

and there is no one who can quench it, because of your evil deeds.

translationWords:

- house
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- David
- just, justice, justly
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- fire
- quench
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **Concerning the house of the king of Judah, listen to the word of Yahweh** - AT: "Listen to what Yahweh says about the king of Judah, his family, and his servants."

- **Bring about justice in the morning** - AT: “Always treat the people whom you rule over fairly” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the hand of the oppressor** - AT: “the power of the one who oppresses” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **my fury will go out like fire and burn** - AT: “I will punish and destroy you in my anger quickly and completely” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 21 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 21 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 21:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ I will fight against you people of Jerusalem,

you who live on top of a rocky hill above the valley.

I will fight against you people who boast, saying,

“No one can attack us and break through our defenses.”

¹⁴ I will punish you for your wicked deeds like you deserve to be punished;

It will be as though I will light a fire in your forests

that will burn up everything around you.”

ULB:

¹³ See, inhabitant of the valley! I am against you, rock of the plain—this is Yahweh’s declaration—

I am against anyone who is saying, “Who will come down to attack us?” or “Who will enter our houses?”

¹⁴ I have assigned the fruit of your practices to come against you—this is Yahweh’s declaration—

and I will light a fire in the thickets, and it will consume everything around it.”

translationWords:

- fruit, fruitful
- consume

translationNotes:

- **I am against you, rock of the plain** - AT: “I oppose you, Jerusalem” or “I am going to punish you, people of Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **Who will come down to attack us? ... Who will enter our houses?** - AT: “No one will attack us and no one will enter our houses” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **I have assigned the fruit of your practices to come against you** - AT: “I will punish you as you deserve because of the things you have done” See: ([Metonymy](#))
- **the fruit of your practices** - AT: “the result of your deeds” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 21 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 21 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 22:6-10, 13-28, 28-30, which are extended quotations.

Special concepts in this chapter

Luxury and oppression

Because the king lived in luxury and oppressed the poor, God was sending him and his mother into captivity unless he repented. The king lacked justice. (See: [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#) and [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 22:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 22:1-3**UDB:**

¹ This is another message that Yahweh gave to me: "Go down to the palace of the king of Judah and say this to him: ² 'You are the king of Judah. You are the ruler, like King David was. You and your officials and your people must listen ³ to what Yahweh says: "Act fairly and justly. Do what is right. Help those who have been robbed. Rescue people from those who oppress them. Stop doing evil deeds. Do not mistreat those who have come here from other countries, and do not mistreat orphans and widows. Stop murdering here in Jerusalem.

ULB:

22 ¹ This is what Yahweh says, "Go down to the house of the king of Judah and proclaim this word there. ² Say, 'King of Judah, listen to the word of Yahweh—you who sit on David's throne—you, and your servants, and your people who come through these gates. ³ Yahweh says this, "Perform justice and righteousness, and anyone who has been robbed—rescue him from the hand of the oppressor. Do not mistreat any foreigner in your land, or any orphan or widow. Do not commit violence or pour out innocent blood in this place.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- proclaim, proclamation
- David
- throne
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- servant, slave, slavery
- gate, gate bar
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- innocent
- blood

translationNotes:

- **sit on David's throne** - This refers to having kingly authority, like David had. AT: "rule as king, like David before you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **listen to the word of Yahweh** - AT: “pay attention to the word of Yahweh”
- **you, and your servants, and your people** - AT: “you and your servants, and your people who live in his country”
- **who come through these gates** - These are the gates of the palace of the king. AT: “who come to visit the king”
- **the hand of the oppressor** - The word “hand” refers to the power or control of a person. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Do not mistreat** - Do not treat someone badly
- **orphan** - a child who does not have parents
- **Do not ... pour out innocent blood** - AT: “Do not ... murder innocent people” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **in this place** - “This place” refers to Jerusalem, or even the whole country of Judah. This does not imply that it is good to murder people in other places.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:4-5

UDB:

⁴ If you obey these commands carefully, there will always be some descendant of King David who will be ruling here in Jerusalem. The king and his officials and other people will ride through the gates of the city in chariots and on horses. ⁵ But if you refuse to pay attention to these commands, I, Yahweh, solemnly declare, that this palace will become a pile of rubble. “”

ULB:

⁴ For if you truly do these things, then kings sitting on David’s throne will enter the gates of this house riding in a chariot and on horses, he, his servants, and his people! ⁵ But if you do not listen to these words from me that I have announced—this is Yahweh’s declaration—then this royal palace will become a ruin.”

translationWords:

- David
- throne
- gate, gate bar
- chariot
- horse
- royal
- palace
- ruin, ruins

translationNotes:

- **kings sitting on David’s throne** - This refers to kings having authority like David had. AT: “kings, ruling like David before them” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **riding in a chariot and on horses** - This phrase describes the kings as powerful and wealthy. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he, his servants, and his people** - This sentence lists all who will be powerful and wealthy. AT: “he, his servants, and his people will ride into the palace on chariots and horses” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **if you do not listen** - AT: “if you do not pay attention” (UDB) or “if you do not obey”
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 22 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 22:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ And this is what Yahweh says about the king's palace:

”I like this palace, like I like the forests in the region of Gilead
and the mountains in Lebanon.

But I will cause this palace to become a desert,
a place that no one lives in.

⁷ I will select troops who will destroy this palace;
each soldier will use his own tools to wreck the building.
They will cut into pieces the beautiful big cedar beams
and throw them into a fire.”

ULB:

⁶ For Yahweh says this concerning the palace of the king of Judah,

’You are like Gilead, or like the summit of Lebanon to me. Yet I will turn you
into a wilderness,
into cities with no inhabitants.

⁷ For I have designated destroyers to come against you! Men with their
weapons
will cut off the best of your cedars and let them fall into the fire.

translationWords:

- palace
- Gilead
- Lebanon
- turn, turn away, turn back
- desert, wilderness
- cut off
- cedar
- fire

translationNotes:

- **palace of the king of Judah** - This could also be translated as “house of the king of Judah” and refers to the family and descendants of the King of Judah. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **You are like Gilead, or like the summit of Lebanon** - Yahweh is describing his good feelings toward the family and descendants of the King of Judah (See: [Simile](#))
- **turn you into a wilderness** - AT: “cause your cities to become empty or uninhabited” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:8-9

UDB:

⁸ People from many nations will walk past the ruins of this city and say to each other, “Why did Yahweh destroy this city that was very great?” ⁹ And other people will reply, “He did it because his people stopped obeying the agreement that they had made with Yahweh their God. Instead, they worshiped other gods.”

ULB:

⁸ Then many nations will pass by this city. Each person will say to the next, “Why has Yahweh acted in this way toward this great city?” ⁹ Then the other will answer, “Because they abandoned the covenant of Yahweh their God and bowed down to other gods and worshiped them.”

translationWords:

- [nation](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [God](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#)
- [worship](#)

translationNotes:

- **Then many nations will pass by this city.** - AT: “Then many people from various nations will pass by this city.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **bowed down to other gods and worshiped them** - These two phrases mean the same thing. The phrase “bowed down to” describes the posture that people used in worship. (See: [Paral-
lelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ Yahweh also says, "Do not mourn for King Josiah;

do not cry because he has died.

Instead, mourn for King Jehoahaz, his son,

because he will be captured and taken to another country,
and he will never return to see his own country, Judah, again."

ULB:

¹⁰ Do not weep for the dead. Do not mourn for him. But you must certainly weep for anyone who goes into captivity,

for he will never return and see the land of his birth again.'

translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [mourn, mourning](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The speaker Yahweh has shifted from addressing the King of Judah and is now speaking to a general audience.
- **see the land of his birth again** - AT: "see the land of Israel again" or "see his homeland again"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Jehoahaz became king after his father, King Josiah, died, but Jehoahaz was captured and taken to Babylon. And this is what Yahweh says about him: "He also will never return to Judah. ¹² He will die in that country where they have taken him as a captive and will never see his own country again."

ULB:

¹¹ For Yahweh says this about Jehoahaz son of Josiah king of Judah, who served as king instead of Josiah his father, 'He has gone from this place and will not come back. ¹² He will die there in the place to where they have exiled him, and he will never again see this land.'

translationWords:

- [Josiah](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jehoahaz** - The name in Hebrew is "Shallum," but he is better known as Jehoahaz.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ And Yahweh said to me, "Terrible things will happen to King Jehoahaz's brother, King Jehoiakim.

He unjustly forced men to build his palace.

The rooms on the upper level were built by men who were forced unjustly to do that work;

he forced his neighbors to work for nothing;

he did not pay them anything.

¹⁴ He said, 'I will force my workers to build a huge beautiful palace

with very large rooms and many windows.

They will cover the walls with fragrant cedar panels

and paint them bright red."

ULB:

¹³ Woe to anyone who is building his house in unrighteousness and his upper rooms in injustice;

for whom others work, but who does not pay them.

¹⁴ Woe to anyone who says, 'I will build for myself a house of great height and spacious upper rooms,

who constructs wide windows for himself, and panels with cedar, and paints it all red.'

translationWords:

- woe
- house
- unrighteous, unrighteousness
- unjust, unjustly, injustice
- works, deeds, work, acts

translationNotes:

- **house** - House is being used here to describe Jehoiakim and his family. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ But it is certainly not having a beautiful cedar palace that causes a king to be great!

Jehoiakim's father, Josiah, also had plenty of things to eat and drink.

But Josiah always did things that are right and just,
and that is why God blessed him.

¹⁶ Josiah acted justly and helped poor and needy people,
so things went well for him.

Yahweh says, "That is the way a person should behave who knows me.

ULB:

¹⁵ Is this what makes you a good king, that you wanted to have boards of cedar?

Did not your father also eat and drink, yet do justice and righteousness?
Then things went well for him.

¹⁶ He judged in favor of the poor and needy. It was good then. Is this not
what it means to know me?—this is Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- judge, judgment
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- know, knowledge, make known
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **Is this what makes you a good king, that you wanted to have boards of cedar** - AT: "Having a cedar palace does not make you a good king" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Did not your father also eat and drink ... righteousness?** - AT: "King Josiah enjoyed his life ... righteousness." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Is this not what it means to know me?** - AT: "This is what it means to know me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ But Jehoiakim, you are greedy and desire only to obtain things by acting dishonestly.

You murder innocent people,
you oppress poor people,
and you treat people cruelly and violently.”

¹⁸ Therefore, this is what Yahweh says about Jehoiakim son of King Josiah:

”When he dies, people will not mourn for him.

They will not say to each other, ‘It is very sad; we are so sorry!’

The people whom he ruled will not mourn for him, saying,

‘We are sad that our king is dead; we are so sorry that the wonderful things that happened while he was king are ended.’

¹⁹ When he dies, people will do to his corpse what they do to a dead donkey;

his corpse will be dragged out of Jerusalem and dumped outside the gates!

ULB:

¹⁷ But there is nothing in your eyes and heart except worry for your unjust profit and for pouring out innocent blood,

for producing oppression and crushing of others. ¹⁸ Therefore Yahweh says this about Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah: They will not lament for him with ‘Woe, my brother!’ or ‘Woe, my sister!’ They will not lament him with ‘Woe, master!’ or ‘Woe, majesty!’

¹⁹ He will be buried with a donkey’s burial,

dragged away and thrown out beyond the gates of Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- heart
- profit, profitable

- innocent
- blood
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- Jehoiakim
- king
- Judah
- lament, lamentation
- lord, master, sir
- majesty
- bury, buried, burial
- donkey, mule
- gate, gate bar
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **nothing in your eyes and heart** - “nothing in your thoughts and emotions” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **unjust profit** - This is getting money by cheating or by using unfair means.
- **pouring out innocent blood** - “killing innocent people”
- **crushing of others** - “doing violence to others in order to get money”
- **Woe, my brother! ... Woe, my sister! ... Woe, master! ... Woe, majesty!** - Yahweh uses the word “Woe” several times for emphasis. He addresses the various people who would normally show great sadness when someone dies. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **He will be buried with a donkey’s burial, dragged away and thrown out** - “They will bury his dead body the way they would bury a dead donkey; they will drag it away and throw it out” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ You people of Judah, go to the mountains in Lebanon and weep,

shout in the mountains of the Bashan region,

call out in mourning in the mountains of Moab,

because all your friends in those areas have been destroyed.

²¹ When you were prosperous, I warned you,

but you replied, ‘We will not pay attention to what you say.’

You have been acting like that since you were young;

you have never obeyed me.

ULB:

²⁰ Go up Lebanon’s mountains and shout. Lift your voice in Bashan.

Shout from the Abarim mountains, for all of your friends will be destroyed.

²¹ I spoke to you when you were safe, but you said, ‘I will not listen.’

This was your custom since your youth, for you have not listened to my voice.

translationWords:

- Lebanon
- voice
- Bashan

translationNotes:

- **Lift your voice** - AT: “Shout in Bashan”
- **Abarim mountains** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **I spoke to you when you were safe** - AT: “I spoke to you when you were doing well”
- **This was your custom** - AT: “This was your way of life”
- **you have not listened to my voice** - AT: “you have not obeyed me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:22-23**UDB:**

²² So, now I will punish all your leaders;

it will be as though they have been blown away by the wind.

They will be captured by your enemies and taken to another country.

When that happens, you will truly be ashamed and disgraced

because of all the wicked things that you have done.

²³ Now, your king enjoys living in the cedar rooms in his palace,

but soon he will be punished,

and then he will groan

like a woman who is giving birth to a baby.”

ULB:

²² The wind will shepherd away all your shepherds, and your friends will go into captivity.

Then you will certainly be ashamed and humiliated by all of your evil deeds.

²³ You king, you who live in the House of the Forest of Lebanon, you who nest among the cedars,

how you will be pitied when the labor pains of anguish come on you like childbirth.”

translationWords:

- shepherd, to shepherd
- captive, captivity
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- life, live, living, alive
- house
- labor pains, in labor

translationNotes:

- **The wind will shepherd away all your shepherds** - AT: “Your leaders will be taken away” (See: **Metonymy**)

- **House of the Forest of Lebanon, you who nest among the cedars** - AT: “a palace made from the cedars of Lebanon”
- **how you will be pitied when the labor pains of anguish come on you like childbirth** - AT: “you will be pitied because of your pain”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:24-26

UDB:

²⁴ Yahweh says this: "Jehoiachin son of King Jehoiakim of Judah, as surely as I am alive, I will punish you. Even if you were the ring on my finger that shows that I am the king, I would pull you off. ²⁵ You are afraid of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon and his huge army, because they are wanting to kill you. I will enable them to capture you. ²⁶ I will expel you and your mother from this land, and you will be taken to another country. Neither of you were born there, but you will both die there.

ULB:

²⁴ "As I live—this is Yahweh's declaration—even if you, Jehoiachin son of Jehoiakim, king of Judah, were the signet on my right hand, I would tear you off. ²⁵ For I have given you to the hand of the ones seeking your life and to the hand of those before whom you are afraid, even to the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and the Chaldeans. ²⁶ I will throw you and your mother who bore you into another land, a country where you were not born, and there you will die.

translationWords:

- Jehoiachin
- Jehoiakim
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **As I live** - AT: "Surely"
- **even if you, Jehoiachin ... were the signet on my right hand, I would tear you off** - AT: "Even if you, Jehoiachin ... were the signet on my right hand, I would tear you off from my hand" or "Jehoiachin ... even if you were the king whom I had chosen as an expression of my power, I would still punish you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **I have given you to the hand of the ones seeking your life** - AT: "I have made it possible for the ones seeking your life to capture you"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:27-28

UDB:

²⁷ You will never return to this land that you will very much desire to return to.”

²⁸ Someone said, ”Jehoiachin will be like a broken pot
that is despised and which no one wants.
He and his children will be exiled to a foreign land.

ULB:

²⁷ About this land to which they will want to return, they will not come back here.

²⁸ Is this a despised and shattered vessel? Is this man Jehoiachin a pot that
pleases no one?
Why have they thrown him and his descendants out, and have poured them
out into a land that they did not know?

translationWords:

- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

translationNotes:

- **this land to which they will want to return** - Refers to the land of Judah
- **Is this a despised and shattered vessel? Is this man Jehoiachin a pot that pleases no one?** - AT: “Jehoiachin is useless and no one is happy with him.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Why have they thrown him and his descendants out, and have poured them out into a land that they did not know?** - AT: “The people should have removed Jehoiachin and his family from the land” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 22:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ I want the people in this land to listen carefully to this message from Yahweh.

³⁰ This is what Yahweh says:

”In the record about the kings of Judah, write down that it will be as though this man Jehoiachin had no children,

and that he has not been successful during his life,

because none of his children will ever become king

to rule over the people of Judah.”

ULB:

²⁹ Land, Land, Land! Hear the word of Yahweh!

³⁰ Yahweh says this, ’Write about this man Jehoiachin: He will be childless.

He will not prosper during his days, and no one among his descendants will achieve success

or ever again sit on David’s throne and rule over Judah.”

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [David](#)
- [throne](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **Land, Land, Land** - Yahweh speaks his message to all the people of the land by calling out to the land where they live. (See: [Apostrophe](#))
- **Hear the word of Yahweh** - AT: “obey the word of Yahweh”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 22 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 23:5-6, 9-24, which are extended quotations.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prophesying lies

The false prophets had encouraged people to continue sinning by saying everything will be alright. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Wordplay

In Hebrew, the word for “message” can also mean “burden.” In translations that are using footnotes, you may want to explain the word play in a footnote. In translations that are not using footnotes or which will primarily be distributed in an oral form, you may need a sentence like “What message has the Lord burdened you with now?” or “You (plural) call God’s message a heavy burden on you.”

Links:

- [Jeremiah 23:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 23:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh declares, "Terrible things will happen to the leaders of my people—those who are like shepherds of the people who are like my sheep—because they have scattered my people and sent them away, and have not taken care of them. ² So, this is what I, Yahweh, the God whom the Israelite people worship, say to those leaders: 'Instead of taking care of my people and leading them to places where they are safe like a shepherd does for his sheep, you have scattered them. So I will punish you for the evil things that you have done.

ULB:

23 ¹ "Woe to the shepherds who destroy and scatter the sheep of my pasture—this is Yahweh's declaration." ² Therefore Yahweh, the God of Israel, says this concerning the shepherds who are shepherding his people, "You are scattering my flock and driving them away. You have not cared for them at all. Know this! I will pay you back for the evil of your practices—this is Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- woe
- shepherd, to shepherd
- sheep, ram, ewe
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- people of God, my people
- flock, herd
- cast out, drive out, throw out
- know, knowledge, make known
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **the shepherds who destroy and scatter the sheep of my pasture** - Yahweh refers to Israel as his pasture, the people of Israel as his sheep and their leaders in Israel as the shepherds. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **scattering my flock and driving them away** - These two phrases have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. (See: [Parallelism](#))

- **pay you back for the evil** - Yahweh refers to evil actions like a loan that was given and can be paid back. AT: “have revenge for the evil”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:3-4

UDB:

³ But later I will gather those who are still alive, from the countries where I have forced them to go. I will bring them back to their own country, where they will have many children, and their number will increase. ⁴ Then I will appoint other leaders for my people, leaders who will take care of them. And my people will never be afraid of anything again, and none of them will be like a lost sheep that has been driven off by its shepherd.”

ULB:

³ I myself will gather the remnant of my flock from all of the lands where I have driven them, and I will return them to a grazing place, where they will be fruitful and increase. ⁴ Then I will raise up shepherds over them who will shepherd them so they will no longer fear or be shattered. None of them will go missing—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- [remnant](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [cast out, drive out, throw out](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about the people of Israel as his sheep and the leaders of Israel as shepherds.
- **to a grazing place** - AT: “to where all their needs will be supplied”
- **they will be fruitful and increase** - The word “increase” explains how they will be “fruitful.” AT: “they will increase greatly in number.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **they will no longer fear or be shattered** - The words “be shattered” mean that someone has caused them to be afraid and mean basically the same thing as “fear.” AT: “no one will me them afraid anymore.” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **None of them** - “None of my people”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 23 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 23:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Yahweh also says,

”Some day I will appoint for you a righteous man
who will be a descendant of King David.

As king, he will do what is just and right for all the people in the nation.

⁶ At that time, he will save all the Israelite people from their enemies,
and they will be safe.

And his name will be

‘Yahweh, the one who does what is right for us.’”

ULB:

⁵ See, the days are coming—this is Yahweh’s declaration—when I will raise up for David a righteous branch.

He will reign as king; he will act wisely and cause justice and righteousness in the land.

⁶ In his days Judah will be rescued, and Israel will live in security.

Then this is the name by which he will be called: Yahweh is our righteousness.

translationWords:

- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- David
- righteous, righteousness
- reign
- king
- just, justice, justly
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- life, live, living, alive
- name

translationNotes:

- **days are coming** - A future time is spoken of as if it were an object coming toward the speaker or the hearers. AT: “the time will happen” (See: **Idiom**)

- **Yahweh's declaration** - "what Yahweh has declared" or "what Yahweh has said." See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **a righteous branch** - This future king descended from David is spoken of as if he were a branch grown on a tree. AT: "a righteous descendant" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a righteous branch** - Some modern versions translate "a legitimate successor to the throne."
- **cause justice and righteousness in the land** - "Justice" and "righteousness" stand for people acting justly and rightly. AT: "cause people to act justly and rightly" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **in the land** - Here "land" stands for all the people in the nation. AT: "for all the people in the nation" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Judah will be rescued, and Israel will live in security** - These two sentences have similar meanings. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Judah will be rescued** - This can be put into active form. AT: "He will rescue Judah from their enemies" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Yahweh also says that at that time, people who are solemnly promising to do something will no longer say, “I will do it as surely as Yahweh lives, who rescued the Israelite people from Egypt.” ⁸ Instead, they will say, “I will do it as surely as Yahweh lives, who brought us Israelite people back to our own land, from the land to the northeast and from all the other countries to which he had exiled us.” And they will live in their own land again.

ULB:

⁷ Therefore see, days are coming—this is Yahweh’s declaration—when they will no longer say, ‘As Yahweh lives, who brought the people of Israel up from the land of Egypt.’ ⁸ Instead they will say, ‘As Yahweh lives, who brought up and who led back the descendants of the house of Israel from the northern land and all the lands where they had been driven.’ Then they will live in their own land.”

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [house](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **As Yahweh lives** - This is a phrase used for an oath.
- **the northern land and all the lands where they had been driven** - This refers to the way the northern ten tribes of Israel were captured and spread out among the surrounding countries.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ I am very sad in my deepest emotions because of the sacred message that Yahweh has spoken about what will happen to of the false prophets;

it is as though all my bones shake.

I stagger like a man who is drunk
after drinking a lot of wine,

¹⁰ The land is full of people who commit adultery;
and Yahweh has cursed the land.

Even the pastures in the desert are all dried up,
because the people do what is evil,
and the false prophets use their power to do things that are not just.

ULB:

⁹ Regarding the prophets, my heart is broken in me, and all of my bones tremble. I have become like a drunk man,

like a man whom wine has overpowered, because of Yahweh and his holy words.

¹⁰ For the land is full of adulterers. Because of these the land is dried up.

The meadows in the wilderness dry up. These prophets' paths are wicked; their power is not used in a right manner.

translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- heart
- drunk, drunkard
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- holy, holiness
- word
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- mourn, mourning
- desert, wilderness
- power, powers

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The speaker has changed from Yahweh to Jeremiah.
- **Regarding the prophets, my heart is broken in me, and all of my bones tremble** - The prophet's heart is broken and bones are trembling because he is afraid of the judgment that will result from the lies of the false prophets. AT: "I have great fear for what will happen because of the false prophets" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **my heart is broken in me** - The prophet's emotions are spoken of as if they were his heart. AT: "I am very sad" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **all of my bones tremble** - Here the emotion of fear is spoken of as if the prophet's bones were trembling. AT: "I am very afraid" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I have become like a drunk man, like a man whom wine has overpowered** - Here being very sad and afraid is spoken of as if the sufferer were like a drunk man. AT: "I am like a drunk man; I cannot control myself" (See: [Simile](#))
- **the land is full of adulterers** - This exaggeration is used to show the level of sinfulness which was present at the time of Jeremiah. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **adulterers** - This word probably stands here both for the literal idea that most men in the nation had committed adultery against their own wives, and also, as is common in biblical language, for the idea that they had abandoned Yahweh in order to worship idols. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the land is dried up** - Some modern versions interpret this Hebrew phrase as "the land mourns."

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Yahweh says, "Even the priests and the prophets are ungodly;
they do wicked things even in his temple.

¹² Therefore, it will be as though the paths that they walk on are slippery.

It will be as though they are being chased in the darkness,
and there they will fall down,

because I will cause them to experience disasters
at the time that I will punish them.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it."

ULB:

¹¹ "For both the prophets and the priests are polluted. I even found their wickedness in my house!—this is Yahweh's declaration—

¹² therefore their path will be like a slippery place in the darkness. They will be pushed down. They will fall in it.

For I will send disaster against them in the year of their punishment—this is Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- priest, priesthood
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- darkness
- send, send out, sent
- punish, punishment

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The speaker changes from Jeremiah to Yahweh.
- **the priests are polluted** - AT: "the priests are sinful"
- **in my house** - Here Yahweh's temple is compared to a house, a place where Yahweh is said to live among his people. (See: **Metonymy**)

- **Yahweh's declaration** - "what Yahweh has declared" or "what Yahweh has said"
- **like a slippery place in the darkness** - AT: "unstable, or dangerous" (See: [Simile](#))
- **in the year of their punishment** - AT: "when their time for punishment comes"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ Previously I saw that the prophets in Samaria were doing something that was wrong;
they were prophesying, saying that Baal gave them the messages
that they were proclaiming,
and they were deceiving my people.

¹⁴ And now I have seen the prophets in Jerusalem doing terrible things.

They commit adultery
and habitually tell lies.

They encourage evil people to continue to do evil things,
with the result that the people do not stop sinning.

Those prophets are as wicked as the people in Sodom and Gomorrah were.

¹⁵ So, this is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says about those false prophets:

”I will give those prophets bitter things to eat
and poison to drink,

because it is because of them that this land is filled with people who do
wicked deeds.”

ULB:

¹³ for I have seen offensiveness among the prophets in Samaria. They prophesied by Baal

and led my people Israel off the right path.

¹⁴ Among the prophets in Jerusalem I have seen horrible things:

They commit adultery and walk in deceit.

They strengthen the hands of evildoers; no one turns back from his evildoing.

All of them have become like Sodom to me and its inhabitants like Gomorrah!”

¹⁵ Therefore Yahweh of hosts says this concerning the prophets,

”Look, I am about to make them eat wormwood and drink poisonous water,
for pollution has gone out from the prophets of Jerusalem to all the land.”

translationWords:

- Samaria, Samaritan
- Baal
- people of God, my people
- Jerusalem
- walk
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- turn, turn away, turn back
- Sodom
- Gomorrah
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host

translationNotes:

- **walk in deceit** - “live in dishonesty”
- **strengthen the hands of evildoers** - “they strengthen those who do evil” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **no one turns back from his evildoing** - “They continue in their sin”
- **All of them have become like Sodom ... like Gomorrah.** - “They became very evil” (See: [Simile](#))
- **I am about to make them eat wormwood and drink poisonous water** - wormwood was something that was bitter and unpleasant to eat. This phrase describes the punishment that Yahweh was going to bring about on the evil prophets. In the same way, wormwood was bitter and the water was poisonous, so would Yahweh’s judgment be on the evil prophets. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **pollution has gone out from the prophets** - “evil has come from the prophets”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says:

”Do not pay any attention to what those false prophets say to you,
because they are just fooling you.

They tell you about visions that they have only thought in their own minds,
not about visions that I have given them.

¹⁷ They habitually say to those who hate me,

‘Yahweh says that you will have peace.’

And they say to those who stubbornly do what they want to do,

‘Nothing bad will happen to you because of your doing those things.’

¹⁸ But none of them has ever been in a council meeting in heaven

in order to listen to a message from me.

None of them has paid attention to anything that Yahweh has said.

ULB:

¹⁶ Yahweh of hosts says this, ”Do not listen to the words of the prophets who prophesy to you.

They have deluded you! They are announcing visions from their own minds,
not from Yahweh’s mouth.

¹⁷ They are constantly saying to those who dishonor me, ‘Yahweh declares
there will be peace for you.’

For everyone walking in the stubbornness of his own heart says, ‘Disaster
will not come upon you.’

¹⁸ Yet who has stood in Yahweh’s council meeting? Who sees and hears his
word?

Who pays attention to his word and listens?

translationWords:

- word
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

- [vision](#)
- [mind](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [walk](#)
- [stiff-necked, stubborn](#)
- [heart](#)
- [council](#)

translationNotes:

- **They have deluded you!** - AT: “The prophets have caused you to believe something that is not true!”
- **visions from their own minds** - AT: “visions they imagined” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **not from Yahweh’s mouth** - AT: “not from Yahweh” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Yet who has stood in Yahweh’s council meeting? Who sees and hears his word? Who pays attention to his word and listens?** - AT: “No one advises Yahweh. No one understands what Yahweh says. No one obeys Yahweh’s commands.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ So, Yahweh will punish them; it will be like a great storm;

it will come down like a whirlwind, swirling around the heads of those wicked people.

²⁰ Yahweh will not stop being angry

until he has completely accomplished all that he has planned.

In the future, you will understand all of this clearly.”

ULB:

¹⁹ See, there is a storm coming from Yahweh! His fury is going out, and a tempest is whirling about.

It is whirling around the heads of the wicked.

²⁰ Yahweh’s wrath will not return until it has carried out and brought into being his heart’s intentions.

In the final days, you will understand it.

translationWords:

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [last day, last days, latter days](#)

translationNotes:

- **a tempest is whirling about** - AT: “it is like a great storm” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **It is whirling around the heads of the wicked** - AT: “It is coming upon the wicked”
- **it has carried out and brought into being his heart’s intentions** - AT: “Yahweh’s wrath will bring about all the punishment that he has planned” (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Yahweh also says, "I have not appointed those prophets,

but they run around telling people their messages.

I did not speak to them,

but they continue to prophesy.

²² If they had been in my council meetings,

they would have been able to speak messages from me,

and they would have caused people to turn away from committing evil deeds. "

ULB:

²¹ I did not send out these prophets. They just appeared.

I did not proclaim anything to them, but they have still prophesied.

²² For if they had stood in my council meeting, they would have caused my people to hear my word;

they would have caused them to turn from their wicked words and corrupt practices.

translationWords:

- send, send out, sent
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- proclaim, proclamation
- turn, turn away, turn back
- word

translationNotes:

- **if they had stood in my council meeting** - AT: "if they had truly listened to me" (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Yahweh also says, "Am I a God who is only nearby?"

No, I am a God who is far away, also.

²⁴ So, no one can hide in some secret place

with the result that I cannot see him.

I am everywhere, in heaven and on the earth!

That is what I, Yahweh, say!

ULB:

²³ Am I only a God nearby—this is Yahweh's declaration—and not also a God far away?

²⁴ Can anyone hide in a secret place so I cannot see him?—this is Yahweh's declaration—

and do I not fill the heavens and the earth?—this is Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

translationNotes:

- **Am I only a God nearby ... and not also a God far away?** - AT: "I am a God who is both nearby and far away." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Can anyone hide in a secret place so I cannot see him?** - "No one can hide in a secret place so I cannot see him." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **and do I not fill the heavens and the earth?** - "And I am everywhere, both in the heavens and the earth." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ I have heard those prophets prophesy lies, saying that they are telling people messages from me. They say, ‘Listen to me tell you the dream I received from God last night! I really had this dream!’

²⁶ How long will they continue to do this? How long will those lying prophets continue to prophesy things that come only from their own minds? ²⁷ They think that because of the dreams that they tell to each other, people will forget me, like their ancestors forgot about me when they started to worship Baal.

ULB:

²⁵ I have heard what the prophets have said, those who were prophesying deceit in my name. They said, ‘I had a dream! I had a dream!’ ²⁶ How long will this go on, prophets who prophesy lies from their minds, and who prophesy from the deceit in their hearts? ²⁷ They are planning on making my people forget my name with the dreams that they report, each one to his neighbor, just as their ancestors forgot my name in favor of Baal’s name.

translationWords:

- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- name
- dream
- mind
- heart
- report
- neighbor
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Baal

translationNotes:

- **How long will this go on, prophets who prophesy lies from their minds, and who prophesy from the deceit in their hearts?** - AT: “This should not continue, prophets who declare lies which they themselves have made up.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **making my people forget my name ... in favor of Baal’s name** - “leading my people worship Baal instead of me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 23 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 23:28-30

UDB:

²⁸ Allow those false prophets to tell people their dreams, but those who have messages that really come from me should proclaim those messages faithfully. I, Yahweh, say that like straw and grain are certainly very different, my messages and the message from those false prophets are certainly very different . ²⁹ It is as though my messages burn like a fire and is like a hammer that smashes rocks into pieces when it affects someone's heart.

³⁰ Therefore, I, Yahweh say, I oppose all those prophets who steal messages from each other and claim that those messages came from me.

ULB:

²⁸ The prophet who has a dream, let him report the dream. But the one to whom I have declared something, let him declare my word truthfully. What does straw have to do with grain?—this is Yahweh's declaration— ²⁹ Is not my word like fire?—this is Yahweh's declaration—and like a hammer that shatters a rock into pieces? ³⁰ So see, I am against the prophets—this is Yahweh's declaration—anyone who steals words from another person and says they come from me.

translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- true, truth, come true
- grain
- fire

translationNotes:

- **What does straw have to do with grain?** - AT: "Straw and grain are two totally different things." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Is not my word like fire?—this is Yahweh's declaration—and like a hammer that shatters a rock into pieces?** - AT: "My word is like fire: consuming and powerful," says Yahweh, "and like a hammer that shatters a rock into pieces." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Simile](#))
- **like a hammer that shatters a rock into pieces** - "as powerful as a hammer that can crush rock" (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 23 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 23:31-32

UDB:

³¹ I oppose those prophets who speak their own messages but claim that those messages came from me. ³² I oppose those prophets who falsely say that I told them something in a vision, but they are only telling lies that cause my people to sin. I did not send those prophets. I did not even appoint them to be prophets. And they have no messages that will benefit my people at all. That is what I, Yahweh, declare.”

ULB:

³¹ See, I am against the prophets—this is Yahweh’s declaration—who use their tongues to prophesy proclamations. ³² See, I am against the prophets who dream deceitfully—this is Yahweh’s declaration—and then proclaim them and in this way mislead my people with their deceit and boasting. I am against them, for I have not sent them out nor given them commands. So they will certainly not help this people—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- [tongue](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)

translationNotes:

- **who dream deceitfully** - ”who claim to have dreams from God, but they are not from God.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:33-34

UDB:

³³ Yahweh said to me, "If one of those prophets or priests or one of the other people asks you, 'What problem has Yahweh told you about now?', you must reply, 'He has not given me anything to say to you! Instead, Yahweh says that he will abandon you!' ³⁴ And if any prophet or priest or anyone else falsely says, 'I have a prophecy from Yahweh,' I will punish that person and his family.

ULB:

³³ When this people or a prophet or a priest asks you, 'What is Yahweh's declaration?' then you must say to them, 'What declaration? For I have abandoned you'—this is Yahweh's declaration. ³⁴ As for the prophets, priests, and people who are saying, 'This is Yahweh's declaration,' I will punish that man and his house.

translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [house](#)

translationNotes:

- **What declaration?** - This question is meant to function as a statement AT: "There is no declaration." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:35-36

UDB:

³⁵ What you should continually ask each other is, ‘When you spoke to Yahweh, what did he reply? What is he saying to us?’ ³⁶ But instead you are only concerned with your own ideas and with twisting the true message from the true God, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, whom we worship.

ULB:

³⁵ You continue to say, each person to his neighbor and each man to his brother, ‘What did Yahweh answer?’ and ‘What did Yahweh declare?’ ³⁶ But you must no longer talk about Yahweh’s declaration, since each declaration from each man has become his own message, and you have perverted the words of the living God, Yahweh of hosts, our God.

translationWords:

- [brother](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [word](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)

translationNotes:

- **you have perverted the words of the living God** - AT: “you have changed the words of God to say what you want them to say”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 23:37-40

UDB:

³⁷ This is what you should ask each prophet: ‘What did Yahweh reply when you talked to him? What is he saying to us?’ ³⁸ If he replies, ‘What I told you is a prophecy from Yahweh’ then let him know I will punish him, because I told my true prophets not to give any messages to this people right now. ³⁹ So I, Yahweh, will get rid of you false prophets. I will expel you from my presence. And I will get rid of this city that I gave to you and to your ancestors. ⁴⁰ I will cause people to make fun of you forever. People will never forget that you were disgraced.”

ULB:

³⁷ This is what you are asking the prophet, ‘What did Yahweh answer you? What did Yahweh declare?’ ³⁸ Then you report a declaration from Yahweh, but Yahweh says this, ‘You say, “Here is a declaration of Yahweh,” even though I sent a command to you and said, “Do not say: This is a declaration from Yahweh.”’ ³⁹ Therefore, see, I am about to pick you up and throw you away from me, along with the city that I gave you and your ancestors. ⁴⁰ Then I will put everlasting shame and insult on you that will not be forgotten.”

translationWords:

- [report](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [everlasting, eternal, eternity](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Hypothetical Situations](#)
- **What did Yahweh declare?** - AT: “What did Yahweh say”
- **Therefore, see** - AT: “So pay attention”
- **I am about to pick you up and throw you away from me** - AT: “I am about to drive you away from me” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **that will not be forgotten** - AT: “that will last forever”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 23 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 24 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The exiles are blessed and the others punished

God will bless the people who were taken away into Babylon but punish the people left in the land because they still did not repent and turn to him. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 24:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 24:1-3**UDB:**

¹ The army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon captured Jehoiachin, the son of Jehoiakim, the king of Judah, and his officials, and all his skilled workers and took them to Babylon. After that happened, Yahweh gave me a vision. In the vision I saw two baskets of figs that had been placed in front of the temple. ² One basket was full of good figs, like the kind that ripen first. The other basket was filled with figs that were bad, with the result that they could not be eaten.

³ Then Yahweh said to me, “Jeremiah, what do you see?”

I replied, “I see some figs. Some are very good ones, but some are very bad, with the result that no one would eat them.”

ULB:

24 ¹ Yahweh showed me something. Behold, two baskets of figs were placed before Yahweh’s temple. (This vision happened after Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, took into exile Jehoiachin son of Jehoiakim, king of Judah, the officials of Judah, the craftsmen and the metalworkers from Jerusalem and brought them to Babylon.) ² One basket of figs was very good, like first ripe figs, but the other basket of figs was so very bad that they could not be eaten. ³ Yahweh said to me, “What do you see, Jeremiah?” I said, “Figs. Figs that are very good and figs that are so very bad they cannot be eaten.”

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- fig
- temple
- vision
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- exile, the Exile
- Jehoiachin
- Jehoiakim
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- Jeremiah

translationNotes:

- **Behold** - The word “behold” here shows that Jeremiah saw something interesting.

- **This vision happened ... them to Babylon** - This part of the story is used to provide historical information to show when the events of the happened. (See: [Background Information](#))
- **craftsmen** - people skilled at building things.
- **metalworkers** - people skilled at creating things out of metal.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 24 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 24 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 24:4-7**UDB:**

⁴ Then Yahweh me gave me this message: ⁵ ”This is what I, Yahweh, the God whom the Israelite people say that they worship, say: The good figs represent the people of Judah whom I exiled to Babylonia. I sent them there for their own good. ⁶ and I will not exile them again, instead I will bring them back to this land and let them build up houses and cities again. They will be like plants that grow and prosper and are never cut down. ⁷ I will enable them to desire to know in their inner beings that I am Yahweh. They will be my people, and I will be their God, because they will return to me sincerely.

ULB:

⁴ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ⁵ ”Yahweh, God of Israel, says this: I will look on the exiles of Judah for their benefit, just like these good figs, the exiles whom I have sent out from this place to the land of Chaldea. ⁶ I will set my eyes on them for good and restore them to this land. I will build them up, and not tear them down. I will plant them, and not uproot them. ⁷ Then I will give them a heart to know me, for I am Yahweh. They will be my people and I will be their God, so they will turn to me with all their heart.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- exile, the Exile
- send, send out, sent
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- good, goodness
- restore, restoration
- heart
- know, knowledge, make known
- people of God, my people
- turn, turn away, turn back

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **just like these good figs** - The good figs are those Judean exiles sent to the land of Chaldea. (See: [Simile](#))
- **I will set my eyes on them for good** - AT: “I will bless them.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

- **I will build them up, and not tear them down. I will plant them, and not uproot them** - These two sentences have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. (See [Parallelism](#)) AT: “I will help them to prosper in Chaldea.”
- **I will build them up, and not tear them down** - This expression compares the exiles to a building which Yahweh will build and not tear down. AT: “I will help them flourish in the land, and not ruin them.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will plant them, and not uproot them** - AT: “I will establish them in the land, and not remove them.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they will turn to me with all their heart** - AT: “they will turn to me with their whole being” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 24 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 24 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 24:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ But I, Yahweh, also say, the bad figs represent Zedekiah, the king of Judah, and his officials, and all the other people who remain in Jerusalem, and those who have gone to Egypt. I will do to them like people do to rotten figs. ⁹ I will cause them to experience calamities, with the result that people in every nation on the earth will be horrified, and will hate them because they are evil people. Wherever I scatter them, people will make fun of them, and say that they are disgraced, and ridicule them, and curse them. ¹⁰ And I will cause them to experience wars and famines and diseases, until they have disappeared from Israel, this land which I gave to them and to their ancestors.”

ULB:

⁸ But like the bad figs that are too bad to be eaten—this is what Yahweh says—I will act in this way with Zedekiah, king of Judah, with his officials, and with the rest of Jerusalem who remain in this land or go to stay in the land of Egypt. ⁹ I will turn them into a frightening thing, a disaster, in the sight of all the kingdoms on earth, a disgrace and a subject for proverbs, taunts, and curses in every place where I will have driven them. ¹⁰ I will send out sword, famine, and plague against them they are finished off from the land that I gave them and their ancestors.”

translationWords:

- fig
- Yahweh
- Zedekiah
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- Egypt, Egyptian
- kingdom
- earth, earthly
- proverb
- curse, cursed
- cast out, drive out, throw out
- send, send out, sent
- sword
- famine
- plague

translationNotes:

- **But like the bad figs that are too bad to be eaten** - This expression compares bad figs to bad people. Bad figs are figs which cannot be eaten and are useless, bad people do not follow

Yahweh and are also useless. (See: [Simile](#))

- **I will turn them into a frightening thing, a disaster** - Yahweh compares the coming judgment on the people of Jerusalem to something that will scare other people when they see it. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will send out sword, famine, and plague against them** - AT: "I will kill them with war, famine and sicknesses."
- **I will send out sword** - AT: "I will send enemy armies" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 24 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 24 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 25:30-38, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Seventy years

Babylon will rule over Judah for seventy years. Because Yahweh is just, he will soon punish Babylon for their evil actions. (See: [just, justice, justly](#) and [evil, wicked, wickedness](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

Jeremiah uses the idiom of drinking the cup of wine of God's punishment to say that Babylon will destroy all the surrounding nations and then be destroyed. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 25:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 25:1-2

UDB:

¹ After Jehoiakim had been ruling Judah for almost four years, Yahweh gave me this message for all the people of Judah. It was during the year that King Nebuchadnezzar started to rule in Babylon.
² Jeremiah spoke this message to all the people in Jerusalem and other places in Judah:

ULB:

25 ¹ This is the word that came to Jeremiah about all the people of Judah. It came in the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah. That was the first year of Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon. ² Jeremiah the prophet proclaimed this to all the people of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- word
- Jeremiah
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- biblical time: year
- Jehoiakim
- Josiah
- king
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Babylon, Babylonian
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- proclaim, proclamation
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **the fourth ... the first** - (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **all the people of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem** - These were the last of the Israelites. The northern kingdom had already fallen.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:3-4

UDB:

³ "Yahweh has been giving me messages for twenty-three years. He started giving me messages when Josiah son of Amon, had been ruling Judah for almost thirteen years. And I have faithfully told you those messages, but you have not paid any attention to them.

⁴ Many times Yahweh has sent to you the prophets who served him, but you have not listened to them or paid any attention to what they said.

ULB:

³ He said, "For twenty-three years, from the thirteenth year of Josiah son of Amon, king of Judah until this day, Yahweh's words have been coming to me. I have been proclaiming them to you. I was eager to proclaim them, but you would not listen. ⁴ Yahweh sent out all his servants the prophets to you. They were eager to go out, but you would not listen or pay attention.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

translationNotes:

- **Amon** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **until this day** - See how you translated this in [7:24](#).
- **Yahweh's words have been coming to me** - AT: "Yahweh has given me his words to proclaim to you"
- **They were eager to go out** - AT: "They were eager to share God's words with you"
- **listen or pay attention** - See how you translated this in [11:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Each time their message was this: 'Turn from all your evil behavior, from all the evil things that you have continually been doing. If you do that, you will be able to stay in this land that Yahweh gave to you and to your ancestors, to belong to you forever. ⁶ Do not cause Yahweh to become angry by serving and worshiping idols that you have made with your hands. If you do not cause him to be angry, he will not punish you.'

ULB:

⁵ These prophets said, 'Let each man turn from his wicked way and the corruption of his practices and return to the land that Yahweh gave in ancient times to your ancestors and to you, as a permanent gift. ⁶ So do not walk after other gods to worship them or bow down to them, and do not provoke him with the work of your hands so that he does you harm.'

translationWords:

- turn, turn away, turn back
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- gift
- walk
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- worship
- bow, bow down
- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **his wicked way and the corruption of his practices** - The terms "wicked way" and "corruption of his practices" mean the same thing and refer to every sinful thing that they do. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **return to the land that Yahweh gave in ancient times to your ancestors and to you, as a permanent gift** - AT: "so that you can return to the land Yahweh promised to you and live in it forever"
- **do not provoke him with the work of your hands so that he does you harm** - AT: "do not make Yahweh angry with your evil works so he will punish you"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:7-9

UDB:

⁷ And Yahweh says, 'But you would not pay attention to the messages that I gave to those prophets. You caused me to become extremely angry by your worshiping idols that you had made with your own hands. That resulted in my punishing you.

⁸ So now, I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, say that because you have not paid attention to what I said, ⁹ I will gather all the armies of the nations that will come from the northeast. I have appointed King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon to lead them. I have appointed him to do my work for me. I will bring those armies to attack this land, all the people living in it, and even nearby countries. I will completely destroy them, and cause them to be places that people are horrified about, and that people will ridicule, places that will be ruined forever.

ULB:

⁷ But you have not listened to me—this is Yahweh's declaration—so you have provoked me with the work of your hands to do harm to you. ⁸ So Yahweh of hosts says this, 'Because you did not listen to my words, ⁹ see, I am about to send out a command to gather all the peoples of the north—this is Yahweh's declaration—with Nebuchadnezzar my servant, king of Babylon, and bring them against this land and its inhabitants, and against all the nations around you. For I will set them apart for destruction. I will turn them into a horror, an object for hissing, and an unending desolation.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- send, send out, sent
- command, to command, commandment
- nation
- horror, horrified
- desolate, desolation

translationNotes:

- **you have not listened to me** - AT: "you have not obeyed me" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **and bring them against this land** - God plans to use Nebuchadnezzar and his arms to punish Israel and surrounding nations for their rebellion against Yahweh.
- **see** - See how you translated this in [1:18](#).
- **hissing** - See how you translated this in [18:16](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ I will cause happy singing and laughing to cease in your land. There will no longer be brides and bridegrooms talking joyfully. There will not be the sound of people grinding grain with millstones. There will be no lamps lit in your houses. ¹¹ All of this land will become a desert where no one will live. And the people of Israel and of the nearby countries will be exiled to Babylonia and work for the kings of Babylon for seventy years.

ULB:

¹⁰ The sounds of joy and celebration—the voices of the bridegroom and bride, the sound of the millstones and the light of the lamps—I will make all these things disappear from these nations. ¹¹ Then all of this land will become a desolation and a horror, and these nations will serve the king of Babylon for seventy years.

translationWords:

- joy, joyful
- voice
- bridegroom
- bride
- light
- desolate, desolation
- serve, service

translationNotes:

- **millstones** - These are two large, round stones used to grind grain.
- **I will make all these things disappear from these nations** - This is a reference to the nations being destroyed. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **these nations will serve the king of Babylon** - Be forced to pay tribute and sold into slavery.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:12-14

UDB:

¹² Then, after they have been in Babylonia for seventy years, I will punish the king of Babylonia and his people for the sins that they have committed. I will cause Babylonia to become a wasteland forever. ¹³ I will cause them to experience all the terrible things that Jeremiah has written about—all the punishments that he predicted will happen to all those nations. ¹⁴ The leaders of many nations will cause the people of Babylonia to become their slaves, like the people of Babylonia caused my people to become slaves. I will punish them like they deserve for having caused my people to suffer.”

ULB:

¹² Then it will happen when seventy years have been completed, that I will punish the king of Babylon and that nation, the land of the Chaldeans—this is Yahweh’s declaration—for their iniquity and make it an unending desolation. ¹³ Then I will carry out against that land all the words that I had spoken, and everything written in this book that Jeremiah has prophesied against all the nations. ¹⁴ For also many other nations and great kings will make slaves out of these nations. I will repay them for their deeds and the works of their hands.”

translationWords:

- punish, punishment
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- declare, declaration
- iniquity
- written
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **have been completed** - AT: “when their punishment is complete”
- **make it an unending desolation** - God vows to turn Babylon into a desert like wilderness.
- **I will repay them for their deeds and the works of their hands** - God will cause them to receive the same punishment they inflicted on the nations they conquered.
- **their deeds and the works of their hands** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh is referring to everything that they have done to other nations. AT: “everything that they have done.” (See: **Doublet** and **Synecdoche**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Then Yahweh, the God of Israel, gave me a vision. In the vision he was holding a cup of wine. He said, "Take from me this cup that is full of wine that represents punishment. I will cause all the leaders of the nations to which I will send you to drink some of the wine in this cup. ¹⁶ When they drink the wine, they will stagger and act like crazy people, because they will realize that I will massacre many of their people with swords."

ULB:

¹⁵ For Yahweh, God of Israel, said this to me, "Take this cup of the wine of fury from my hand and make all the nations to which I am sending you drink it. ¹⁶ For they will drink and then stumble about and rant madly before the sword that I am sending out among them."

translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [sword](#)

translationNotes:

- **cup of the wine of fury from my hand and make all the nations to which I am sending you drink it** - Yahweh is commanding punishment to start. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **make all the nations to which I am sending you drink it** - AT: "make the nations experience it"
- **they will drink and then stumble about and rant madly before the sword that I am sending out among them** - Those experiencing the consequences of Yahweh's severe punishment will act like crazy people.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ So, in the vision, I took that cup full of wine from Yahweh, and I took it to all the nations to which he sent me, and caused the leaders of those nations to drink some of that wine. ¹⁸ I went to Jerusalem and the other towns in Judah, and the king and the other officials drank some of the wine from that cup. And, starting from that day, they all eventually were removed from having authority, and became people whom others ridiculed, who were despised, and cursed.

ULB:

¹⁷ So I took the cup from Yahweh's hand, and I made all the nations to which Yahweh had sent me drink it: ¹⁸ Jerusalem, the cities of Judah and her kings and officials—to turn them into ruins and something terrifying, and into an object for hissing and cursing, as they are at this present day.

translationWords:

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [king](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [curse, cursed](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This passage continues the metaphor of Yahweh's wrath as a drink to be poured out.
- **I made all the nations to which Yahweh had sent me drink it** - The action of drinking from the cup of wine symbolized God's judgment.
- **to turn them into ruins and something terrifying** - AT: "to destroy them"
- **for hissing and cursing** - AT: "to be despised or cursed"
- **they are at this present day** - There was apparently a period of time between when this was written and when it actually happened.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ In the vision Egypt had to drink some of the wine, including the king and his officials and many of his people, ²⁰ and foreigners who were living there. In the vision the land of Uz and the cities and kings of Ashkelon, Gaza, Ekron, and Ashdod had to drink some of the wine. ²¹ Then the vision about the kings of Edom, Moab, and Ammon began.

ULB:

¹⁹ Other nations also had to drink it: Pharaoh king of Egypt and his servants; his officials and all his people; ²⁰ all people of mixed heritage and all the kings of the land of Uz; all the kings of the land of Philistia—Ashkelon, Gaza, Ekron, and the remnant of Ashdod; ²¹ Edom and Moab and the people of Ammon.

translationWords:

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Ashkelon](#)
- [Gaza](#)
- [Ekron](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [Ashdod, Azotus](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah lists all the nations that were to be judged (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **people of mixed heritage** - This is a reference to people with two parents from two different nations. AT: “mixed people”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:22-23

UDB:

²² Then there were more visions about the kings of the cities of Tyre and Sidon across the Mediterranean Sea, about the kings who had to drink some of the wine. ²³ In the vision the religious leaders of the cities of Dedan, Tema, and Buz, which were cities in Arabia and other distant places, they had to drink some of the wine.

ULB:

²² The kings of Tyre and Sidon, the kings of the coasts on the other side of the sea, ²³ Dedan, Tema, and Buz with all the ones who cut the hair on the sides of their heads, they also had to drink it.

translationWords:

- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)
- [Sidon, Sidonians](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues to list all the nations that were under God's judgment. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the sea** - This is a reference to the Mediterranean Sea.
- **the ones who cut the hair on the sides of their heads** - This is probably a reference to Arabians who lived in the desert, people who cut their hair short in order to honor a pagan god. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:24-26

UDB:

²⁴ In the vision other places in Arabia and the kings of tribes in the desert ²⁵ and the kings of the Zimri, Elam, and Media people groups, ²⁶ and kings in countries to the north that are near to Israel and to countries that are far from Israel, one after the other—all the kingdoms in the world had to drink, and finally the king of Babylon had to drink some of the wine.

ULB:

²⁴ These people also had to drink it: all the kings of Arabia and all the kings of people of mixed heritage who live in the wilderness; ²⁵ all the kings of Zimri, all the kings of Elam, and all the kings of the Medes; ²⁶ all the kings of the north, the ones close by and the ones far away—everyone with his brother and all the kingdoms of the world that are on the surface of the earth. Finally the king of Babylon will drink after them all.

translationWords:

- [Arabia, Arabian](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Elam](#)
- [Medes, Media](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

translationNotes:

- **drink it** - This refers to the cup of wine in Jeremiah's vision that is symbolic of God's judgment.
- **Zimri** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the kings of the north** - AT: "the kings from the north"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:27-29

UDB:

²⁷ Then in the vision Yahweh said to me, "Tell them that this is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God of Israel, says: 'Drink from this cup some of the wine that represents the punishment that I will give you. Drink a lot of it and become drunk and vomit. You will fall down and not get up again, because I will cause you to be killed in wars that I will send to you.' ²⁸ If any of those to whom you give this wine refuse to drink it, tell them that Yahweh, commander of the angel armies says that they must drink it. ²⁹ I am starting to bring disaster to my own people. They will not be exempt from punishment, for I am sending wars to all the nations on the earth. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, have said it.'

ULB:

²⁷ Yahweh said to me, "Now you must say to them, 'Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: Drink and become drunk, then vomit, fall down, and do not rise before the sword that I am sending among you.' ²⁸ Then it will happen that if they refuse to take the cup from your hand to drink, you will say to them, 'Yahweh of hosts says this: You must certainly drink it. ²⁹ For see, I am about to bring disaster on the city that is called by my name, and should you yourselves be free from punishment? You will not be free, for I am calling a sword against all the inhabitants of the land!—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts.'

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- sword
- drunk, drunkard
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- call, calling, called, call out
- name
- free, freedom, liberty
- punish, punishment
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The vision that God gave to the prophet Jeremiah continues.

- **Drink and become drunk, then vomit, fall down, and do not rise before the sword that I am sending among you.** - This shows the inevitability of the coming punishment and the futility of trying to avoid it.
- **the cup from your hand to drink** - AT: “their punishment”
- **You must certainly drink it** - This is not a cup that nations can refuse to drink. Nations can not refuse God’s Judgments of war and natural disasters.
- **drink it** - AT: be punished” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the city that is called by my name** - AT: “the people of Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **should you yourselves be free from punishment?** - AT: “you are to be punished.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **I am calling a sword against all the inhabitants of the land** - AT: “I am punishing those who live in the land”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ Now tell them all those things that I have said, and also say this to them:

‘Yahweh will shout to them from his holy dwelling in heaven
and it will sound like the roar of a lion.

He will shout like people shout when they are treading on grapes to make
juice for wine;

he will shout to everyone on the earth.

³¹ Even people in very remote places around the earth will hear him shout-
ing,

because he will say why he will judge and punish all the nations.

He will cause the wicked people to be slaughtered with swords.

That will surely happen because Yahweh has said it.’

ULB:

³⁰ So you yourself, Jeremiah, must prophesy to them all these words. You must say to them,

‘Yahweh will roar from the heights
and will raise his voice from his holy dwelling,
and thunder from his holy dwelling place;
and he will shout like those who tread the grapes
against all those who live on the earth.

³¹ A noise comes to the ends of the land,
for a dispute from Yahweh is going to bring a lawsuit against the nations. He
will administer justice to all flesh.

He will hand over the wicked ones to the sword—this is Yahweh’s declara-
tion.’

translationWords:

- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- word
- voice

- [grape](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sword](#)

translationNotes:

- **to bring a lawsuit** - AT: “to convict the nations” or “to judge and punish the nations”
- **He will administer justice to all flesh** - All the known nations will experience God’s judgment.
- **to all flesh** - AT: “to all mankind” or “to all people”
- **hand over the wicked ones to the sword** - AT: “kill the evil people” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:32-33**UDB:**

³² Then tell them that this is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says:

'Listen to this!

Disasters will happen to one nation after another.

Punishment from me will arise like a great storm

from the most distant places on the earth.

³³ When that happens, the corpses of those whom I have caused to be slaughtered will fill the earth from the east to the west.

And no one will mourn for them, and no one will gather their corpses to bury them. They will be scattered on the ground like manure.

ULB:

³² Yahweh of hosts says this,

'See, disaster is going out from nation to nation,

and a great storm is beginning from the farthest parts of the earth.

³³ Then those killed by Yahweh will on that day extend from one end of the earth to the other;

they will not be mourned, gathered, or buried.

They will be like dung on the ground.

translationWords:

- nation
- mourn, mourning
- bury, buried, burial
- dung, manure

translationNotes:

- **See** - AT: "Pay attention to this!" See how you translated this in [5:14](#)
- **a great storm is beginning from the farthest parts of the earth** - AT: "destruction is coming" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **will on that day extend from one end of the earth to the other** - AT: “will on that day cover the entire earth” (See: [Merism](#))
- **They will be like dung on the ground** - Possible meanings are 1) there were few or no people left to bury those whom Yahweh had killed or 2) there was a total lack of concern for the bodies of the dead. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:34-36**UDB:**

³⁴ You evil leaders, weep and moan!

You who thought you were the strongest ones of my people, fall down and roll in the dust.

It is time for you to be slaughtered;

you will fall down and be shattered like a fragile vase shatters when it falls to the ground.

³⁵ You will not find any place to hide,

there will be no place to which you can escape.

³⁶ Your leaders and those who thought they were so strong—people will listen to them crying

when I, Yahweh, ruin your nation.

ULB:

³⁴ Wail, shepherds, and shout for help!

Roll about on the ground,
you majestic people in the flock.

For your day to be slaughtered and scattered has come.

You will fall like chosen rams.

³⁵ Refuge for the shepherds is gone. There is no escape for the majestic ones in the flock.

³⁶ There are the distressed cries of the shepherds and the wails of the majestic ones in the flock,

for Yahweh is devastating their pastures.

translationWords:

- shepherd, to shepherd
- majesty
- flock, herd
- slaughter
- sheep, ram, ewe
- refuge, shelter
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **shepherds** - This is a reference to leaders of Israel.
- **Roll about on the ground** - This is a sign of sorrow, mourning or distress.
- **For your day** - AT: For your time” or “the time for you”
- **You will fall like chosen rams.** - AT: “You will easily be destroyed” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **Refuge for the shepherds is gone** - There will be no hiding place to escape this judgment or destruction.
- **Yahweh is devastating their pastures** - God’s Judgment is on both the leaders and the people, no one will be spared.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 25:37-38

UDB:

³⁷ Your peaceful meadows will become a wasteland

because Yahweh will severely punish it.

³⁸ Yahweh will leave his dwelling like a lion leaves its den to attack other animals,

and he will cause your land to become desolate.

He is very angry with you and will make your enemies angry at you.”

ULB:

³⁷ So the peaceful pastures will be devastated because of Yahweh’s angry wrath.

³⁸ Like a young lion, he has left his den, for their land will become a horror because of the oppressor’s anger,

because of his angry wrath.” [1]Instead of *the oppressor’s anger*, some ancient copies and modern versions have *the oppressor’s sword*.

translationWords:

- peace, peaceful
- angry, anger
- wrath, fury
- lion
- horror, horrified
- oppress, oppression, oppressor

translationNotes:

- **So the peaceful pastures will be devastated** - Here “pastures” stands for the entire nation. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **will be devastated** - This can be put into active form. AT: “he will devastate the entire nation” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **angry wrath** - The fact that Yahweh is angry is spoken of as if it were an object. AT: “Yahweh is angry” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **Like a young lion, he has left his den, for their land will become a horror** - Unlike other references where God is viewed as a protective lion toward Israel, in this passage God acts like a lion in order to punish Israel. AT: “Yahweh is coming like a young lion to make the people’s land a horror” (See: [Simile](#))

- **their land will become a horror** - Here “horror” stands for a quality. AT: “their land will become horrible” or “their land will become something fearful to see” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **the oppressor’s anger** - This refers to the anger of Israel’s enemies.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 25 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 26 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The people want to kill Jeremiah

The people wanted to kill Jeremiah but other people intervened and said that they should listen to Jeremiah and repent. They represent the remnant of the faithful Jews. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#), [remnant](#) and [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 26:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 26:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Soon after Jehoiakim son of Josiah, became the king of Judah, Yahweh gave me this message: ² "This is what I, Yahweh, am telling you: Stand in the courtyard in front of my temple, and speak to all the people from the various towns in Judah who come there to worship me. Tell them everything that I tell you; do not omit anything. ³ If you do tell them everything, perhaps they will pay attention, and each one of them will turn away from his evil behavior. Then I will change my mind, and not bring on them the disaster that I was planning to bring on them because of the evil things that they have done.

ULB:

26 ¹ In the beginning of the reign of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah, this word came from Yahweh and said, ² "Yahweh says this: Stand in the courtyard of my house and speak about all the cities of Judah who come to worship at my house. Proclaim all the words that I have commanded you to say to them. Do not cut short any word! ³ It may be that they will listen, that each man will turn from his wicked ways, so I will relent concerning the disaster that I am planning to bring on them because of the wickedness of their practices.

translationWords:

- reign
- Jehoiakim
- Josiah
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- word
- Yahweh
- courtyard, court
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- worship
- proclaim, proclamation
- command, to command, commandment
- turn, turn away, turn back
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **cities of Judah** - AT: "people from the cities of Judah"
- **Do not cut short any word!** - AT: "Do not leave anything out from what I have told you!"

- **so I will relent concerning the disaster** - This is conditional destruction. If Judah repents, God will not destroy but heal them.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 26:4-6**UDB:**

4-5 Say to them, 'This is what Yahweh says: I sent to you the prophets who serve me, to tell you what you should do. I sent them to you many times, but you have not paid attention to what they said. If you will not pay attention to what I say and do not obey the message that I have given to you, and if you do not pay attention to what the prophets say, ⁶ I will destroy this temple like I destroyed Shiloh, the place where the sacred tent was put. And I will cause Jerusalem to be a place whose name people in every nation on the earth will say when they curse someone.'"

ULB:

⁴ So you must say to them, 'Yahweh says this: If you do not listen to me so as to walk in my law that I have placed before you— ⁵ if you do not listen to the words of my servants the prophets whom I am persistently sending to you—but you have not listened!— ⁶ then I will make this house like Shiloh; I will turn this city into a curse in the sight of all the nations on earth.'"

translationWords:

- walk
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- servant, slave, slavery
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- send, send out, sent
- Shiloh
- turn, turn away, turn back
- curse, cursed
- nation
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **If you do not listen to me so as to walk in my law that I have placed before you** - AT: "If you do not obey me and the law that I have given you" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **then I will make this house like Shiloh** - "then I will destroy the temple" (See: **Simile**)
- **I will turn this city into a curse** - This refers to the punishment that Yahweh will cause to happen to Jerusalem.
- **in the sight of all the nations on earth** - AT: "for all the nations to witness"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 26:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Jeremiah did what Yahweh told him to do. The priests, the false prophets, and many other people listened to him as he told them that message outside the temple. ⁸ But as soon as Jeremiah finished telling them everything that Yahweh had commanded him to say, they all seized him and said, "You must be executed! ⁹ Why are you prophesying that this temple will be destroyed like Shiloh was destroyed? Why are you saying that this city will be destroyed, and that no one will live here anymore? All the people surrounded Jeremiah as he stood in front of the temple.

ULB:

⁷ The priests, the prophets, and all the people heard Jeremiah announcing these words in Yahweh's house. ⁸ So it happened that when Jeremiah had finished announcing all that Yahweh commanded him to say to all the people, the priests, prophets, and all the people seized him and said, "You will certainly die! ⁹ Why have you prophesied in Yahweh's name and said that this house will become like Shiloh and this city will become desolate, with no inhabitant?" For all the people had formed a mob against Jeremiah in Yahweh's house.

translationWords:

- priest, priesthood
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Jeremiah
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- death, die, dead
- name
- desolate, desolation

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh's house** - "the temple"
- **all the people seized him and said, "You will certainly die!** - Possible meanings are 1) The people chose to believe the lie of false peace and did not want to be confronted with the truth or 2) the people believed the other prophets proclaiming peace and saw Jeremiah as a false prophet who should be stoned for leading the people astray.
- **Why have you prophesied in Yahweh's name and said that this house will become like Shiloh and this city will become desolate, with no inhabitant?** - This is a rebuke. AT: "You should not have prophesied in Yahweh's name that his temple would be destroyed." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 26:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ When the officials of Judah heard about all this that was happening, they rushed from the palace and sat down at the gate of the temple named The New Gate, to judge Jeremiah's case. ¹¹ The priests and the prophets told the officials and the other people who were there, "This man should be executed, because he has prophesied that this city will be destroyed, and you yourselves have heard him say that!"

¹² Then Jeremiah replied to the officials and the other people. He said to them, "Yahweh sent me to prophesy all the things that you heard me say about what will happen to this temple and this city.

ULB:

¹⁰ Then the officials of Judah heard these words and went up from the king's house to Yahweh's house. They sat in the gateway at the New Gate of Yahweh's house. ¹¹ The priests and the prophets spoke to the officials and to all the people. They said, "It is right for this man to die, for he prophesied against this city, just as you heard with your own ears!" ¹² So Jeremiah spoke to all the officials and all the people and said, "Yahweh has sent me out to prophesy against this house and this city, to say all the words that you have heard.

translationWords:

- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **officials** - An official is a person who has a position of authority.
- **the New Gate** - This was a specific entrance into the Temple.
- **you heard with your own ears** - AT: "you heard" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **this house and this city** - "the people in Yahweh's temple and the city of Jerusalem"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 26:13-15

UDB:

¹³ But if you change your behavior and stop sinning, and start to obey Yahweh our God, he will change his mind, and not send to you the disasters that he said that he would send. ¹⁴ As for me, I am not able to free myself from your grasp. So you can do to me whatever you want to do. ¹⁵ But you need to know that if you kill me, you will be killing a man who is innocent. And you and everyone else in this city will be guilty, because the truth is that it was Yahweh who sent me to speak every word that you have heard me say.”

ULB:

¹³ So now, improve your ways and your practices, and listen to the voice of Yahweh your God so that he will relent concerning the disaster that he has proclaimed against you. ¹⁴ I myself—look at me!—am in your hand. Do to me what is good and right in your eyes. ¹⁵ But you must surely know that if you kill me, then you are bringing innocent blood on yourselves and on this city and its inhabitants, for Yahweh has truly sent me to you to proclaim all these words for your ears.”

translationWords:

- voice
- God
- proclaim, proclamation
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- good, goodness
- know, knowledge, make known
- innocent
- blood

translationNotes:

- **So now, improve your ways and your practices** - the people had reverted to offering sacrifices to Yahweh to appease Him. But They were not interested in following Yahweh’s laws or knowing Him.
- **listen to the voice of Yahweh** - AT: “obey Yahweh”
- **Do to me what is good and right in your eyes.** - The words “good” and “right” mean the same thing. AT: “Do to me whatever you think is the right thing to do.” (See: **Doublet** and **Idiom**)
- **for your ears** - AT: “for you to hear”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 26:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Then the officials and the other people said to the priests and the false prophets, “This man does not deserve to be executed, because he has spoken to us the message that Yahweh gave him!”

¹⁷ Then some of the elders stood up and spoke to all the people who were gathered there.

ULB:

¹⁶ Then the officials and all the people said to the priests and prophets, “It is not right for this man to die, for he has proclaimed things to us in the name of Yahweh our God.” ¹⁷ Then men from the elders of the land rose up and spoke to the entire assembly of the people.

translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [name](#)
- [elder](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)

translationNotes:

- **It is not right for this man to die** - The elders acknowledge that Jeremiah’s message came from God and acted accordingly.
- **in the name of Yahweh our God** - “with the authority of Yahweh our God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 26:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ They said, "Remember what Micah, the prophet from Moresheth, prophesied during the years that Hezekiah was the king of Judah. He told the people of Judah this:

'This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says:

Some day Mount Zion will be plowed like fields are plowed;

Jerusalem will become a heap of ruins.

There will be a large clump of trees on top of the hill where the temple is now.' ¹⁹ But did Hezekiah or anyone else in Judah kill Micah for saying that? No! Instead, Hezekiah revered Yahweh, and pleaded that he would act mercifully toward them. So, Yahweh changed his mind about sending to them the terrible disaster that he said he would send. And now if we kill Jeremiah, we are going to bring even worse disaster on ourselves!"

ULB:

¹⁸ They said, "Micah the Morashite was prophesying in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah. He spoke to all the people of Judah and said, 'Yahweh of hosts says this: Zion will be plowed like a field, Jerusalem will become a heap of rubble, and the temple mount will become a hill overgrown with thickets.' ¹⁹ Did Hezekiah king of Judah and all of Judah put him to death? Did he not fear Yahweh and appease the face of Yahweh so that Yahweh would relent concerning the disaster that he proclaimed to them? So will we do greater evil against our own lives?"

translationWords:

- Micah
- Hezekiah
- king
- Judah
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- Zion, Mount Zion
- Jerusalem
- death, die, dead
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- face
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Zion will be plowed like a field** - AT: “Zion will be destroyed” (See: [Simile](#))
- **the temple mount** - This is a reference to the mountain that the Temple is located on.
- **thickets** - This term refers to groups of bushes or small trees growing closely together.
- **Did Hezekiah king of Judah and all of Judah put him to death?** - AT: “Hezekiah, king of Judah and the people of Judah did not put Micah to death.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Did he not fear Yahweh and appease the face of Yahweh so that Yahweh would relent concerning the disaster that he proclaimed to them?** - AT: “He feared Yahweh and made Yahweh less angry so that Yahweh would change his mind about the disaster that he said he would send.”
- **appease the face of Yahweh** - AT: “lessen Yahweh’s anger” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **So will we do greater evil against our own lives?** - AT: “If we kill Jeremiah, we will bring greater evil on ourselves.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 26:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ At that time, Uriah son of Shemaiah from the city of Kiriath Jearim was also prophesying from Yahweh. He was predicting that the city and the rest of the land would experience the same disasters that Jeremiah was predicting. ²¹ When King Jehoiakim and his army officers and officials heard what Uriah was saying, the king sent someone to kill Uriah. But Uriah heard about it, and became very afraid, and he escaped to Egypt.

ULB:

²⁰ Meanwhile there was another man who prophesied in the name of Yahweh—Uriah son of Shemaiah from Kiriath Jearim—he also prophesied against this city and this land, agreeing with all of Jeremiah’s words. ²¹ But when King Jehoiakim and all his soldiers and officials heard his word, then the king tried to put him to death, but Uriah heard and was afraid, so he ran away and went to Egypt.

translationWords:

See: [How to Translate Names](#)

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [king](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - A second prophet, Uriah, confirms Jeremiah’s words
- **in the name of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [26:16](#)
- **officials heard his word** - AT: “officials listened to what Uriah said”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 26:22-24

UDB:

²² Then King Jehoiakim sent Elnathan son of Achbor along with several other men to Egypt. ²³ They captured Uriah and took him back to Jerusalem to King Jehoiakim. The king then commanded a soldier to kill Uriah with a sword. Then they buried his corpse in a place where poor people are buried. ²⁴ However, Ahikam son of Shaphan defended me, and persuaded the officials not to allow the mob to murder Jeremiah.

ULB:

²² Yet King Jehoiakim sent out men to Egypt—Elnathan son of Achbor and men with him to Egypt. ²³ They took Uriah out from Egypt and brought him to King Jehoiakim. Then Jehoiakim killed him with a sword and sent his corpse out to the graves of the ordinary people. ²⁴ But the hand of Ahikam son of Shaphan was with Jeremiah, so he was not given into the hand of the people to be put to death.

translationWords:

- sword
- tomb, grave, burial place
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Uriah dies a prophet's death in Jerusalem.
- **corpse** - “dead body”
- **the hand of Ahikam** - Ahikam supported Jeremiah and protected him. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Elnathan son of Achbor ... Ahikam son of Shaphan** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **so he was not placed into the hands of the people for them to put him to death** - “so the people were not able to kill him.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 26 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 27 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The nations should serve Babylon

Jeremiah told the king of Judah, and all the surrounding nations, to serve the Babylonians and live in their land. If they refused, Babylon would take them as captives to another land.

Links:

- [Jeremiah 27:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 27:1-4

UDB:

¹ Soon after Zedekiah son of Josiah became the king of Judah, Yahweh gave a message to me. ² This is what he said to me: "Make a yoke and bonds, then fasten them around your own neck. ³ Then send messages to the kings of Edom, Moab, Ammon, Tyre, and Sidon, by telling those messages to the ambassadors from those countries who have come to Jerusalem to talk to King Zedekiah. ⁴ Tell them to give this message to their kings: This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, whom Israel worships, says:

ULB:

27 ¹ In the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah son of Josiah, king of Judah, this word came to Jeremiah from Yahweh.[1]Although most Hebrew copies have *Jehoiakim*, most modern versions have *Zedekiah*, because the events in this chapter occur during his reign. ² This is what Yahweh said to me, "Make fetters and a yoke for yourself. Place them on your neck. ³ Then send them out to the king of Edom, the king of Moab, the king of the people of Ammon, the king of Tyre, and to the king of Sidon. Send them by the hand of those kings' ambassadors who have come to Jerusalem to Zedekiah king of Judah. ⁴ Give commands to them for their masters and say, 'Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: This is what you must say to your masters,

translationWords:

- reign
- Jehoiakim
- Josiah
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- word
- Jeremiah
- Yahweh
- yoke
- send, send out, sent
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites
- Tyre, Tyrians
- Sidon, Sidonians
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- ambassador, representative
- Jerusalem

- [Zedekiah](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **fetters** - This is something to keep a person from moving freely.
- **Then send them out** - Jeremiah was to send a set of fetters and yoke to each king listed.
- **by the hand of those kings' ambassadors** - Here "hand" stands for the agency of these ambassadors. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Give commands to them for their masters** - Jeremiah was instructed to give a set of chains and yoke to each ambassador and a message for each king regarding the chains and yoke.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 27:5-7

UDB:

⁵ 'With my very great power I created the earth and the people and the animals that are on the earth. And I can give those things to anyone whom I want to. ⁶ And now I am going to enable King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon, who does what I want him to do, to control your countries. I am going to enable him to rule everything, even the wild animals. ⁷ The people of all the nations will work for him, and later for his son, and later for his grandson, until the time for them to rule is finished. Then the armies of many great kings from many nations will conquer Babylon.'

ULB:

⁵ "I myself made the earth by my great strength and my raised arm. I also made the people and animals on the earth, and I give it to anyone who is right in my eyes. ⁶ So now, I myself am giving all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, my servant. Also, I am giving the living things in the fields to him to serve him. ⁷ For all the nations will serve him, his sons, and his grandsons until the time for his land to end comes. Then many nations and great kings will subdue him.

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Babylon, Babylonian
- servant, slave, slavery
- life, live, living, alive
- serve, service
- nation

translationNotes:

- **by my great strength and my raised arm** - The phrase "raised arm" refers to great power and intensifies the first phrase. AT: "by my very great power." (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))
- **I give it to anyone who is right in my eyes** - "I give it to anyone I want to."
- **subdue him** - will become strong and defeat Babylon.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 General Notes](#)

- **Jeremiah 27 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 27:8

UDB:

⁸ But now I tell you that you must do what the king of Babylon wants you to do, like an ox that has a yoke on its neck must do what its master wants it to do. I will punish any nation that refuses to do that. I will cause those people to experience war and famine and diseases, until the armies of Babylon have conquered that nation.

ULB:

⁸ So the nation and the kingdom that does not serve Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, and that does not put his neck into the yoke of the king of Babylon—I will punish that nation with sword, famine, and plague—this is Yahweh’s declaration—until I have destroyed them by his hand.

translationWords:

- [kingdom](#)
- [yoke](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [sword](#)
- [famine](#)
- [plague](#)

translationNotes:

- **that does not put his neck into the yoke of the king** - Those that do not swear allegiance to the king of Nebuchadnezzar and pay tribute or taxes to the king.
- **by his hand** - This phrase refers to Nebuchadnezzar and his armies. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - AT: “This is what Yahweh says will happen”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 27:9-11

UDB:

⁹ So, do not pay attention to your false prophets and fortune tellers and people who predict what will happen by working magic or by talking with spirits of dead people. Those people say not to serve him because the king of Babylon will not conquer your country. ¹⁰ Those people are all liars. If you believe what they say, it will result in your being exiled from your land. I will cause you to be taken from your land, and you will die far away. ¹¹ But the people of any country who do what the king of Babylon wants them to do will remain in their own country and be able to plant their crops as they always have done. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

⁹ So do not listen to your prophets, your diviners, your seers, soothsayers, and sorcerers who have been speaking to you and saying, ‘Do not serve the king of Babylon.’ ¹⁰ For they are prophesying deceit to you in order to send you far away from your lands, for I will drive you away, and you will die. ¹¹ But the nation that places its neck into the yoke of the king of Babylon and serves him, I will allow it to rest in its land—this is Yahweh’s declaration—and they will cultivate it and make their homes in it.”

translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer
- sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- death, die, dead
- rest

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak through Jeremiah to the people of Judah
- **soothsayers** - A soothsayer is someone who makes predictions about the future.
- **But the nation that places its neck into the yoke of the king** - AT: “But the nation who serves the king” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **cultivate** - This means to prepare and use land to grow food crops
- **make their homes in it** - AT: “make Babylon their home”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 27:12-13

UDB:

¹² After I gave that message to those ambassadors, I gave the same message to King Zedekiah of Judah. I said to him, "If you want to remain alive, do what the king of Babylon and his officials want you to do. ¹³ It would be foolish for you not to do that, because the result would be that you and your people would die by your enemies' swords or by famine or diseases, which Yahweh will cause any nation to experience that refuses to allow the king of Babylon to rule them.

ULB:

¹² So I spoke to Zedekiah king of Judah and gave him this message, "Place your necks into the yoke of the king of Babylon and serve him and his people, and you will live. ¹³ Why will you die—you and your people—by the sword, famine, and plague, just as I have declared about the nation that refuses to serve the king of Babylon?"

translationWords:

- [Zedekiah](#)
- [king](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak through Jeremiah to the king of Judah.
- **Place your necks into the yoke of the king of Babylon** - God is requiring Judah to submit and serve Babylon as their king.
- **Why will you die—you and your people—by the sword, famine, and plague, just as I have declared about the nation that refuses to serve the king of Babylon?** - AT: "You will die, you and your people, by the sword, famine, and plague, just as I have declared, if you do not serve the king of Babylon" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 27:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Do not pay attention to those prophets who say to you, ‘Do not obey the king of Babylon since he will not conquer your country.’ They are liars. ¹⁵ This is what Yahweh says: ‘I have not appointed those prophets. They are saying that I gave them messages, but they are lying. So, if you believe them, I will expel you from this land. And you and all those prophets will die in Babylon!’”

ULB:

¹⁴ Do not listen to the words of the prophets who speak to you and say, ‘Do not serve the king of Babylon,’ for they are prophesying lies to you. ¹⁵ ‘For I have not sent them out—this is Yahweh’s declaration—for they are prophesying deceit in my name so that I will drive you out and you will perish, both you and the prophets who are prophesying to you.’”

translationWords:

- [serve, service](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [perish, perishing, perishable](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak through Jeremiah to the king and people of Judah.
- **Do not listen to the words** - Yahweh is warning the people about all the false prophets that He did not send that are lying to them.
- **For I have not sent them out** - “For I have not sent them”
- **in my name** - This phrase means speaking with Yahweh’s power and authority or as his representative. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will drive you** - “I will send you away from your home country”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 27:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ Then I spoke to the priests and the other people, and I said, "This is what Yahweh says: 'Do not believe your prophets who tell you that all the gold items that were taken from my temple by soldiers from Babylon will soon be returned from Babylon, because what they are prophesying is a lie. ¹⁷ Do not pay attention to what they say. Surrender to the king of Babylon. If you do that, you will remain alive. If you do not do that, this entire city will be destroyed. ¹⁸ If they are really prophets who speak messages from me, tell them to plead to me, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, that the soldiers from Babylon will not be allowed to take away to Babylon the valuable items that still remain in the temple and in the king's palace and in the other palaces in Jerusalem.

ULB:

¹⁶ I proclaimed this to the priests and all the people and said, "Yahweh says this: Do not listen to the words of your prophets who prophesy to you and say, 'Look! The objects belonging to Yahweh's house are being returned from Babylon now!' They are prophesying lies to you. ¹⁷ Do not listen to them. You should serve the king of Babylon and live. Why should this city become a ruin? ¹⁸ If they are prophets, and if the word of Yahweh has truly come to them, let them beg Yahweh of hosts not to send to Babylon the objects that remain in his house, the house of the king of Judah, and Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- proclaim, proclamation
- priest, priesthood
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- beg, beggar
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues to speak the words of Yahweh.
- **The objects belonging to Yahweh's house are being returned from Babylon now!** - "People from Babylon are bringing back all the gold items that they took from Yahweh's temple!"
- **Why should this city become a ruin?** - "This entire city will be destroyed." (See: **Rhetorical Question**)

- **If they are prophets** - If what they speak is true, then they should be praying that my words do not come to pass and that the temple objects and leaders remain in Jerusalem.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 27:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ I say this because the huge pillars that are in front of the temple and the large water tank and the ten water carts and all the other items that are used for offering sacrifices are still in this city.
²⁰ King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon left those things here when he exiled Jehoiachin, the son of Jehoiakim, the king of Judah, to Babylon, along with all the other leaders of Jerusalem and the leaders of other places in Judah.

ULB:

¹⁹ For Yahweh of hosts is making a proclamation about the pillars, the sea, and the base, and the rest of the objects that remain in this city—²⁰ the objects that Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon did not take when he carried Jehoiachin son of Jehoiakim, the king of Judah, into captivity from Jerusalem to Babylon with all the nobles of Judah and Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Jehoiachin](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)
- [noble, nobleman](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues to bring the message of Yahweh.
- **the pillars, the sea, and the base** - These were objects that were in the temple. The “sea,” was a molten bronze basin.
- **Jehoiachin** - The Hebrew text has “Jeconiah,” which is a variation of the name “Jehoiachin.” Many modern versions have “Jehoiachin” in order to make it clear that the same king is being referred to.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 27 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 27 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 27:21-22

UDB:

²¹ Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says this about all those valuable things that are still outside the temple and in the palace of the king of Judah: ²² They will all be carried away to Babylon. And they will stay there until I say that they should be brought back to Jerusalem. Then they will be bought back here. That is what I, Yahweh, say.”

ULB:

²¹ Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel says this about the objects that remain in the house of Yahweh, the house of the king of Judah, and Jerusalem, ²² “They will be brought to Babylon, and they will remain there until the day I have set to come for them—this is Yahweh’s declaration—then I will bring them up and restore them to this place.”

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues to speak the words of Yahweh.
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 27 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 28 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

False prophecies continue

A false prophet prophesied that the captives would return from Babylon with all the temple vessels. Jeremiah told the false prophet that he would die that year for prophesying lies; and he did die. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [temple](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 28:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 28:1-2

UDB:

¹ These things occurred when Zedekiah was beginning his rule as king of Judah. It happened on the fourth year and fifth month of his rule, that Azzur's son Hananiah, a prophet from the city of Gibeon, spoke to Jeremiah in the courtyard of the temple, while all the priests and other people were listening. He said, ² "This is what the Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, whom Israel worships, says: 'I will cause the king of Babylon to stop ruling you.

ULB:

28 ¹ It happened in that year, in the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah king of Judah, in the fourth year and the fifth month, Hananiah son of Azzur the prophet, who was from Gibeon, spoke to me in Yahweh's house in front of the priests and all the people. He said, ² "Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: I have broken the yoke imposed by the king of Babylon.

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- reign
- Zedekiah
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Hananiah
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- yoke
- Babylon, Babylonian

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Hananiah claims to speak for God.
- **in the fourth year and the fifth month** - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars. AT: "in the fifth month of his fourth year (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Azzur** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **I have broken the yoke imposed by the king of Babylon** - AT: "I have stopped the control of the king of Babylon"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 28:3-4

UDB:

³ Within two years, I will cause to be brought back to this temple all the valuable things that King Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers took from this temple and took to Babylon. ⁴ And I will also bring back to this place Jehoiachin, who was the son of the Jehoiakim, the King of Judah, and all the other people who were captured and taken to Babylon. The king of Babylon has forced you to do what he wants, like someone puts a yoke on the neck of an ox to force it to do what he wants it to do. But I will cause that to end. That will happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

³ Within two years time I will bring back to this place all the objects belonging to Yahweh's house that Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon took from this place and transported to Babylon. ⁴ Then I will bring back to this place Jehoiachin son of Jehoiakim, king of Judah, and all the captives of Judah who were sent to Babylon—this is Yahweh's declaration—for I will break the yoke of the king of Babylon.”

translationWords:

- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [Jehoiachin](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Hananiah continues to speak.
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **Jehoiachin** - The Hebrew text has “Jeconiah,” which is a variation of the name “Jehoiachin.” Many modern versions have “Jehoiachin” in order to make it clear that the same king is being referred to.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 28:5-7

UDB:

⁵ Jeremiah replied to Hananiah in front of all the priests and other people whom were standing outside the temple. ⁶ He said, "I want that to be true! I desire that what you have predicted will happen just as you said! I hope that he will cause men from Babylon to bring back all the valuable things that were in this temple, and all the people who were taken to Babylon. ⁷ But now listen to what I say to you while all these people are listening.

ULB:

⁵ So Jeremiah the prophet spoke to Hananiah the prophet in front of the priests and to all the people who stood in Yahweh's house. ⁶ Jeremiah the prophet said, "May Yahweh do this! May Yahweh confirm the words that you prophesied and bring back to this place the objects belonging to Yahweh's house, and all the captives from Babylon. ⁷ However, listen to the word that I am proclaiming in your hearing and in the hearing of all the people.

translationWords:

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Hananiah](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [confirm, confirmation](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 28:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Many years ago, those who were prophets before you and I became prophets spoke messages about many nations and great kingdoms. They predicted that wars and disasters and plagues would occur in those nations. ⁹ So now you or any other prophet who predicts that things will go well for us must show that your message is correct. Only if what you predict actually happens will we know that you were truly appointed by Yahweh.”

ULB:

⁸ The prophets who existed before me and you from long ago also prophesied about many nations and against great kingdoms, about war, famine, and plague. ⁹ So the prophet who prophesies that there will be peace—if his word comes true, then it will be known that he is indeed a prophet sent out by Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- [nation](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [famine](#)
- [plague](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [word](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)

translationNotes:

- **The prophets who existed before me and you** - AT: “The prophets who lived before you and me many years ago”
- **then it will be known that he is indeed a prophet sent out by Yahweh** - AT: “then you will know that he is a true prophet of Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 28:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then Hananiah took the yoke off my neck and broke it. ¹¹ Then he said this to all the people who were there: “This is what Yahweh says: ‘Just like Hananiah has broken this yoke, within two years I will cause King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon to stop forcing the people to do what he wants, which has been like a heavy yoke on all their necks .’” After Hananiah said that, Jeremiah left the temple area.

ULB:

¹⁰ But Hananiah the prophet took the yoke from the neck of Jeremiah the prophet and broke it. ¹¹ Then Hananiah spoke in front of all the people and said, “Yahweh says this: Just like this, within two years I will break from off the neck of every nation the yoke imposed by Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon.” Then Jeremiah the prophet went on his way.

translationWords:

- [yoke](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 28:12-14

UDB:

¹² Soon after Hananiah had broken the yoke that was around the neck of Jeremiah, Yahweh gave this message to me: ¹³ "Go and say this to Hananiah: 'Yahweh, Commander of the angel armies, whom Israel worships, says that you have broken a wooden yoke, but that he will replace it with an iron yoke. ¹⁴ I have forced the people of all these nations to become slaves of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon. That is like an iron yoke around their necks. I have put everything, even wild animals, under his control.'"

ULB:

¹² After Hananiah the prophet had broken the yoke from the neck of Jeremiah the prophet, the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah and said, ¹³ "Go and speak to Hananiah and say, 'Yahweh says this: you broke a yoke of wood, but I will make instead a yoke of iron.' ¹⁴ For Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: I have placed a yoke of iron on the neck of all of these nations to serve Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and they will serve him. I have also given him the wild beasts in the fields to rule over."

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- serve, service
- beast
- ruler, rulers, rule

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **you broke a yoke of wood, but I will make instead a yoke of iron** - AT: "you broke a weak yoke but I will make a yoke which cannot be broken" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 28:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ Then Jeremiah went to Hananiah and said to him, "Hananiah, listen to this: Yahweh has not appointed you; instead, you have told lies to the people, and they have believed your lies. ¹⁶ Therefore, this is what Yahweh says: 'You will soon die. Before the end of this year, you will die, because you have encouraged people to act against Yahweh.'"

¹⁷ Hananiah died two months later.

ULB:

¹⁵ Next Jeremiah the prophet said to Hananiah the prophet, "Listen Hananiah! Yahweh has not sent you, but you yourself have caused this people to believe in lies. ¹⁶ So Yahweh says this: Look, I am about to send you out from the earth. You will die this year, since you proclaimed rebellion against Yahweh." ¹⁷ In the seventh month of that same year, Hananiah the prophet died.

translationWords:

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Hananiah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [believe, believe in, belief](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [biblical time: year](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)

translationNotes:

- **in the seventh month** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 28 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Two letters

Jeremiah sent a letter to Babylon telling the exiles to prepare for a long stay. A false prophet in Babylon wrote back to the chief priest telling him to punish Jeremiah. Even though Jeremiah had prophesied the exile, the Jews still did not believe him. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 29:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 29:1-3

UDB:

1-2 After King Jehoiachin, his mother, his palace officials, other officials in Judah and Jerusalem, and all the various kinds of craftsmen had been exiled to Babylon, Jeremiah wrote a letter to the elders, the priests, the prophets and all the other people who had been taken from Jerusalem to Babylon by soldiers of Nebuchadnezzar. ³ He gave the letter to Elasah son of Shaphan, and to Gemariah son of Hilkiah, when they were about to go to Babylon to be ambassadors from King Zedekiah to King Nebuchadnezzar. This is the letter that Jeremiah wrote, the message that Yahweh gave him.

ULB:

29 ¹ These are the words in the scroll that Jeremiah the prophet sent out from Jerusalem to the remaining elders among the captives and to the priests, prophets, and all the people that Nebuchadnezzar exiled from Jerusalem to Babylon. ² This was after Jehoiachin the king, the queen mother, and the high officials, the leaders of Judah and Jerusalem, and the craftsmen had been sent away from Jerusalem. ³ He sent this scroll by the hand of Elasah son of Shaphan and Gemariah son of Hilkiah whom Zedekiah, king of Judah, had sent to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon.

translationWords:

- word
- scroll
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- send, send out, sent
- Jerusalem
- elder
- captive, captivity
- priest, priesthood
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Nebuchadnezzar
- exile, the Exile
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Jehoiachin
- king
- queen
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- son, son of

- [Zedekiah](#)

translationNotes:

- **sent out from Jerusalem** - AT: “proclaimed from Jerusalem”
- **Jehoiachin** - The Hebrew text has “Jeconiah,” which is a variation of the name “Jehoiachin.” Many modern versions have “Jehoiachin” in order to make it clear that the same king is being referred to.
- **the queen mother** - This title is often used for the king’s mother.
- **high officials** - AT: “very important officials”
- **Elasah son of Shapan and Gemariah son of Hilkiyah** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29:4-5

UDB:

⁴ This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says to all you people who were captured here in Jerusalem and taken there to Babylon: ⁵ "Build houses there, and plan to stay there because you will be there for many years. Plant gardens, and eat the food that is produced in the gardens.

ULB:

⁴ The scroll said, "Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this to all the captives whom I caused to be exiled from Jerusalem to Babylon, ⁵ 'Build houses and live in them. Plant gardens and eat their fruit.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)

translationNotes:

- **whom I caused** - AT: "whom he caused" or "whom Yahweh caused"
- **Build houses and live in them. Plant gardens and eat their fruit** - Yahweh is telling them they will be there for a long time. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Get married and have children. Then when they grow up, choose wives for your sons, and husbands for your daughters, in order that they also may have children. In that way, the number of your people will increase, not decrease. ⁷ Also, do things that will cause things to go well for the other people there in the city where I sent you. Pray that things will go well for the people in that city, because if things go well for them, things will go well for you, also.”

ULB:

⁶ Take wives and give birth to sons and daughters. Then take wives for your sons, and give your daughters to husbands. Let them give birth to sons and daughters and increase there so you do not become too few. ⁷ Seek the peace of the city where I have caused you to be exiled, and intercede with me on its behalf since there will be peace for you if it is at peace.’

translationWords:

- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [intercede, intercession](#)

translationNotes:

- **take wives for your sons** - AT: “have your sons get married”
- **give your daughters to husbands** - AT: “allow your daughters to marry”
- **its ... it** - This refers to the city of Babylon.
- **Seek the peace of the city** - seek to Live peaceably with all people. Implying not to cause trouble and rebel against the authority.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29:8-9

UDB:

⁸ This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says: "There are false prophets and fortune tellers among you. Do not allow them to deceive you. Do not pay attention to them when they tell you their dreams, ⁹ because they are telling you lies, saying that I have given them the messages that they are telling you. But, I have not appointed them."

ULB:

⁸ For Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this, 'Do not let your prophets who are in your midst and your diviners deceive you, and do not listen to the dreams that you yourselves are having. ⁹ For they are prophesying deceitfully to you in my name. I did not send them out—this is Yahweh's declaration.'

translationWords:

- [divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)
- [dream](#)
- [name](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to the captive Israelites.
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ This is also what Yahweh says: "After you and your children have been in Babylon for seventy years, I will help you, and do for you the things that I promised, and I will enable you to return here to Jerusalem. ¹¹ I, Yahweh, know what I have planned for you. I am planning to cause things to go well for you, not to cause you to experience disasters. I am planning to give you many things that you can confidently expect to receive in the future that your people will survive to see.

ULB:

¹⁰ For Yahweh says this, 'When Babylon has ruled you for seventy years, I will help you and carry out my good word for you to bring you back to this place. ¹¹ For I myself know the plans that I have for you—this is Yahweh's declaration—plans for peace and not for disaster, to give you a future and hope.

translationWords:

- ruler, rulers, rule
- biblical time: year
- good, goodness
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- hope

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about what will happen to the captives of Israel.
- **you** - This refers to the captive Israelites.
- **seventy years** - AT: "70 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29:12-14

UDB:

¹² At that time, when you go to worship me and call out my name in prayer, I will listen to what you pray. ¹³ If you earnestly desire for me to bless you, you will see that I will answer you. ¹⁴ I will help you. I will cause you to no longer be slaves in Babylon. I will gather you from all the nations to which I have exiled you, and I will bring you back here to your own land, to the place from which you were taken.”

ULB:

¹² Then you will call to me, and go and pray to me, and I will listen to you. ¹³ For you will seek me and find me, since you will seek me with all your heart. ¹⁴ Then I will be found by you—this is Yahweh’s declaration—and I will bring back your fortunes; I will gather you from all the nations and places where I scattered you—this is Yahweh’s declaration—for I will bring you back to the place from where I caused you to be exiled.’

translationWords:

- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [heart](#)
- [nation](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about what will happen to the captives of Israel.
- **call to me ... pray to me** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will respond to their prayers. AT: “pray to me.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **I will listen to you** - This implies that Yahweh will give them what they want.
- **I will bring back your fortunes** - AT: “I will cause things to go well for you again”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Some of you say that Yahweh has appointed prophets for you there in Babylon. ¹⁶ But this is what Yahweh says about the king who rules here in Jerusalem, and about all the other people who are still living here—your relatives who were not taken to Babylon with you. ¹⁷ Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says this: "I will cause them to experience wars and famines and diseases. I will cause them to become like bad figs that are very rotten, with the result that no one can eat them.

ULB:

¹⁵ Since you said that Yahweh has raised up prophets for us in Babylon, ¹⁶ Yahweh says this to the king who sits on the throne of David and to all the people who are staying in that city, your brothers who have not gone out with you into captivity— ¹⁷ Yahweh of hosts says this, 'See, I am about to send sword, famine, and disease on them. For I will make them like rotten figs that are too bad to be eaten.

translationWords:

- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- throne
- David
- brother
- sword
- famine
- fig

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah speaks to the captive Israelites.
- **who sits on the throne of David** - This is a reference to the king of Judah who is one of David's descendants.
- **See** - AT: "Look" or "listen" or "pay attention"
- **I am about to send sword, famine, and disease on them** - "Sword" represents warfare. AT: "I am going to punish them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **For I will make them like rotten figs that are too bad to be eaten** - AT: "I will punish them harshly" or "I will make their life bad" (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ I will not stop causing them to experience wars and famines and diseases. And I will scatter them all around the world. In every country where I force them to be taken, I will cause them to be people whom others curse and be horrified about and mock. ¹⁹ That will happen because they have refused to pay attention to my messages, messages that I gave to the prophets whom I sent to them. And you who have been exiled to Babylon have not paid attention to them, either.” That is what Yahweh says.

ULB:

¹⁸ Then I will pursue them with sword, famine, and plague and make them a horrible sight to all the kingdoms on earth—a horror, an object about curses and hissed words, and a shameful thing among all the nations where I scattered her. ¹⁹ This is because they did not listen to my word—this is Yahweh’s declaration—that I sent out to them through my servants the prophets. I repeatedly sent them, but you would not listen—this is Yahweh’s declaration.’

translationWords:

Yahweh continues speaking about what will happen to Israel.

- kingdom
- earth, earthly
- curse, cursed
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- nation
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- servant, slave, slavery

translationNotes:

- **a horror, an object about curses and hissed words, and a shameful thing** - These words all share similar meanings and describe how the people of other nations will react when they see what Yahweh has done to the people of Judah.
- **curses and hissed words** - The words “hissed words” refer to a sound of strong disapproval that people make when they say bad things about others. The phrase has basically the same meaning as “curses.” (See: **Doublet**)
- **listen** - AT: “obey”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Therefore, you people who have been exiled from Jerusalem to Babylon, listen to this message from Yahweh. ²¹ This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says about Ahab son of Kolaiah, and about Zedekiah son of Maaseiah, who are telling lies to you, saying that they are giving messages from him: "They will be seized and taken to King Nebuchadnezzar, who will cause them to be executed while you are watching.

ULB:

²⁰ So you yourselves listen to the word of Yahweh, all you exiles whom he has sent out from Jerusalem to Babylon,

²¹ 'I, Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, say this about Ahab son of Kolaiah and Zedekiah son of Maaseiah, who prophesy falsely to you in my name: See, I am about to put them into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon. He will kill them before your eyes.

translationWords:

- [Ahab](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)
- [false prophet](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)

translationNotes:

- **Kolaiah ... Maaseiah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **See** - AT: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you".
- **I am about to put them into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar** - AT: "I will allow Nebuchadnezzar to conquer them" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29:22-23

UDB:

²² Because of what will happen to them, all you people who have been taken from Judah to Babylon will say this when they curse someone: ‘I hope that Yahweh will do to you the same thing that he did to Zedekiah and Ahab, whom the king of Babylon caused to be killed by being burned in a fire.’

²³ They have done terrible things to my Israelite people. They have committed adultery with their neighbors’ wives, and they have spoken lies, saying that they were messages from me. They have said things that I did not tell them to say, and I, Yahweh, have heard them say those things.”

ULB:

²² Then a curse will be spoken about these persons by all the captives of Judah in Babylon. The curse will say: May Yahweh make you like Zedekiah and Ahab, whom the king of Babylon roasted in fire.

²³ This will happen because of the shameful things they did in Israel when they committed adultery with their neighbor’s wives and declared false words in my name, things that I never commanded them to say. For I am the one who knows; I am the witness—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- [curse, cursed](#)
- [fire](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [witness, eyewitness](#)

translationNotes:

- **a curse will be spoken about these persons** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The captives of Judah will say a curse about these persons” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **roasted in fire** - AT: “burned to death” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **I am the one who knows; I am the witness** - These two clauses mean the same thing, and Yahweh repeats them for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)

- **Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 29:24-26

UDB:

²⁴ Yahweh told me to send this message to Shemaiah, a man from Nehelam who was living in Babylon: ²⁵ “This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says: ”You wrote a letter that no one told you to write. You sent it to Zephaniah the priest, son of Maaseiah, and you sent copies to the other priests and all the other people here in Jerusalem. This is what you wrote to him:

²⁶ ’Zephaniah, Yahweh has appointed you to be the priest instead of Jehoiada, to supervise those who work in the temple. Anyone who acts like a crazy man and who claims that he is a prophet, you should put his arms and legs and head into stocks.

ULB:

²⁴ ”About Shemaiah the Nehelamite, say this: ²⁵ ’Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: Because you sent out letters in your own name to all the people in Jerusalem, to Zephaniah son of Maaseiah the priest, and to all the priests, and said, ²⁶ ”Yahweh has made you priest instead of Jehoiada the priest, for you to be in charge of Yahweh’s house. You are in control of all the people who rave and make themselves into prophets. You should put them in stocks and chains.

translationWords:

- [Zephaniah](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)

translationNotes:

- **Shemaiah ... Maaseiah ... Jehoiada** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Nehelamite** - This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **in your own name** - “Name” refers to a person’s authority and reputation. AT: “based on your own authority and reputation” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **stocks** - This is a wooden frame to punish a person which holds the feet, hands, or head.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29:27-29

UDB:

²⁷ So why have you not done anything to stop Jeremiah, the man from Anathoth, who pretends that he is a prophet among you? ²⁸ He sent a letter to us who are here in Babylon, saying that we will be here for a long time. He said that therefore we should build houses and plan to stay here, and plant gardens, and eat the food that is produced in the gardens.”

²⁹ But when Zephaniah the priest received the letter from you, he brought it to me and read it to me.

ULB:

²⁷ So now, why have you not rebuked Jeremiah of Anathoth, who makes himself into a prophet against you? ²⁸ For he has sent out to us in Babylon and said, 'It will be a long time. Build houses and live in them, and plant gardens and eat their fruit.'” ²⁹ Zephaniah the priest read this letter in the hearing of Jeremiah the prophet.

translationWords:

- [rebuke](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [Zephaniah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This finishes the letter by Shemaiah that he sent out to the people in Jerusalem.
- **why have you not rebuked Jeremiah of Anathoth, who makes himself into a prophet against you?** - AT: “you should have rebuked Jeremiah of Anathoth, who makes himself into a prophet speaking against you.”
- **Build houses and live in them, and plant gardens and eat their fruit** - See how you translated this in [29:5](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 29:30-32

UDB:

³⁰ Then Yahweh gave me this message: ³¹ "Send this message to all the people from Judah who are there in Babylon: Say that this is what Yahweh says about Shemaiah, the man from Nehelam: 'I did not appoint him, but he has deceived you and caused you to believe the lies that he prophesied. ³² So, I will punish him and his family. He has incited you to rebel against me. Because of that, all of his descendants will soon die. I will do many good things for you, my people, but he and his descendants will not see those things, because they will be dead. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it!"

ULB:

³⁰ So the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah and said, ³¹ "Send word to all the exiles and say, 'Yahweh says this about Shemaiah the Nehelamite: Because Shemaiah has prophesied to you when I myself did not send him; because he has led you to believe lies, ³² therefore Yahweh says this: Look, I am about to punish Shemaiah the Nehelamite and his descendants. There will not be a man for him to stay among this people. He will not see the good that I will do for my people—this is Yahweh's declaration—for he has proclaimed faithlessness against me, Yahweh."

translationWords:

- [believe, believe in, belief](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [faithless, faithlessness](#)

translationNotes:

- **Shemaiah the Nehelamite** - See how you translated this in [29:24](#).
- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 29 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 30 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 3:4-24, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's promises restoration

Despite the prophesied punishment in this chapter, God Yahweh promises to restore Judah. In addition to this, he also declares that he will ultimately restore Israel. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [promise](#), and [restore](#), [restoration](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The author uses the term "Israel" in two different ways. He uses it in reference to the nation of Israel. He also uses it in reference to the people who used to inhabit the northern kingdom of Israel, namely the people group of Israel.

Links:

- [Jeremiah 30:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 30:1-3

UDB:

¹ Yahweh gave Jeremiah another message. He said, ² "I, Yahweh, the God of Israel am telling you to write down everything that I have said to you. ³ I want you to know that some day I will free my people, the people of Israel and Judah, from being slaves in Babylon. I will bring them back to this land that I gave to their ancestors, and this land will belong to them again. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it."

ULB:

30 ¹ This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh and said, ² "This is what Yahweh, God of Israel, says, 'Write for yourself in a scroll all the words that I have declared to you in a scroll. ³ For look, days are coming—this is Yahweh's declaration—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. I, Yahweh, have said it. For I will bring them back to the land that I gave their ancestors, and they will possess it.'"

translationWords:

- word
- Jeremiah
- Yahweh
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- declare, declaration
- scroll
- restore, restoration
- people of God, my people
- kingdom of Israel
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- possess, possession

translationNotes:

- **Write for yourself in a scroll all the words that I have declared to you** - "Write in a scroll the message that I spoke to you"
- **For look** - "For listen carefully." This phrase brings attention to what Yahweh is going say next.
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **I will restore the fortunes of my people** - "I will cause things to go well for my people again"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 30:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Yahweh gave to me another message concerning the people of Israel and Judah. ⁵ This is what he said:

”I hear people screaming because they are terrified;
there is no peace in the land.

ULB:

⁴ These are the words that Yahweh declared concerning Israel and Judah, ⁵ ”For Yahweh says this,
’We have heard a trembling voice of dread and not of peace.

translationWords:

- [voice](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)

translationNotes:

- **We have heard** - The word “we” refers to Yahweh. He often refers to himself as “we.”
- **a trembling voice of dread and not of peace** - AT: Possible meanings are 1)“people cry out in fear because there was no peace” or 2) “you cry out ... peace.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 30:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ But think about this:

Men certainly do not give birth to babies.
Therefore, why do strong men stand there,
with their faces very white,
with their hands pressed against their stomachs,
like women who are about to give birth to babies?

⁷ Terrible things will soon happen;

That will be a terrible day!

There has never been such a time.

It will be a time when my Israelite people will experience great trouble,
but finally they will be saved from their sufferings.”

ULB:

⁶ Ask and see if a man bears a child. Why do I see every young man with his hand on his loins?

Like a woman bearing a child, why have all their faces become pale?

⁷ Woe! For that day will be great, with none like it.

It will be a time of anxiety for Jacob, but he will be rescued from it.

translationWords:

- children, child
- woe
- Jacob, Israel

translationNotes:

- **Ask and see if a man bears a child** - AT: “No man has ever given birth to a child” (See: **Irony**)
- **Why do I see every young man with his hand on his loins? Like a woman bearing a child, why have all their faces become pale?** - Yahweh uses these questions to emphasize how afraid the men are. AT: “Yet, the young men are holding their bellies like a woman giving birth; they all look sick because they are so afraid” (See: **Simile** and **Rhetorical Question**)
- **for Jacob, but he will be rescued from it** - AT: “for the descendants of Jacob, but I will rescue them from it” (See: **Metonymy** and **Active or Passive**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 30:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says this:

”At that time it will be as though I will sever the ropes that are around my people,

and I will free them from being slaves.

People in other countries will no longer enslave them.

⁹ My people will again serve me, Yahweh, their God,

and they will serve a king who is a descendant of King David;

and I will appoint this king for them.

ULB:

⁸ For it will be in that day—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts—that I will break the yoke off your neck, and I will shatter your chains, so foreigners will no longer enslave you. ⁹ But they will worship Yahweh their God and serve David their king, whom I will make king over them.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- yoke
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- enslave, in bondage
- worship
- serve, service
- David
- king

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to the Israelites.
- **I will break the yoke off your neck, and I will shatter your chains** - Both of these two clauses refer to Yahweh freeing his people of Israel from slavery. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **they will worship Yahweh** - The word “they” refers to the descendants of Jacob. AT: “you will worship Yahweh”
- **serve David their king** - This refers to one of David’s descendants. (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 30:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ So, you people of Israel who serve me,

do not be dismayed now,

because some day I will bring you back from distant places;

I will bring your descendants back home from the land where they had been exiled.

Then you Israelite people will again live peacefully and safely,

and there will not be any nation that will cause you to be terrified.

¹¹ I, Yahweh, say that I will be with you and will rescue you;

I will completely destroy the nations to which I have scattered you.

But I will not completely destroy you.

I will punish you for your many sins, but I will punish you only as severely as you deserve:

I would be doing wrong if I did not to punish you at all.”

ULB:

¹⁰ So you, my servant Jacob, do not fear—this is Yahweh’s declaration—and do not be dismayed, Israel.

For see, I am about to bring you back from far away, and your descendants from the land of captivity.

Jacob will return and be at peace; he will be secure, and there will be no more terror.

¹¹ For I am with you—this is Yahweh’s declaration—to save you. Then I will bring a complete end

to all the nations where I have scattered you. But I will certainly not put an end to you,

though I discipline you justly and will certainly not leave you unpunished.’

translationWords:

- servant, slave, slavery
- Jacob, Israel
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- descendant, descended from
- captive, captivity
- peace, peaceful
- terror, terrify
- save, safe
- nation
- discipline, self-discipline
- just, justice, justly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel.
- **my servant Jacob, do not fear ... and do not be dismayed, Israel** - These two clauses have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **and do not be dismayed** - “and do not worry”
- **For see** - “Listen carefully”
- **I am about to bring you back from far away, and your descendants from the land of captivity** - These two clauses have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **from the land of captivity** - “from the place where you were captives”
- **Jacob will return** - “the people will return to their own land” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **he will be secure** - “the people will be safe”
- **where I have scattered you** - “where I have sent you”
- **But I will certainly not put an end to you** - “But I will not completely destroy you” (UDB) (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **and will certainly not leave you unpunished** - “and will certainly punish you” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 30:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Yahweh also says this:

”You have suffered very much;

it is as though you have a terrible wound that cannot be cured.

¹³ There is no one to help you,

no one to put a bandage on your wound.

There is no medicine that will heal you.

ULB:

¹² For Yahweh says this, ’Your injury is incurable; your wound is infected.

¹³ There is no one to plead your case; there is no remedy for your wound to heal you.

translationWords:

- [heal, cure](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah is speaking Yahweh’s message to the people of Israel.
- **Your injury is incurable ... for your wound to heal you** - This means that Yahweh has punished them so severely that there is no one that can help them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **There is no one to plead your case** - “There is no one who asks me to show you mercy”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 30:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ All your allies have deserted you

and they do not want to help you anymore.

It is true that I have punished you severely,

like your enemies would wound you,

because you have committed many sins

and you are very guilty.

¹⁵ Because that is true, why do you protest about my punishing you,

as though I had caused a wound that could not be cured?

It was necessary for me to punish you,

because you had committed many sins

and you were very guilty.

ULB:

¹⁴ All of your lovers have forgotten you. They will not look for you,

for I have wounded you with the wound of an enemy and the discipline of a cruel master

because of your many iniquities and your innumerable sins.

¹⁵ Why do you call for help for your injury? Your pain is incurable.

Because of your many iniquities, your innumerable sins, I have done these things to you.

translationWords:

- adversary, enemy
- lord, master, sir
- iniquity
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- call, calling, called, call out

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel.
- **All of your lovers** - Yahweh describes the people of Israel as an unfaithful wife who takes lovers other than her husband. Here “lovers” refers to other nations. The Israelites allied with them and worshiped their gods instead of relying on Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They will not look for you** - “They no longer want to be your friends”
- **I have wounded you with the wound of an enemy** - This means Yahweh has treated his people like he would his enemy.
- **Why do you call for help for your injury?** - Yahweh asked a question here to make the people think about why they are asking him for help now. AT: “Do not call for help for your injury.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **your innumerable sins** - “your sins which are too many to count ”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 30:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ But some day all those who are trying to destroy you will be destroyed;

all your enemies will be exiled to other nations.

All those who have stolen things from you

will have their valuable possessions stolen,

and all those who attack you will be attacked.

¹⁷ Everyone says that you are outcasts,

and that you live in Jerusalem, a city that no one cares about.”

But Yahweh says,

”I will heal your injuries

and cause you to be healthy again.”

ULB:

¹⁶ So everyone who consumes you will be consumed, and all of your adversaries will go into captivity.

For the ones who have plundered you will become plunder, and I will make all of the ones despoiling you a spoil.

¹⁷ For I will bring healing on you; I will heal you of your wounds—this is Yahweh’s declaration—

I will do this because they called you: Outcast. No one cares for this Zion.”

translationWords:

- consume
- adversary, enemy
- captive, captivity
- Zion, Mount Zion

translationNotes:

- **So everyone who consumes you will be consumed, and all of your adversaries will go into captivity** - These two sentences have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. AT: “All the nations that have made you slaves will be made slaves.” (See: [Parallelism](#))

- **So everyone who consumes you will be consumed** - AT: “So those who destroy you, their enemies will destroy them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **For the ones who have plundered you will become plunder, and I will make all of the ones despoiling you a spoil.** - These two sentences have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. AT: “I will cause the enemies of those who have stolen things from you in war to steal things from them” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **they called you: Outcast** - An outcast is a person whom other people do not accept or allow him to associate with them. AT: “they called you: ‘Rejected’” or “they said, ‘nobody wants you’”
- **No one cares for this Zion** - AT: “No one cares about the people of Zion” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 30:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ This is what Yahweh says:

”I will bring the people of Israel back from the lands to which they were taken

and enable them to possess their land and their houses again.

When that happens, Jerusalem will be rebuilt on top of its ruins,

and the king’s palace will be rebuilt as a place of justice.

¹⁹ People will again sing joyfully to thank me,

and I will cause there to be more people in Jerusalem, not fewer;

I will cause them to be honored, not despised.

ULB:

¹⁸ Yahweh says this, ”See, I am about to bring back the fortunes of Jacob’s tents and have compassion on his homes.

Then a city will be built on the heap of ruins, and a stronghold will exist again where it used to be.

¹⁹ Then a song of praise and a sound of merriment will go out from them,

for I will increase them and not diminish them; I will honor them so they will not be humbled.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- tent
- compassion, compassionate
- ruin, ruins
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- praise
- honor, to honor
- humble, humility

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel.

- **See** - “Listen carefully”
- **I am about to bring back the fortunes of Jacob’s tents and have compassion on his homes** - AT: “I am about to cause the descendants of Jacob to prosper and I will have compassion on them” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Then a city will be built on the heap of ruins** - AT: “Then they will rebuild Jerusalem on its ruins” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Then a song of praise and a sound of merriment will go out from them** - “Then they will sing songs of praise and joy”
- **for I will increase them and not diminish them** - Both of these phrases mean God will cause the number of Israelites to increase. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **so they will not be humbled** - AT: “so that no one will humble them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 30:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ Their children will prosper like they did before.

I will cause them to be a group of people who worship me,
and I will punish any nation that oppresses them.

²¹ One of their own people will be their king,

and I will invite him to come close to me to worship me,
because no one would dare to come close to me
if I did not invite him.

²² You Israelite people will be my people,

and I will be your God.”

ULB:

²⁰ Then their people will be like before, and their assembly will be established before me

when I punish all the ones who are now tormenting them.

²¹ Their leader will come from among them. He will emerge from their midst when I draw him near and when he approaches me.

If I do not do this, who would dare come close to me?—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

²² Then you will be my people, and I will be your God.

translationWords:

- assembly, assemble
- punish, punishment
- torment
- people of God, my people
- God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking.

- **their assembly will be established before me** - AT: "I will establish them as a people before me"
- **Their leader will come from among them. He will emerge from their midst** - These two sentences have similar meanings. The second one strengthens the thought in the first. AT: "Their leader will be chosen from the people." (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **who would dare come close to me?** - Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that no one would have the courage to approach him unless Yahweh invited the person. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 30:23-24

UDB:

²³ Yahweh will punish your enemies;

it will be like a great storm;

it will come down like a whirlwind, swirling around the heads of wicked people.

²⁴ He will not stop being angry

until he completely accomplishes all that he has planned.

In the future, you will understand all of this clearly.

ULB:

²³ See, the tempest of Yahweh, his fury, has gone out. It is a continual tempest.

It will whirl on the heads of the wicked people.

²⁴ Yahweh's wrath will not return until it has carried out and brought into being his heart's intentions.

In the final days, you will understand it."

translationWords:

- [head](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **See, the tempest of Yahweh, his fury, has gone out** - This compares God's anger and punishment to a storm. This emphasizes his power and ability to destroy wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 30 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 31:1-6, 8-22, 29, 35-37, which are extended quotations.

This chapter begins with a transition from the previous chapter. “At that time” is a reference to the day of restoration mentioned in 30:24. (See: [restore](#), [restoration](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

The New Covenant

This chapter is an important teaching regarding the New Covenant. God will make a new covenant that will bring forgiveness of sins and a desire to obey God. Scholars disagree about whether this new covenant has begun. (See: [new covenant](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Israel

In this chapter, Jeremiah uses the term “Israel” in reference to the nation of Israel as a whole. He also uses it in reference to the northern kingdom of Israel and their people group.

Links:

- [Jeremiah 31:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 31:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh says that at that time, he will be the God who is worshiped by all the clans in Israel, and they will be his people.

² This is what Yahweh says:

”Those people who remained alive and were not killed by their enemies’
swords

were blessed by me even in the desert;

where they survived.

³ Long ago I, Yahweh, said to your ancestors, the Israelite people,

’I have loved you and I will continue to love you forever.

By faithfully loving you I have brought you close to myself.’

ULB:

31 ¹ “At that time—this is Yahweh’s declaration—I will be the God of all the clans of Israel, and they will be my people.” ² Yahweh says this,

“The people who have survived the sword that came to slaughter Israel have found favor in the wilderness.”

³ Yahweh appeared to me in the past and said, ”I have loved you, Israel, with everlasting love.

So I have drawn you toward myself with covenant faithfulness.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- God
- clan
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- people of God, my people
- sword
- slaughter
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- desert, wilderness
- love
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

translationNotes:

- **At that time** - This refers to the time when God punishes the wicked.
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **Yahweh appeared to me** - Here "me" refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ And now I tell you, my Israelite people who I will think of like a chaste woman, that I will cause you to be a nation again.

You will joyfully dance as you play your tambourines.

⁵ Again you will plant your vineyards on the hills of Samaria,
and you will eat the grapes that grow there.

⁶ There will be a time when watchmen will call out from the hills of Samaria
,

'Come, let us go up to Jerusalem
to worship Yahweh, our God!'"

ULB:

⁴ I will build you up again so you will be built, virgin Israel.

You will again pick up your tambourines and go out with happy dances.

⁵ You will plant vineyards again on the mountains of Samaria; the farmers will plant and put the fruit to good use.

⁶ For a day will come when the watchmen in the mountains of Ephraim will proclaim,

'Arise, let us go up to Zion to Yahweh our God.'"

translationWords:

- virgin
- vineyard
- Samaria, Samaritan
- watch, watchman
- Ephraim
- proclaim, proclamation
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Zion, Mount Zion

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel.

- **I will build you up again so you will be built** - AT: “I will make you strong again” or “I will make you prosper again” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **virgin Israel** - See how you translated this in [18:13](#).
- **tambourines** - musical instruments with heads like a drum that can be hit and with pieces of metal around their sides that sound when the instruments are shaken (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:7

UDB:

⁷ And now Yahweh also says this:

”Sing joyfully about what I have done for the people of Israel!

Shout about your nation, the greatest nation!

Shout joyfully, praising me and saying,

’Yahweh, has rescued his people,

the ones who were still alive!’

ULB:

⁷ For Yahweh says this, ”Shout for joy over Jacob! Shout in gladness for the chief people of the nations! Let praise be heard. Say, ‘Yahweh has rescued his people, the remnant of Israel.’

translationWords:

- joy, joyful
- Jacob, Israel
- chief
- nation
- praise
- remnant

translationNotes:

- **Let praise be heard** - AT: “Let everyone hear your praises” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the remnant of Israel** - “the people still alive” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Do that because I will bring them back from the northeast,
 from the most distant places on the earth.
 Among them will be blind people and lame people,
 women who are pregnant and women who are having labor pains.
 They will be a huge group of people!
⁹ They will be weeping as they return,
 and they will be praying to me.
 I will guide them along streams of water,
 on level paths where they will not stumble.
 I will do this because I am like a father to the Israelite people;
 it is as though Israel is my oldest son.”

ULB:

⁸ See, I am about to bring them from the northern lands. I will gather them
 from the farthest parts of the earth.
 The blind and lame will be among them;
 pregnant women and those who are about to give birth will be with them.
 A great assembly will return here.
⁹ They will come weeping; I will lead them as they make their pleas. I will
 have them journey to streams of water
 on a straight road. They will not stumble on it, for I will be a father to Israel,
 and Ephraim will be my firstborn.”

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- assembly, assemble
- ancestor, father, forefather
- Ephraim
- firstborn

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking.
- **See** - “listen” or “pay attention”
- **to bring them** - Here “them” refers to the Israelite people.
- **I will be a father to Israel, and Ephraim will be my firstborn** - Here “Ephraim” is another name for “Israel.” AT: “I will be like a father to the people of Israel, and they will be like my firstborn child” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **my firstborn** - The first born had special honor and responsibility.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ People in the nations of the world, listen to this message from Yahweh.

Then proclaim it to people who live along the coasts far away.

Yahweh scattered his people, but he will gather them again and will take care of them

like a shepherd takes care of his sheep.

¹¹ Yahweh will buy his Israelite people back

from those who conquered them because they were more powerful than his people.

ULB:

¹⁰ "Hear the word of Yahweh, nations. Report along the coasts in the distance.

You nations must say, "The one who scattered Israel is gathering her up and keeping her as a shepherd keeps his sheep."

¹¹ For Yahweh has ransomed Jacob and has redeemed him from the hand that was too strong for him.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- nation
- report
- shepherd, to shepherd
- sheep, ram, ewe
- ransom
- Jacob, Israel
- redeem, redemption, redeemer
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **The one who scattered Israel is gathering her up** - AT: "I caused my people to be scattered among the nations, but now I am bringing them home." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **as a shepherd keeps his sheep** - This means God cares for and protects his people as a shepherd does his sheep. (See: [Simile](#))
- **For Yahweh has ransomed Jacob and has redeemed him from the hand that was too strong for him** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that it is Yahweh who has rescued the people of Israel. AT: “For Yahweh has rescued the people of Israel from their enemy who was too strong for them.” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:12**UDB:**

¹² Yahweh's people will return to Jerusalem

and shout joyfully on the slopes of Zion Hill.

They will rejoice about the things that Yahweh has abundantly given to them—

grain and new wine and olive oil

and young sheep and cattle.

They themselves will be like a well-watered garden,

and they will no longer feel worn out.

ULB:

¹² Then they will come and rejoice on the heights of Zion. They will rejoice over Yahweh's goodness,

over the corn and the new wine, over the oil and the offspring of the flocks and herds.

For their lives will become like a watered garden, and they will never again feel any more sorrow.

translationWords:

- rejoice
- Zion, Mount Zion
- Yahweh
- good, goodness
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- oil
- offspring
- flock, herd
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **like a watered garden** - This means they will be strong and healthy, and they will prosper. (See: **Simile**)
- **they will never again feel any more sorrow** - This is an exaggeration of the joy Israel will have. (See: **Hyperbole**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ The young women will dance joyfully,

and all the men, young ones and old ones, will join with them.

I will cause them to rejoice instead of mourning;

I will comfort them and cause them to be happy instead of being sad.

¹⁴ The priests will have plenty of things to eat and drink,

and all my people will be filled with the good things that I give them.

That will certainly happen because I, Yahweh, have said it!”

ULB:

¹³ Then virgins will rejoice with dancing, and young and old men will be together.

For I will change their mourning into celebration. I will have compassion on them and cause them to rejoice instead of sorrowing.

¹⁴ Then I will saturate the lives of the priests in abundance.

My people will fill themselves with my goodness—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- virgin
- mourn, mourning
- compassion, compassionate
- priest, priesthood
- people of God, my people
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **I will change** - Here “I” refers to Yahweh.
- **My people will fill themselves with my goodness** - “My goodness will satisfy my people”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:15

UDB:

¹⁵ Yahweh also says this:

”Women were weeping in Ramah, on the border between Israel and Judah;
they were mourning and crying very loudly.

The women who were the descendants of Ephraim and Manasseh, the two
grandsons of Rachel the wife of Jacob, were weeping about their children,
and no one could comfort them
because their children were all dead.

ULB:

¹⁵ Yahweh says this: ”A voice is heard in Ramah, wailing and bitter weeping.
It is Rachel weeping for her children. She refuses to be comforted over them,
for they live no longer.”

translationWords:

- [voice](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [Rachel](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [comfort, comforter](#)

translationNotes:

- **A voice is heard in Ramah** - AT: “I hear a voice in Ramah” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **It is Rachel weeping for her children** - Here “Rachael” refers to the women of Israel who are crying over their children. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **She refuses to be comforted over them, for they live no longer** - AT: “She will not let anyone comfort her, for her children are dead” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ But now this is what Yahweh says:

‘Do not cry anymore,

because I will reward you for the good things you have done for your children.

Your children will return from the land where their enemies have taken them.

¹⁷ I, Yahweh, am telling you that there are things that you can confidently expect me to do for you in the future.

Your children will return to their own land.’

ULB:

¹⁶ Yahweh says this, “Hold your voice back from weeping and your eyes from tears;

because there is a recompense for your suffering—this is Yahweh’s declaration—your children will return from the enemy’s land.

¹⁷ There is hope for your future—this is Yahweh’s declaration—your descendants will return inside their borders.”

translationWords:

- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [hope](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ I have heard the people of Israel grieving very much and saying to me,

‘You punished us severely,

like calves are beaten by their owners to train them for pulling a plow.

So bring us back to obey you again,

because we are ready to return to you,

because you alone are Yahweh, our God.

¹⁹ We turned away from you,

but we repented;

after you caused us to realize that we were guilty.

We beat our hands on our legs to show that we were very ashamed of the sins that we committed when we were young.’

²⁰ But I, Yahweh, say this:

The Israelite people certainly are still my dear children.

It is often necessary for me to threaten to punish them,

but I still love them.

That is why I have not forgotten them,

and I will certainly act mercifully toward them.

ULB:

¹⁸ ”I have certainly heard Ephraim sorrowing, ‘You punished me, and I have been punished.

Bring me back like an untrained calf, and I will be brought back, for you are Yahweh my God.

¹⁹ For after I turned back to you, I was sorry; after I was trained, I slapped my thigh in grief.

I was ashamed and humiliated, for I have borne the guilt of my youth.’

²⁰ Is not Ephraim my precious child? Is he not my dear, delightful son?

For whenever I speak against him, I certainly still call him to my loving mind.
In this way my heart longs for him.

I will certainly have compassion on him—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- Ephraim
- punish, punishment
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- turn, turn away, turn back
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- guilt, guilty
- mind
- heart
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **You punished me, and I have been punished** - The repetition of the phrase indicates either the severity of Yahweh’s punishment or the effectiveness of it. AT: “You punished me severely” (UDB) or “You punished me, and I have learned from that punishment.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Bring me back like an untrained calf** - Ephraim is asking for God to make him teachable as an untrained calf. (See: [Simile](#))
- **I was ashamed and humiliated** - The words “ashamed” and “humiliated” mean basically the same thing and intensify the idea of shame. AT: “I was completely ashamed.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Is not Ephraim my precious child? Is he not my dear, delightful son?** - AT: “Ephraim is my precious child. He is my dear, delightful son. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ You Israelite people, set up road signs;

put up posts along the roads

to mark the road on which you walked when you were taken from Jerusalem.

My precious Israelite people,

come back to your towns here.

²² You people who have been like daughters who have forsaken their parents,

how long will you continue to wander away from me?

I, Yahweh, will cause something to happen on the earth that is new:

the women of Israel will be protecting their husbands as they travel back here!"

ULB:

²¹ Place road signs for yourself. Set up guideposts for yourself. Set your mind on the right path,

the way you should take. Come back, virgin Israel! Come back to these cities of yours.

²² How long will you continue to waver, faithless daughter?

For Yahweh has created something new on earth: women are surrounding strong men to protect them.

translationWords:

- virgin
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- faithless, faithlessness
- create, creation, Creator

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God continues to speak from verse 7.

- **Place road signs ... Set up guideposts ... Set your mind ... Come back** - These commands are addressed to “virgin Israel.”
- **Set your mind on the right path, the way you should take.** - AT: “Try hard to remember the way you came when you were taken into captivity.” (See [Parallelism](#))
- **Come back, virgin Israel!** - God is referring to a changed Israel. (See [Metaphor](#))
- **How long will you continue to waver, faithless daughter?** - God is asking how long His people will disobey Him. AT: “Do not hesitate to start obeying me” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:23-26

UDB:

²³ This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says: "When I bring them back from the countries to which they have been exiled, all the people from the towns in Judah will again say, 'I hope that Yahweh will bless this my home, the holy place where righteous people will live!' ²⁴ The people of Judah who live in the towns, including the farmers and the shepherds, will all live together peacefully. ²⁵ I will enable weary people to be refreshed with drinks of water, and enable people who are very exhausted to become strong again."

²⁶ I, Jeremiah, woke up after dreaming all those things, and I looked around. I had slept very delightfully!

ULB:

²³ Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this, "When I bring back the people to their land, they will say this in the land of Judah and her cities, 'May Yahweh bless you, you righteous place where he lives, you holy mountain.' ²⁴ For Judah and all his cities will live together on her. Farmers and shepherds with their flocks be there. ²⁵ For I will give the weary ones water to drink, and I will fill everyone suffering from thirst." ²⁶ After this I awoke, and I realized that my sleep had been refreshing.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- bless, blessed, blessing
- righteous, righteousness
- holy, holiness

translationNotes:

- **the people** - Here this refers to the people of Judah. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **May Yahweh bless you, you righteous place where he lives, you holy mountain.** - Jerusalem is on the top of a hill, and the temple was built at the highest point in Jerusalem. AT; "May Yahweh bless those who live in Jerusalem with Yahweh, where his temple is." (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:27-28

UDB:

²⁷ Then Yahweh said to me, "There will be a time when I will greatly increase the number of people and the number of livestock here in Israel and Judah. ²⁸ Previously, I caused their enemies to remove the people from their land and to destroy their land and to bring many disasters to it. But in the future, I will enable them to build houses and to plant crops here in Israel again. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.

ULB:

²⁷ "Look, the days are coming—this is Yahweh's declaration—when I will sow the houses of Israel and Judah with the descendants of man and beast. ²⁸ In the past, I kept them under surveillance in order to uproot them and to tear them down, to overthrow, destroy, and bring them harm. But in the coming days, I will watch over them, in order to build them up and to plant them—this is Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- [declare, declaration](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [sow, sower, plant](#)
- [house](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [beast](#)

translationNotes:

- **I will sow the houses of Israel and Judah with the descendants of man and beast** - "I will increase man and beast like a farmer plants crops" or "I will increase the populations of both people and animals in the kingdoms of Israel and Judah." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I kept them under surveillance in order to uproot them** - "looked for ways to uproot them"
- **uproot ... tear ... down ... overthrow ... destroy** - See how you translated these ideas in [1:9](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ Previously the people often said, 'The parents have eaten sour grapes, but it is the children's teeth that ache.' They meant that it was not fair for them to be punished for their ancestors' sins. But when I bring them back to their land, they will no longer say that.

³⁰ But now all people will die because of the sins that they themselves have committed. It will be more like 'The person who eats sour grapes will have his own teeth aching.'

ULB:

²⁹ In those days no one will say any longer,

'Fathers have eaten sour grapes, but the children's teeth are dulled.' ³⁰ For each man will die in his own iniquity; everyone who eats sour grapes, his teeth will be dulled.

translationWords:

- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [grape](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [iniquity](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:31-32

UDB:

³¹ I, Yahweh, say this: 'There will be a time when I will make a new agreement with the people of Israel and with the people of Judah. ³² This new agreement will not be like the agreement that I made with their ancestors when I took them by their hands and led them out of Egypt. They disobeyed that agreement, even though I loved them like husbands love their wives.'

ULB:

³¹ Look, the days are coming—this is Yahweh's declaration—when I will establish a new covenant with the house of Israel and the house of Judah. ³² It will not be like the covenant that I established with their fathers in the days when I took them by their hand to bring them out from the land of Egypt. Those were the days when they broken my covenant, although I was a husband for them—this is Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- [covenant](#)
- [house](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

translationNotes:

- **Look** - "Listen" or "pay attention to what I am going to tell you."
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:33-34

UDB:

³³ This is what I, Yahweh, say: 'This is the new agreement that I will make with the people of Israel some day: I will put my laws in their minds and write them on their inner beings. I will be their God, and they will be my people. ³⁴ And it will not be necessary for them to teach their neighbors or their relatives and say, "You need to know Yahweh," because everyone, including both unimportant people and very important people, will already know me. And I will forgive them for having been very wicked, and I will never think again about the sins that they have committed.'"

ULB:

³³ But this is the covenant that I will establish with the house of Israel after these days—this is Yahweh's declaration: I will place my law within them and will write it on their heart, for I will be their God, and they will be my people. ³⁴ Then each man will no longer teach his neighbor, or a man teach his brother and say, 'Know Yahweh!' For all of them, from the smallest of them to the greatest, will know me—this is Yahweh's declaration—for I will forgive their iniquity and will no longer call their sins to mind."

translationWords:

- declare, declaration
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- people of God, my people
- neighbor
- brother
- know, knowledge, make known
- forgive, forgiveness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **I will place my law within them and will write it on their heart** - These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that Yahweh's law will become a part of them, rather than merely written on stone. Here "heart" represents "emotions" or "mind." AT: "My law will be part of their thoughts and emotions." (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **from the smallest of them to the greatest** - This phrase refers to every person, regardless of their importance in society. AT: "every single one of them." (See: [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:35-36**UDB:**

³⁵ Yahweh is the one who causes the sun to give light during the day,

and who causes the moon and the stars to give light during the night.

He stirs up the seas, with the result that waves roar.

His name is Yahweh, commander of the angel armies,

and this is what he says:

³⁶ "I will not permanently reject my Israelite people

any more than I will get rid of the laws that control the universe.

ULB:

³⁵ Yahweh says this—Yahweh, the one who makes the sun to shine by day and arranges the moon and stars to shine by night. He is the one who sets the sea in motion so that its waves roar. Yahweh of hosts is his name. He says this,

³⁶ "Only if these permanent things vanish from my sight—this is Yahweh's declaration—

will Israel's descendants ever stop from forever being a nation before me."

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [forever](#)
- [nation](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:37**UDB:**

³⁷ And this is what I say:

'No one can measure the sky
and no one can find out what is supporting the earth.
Similarly, I cannot reject the descendants of Jacob
because of all the evil things that they have done.'
That is certain, because I, Yahweh, have said it!

ULB:

³⁷ Yahweh says this, "Only if the highest heavens can be measured,
and only if the earth's foundation below can be discovered, will I reject all
of Israel's descendants
because of all that they have done—this is Yahweh's declaration."

translationWords:

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [foundation, founded](#)
- [reject](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

translationNotes:

- **the highest heavens ... earth's foundation** - These phrase refer to the whole of creation.
(See: [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 31:38-40

UDB:

³⁸ I, Yahweh, also say that there will be a time when everything in Jerusalem will be rebuilt for me, from the tower of Hananel at the northeast corner, west to the gate named the Corner Gate. ³⁹ Workers will stretch a measuring line over Gareb Hill all the way southwest to Goah. ⁴⁰ And the whole area, including the place where corpses and ashes are thrown in the Kidron Valley, and all the fields to the east as far as the Horse Gate, will become set apart for me. And the city of Jerusalem will never again be captured or destroyed.”

ULB:

³⁸ ”Look, the days are coming—this is Yahweh’s declaration—when the city will be rebuilt for me, from the Tower of Hananel to the Corner Gate. ³⁹ Then the measuring line will go out again farther, to the hill of Gareb and around Goah. ⁴⁰ The entire Valley of burial and ashes, and all the fields to the Kidron Valley and to the corner of the Horse Gate in the east, will be set apart for me, Yahweh. It will not be pulled up or overthrown ever again.”

translationWords:

- [watchtower, tower](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)

translationNotes:

- **Look, the days are coming** - “Pay attention! What I am about to talk about will happen soon.”
- **Tower of Hananel ... Corner Gate ... hill of Gareb ... Goah ... Kidron Valley ... Horse Gate** - These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **set apart** - “made holy”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 31 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The king should have listened to the prophet Jeremiah and repented of his sin. Instead, he objected to his message. Yahweh punished him because of this. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Israel

The term “Israel” is used exclusively in reference to the nation of Israel as a whole in this chapter.

Links:

- [Jeremiah 32:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 32:1-2

UDB:

¹ After Zedekiah had been ruling Judah for almost ten years, Yahweh gave me another message, during the time that Nebuchadnezzar had been ruling Babylonia for almost eighteen years. ² His army had surrounded Jerusalem, and Jeremiah was in a prison area in the courtyard where the guards of the king's palace stayed.

ULB:

32 ¹ This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh in the tenth year of Zedekiah king of Judah, the eighteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar. ² At that time, the army of the king of Babylon was besieging Jerusalem, and Jeremiah the prophet was imprisoned in the courtyard of the guard at the house of the king of Judah.

translationWords:

- word
- Jeremiah
- Yahweh
- Zedekiah
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Babylon, Babylonian
- siege, besiege
- Jerusalem
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- courtyard, court
- house

translationNotes:

- **This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh** - "This is what Yahweh said to Jeremiah"
- **was imprisoned in the courtyard of the guard** - "They put him in the prison in the courtyard of the guard" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the courtyard of the guard at the house of the king of Judah** - This was an open area attached to the king's palace.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:3-5

UDB:

³ King Zedekiah had put me there. I continued to prophesy there about what would happen. I continued to say, "Yahweh says that he is about to allow the army of the king of Babylon to capture this city. ⁴ And the soldiers of Babylonia will most definitely capture King Zedekiah and take him to the king of Babylon for a face to face encounter. ⁵ Then his soldiers will take Zedekiah to Babylon, and he will remain there until I arrange for him to be punished. And if he tries to fight against the soldiers from Babylonia, he will not succeed." King Zedekiah asked Jeremiah why he continued to say that, but Yahweh had said this would be so.

ULB:

³ Zedekiah king of Judah had imprisoned him and said, "Why do you prophesy and say, 'Yahweh says this: Look, I am about to give over this city into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he will capture it. ⁴ Zedekiah king of Judah will not escape from the hand of the Chaldeans, for he has indeed been given into the hand of the king of Babylon. His mouth will speak to the king's mouth, and his eyes will see the king's eyes. ⁵ For Zekediah will go to Babylon and he will be there until I do something with him—this is Yahweh's declaration—since you fought the Chaldeans. You will not be successful.'"

translationWords:

- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **Why do you prophesy and say** - Zekekiah uses a question to rebuke Jeremiah. AT: "It is wrong for you to continue prophesying and saying" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he will capture it** - Here "hand" refers to power or control. AT: "to the king of Babylon, and his army will capture it" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **for he has indeed been given** - AT: "for I have indeed given him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **His mouth will speak to the king's mouth, and his eyes will see the king's eyes** - AT: "Zedekiah himself will see and directly speak with Nebuchadnezzar" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **you fought** - Here "you" is plural and refers to the people in Jerusalem. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ At that time, Yahweh gave Jeremiah another message. He said, ⁷ “Your cousin Hanamel son of Shallum your uncle, will come to you. He will say to you, ‘Buy my field at Anathoth, your hometown. Because you are my closest relative, it is written in our laws that you have the right to buy it before I ask if anyone else wants to buy it.’”

ULB:

⁶ Jeremiah said, “The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ⁷ ‘Look, Hanamel son of Shallum your uncle is coming to you and will say, “Buy my field that is in Anathoth for yourself, for the right to buy it belongs to you.”’”

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **Hanamel ... Shallum** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Anathoth** - See how you translated this in [1:1](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:8-9

UDB:

⁸ And just as Yahweh had predicted, my cousin Hanamel came to see me in the courtyard of the palace. He said, “Please buy my field at Anathoth in the area where the descendants of Benjamin live. It is written in our laws that you have the right to buy it before I ask if anyone else wants to buy it.” When he said that, I knew that the message that I had received was truly from Yahweh.

⁹ So, I bought the field at Anathoth. I paid Hanamel almost two hundred grams of silver for it.

ULB:

⁸ Then, as Yahweh had declared, Hanamel, the son of my uncle, came to me in the courtyard of the guard, and he said to me, ‘Buy my field that is in Anathoth in the land of Benjamin, for the right of inheritance is yours, and the right to buy it belongs to you. Buy it for yourself.’ Then I knew that this was Yahweh’s word. ⁹ So I bought the field in Anathoth from Hanamel, the son of my uncle, and I weighed out for him the silver, seventeen shekels in weight.

translationWords:

- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [silver](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues speaking.
- **seventeen shekels** - “17 shekels.” A shekel is 11 grams. (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ I signed the paper it on which it was written that I was buying it, while others were watching. Then I weighed the silver and gave it to him. ¹¹ Then I took two copies of the paper. One was sealed and the other was not sealed. On both of them was written the price and conditions of the purchase. I took both copies ¹² and I gave them to Baruch son of Neriaiah, and the grandson of Mahseiah. I did this while my cousin Hanamel, the other witnesses who had signed the paper, and other men of Judah who were there in the courtyard, were watching.

ULB:

¹⁰ Then I wrote in a scroll and sealed it, and had witnesses witness it. Then I weighed the silver in the scales. ¹¹ Next I took the deed of purchase that was sealed, following the command and the statutes, as well as the unsealed deed. ¹² I gave the sealed scroll to Baruch son of Neriah son of Machseiah in front of Hanamel, the son of my uncle, and the witnesses who had written in the sealed scroll, and in front of all the Judeans who sat in the courtyard of the guard.

translationWords:

- scroll
- seal, to seal
- witness, eyewitness
- command, to command, commandment
- statute, statutes
- Baruch
- Judea

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues speaking.
- **in a scroll and sealed it, and had witnesses witness it** - This refers to the deed that a person would sign to purchase land. Other people would be witnesses to confirm that I had purchased this land.
- **had witnesses witness it** - “had witnesses there to see that I purchased the land”
- **that was sealed** - “that I sealed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **unsealed deed** - “opened copy” or “the deed that did not have a seal on it”
- **Baruch ... Neriah ... Machseiah** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the courtyard of the guard** - See how you translated this in [32:2](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:13-15

UDB:

¹³ Then, while they were all listening, I said to Baruch, ¹⁴ "This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says: 'Take both copies of this paper and put them in a clay jar, to preserve them for a long time. ¹⁵ Do that because this is what I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, say: Some day people will again own property in this land, and they will buy and sell houses and vineyards and fields.'"

ULB:

¹³ So I gave a command to Baruch before them. I said, ¹⁴ 'Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: Take these scrolls with the receipt of this purchase that is sealed and this unsealed scroll. Place them in a new jar so they will last for a long time. ¹⁵ For Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: Houses, fields, and vineyards will be purchased again in this land.'

translationWords:

- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [vineyard](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues speaking.
- **before them** - Here "them" refers to Hanamel, the witnesses, and the Judeans.
- **Take these scrolls with the receipt of this purchase that is sealed and this unsealed scroll** - "Take the sealed scroll and the unsealed scroll"
- **Houses, fields, and vineyards will be purchased again in this land** - AT: "The people of Israel will buy houses, vineyards and fields again in this land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ After I had given the papers to Baruch, I prayed to Yahweh, saying this: ¹⁷ "Yahweh, you are my Lord! You made the sky and the earth by your very great power. Nothing is too difficult for you to do. ¹⁸ You show thousands of people that you will always be faithful to your covenant with them, but people suffer the consequences of the sins that their parents have committed. You are the great and powerful God. You are Yahweh, commander of the angel armies.

ULB:

¹⁶ After I gave the receipt of purchase to Baruch son of Neriah, I prayed to Yahweh and said, ¹⁷ 'Woe, Lord Yahweh! Look! You alone have made the heavens and the earth by your great strength and with your raised arm. Nothing you say is too difficult for you to do. ¹⁸ You show covenant faithfulness to thousands and pour the guilt of men into the laps of their children after them. You are the great and mighty God; Yahweh of hosts is your name.

translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- guilt, guilty
- children, child
- mighty, might
- name

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues speaking.
- **the receipt of purchase** - This means the sealed scroll and the unsealed scroll.
- **Woe** - "Alas"
- **by your great strength and with your raised arm** - The phrase "raised arm" is an idiomatic way of referring to strength. The two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the greatness of Yahweh's power. AT: "by your very great power." (See: **Doublet** and **Idiom**)
- **You show covenant faithfulness** - "You keep your promise and show your faithful love"
- **and pour the guilt of men into the laps of their children after them** - "and you punish children for the sin of their parents" (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ You make wise plans and you do mighty deeds. You see how all people behave , and you do to them what they deserve. ²⁰ You performed many miracles in Egypt, and you continue to perform miracles here in Israel and everywhere else in the world. Because of that, you have become very famous. ²¹ You brought our Israelite ancestors out of Egypt by performing many great miracles, using your very great power, causing our enemies to be terrified.

ULB:

¹⁹ You are great in wisdom and mighty in deeds, for your eyes are open to all the ways of people, to give to each man what his conduct and deeds deserve. ²⁰ You did signs and wonders in the land of Egypt. To this present day here in Israel and among all mankind, you have made your name famous. ²¹ For you brought your people Israel out from the land of Egypt with signs and wonders, with a strong hand, with a raised arm, and with great terror.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- works, deeds, work, acts
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- miracle, wonder, sign
- Egypt, Egyptian
- name
- people of God, my people
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- terror, terrify

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues praying to Yahweh.
- **for your eyes are open to all the ways of people** - AT: “You see everything that people do” (See: **Idiom**)
- **to give to each man what his conduct and deeds deserve** - “and will reward everyone according to the things they do”
- **You did signs and wonders in the land of Egypt** - This refers to an event in the past when God used his power to free the people of Israel from slavery in Egypt.
- **To this present day** - “To this day”
- **and among all mankind** - “and among all people”

- **you have made your name famous** - Here “name” refers to God’s reputation. AT: “you have made yourself famous” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **with a strong hand, with a raised arm** - Both of these phrases are idiomatic ways of referring to strength. Together the phrases emphasize the greatness of Yahweh’s power. AT: “with your great power.” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:22-23

UDB:

²² You gave to us Israelite people this land that you solemnly promised to give to our ancestors, a land that is very fertile. ²³ Our ancestors came here and conquered this land and started to live in it, but they refused to obey you or to do what you commanded them to do. Because of that, you have caused them to experience all these disasters.

ULB:

²² Then you gave them this land—which you had sworn to their ancestors to give to them—a land flowing with milk and honey. ²³ So they entered and took possession of it. But they did not obey your voice or live in obedience to your law. They did nothing of what you had commanded them to do, so you brought all this disaster on them.

translationWords:

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [voice](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues praying to Yahweh.
- **gave them** - “gave the people of Israel”
- **a land flowing with milk and honey** - See how you translated this in [11:5](#).
- **But they did not obey your voice** - AT: “But they did not obey what you said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ And now, the army of Babylonia has built ramps up against our city walls in order to attack our city. Because of our enemies' swords and because of famines and diseases, they will be able to conquer it easily. The things that you said would happen have now happened. ²⁵ And it is evident that the Babylonian army will soon conquer this city. So now, I do not understand why you told me to buy this field with my silver, while others were watching. It seems that I have just been wasting my money by doing that!"

ULB:

²⁴ Look! The siege mounds have reached up to the city to capture it. For because of sword, famine, and plague, the city has been given into the hand of the Chaldeans who are fighting against it. For what you have said would happen is happening, and see, you are watching. ²⁵ Then you yourself said to me, "Purchase a field for yourself with silver and have witnesses witness it, even though this city is being given into the hand of the Chaldeans.""

translationWords:

- siege, besiege
- sword
- famine
- plague
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- silver
- witness, eyewitness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues praying to Yahweh.
- **to capture it** - "so the enemy army can capture it"
- **For because of sword** - Here sword means war or fighting. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the city has been given into the hand of the Chaldeans** - Here "hand" means power or control. AT: "you have given Jerusalem to the Chaldean army" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **and have witnesses witness it** - "and let other people witness it"
- **this city is being given** - AT: "I am giving this city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:26-28

UDB:

²⁶ Then Yahweh gave me this message: ²⁷ "I am Yahweh, the God who rules over every living thing in the world. There is absolutely nothing that is too difficult for me to do. ²⁸ So, this is what I say: It is true that I will enable the Babylonian army and King Nebuchadnezzar to capture this city.

ULB:

²⁶ This is the word of Yahweh that came to Jeremiah and said, ²⁷ "Look! I am Yahweh, God of all mankind. Is anything too difficult for me to do? ²⁸ Therefore Yahweh says this, 'See, I am about to give this city into the hand of the Chaldeans and Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon. He will capture it.

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)

translationNotes:

- **This is the word of Yahweh that came to Jeremiah and said** - "This is what Yahweh said to Jeremiah"
- **Is anything too difficult for me to do?** - Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that he can do anything. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **into the hand of the Chaldeans** - Here "hand" refers to power or control. AT: "to the Chaldeans" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ The soldiers of Babylonia who are now outside the walls around the city will enter and burn this city. They will burn down all the houses where people caused me to become angry by burning incense on the tops of their roofs to honor Baal and by pouring out offerings of wine to other gods.

³⁰ The people of Israel and Judah have continually done only evil things from the time that they became a nation. They have caused me to become very angry by all their evil deeds.

ULB:

²⁹ The Chaldeans who are fighting against this city will come and set fire to this city and burn it, along with the houses on the roofs of which the people worshiped Baal and poured out drink offerings to other gods in order to provoke me. ³⁰ For the people of Israel and Judah have certainly been people who have been doing evil before my eyes since their youth. The people of Israel have certainly offended me with the practices of their hands—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- Chaldea, Chaldean
- worship
- Baal
- drink offering
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- kingdom of Israel
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Jeremiah.
- **in order to provoke me** - “which made me very angry”
- **doing evil before my eyes** - AT: “doing what I consider evil” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **since their youth** - “from the time that they became a nation” (UDB)
- **the practices of their hands** - AT: “the evil things they have done” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 32 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 32:31-32

UDB:

³¹ From the time that this city was built until now, the people of this city have done only things that caused me to be very angry. So now I will destroy it. ³² The people of Israel and Judah, including their kings, their officials, the priests, the false prophets, and all the other people in Jerusalem have committed many sins that have caused me to become angry.

ULB:

³¹ Yahweh declares that this city has been a provocation of my wrath and fury since the day that they built it. It has been that right up to this present day. So I will remove it from before my face ³² because of all the wickedness of the people of Israel and Judah, the things that they have done to provoke me—they, their kings, princes, priests, prophets, and every person in Judah and inhabitant of Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [face](#)
- [king](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - This verse is a continuation from the previous chunk.
- **this city has been a provocation of my wrath and fury since the day that they built it.**
- The words “wrath” and “fury” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of his wrath. AT: “the people of Jerusalem have made me very angry since the day they built their city.” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **It has been that right up to this present day** - AT: “They continue to make me angry even now”
- **from before my face** - AT: “from my presence” or “completely” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:33-35

UDB:

³³ My people have turned away from me and have refused to return to me. Even though I taught them things many times, they would not pay attention to what I taught them, and they would not obey me. ³⁴ They have set up their detestable idols even in my own temple and defiled it. ³⁵ They have built on the hilltops places to worship Baal in Ben Hinnom Valley outside Jerusalem, and there they sacrifice their sons and daughters to their god Molech. I never commanded them to do such horrible deeds. I never even considered ordering such a terrible thing. And by doing it they have caused all the people of Judah to be guilty of having sinned.”

ULB:

³³ They turned their backs to me instead of their faces, though I had eagerly taught them. I tried to teach them, but not one of them listened in order to receive correction. ³⁴ Then they placed their detestable things in the house in order to pollute it, the house where my name was called. ³⁵ They built high places for Baal in the Valley of Ben Hinnom in order to put their sons and daughters in the fire for Molech. I did not command them. It never entered my mind that they should do this detestable thing and so cause Judah to sin.’

translationWords:

- turn, turn away, turn back
- receive
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- call, calling, called, call out
- high places
- Baal
- sacrifice, offering
- Molech, Moloch
- command, to command, commandment
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Jeremiah.
- **They turned their backs to me instead of their faces** - AT: “My people ignored me” (See: **Idiom**)
- **to receive correction** - “to learn from me”
- **their detestable things** - “their idols which I hate”

- **the house where my name was called** - AT: “the house that belongs to me” (See: [Active or Passive Metonymy](#))
- **Valley of Ben Hinnom** - See how you translated this in [7:31](#).
- **It never entered my mind** - Here “mind” refers to Yahweh’s thoughts. AT: “Something that I never considered doing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:36-37

UDB:

³⁶ "But now I will say something more about this city. You people of Jerusalem have been saying, 'The army of the king of Babylon will conquer it, either by their swords or because of famines or diseases.' But this is what I, the God of Israel, say: ³⁷ 'I will certainly bring my people back here again, from all the countries to which I will force them to go because I am extremely angry with them. I will bring them back to this city and allow them to live here safely.

ULB:

³⁶ So now therefore, I, Yahweh, the God of Israel, say this concerning this city, the city about which you are saying, 'It is given into the hand of the king of Babylon by sword, famine, and plague.' ³⁷ See, I am about to gather them from every land where I had driven them in my wrath, fury, and great anger. I am about to bring them back to this place and enable them to live in security.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- God
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- king
- sword
- famine
- plague
- cast out, drive out, throw out
- wrath, fury
- angry, anger
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **which you are saying** - Here "you" is plural. Possible meanings are 1) this refers to Jeremiah and those with him, or 2) it refers to all the people. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **It is given into the hand of the king of Babylon** - Here "hand" means power or control. AT: "Yahweh has given it to the king of Babylon" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **to gather them** - "to gather my people"
- **wrath, fury, and great anger** - All three words mean the same thing and emphasize the intensity of his anger. AT: "extreme anger" (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:38-40

UDB:

³⁸ They will be my people, and I will be their God. ³⁹ I will give them one way of thinking and behaving, in order that they may revere me, for their good and for the good of their descendants. ⁴⁰ I will make an agreement with them that will last forever: I will never stop doing good things for them, and they will finally revere me and never turn away from me.

ULB:

³⁸ Then they will be my people, and I will be their God. ³⁹ I will give them one heart and one way to honor me every day so it will be good for them and their descendants after them. ⁴⁰ Then I will make with them an everlasting covenant, that I will not turn away from doing good to them. I will set honor for me in their hearts, so that they will never turn away from me.

translationWords:

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [heart](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking.
- **one heart and one way to honor me** - This means there will be unity among the people of Israel and they will worship only Yahweh. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **an everlasting covenant** - “eternal agreement”
- **I will not turn away from doing good to them** - AT: “I will always do good to them” (See: [Double Negatives](#))
- **so that they will never turn away from me** - AT: “so that they will always obey and worship me”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:41-42

UDB:

⁴¹ I will be happy to do good things for them, and I will surely enable them to return to this land and remain here; I will do that with all my inner being and all my strength.'

⁴² And this is also what I, Yahweh, say: 'I have caused them to experience all these disasters. Similarly, some day I will do for them all the good things that I have promised.

ULB:

⁴¹ Then I will rejoice in doing good to them. I will faithfully plant them in this land with all my heart and all my life.

⁴² For Yahweh says this, 'Just as I have brought all this great disaster on this people, so I will bring on them all the good things that I have said I would do for them.

translationWords:

- [rejoice](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking.
- **doing good to them** - Here "them" refers to the people of Israel.
- **I will faithfully plant them in this land** - AT: "I will permanently settle the Israelites in this land" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **with all my heart and all my life** - Together, these two phrases form an idiomatic expression that refers to a person's entire being. AT: "with all that I am" or "wholeheartedly." (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 32:43-44

UDB:

⁴³ By buying land you, Jeremiah, have predicted that some day people will buy and sell fields in this land about which you people of Jerusalem now say, “The Babylonian soldiers have destroyed it. It is now desolate. It is a land where there are no longer any people or animals.” ⁴⁴ But some day people will again buy and sell fields here. People will sign documents about buying those fields, and other people will witness them doing that. That will happen in the land where the descendants of Benjamin live and here in the villages near Jerusalem, in other towns in Judah, in the hill country and in the foothills to the west, and in the southern Judean wilderness. Some day I will cause them to prosper again. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

⁴³ Then fields will be bought in this land, about which you are saying, “This is a ruined land, which has neither man nor beast. It has been given into the hand of the Chaldeans.” ⁴⁴ They will buy fields with silver and write in sealed scrolls. They will assemble witnesses in the land of Benjamin, all around Jerusalem and the cities of Judah, in the cities in the hill country and in the lowlands, and in the cities of the Negev. For I will bring back their fortunes—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- ruin, ruins
- beast
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- silver
- scroll
- witness, eyewitness
- Benjamin
- Jerusalem
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Negev
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **Then fields will be bought in this land** - AT: “Then people will buy fields in this land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **you are saying** - Here “you” refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

- **It has been given over into the hand of the Chaldeans** - Here “hand” means power or control. AT: “Yahweh has given it to the Chaldeans” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **write in sealed scrolls. They will assemble witnesses** - This refers to the deed that a person would sign to purchase land. Other people would be witnesses to confirm the purchase.
- **For I will bring back their fortunes** - “For I will make them prosper again”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 32 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 33 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Covenant faithfulness

Despite the great punishment Judah is facing and Israel has undergone, there is hope. This hope is based in the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh. Ultimately, he will restore his people. (See: [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [loving kindness](#), [unfailing love](#), [hope](#), [restore](#), [restoration](#) and [people of God, my people](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 33:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 33:1-3

UDB:

¹ While Jeremiah was still being guarded in the courtyard of the palace, Yahweh gave him this second message: ² "This is what I, the one who made the earth, who formed it and put it in its place, say to the people of Jerusalem: 'My name is Yahweh. ³ Call out to me, and then I will tell you great and wonderful things that you have not known before.'

ULB:

33 ¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah a second time, while he was still shut within the courtyard of the guard, and he said, ² "Yahweh the maker, says this—Yahweh, who forms in order to establish—Yahweh is his name, ³ 'Call to me, and I will answer you. I will demonstrate great things to you, mysteries that you do not understand.'

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [call, calling, called, call out](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 33:4-5

UDB:

⁴ This is what I, Yahweh, the God of Israel, say: 'The men in this city have torn down some of their houses, and even parts of the king's palace, to get materials to strengthen the walls around the city, in order that the soldiers of Babylonia would not be able to break through the walls after they climb up the ramps that they have built against the walls, and kill the inhabitants with their swords. ⁵ You are expecting to fight against the army from Babylonia, but what will happen is that the houses of this city will be filled with the corpses of the men of this city whom I will allow to be killed because I am extremely angry with them. I have abandoned them because of all the wicked things that they have done.

ULB:

⁴ For Yahweh, God of Israel, says this concerning the houses in this city and the houses of the kings of Judah that are torn down because of the siege ramps and the sword, ⁵ 'The Chaldeans are coming to fight and to fill the houses with corpses of people whom I will kill in my wrath and fury, when I hide my face from this city because of all their wickedness.

translationWords:

- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- siege, besiege
- sword
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- wrath, fury
- face
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **in my wrath and fury** - The words "wrath" and "fury" mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of his wrath. AT: "in my extreme wrath." (See: **Doublet**)
- **hide my face** - This phrase shows Yahweh's displeasure with the city. AT: "I have turned away from you" or "I am not longer concerned with you" (See: **Synecdoche**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 33:6-9**UDB:**

⁶ However, there will be a time when I will cause the people in this city to be healthy and strong again. I will enable them to be prosperous and have peace. ⁷ I will bring the people of Judah and Israel back from the lands to which they were exiled. I will enable them to rebuild their towns. ⁸ I will get rid of their guilt for all the sins that they have committed against me, and I will forgive them for their sin of rebelling against me. ⁹ When that happens, all the nations of the world will rejoice, and they will praise me and honor me. They will hear about all the good things that I have done for this city and, because of that, they will revere me, and they will tremble because I have caused the people in this city to have peace and to prosper.’

ULB:

⁶ But see, I am about to bring healing and a cure, for I will heal them and will bring to them abundance, peace, and faithfulness. ⁷ For I will bring back the fortunes of Judah and Israel; I will build them up as in the beginning. ⁸ Then I will purify them from all the iniquity that they have committed against me. I will pardon all the iniquities that they have done against me, and all the ways that they rebelled against me. ⁹ For this city will become for me an object of joy, a song of praise and honor for all the nations of the earth who will hear of all the good things that I am going to do for it. Then they will tremble because of all the good things and the peace that I will give to it.’

translationWords:

- heal, cure
- peace, peaceful
- faithful, faithfulness
- pure, purify, purification
- iniquity
- pardon
- joy, joyful
- praise
- honor, to honor
- nation
- earth, earthly
- tremble
- peace, peaceful

translationNotes:

- **bring back the fortunes** - AT: “bring back their prosperity”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 33:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ And this is also what I, Yahweh, say: 'You people have said that this is a land where there are no longer any people or animals. But in the streets of Jerusalem that are now completely empty, and in the other towns in Judah, ¹¹ some day people will again be happy and laugh. Brides and bridegrooms will again sing joyfully. And many other people will also sing joyfully as they bring their offerings to me to thank me for what I have done for them. They will sing this song:

"We thank you, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies,
because you are good to us.
You faithfully hold to your covenant with us forever."

They will sing that because I will cause the people of this land to be as prosperous as they were before.'

ULB:

¹⁰ Yahweh says this, 'In this place about which you are now saying, "It is desolate. There is neither man nor beast in the cities of Judah, and the streets of Jerusalem are uninhabited, with neither man nor beast." ¹¹ —Again there will be heard here sounds of rejoicing and celebration, sounds of bridegrooms and brides, sounds of people who say, "Give thanks to Yahweh of hosts, for he is good, and his covenant faithfulness is unending." Bring an offering of thanksgiving to my house, for I will restore the fortunes of the land as in the beginning,' says Yahweh.

translationWords:

- desolate, desolation
- beast
- Jerusalem
- rejoice
- bridegroom
- bride
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- good, goodness
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- sacrifice, offering
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- restore, restoration

translationNotes:

- **There is neither man nor beast in the cities of Judah, and the streets of Jerusalem are uninhabited, with neither man nor beast** - These two lines share similar meanings and emphasize that Judah has become desolate. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **my house** - the temple in Jerusalem (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **fortunes** - AT: “prosperity”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 33:12-13

UDB:

¹² This land is now desolate. There are no people or animals living here. But I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, say this: 'In this land there will again be pastures where shepherds will lead their sheep ¹³ Shepherds will again count their sheep as the sheep walk by, outside the towns in the hill country, in the western foothills, in the southern Judean wilderness, in the land where the descendants of Benjamin live, around Jerusalem, and outside all the other towns in Judah.' That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.

ULB:

¹² Yahweh of hosts says this: 'In this desolate place, where now there is neither man nor beast, there will again be in all its cities a grazing place for shepherds who lead their flocks to lie down. ¹³ In the cities in the hill country, the lowlands, and the Negev—in the land of Benjamin and all around Jerusalem, and in the cities of Judah—the flocks will again pass under the hands of the ones counting them,' says Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [Negev](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

translationNotes:

- **grazing place** - AT: "fields to feed their flocks"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 33:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Listen to this! I, Yahweh, say that there will be a time when I will do for the people of Israel and Judah all the good things that I promised to do for them.

¹⁵ At that time I will appoint a righteous man who will be a descendant of King David.

Throughout the land, he will do what is just and right.

¹⁶ At that time, the people of Judah will be rescued from their enemies, and the people of Jerusalem will be safe.

And people will say that the name of the city is ‘Yahweh is the one who does right for us.’

ULB:

¹⁴ ‘Look! Days are coming—this is Yahweh’s declaration—when I will do what I have promised for the house of Israel and the house of Judah. ¹⁵ In those days and in that time I will make a righteous branch to grow for David, and he will carry out justice and righteousness in the land. ¹⁶ In those days Judah will be saved, and Jerusalem will live in security, for this is what she will be called, “Yahweh is our righteousness.”’

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- promise
- house
- kingdom of Israel
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- righteous, righteousness
- David
- just, justice, justly
- save, safe
- Jerusalem
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

- **In those days and in that time** - The phrase “in that time” means the same thing as, and intensifies the phrase “In those days.” AT: “In those very days” or “At that very time.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **righteous branch to grow for David** - righteous male descendant of David. AT: “a righteous man will come from the line of David like a branch grows from a tree.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the land** - the nation of Israel (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 33:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ And this is also what I, Yahweh, say: 'There will be descendants of King David ruling Israel forever. ¹⁸ And there will always be priests who are descendants of Levi who stand in front of me and offer sacrifices that will be completely burned on the altar and who will burn food offerings and other sacrifices.'

ULB:

¹⁷ For Yahweh says this: 'A man from David's line will never be lacking to sit on the throne of the house of Israel, ¹⁸ nor will a man from the Levitical priests be lacking before me to raise burnt offerings, to burn food offerings, and to perform grain offerings all the time.'

translationWords:

- [throne](#)
- [house](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **A man from David's line** - AT: "A male descendant of King David"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 33:19-22

UDB:

¹⁹ Then Yahweh gave Jeremiah this message: ²⁰ "This is what I, Yahweh, say: 'You certainly cannot annul my promise to cause nighttime to follow daytime each day. ²¹ Similarly, you cannot annul the promise that I made with King David, who served me well, that there will always be descendants of his who will rule Judah. The same is true for my agreement with the descendants of Levi who are priests who do work for me. ²² No one can count the stars in the sky, and no one can count the grains of sand at the seashore. Similarly, I will cause there to be a huge number of descendants of David and descendants of Levi who will work for me.'"

ULB:

¹⁹ The word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah and said, ²⁰ "Yahweh says this: 'If you can break my covenant with day and night so that there will no longer be day or night at their proper times, ²¹ then you will be able to break my covenant with David my servant, so that he will no longer have a son to sit on his throne, and my covenant with the Levitical priests, my servants. ²² As the hosts of heaven cannot be counted, and as the sand of the seashores cannot be measured, it is like that I will increase the descendants of David my servant and the Levites who serve me.'"

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- covenant
- servant, slave, slavery
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- descendant, descended from
- serve, service

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in 1:2. (See: **Idiom**)
- **my covenant with day and night ... my covenant with David my servant** - Yahweh compares his covenant with David to that of day and night. Since man can not change day and night, man can not change God's covenant with David.
- **to sit on his throne** - "to rule the kingdom given to him", (See: **Metonymy**)
- **As the hosts of heaven cannot be counted, and as the sand of the seashores cannot be measured, it is like that I will increase the descendants of David my servant and the Levites who serve me** - These two statements are saying essentially the same thing and used together for emphasis. AT: "As no one can count the stars in the sky and sand on the seashore, in the same way no one will be able to count the descendants of David and Levi who serve Yahweh" (See: **Parallelism** and **Hyperbole**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 33:23-24

UDB:

²³ Yahweh gave another message to me. He said, ²⁴ "Surely you know that some people are saying, 'Yahweh chose two groups, the people of Judah and the people of Israel, and later abandoned them.' The people who are saying this are despising my people; they are saying that Israel no longer deserves to be considered a nation.

ULB:

²³ The word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah and said, ²⁴ "Have you not considered what this people has declared when they said, 'The two clans that Yahweh chose, now he has rejected them'? In this way they despise my people, saying that they are no longer a nation in their sight.

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [clan](#)
- [chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect](#)
- [reject](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [nation](#)

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **Have you not considered what this people has declared when they said, 'The two clans that Yahweh chose, now he has rejected them'?** - This question is asked for emphasis. AT: "You should have noticed that people are saying that I rejected the two clans I have chosen." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 33:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ But this is what I say: 'I will not reject my people any quicker than I will change my laws that control the day and the night, the sky and the earth. ²⁶ Similarly, I will never abandon the descendants of David or the other descendants of Jacob, and I will always allow descendants of David to rule the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. I will bring them back to their land, and I will act mercifully toward them.'

ULB:

²⁵ I, Yahweh, say this, 'If I have not established the covenant of day and night, and if I have not fixed the laws of heaven and earth, ²⁶ then I will reject the descendants of Jacob and David my servant, and not bring from them a person to rule over the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. For I will restore their fortunes and show mercy to them.'

translationWords:

- [earth, earthly](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [David](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 33 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 34 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Law of Moses

According to the law of Moses, the people were required to free their indebted slaves after a period of time. The people tried to do this before they changed their mind. This was sinful and against the law. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Actions with cultural meaning

When the people of Israel made a sacred promise to God, they cut a calf in two and passed between its parts. It was a very serious sin not to do what one had promised. (See: [promise](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 34:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 34:1-3

UDB:

¹ King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon came with the armies of all the kingdoms that he ruled, and they fought against Jerusalem and the other towns in Judah. At that time, Yahweh gave me this message: ² “Go to Zedekiah the King of Judah, and say to him, ‘This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: ’I am about to enable the army of the king of Babylon to capture this city, and they will burn it down. ³ You will not escape from them; they will capture you and take you to the king of Babylon. You will meet him and speak with him face to face; then they will take you to Babylon.”

ULB:

34 ¹ This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh. This word came when Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and all of his army, together with all the kingdoms of the earth, the domains under his power, and all their people were waging war against Jerusalem and all of her cities. This word said, ² ‘Yahweh, God of Israel, says this: Go and speak to Zedekiah king of Judah and say to him, ‘Yahweh says this: Look, I am about to give this city into the hand of the king of Babylon. He will burn it. ³ You will not escape from his hand, for you will certainly be seized and given into his hand. Your eyes will look at the eyes of the king of Babylon; he will speak directly to you as you go to Babylon.’

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Jeremiah
- Yahweh
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- kingdom
- power, powers
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Jerusalem
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Zedekiah
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- seize
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh** - AT: “Yahweh spoke his word to” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **waging war** - AT: “fighting against”
- **and all of her cities** - This refers to all the surrounding towns around Jerusalem. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **to give this city** - Translate this the same way you translated in [Jeremiah 32:28](#)
- **into the hand of the king of Babylon** - Here “hand” refers to control. AT: into the control of the king of Babylon.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **You will not escape from his hand** - “You will not escape from his control”
- **Your eyes will look at the eyes of the king of Babylon; he will speak directly to you as you go to Babylon** - Both of these expressions mean the same thing, that he will see the king of Babylon in person. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 34:4-5

UDB:

⁴ But King Zedekiah, listen to what Yahweh has promised: "You will not be killed in a battle; ⁵ you will die peacefully. When you die, people will burn incense to honor you just as they did for your ancestors who were kings before you became king. They will mourn for you, calling out, 'We are very sad that our king is dead!' I, Yahweh, promise that will happen.""

ULB:

⁴ Listen to the word of Yahweh, Zedekiah king of Judah! Yahweh says this concerning you, 'You will not die by the sword. ⁵ You will die in peace. As in the funeral burning of your ancestors, the kings who were before you, they will burn your body. They will say, "Woe, master!" They will lament for you. Now I have spoken—this is Yahweh's declaration.'

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- sword
- peace, peaceful
- body
- woe
- lord, master, sir
- lament, lamentation
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **You will not die by the sword. You will die in peace** - AT: "You will not die in battle, but will die peacefully. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 34:6-7

UDB:

⁶ So I took that message to King Zedekiah. ⁷ At that time the army of Babylonia had surrounded Jerusalem and Lachish and Azekah. Those three cities were the only three cities in Judah that had high walls around them that still had not been captured.

ULB:

⁶ So Jeremiah the prophet proclaimed to Zedekiah king of Judah all these words in Jerusalem. ⁷ The army of the king of Babylon made war against Jerusalem and all the remaining cities of Judah: Lachish and Azekah. These cities of Judah remained as fortified cities.

translationWords:

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)

translationNotes:

- **Lachish and Azekah** - These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **These cities of Judah remained as fortified cities** - AT: “the only fortified cities of Judah not yet captured”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 34:8-9

UDB:

⁸ King Zedekiah had decreed that the people must free their slaves. ⁹ He decreed that the people must free their Hebrew slaves, both the men slaves and the women slaves. No one would be allowed to force a fellow Jew to continue to be his slave.

ULB:

⁸ This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh after King Zedekiah had made a covenant with all the people in Jerusalem, to proclaim freedom to them— ⁹ that each man must free his Hebrew servants, both male and female. No one is to make a slave of a Jew, who is his brother.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [free, freedom, liberty](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

translationNotes:

- **This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh** - After this phrase, the reader will of course expect to see the content of the message from Yahweh. However, the actual message does not begin until [39:12](#). For this reason, the translator may choose to omit this phrase here, and to follow the example of the UDB.
- **word** - “message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 34:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ The officials and the rest of the people had obeyed what the king decreed, ¹¹ but later they changed their minds. They forced the men and women whom they had freed to become their slaves again.

ULB:

¹⁰ So all the leaders and people entered into the covenant that each person would free his male and female servants so that they would not be enslaved any longer. They obeyed and set them free. ¹¹ But after this they changed their minds. They brought back the servants whom they had freed. They forced them to become slaves again.

translationWords:

- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [mind](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 34:12-14

UDB:

¹² So Yahweh gave me this message to tell to them: ¹³ "I, Yahweh, the God of Israel, made an agreement with your ancestors long ago, when I rescued them from being slaves in Egypt. ¹⁴ I told them that they must free all their Hebrew slaves after the slaves had worked for them for six years. But your ancestors did not pay any attention to what I said.

ULB:

¹² So the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah and said, ¹³ "Yahweh, God of Israel, says this, 'I myself made a covenant with your ancestors on the day that I brought them out from the land of Egypt, out from the house of slavery. That was when I said, ¹⁴ "At the end of every seven years, each man must send away his brother, his fellow Hebrew who had sold himself to you and served you for six years. Send him away in freedom." But your ancestors did not listen to me and or pay attention.

translationWords:

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Hebrew](#)

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **each man must send away his brother, his fellow Hebrew who had sold himself to you and served you** - AT: "each of you must free any fellow Hebrews who sold themselves to you and have been your slaves"
- **Send him away in freedom** - AT: "You must let them be free from serving you"
- **did not listen to me and or pay attention** - Both these phrase are saying basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 34:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Recently, you obeyed my command and stopped doing what was wrong and did what was right. You made a solemn agreement at my temple that you would free your slaves, and then you freed them. ¹⁶ But now you have disregarded what you solemnly promised, and you have shown contempt for what I said by taking back the women and men whom you had freed and said they could live wherever they wanted to. Now you have forced them to be your slaves again.

ULB:

¹⁵ Now you yourselves repented and began to do what is right in my eyes. You proclaimed freedom, each man to his neighbor, and you made a covenant before me in the house that is called by my name. ¹⁶ But then you turned and polluted my name; you caused each man to bring back his male and female servants, the ones whom you had sent out to go where they wished. You forced them to become your servants again.'

translationWords:

- [repent, repentance](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)

translationNotes:

- **right in my eyes** - "correct" or "acceptable" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **turned and polluted my name** - AT: "stopped doing what was right and did evil things that have made people think that I am evil" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 34:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh, say: 'Because you have not obeyed me by freeing your fellow Israelites, I will free you to be destroyed by the swords of your enemies and by famines and diseases. All the nations of the earth will be horrified because of what happens to you. **18-19** Because you have disregarded what I said in my agreement with you, I will do to you just what you did to the calves that you cut in half to show that you would surely do what you solemnly promised that you would do. I will enable your enemies to cut you into pieces, you officials of Judah and you officials of Jerusalem, and you officials in the palace, and you priests and all you common people. I will do that because you have ignored the fact that you had solemnly promised to free your slaves.

ULB:

¹⁷ Therefore Yahweh says this, 'You yourselves have not listened to me. You should have proclaimed freedom, every one of you, to your brothers and fellow Israelites. So look! I am about to proclaim freedom to you—this is Yahweh's declaration—freedom for the sword, the plague, and famine, for I am going to make you a horrible thing in the sight of every kingdom on earth. ¹⁸ Then I will deal with the people who have broken my covenant, who did not keep the words of the covenant that they established before me when they cut a bull in two and walked between its parts, ¹⁹ and then the leaders of Judah and Jerusalem, the eunuchs and the priests, and all the people of the land walked between the parts of the bull.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- brother
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- sword
- plague
- famine
- earth, earthly
- transgress, transgression
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- eunuch
- priest, priesthood

translationNotes:

- **So look! I am about to proclaim freedom to you ... freedom for the sword, the plague, and famine** - AT: "So because you have not obeyed me, I will allow you to be punished by the sword, the plague, and famine" (See: **Irony**)

- **So look!** - “Listen!” or “Pay attention to the important thing I am going to tell you!”
- **established before me** - AT: “agreed to with me”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 34:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ I will enable your enemies to capture you, and they will kill you. And your bodies will be food for vultures and wild animals.

²¹ I will enable the army of the king of Babylon to capture King Zedekiah and his officials. Although the king of Babylon and his army have left Jerusalem for a short time, ²² I will summon them back again. This time, they will fight against this city and capture it and burn it down. I will make sure that all the towns in Judah are destroyed, with the result that no one will live there anymore.”

ULB:

²⁰ I will give them into the hand of their enemies and into the hand of those who are seeking their lives. Their bodies will be food for the birds of the skies and the beasts on the earth. ²¹ So I will give Zedekiah king of Judah and his leaders into the hand of their enemies and into the hand of those who are seeking their life, and into the hand of the army of the king of Babylon that has risen up against you. ²² Look, I am about to give a command—this is Yahweh’s declaration—and will bring them back to this city to wage war against it and take it, and to burn it. For I will turn the cities of Judah into ruined places in which there will be no inhabitants.”

translationWords:

- hand, right hand, to hand over
- life, live, living, alive
- body
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- beast
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- command, to command, commandment
- ruin, ruins

translationNotes:

- **seeking their lives** - AT: “seeking to kill them” (See: **Euphemism**)
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in **1:8**.
- **risen up** - “come to fight”
- **and will bring them back** - Here “them” refers to the armies of the nation of Babylon. AT: “and will bring the Babylonian army back”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 34 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 35 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The Rechabites

The action of the Rechabites was supposed to contrast with the actions of the Jews. The Rechabites obeyed their ancestors' commands while living in Canaan, while Judah did not obey Yahweh's commands. Because of this Yahweh preserves their people group. It may be helpful to know the Rechabites' history found in the book of Judges.

Links:

- [Jeremiah 35:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 35:1-2

UDB:

¹ Several years earlier, when Jehoiakim son of Josiah was the king of Judah, Yahweh gave me this message: ² “Go to the place where families of the Rechab clan live. Invite them to my temple. When they arrive, take them into one of the inside rooms and offer them some wine.”

ULB:

35 ¹ This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh in the days of Jehoiakim son of Josiah king of Judah, and he said, ² “Go to the clan of the Rechabites and speak with them. Then bring them to my house, into one of the rooms there and give them wine to drink.”

translationWords:

- word
- Jeremiah
- Yahweh
- Jehoiakim
- Josiah
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- clan
- wine, wineskin, new wine

translationNotes:

- **Rechabites** - This is a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **my house** - This phrase refers to the temple of Yahweh. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 35:3-4

UDB:

³ So I went to see Jaazaniah and all his brothers and sons who represented the Rechab clan. Jaazaniah was a son of another man named Jeremiah and grandson of Habazziniah. ⁴ I took them to the temple, and we went into the room where the sons of Igdaliah's son Hanan, who was a prophet, stayed. That room was next to the room that was used by the men who were in charge of the entrances to the temple. It was above the room that belonged to Maaseiah, who was the temple gatekeeper and the son of Shallum.

ULB:

³ So I took Jaazaniah son of Jeremiah son of Habazziniah and his brothers, all his sons, and all the clan of the Rechabites. ⁴ I took them to the house of Yahweh, into the rooms of the sons of Hanan son of Igdaliah, the man of God. These rooms were beside the room of the leaders which was above the room of Maaseiah son of Shallum, the gatekeeper.

translationWords:

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jaazaniah ... Habazziniah ... Hanan ... Igdaliah ... Maaseiah ... Shallum** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 35:5-7

UDB:

⁵ I set jugs of wine and some cups in front of them and urged them to drink some, ⁶ but they refused. They said, "We do not drink wine, because our ancestor Jonadab son of Rechab, commanded us, saying 'You and your descendants must never drink wine. ⁷ And you must not build houses or plant vineyards or other crops. Instead, you must always live in tents. If you obey those commands, you all will live for many years in this land.'

ULB:

⁵ Then I placed bowls and cups full of wine in front of the Rechabites and said to them, "Drink some wine." ⁶ But they said, "We will not drink any wine, for our ancestor, Jonadab son of Rechab, commanded us, 'Do not drink any wine, neither you nor your descendants, forever. ⁷ Also, do not build any houses, sow any seeds, or plant any vineyards; this is not for you. For you must live in tents all your days, so that you might live many days in the land where you are staying as foreigners.'

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [forever](#)
- [sow, sower, plant](#)
- [seed](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [tent](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)

translationNotes:

- **Rechabites** - See how you translated this in [35:2](#).
- **Jonadab ... Rechab** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **live many days in the land** - "Days" refers to the span of time. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 35:8-11**UDB:**

⁸ So we have obeyed him in all those matters. We have never drunk wine. Our wives and our sons and our daughters have also never drunk wine. ⁹ We have not built houses or planted vineyards or other crops or worked in fields. ¹⁰ We have lived in tents. We have obeyed all the commands that Jonadab, our ancestor, gave us. ¹¹ But when the army of King Nebuchadnezzar attacked this country, we said, ‘We must go to Jerusalem to escape from the armies of Babylonia and Aram.’ So, we came to Jerusalem and we are living here.”

ULB:

⁸ We have obeyed the voice of Jonadab son of Rechab, our ancestor, in all that he commanded us, to never drink wine all of our days, we, our wives, our sons, and our daughters. ⁹ We will never build houses to live in, and there will be no vineyard, field, or seed in our possession. ¹⁰ We have lived in tents and we have obeyed and done all that Jonadab our ancestor commanded us. ¹¹ But when Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon attacked the land, we said, ‘Come, we must go to Jerusalem to escape from the Chaldean and Aramean armies.’ So we are living in Jerusalem.”

translationWords:

- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [voice](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [seed](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)

translationNotes:

- **the voice of Jonadab** - The word “voice” here refers to “command.” AT: “the command of Jonadab” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **all of our days** - “Days” refers to the span of time. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 35 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 35 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 35:12-14

UDB:

¹² Then Yahweh gave this message to me: ¹³ “This is what I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, say: ‘Go and tell this to the people in Jerusalem and in other places in Judah: “Why do you not listen to me or learn something about how to obey me? ¹⁴ The Rechab clan still do not drink wine, because their ancestor Jonadab told them to not do that. In contrast, I have spoken to you many times, but you ignored me and refused to obey me.

ULB:

¹² Then the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah and said, ¹³ “Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this, ‘Go and say to the men of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, “Will you not receive correction and listen to my words? —this is Yahweh’s declaration. ¹⁴ The words of Jonadab son of Rechab that he gave to his sons as a command, not to drink any wine, have been observed to this very day. They have obeyed their ancestor’s command. But as for me, I myself have been making persistent proclamations to you, but you do not listen to me.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Judah
- receive
- declare, declaration
- proclaim, proclamation

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#). “Yahweh spoke his word to” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Will you not receive correction and listen to my words?** - This question is asked to rebuke Israel. AT: “You will not receive correction and listen to my words.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Jonadab ... Rechab** - These are the name of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **The words of Jonadab son of Rechab that he gave to his sons as a command, not to drink any wine, have been observed** - AT: “The sons of Jonadab, son of Rechab, observed their father’s command to not drink wine.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 35:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Many times I sent prophets to you. They told you, ‘Turn away from your wicked behavior, and do things that you should do. Stop worshiping other gods, in order that you will be able to live peacefully in this land that I gave to you and your ancestors.’ But you would not pay attention to what I said or obey me. ¹⁶ The descendants of Jonadab have obeyed their ancestor, but you have refused to pay attention to what I told you.

ULB:

¹⁵ I sent out to you all my servants, the prophets. I was persistent in sending them to say, ‘Let each person turn from his wicked way and do good deeds; let no one walk any longer walk after other gods and worship them. Instead, come back to the land that I gave to you and your ancestors.’ Yet you will not listen to me or pay attention to me. ¹⁶ For the descendants of Jonadab son of Rechab have observed the commands of their ancestor that he gave them, but this people refuses to listen to me.”

translationWords:

- send, send out, sent
- servant, slave, slavery
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- turn, turn away, turn back
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- walk
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- worship

translationNotes:

- **turn from his wicked way and do good deeds** - These two phrases are saying similar things and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **walk after other gods and worship them** - These two phrases are saying similar things and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **you will not listen to me or pay attention to me** - These two phrases are saying similar things and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 35:17

UDB:

¹⁷ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, say: ‘You have refused to listen to me and you did not answer when I called you. Therefore, I will cause the people in Jerusalem and other places in Judah to experience all the disasters that I said that I would cause to happen.’“”

ULB:

¹⁷ So Yahweh, God of hosts and God of Israel, says this, ‘Look, all the disasters that I have proclaimed against them—I am about to bring these disasters on Judah and on all the inhabitants of Jerusalem, because I have make proclamations to them, but they refused to listen. I called to them, but they did not answer.’”

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [call, calling, called, call out](#)

translationNotes:

- **Look** - This word tells us to pay special attention to what follows.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 35:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Then Jeremiah turned to the Rechab clan and said, "This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says: 'You have obeyed what your ancestor Jonadab told you. You have obeyed all his instructions. ¹⁹ Therefore, this is what Yahweh says: "There will always be descendants of Jonadab who will do work for me.'"

ULB:

¹⁸ Jeremiah said to the family of the Rechabites, "Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: You have listened to the commands of Jonadab your ancestor and have kept them all—you have obeyed all that he commanded you to do— ¹⁹ so Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this, "There will always be someone descended from Jonadab son of Rechab to serve me."

translationWords:

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [family](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [serve, service](#)

translationNotes:

- **Rechabites** - This is the name of the people group. See how you translated this in [35:2](#).
- **Jonadab ... Rechab** - These are the names of men. See how you translated these in [35:5](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 35 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Opposition to Jeremiah

Jeremiah wrote God's prophecies on a scroll but the king burned it. It is possible that this action was intended to be understood as representing the definitiveness of these prophecies. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 36:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 36:1-3

UDB:

¹ When Jehoiakim son of Josiah had been the king of Judah for almost four years, Yahweh gave this message to me: ² "Get a scroll, and write on it the messages that I have given to you regarding Israel, Judah, and the other nations. Write all of the messages, starting from the time that I gave you the first message, when Josiah was the king, up until now. ³ When the people of Judah hear again about all the disasters that I plan to cause them to experience, perhaps each one of them will repent. If they do that, I will be able to forgive them for the wrong things that they have done."

ULB:

36 ¹ It came about in the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah king of Judah, that this word came to Jeremiah from Yahweh, and he said, ² "Take a scroll for yourself and write on it all the words that I have told you concerning Israel and Judah, and every nation. Do this for everything I have told from the days of Josiah until this very day. ³ Perhaps the people of Judah will listen to all the disasters that I intend to bring on them. Perhaps everyone will turn away from his wicked path, so I can forgive their iniquity and their sin."

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- Jehoiakim
- Josiah
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Jeremiah
- Yahweh
- scroll
- word
- kingdom of Israel
- nation
- biblical time: day
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- turn, turn away, turn back
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- forgive, forgiveness
- iniquity
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **It came about** - “It happened.” This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **in the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah king of Judah** - See how you translated this in [25:1](#). (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **that this word** - The phrase “this word” refers to the message that follows.
- **every nation** - “all of the nations”
- **I have told from** - “I have told you from”
- **from the days of Josiah until this very day** - AT: “from the time of Josiah until today” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Perhaps the people of Judah** - “Maybe the people of Judah”
- **I intend to bring on them** - “I am planning to do to them”
- **Perhaps everyone** - “So that each person”
- **from his wicked path** - See how you translated this in [18:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36:4-6

UDB:

⁴ So Jeremiah summoned Baruch son of Neraiah. Then, as Jeremiah dictated to him all the messages that Yahweh had spoken to him, he wrote them on a scroll. ⁵ Then Jeremiah said to him, "I am not allowed to leave here and go to the temple. ⁶ So, you go to the temple on the next day when the people are fasting, and read to them the messages from Yahweh that you wrote while I dictated them to you. Read them aloud to all the people who are there, including the people of Judah who come there from their towns.

ULB:

⁴ Then Jeremiah called Baruch son of Neriah, and Baruch wrote in a scroll, at Jeremiah's dictation, all the words of Yahweh spoken to him. ⁵ Next Jeremiah gave a command to Baruch. He said, "I am in prison and cannot go to Yahweh's house. ⁶ So you must go and read from the scroll that you wrote at my dictation. On the day of the fast, you must read Yahweh's words in the hearing of the people in his house, and also in the hearing of all of Judah who have come from their cities. Proclaim these words to them.

translationWords:

- Jeremiah
- call, calling, called, call out
- Baruch
- scroll
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- command, to command, commandment
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- biblical time: day
- fast
- proclaim, proclamation

translationNotes:

- **Baruch wrote in a scroll, at Jeremiah's dictation, all the words of Yahweh spoken to him** - "while Jeremiah was speaking, Baruch wrote in a scroll all of the words of Yahweh which Yahweh had spoken to Jeremiah"
- **read from the scroll** - "read out loud from the scroll" or "proclaim from the scroll"
- **at my dictation** - "according to what I said"
- **must read** - "must read out loud" or "must proclaim"

- **in the hearing of the people in his house** - “so that the people in Yahweh’s house can hear them”
- **in the hearing of all of Judah who have come from their cities** - “so all the people of Judah who have come from their cities can hear them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Perhaps they will turn from their evil behavior and request Yahweh to act mercifully toward them. They must do that, because Yahweh is very angry with them and has threatened to punish them severely.”

⁸ Baruch did what Jeremiah told him to do. He went to the temple and read to the people all those messages from Yahweh.

ULB:

⁷ Perhaps their pleas for mercy will come before Yahweh. Perhaps each person will turn from his wicked way, since the wrath and fury that Yahweh has proclaimed against this people are severe.”

⁸ So Baruch son of Neriah did everything that Jeremiah the prophet had commanded him to do. He read aloud the words of Yahweh in house of Yahweh.

translationWords:

- plead, pleading, plea
- mercy, merciful
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- wrath, fury
- proclaim, proclamation
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Baruch
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- house of God, Yahweh's house

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues to give instructions to Baruch.
- **Perhaps** - “Maybe”
- **their pleas for mercy** - The word “their” refers to the people in the house of Yahweh and the people of Judah who had come to the house of Yahweh from their cities.
- **their pleas for mercy will come before Yahweh** - AT: “Yahweh will pay attention to their pleas for mercy.” (See: **Idiom**)
- **Perhaps each person will turn from his wicked way** - “Maybe they will repent; each person from his wicked way”

- **from his wicked way** - See how you translated “from his wicked path” in [18:11](#).
- **the wrath and fury** - “the anger and rage”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ He did it on the ninth month, on a day when their leaders had proclaimed that all the people in Jerusalem, and the people who had come there from other towns in Judah, should fast to please Yahweh. This happened when Jehoiakim had been king for almost five years. ¹⁰ Baruch read to all the people the messages that he had written on the scroll. He read them while he was in the temple, in the room where Gemariah stayed. He was the son of Shaphan, who had previously been the king's secretary. That room was close to the upper courtyard of the temple, near the entrance to the temple that is called the New Gate.

ULB:

⁹ It came about in the fifth year and ninth month of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah, that all the people in Jerusalem and the people who came to Jerusalem from the cities of Judah proclaimed a fast in honor of Yahweh. ¹⁰ Baruch read aloud Jeremiah's words in the house of Yahweh, from the room of Gemariah son of Shaphan the scribe, in the upper courtyard, by the gate of the entrance to the house of Yahweh. He did this in the hearing of all the people.

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- Jehoiakim
- Josiah
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- proclaim, proclamation
- fast
- honor, to honor
- Yahweh
- Baruch
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- courtyard, court
- gate, gate bar

translationNotes:

- **It came about** - See how you translated this in **36:1**.

- **in the fifth year and ninth month** - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part November and the first part December on Western calendars. AT: “in the ninth month of the fifth year.” (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah** - See how you translated this in [25:1](#).
- **proclaimed a fast** - “called for everyone to participate in a fast”
- **Gemariah son of Shaphan** - This is the name of a person. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the scribe** - “who was a scribe”
- **by the gate of the entrance to the house of Yahweh** - “in the entrance of the new gate of the house of Yahweh”
- **He did this** - He read aloud Jeremiah’s words.
- **in the hearing of** - See how you translated “in the ears of Jerusalem” in [2:2](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ When Micaiah son of Gemariah, and grandson of Shaphan, heard these messages from Yahweh, ¹² he went down to the secretary's room in the palace, where all the king's officials were meeting. Elishama the king's secretary was there. Delaiah son of Shemaiah, Elnathan son of Achbor, Gemariah, Zedekiah son of Hananiah, and all the other officials of the king were also there.

ULB:

¹¹ Now Micaiah son of Gemariah son of Shaphan heard all of Yahweh's words in the scroll. ¹² He went down to the house of the king, to the secretary's room. Look, all the officials were sitting there: Elishama the scribe, Delaiah son of Shemaiah, Elnathan son of Achbor, Gemariah son of Shaphan, and Zedekiah son of Hananiah, and all the officials.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [word](#)
- [scroll](#)
- [king](#)
- [scribe, expert in the Jewish law](#)

translationNotes:

- **Micaiah** - This is the name of a person. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Micaiah son of Gemariah son of Shaphan** - "Micaiah who was the son of Gemariah, who was the son of Shaphan"
- **to the secretary's room** - "to the room of the scribe"
- **Look** - The word "Look" here adds emphasis to what follows.
- **Elishama ... Delaiah** - These are names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Shemaiah** - See how you translated this name in [26:20](#).
- **Elnathan son of Achbor** - See how you translated this name in [26:22](#).
- **Gemariah son of Shaphan** - See how you translated this name in [36:10](#).
- **Zedekiah** - See how you translated this name in [1:3](#).
- **Hananiah** - See how you translated this name in [28:1](#).
- **and all the officials** - "and all of the other officials"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 36 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 36:13-15

UDB:

¹³ When Micaiah told them about the messages that Baruch had been reading to the people, ¹⁴ the officials sent Jehudi son of Nethaniah, and grandson of Shelemiah and great-grandson of Cushi, to tell Baruch to come and read the messages to them, also. So Baruch took the scroll and went to them. ¹⁵ They said to him, “Please sit down and read it to us.” So Baruch did what they requested.

ULB:

¹³ Then Micaiah reported to them all the words that he had heard that Baruch read aloud in the people’s hearing. ¹⁴ So all the officials sent Jehudi son of Nethaniah son of Shelemiah son of Cushi, to Baruch. Jehudi said to Baruch, “Take the scroll in your hand, the scroll from which you were reading in the people’s hearing and come.” So Baruch son of Neriah took the scroll in his hand and went to the officials. ¹⁵ Then they said to him, “Sit down and read this in our hearing.” So Baruch read the scroll.

translationWords:

- [report](#)
- [word](#)
- [Baruch](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [scroll](#)

translationNotes:

- **Micaiah** - See how you translated this name in [36:11](#).
- **reported to them** - The word “them” refers to officials in [36:12](#).
- **in the people’s hearing** - “so that the people could hear”
- **Jehudi ... Nethaniah ... Shelemiah ... Cushi** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **read the scroll** - “read the scroll aloud”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36:16-19**UDB:**

¹⁶ After they had heard all the messages, they were afraid. They looked at each other and then they said, “We must tell these messages to the king!” ¹⁷ Then they asked Baruch, “How did you get this scroll? Did Jeremiah dictate to you all the messages on this scroll?”

¹⁸ Baruch replied, “Yes, Jeremiah dictated them to me, and I wrote them with ink on this scroll.”

¹⁹ Then the officials told Baruch, “You and Jeremiah must both hide. Do not tell anyone where you are!”

ULB:

¹⁶ It happened that when they heard all these words, each man turned in fear to the one next to him and said to Baruch, “We must certainly report all of these words to the king.” ¹⁷ Then they asked Baruch, “Tell us, how did you come to write all these words at Jeremiah’s dictation?” ¹⁸ Baruch said to them, “He dictated all these words to me, and I wrote them in ink on this scroll.” ¹⁹ Then the officials said to Baruch, “Go, hide yourself, and Jeremiah, too. Do not let anyone know where you are.”

translationWords:

- word
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Baruch
- report
- king
- Jeremiah
- scroll
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **It happened that** - This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **when they heard** - The word “they” refers to the officials.
- **all these words** - the words that Baruch read aloud from the scroll
- **how did you come to write** - “how did you write”
- **at Jeremiah’s dictation** - See how you translated this in [36:4](#).
- **dictated** - Jeremiah spoke out loud so that Baruch could write down his words.
- **wrote them in ink** - “used ink to write them”

- **ink** - a dark dye that is used for writing
- **and Jeremiah, too** - AT: “and Jeremiah should hide himself too.” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **where you are** - The word “you” refers to Baruch and Jeremiah.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ They put the scroll in the room of Elishama, the king's secretary. Then they went to the king, who was in the courtyard, and reported to him everything that Baruch had read to them.

²¹ Then the king sent Jehudi to get the scroll. Jehudi brought it from Elishama's room and read it to the king, while all the king's officials were standing there. ²² It was in the cold season, and the king was in a part of the palace where he stayed when it was cold. He was sitting in front of a fire to keep warm.

ULB:

²⁰ Then they went to the king's court and reported these words to him. But first they deposited the scroll in the room of Elishama the secretary. ²¹ Then the king sent Jehudi to get the scroll. Jehudi took it from the room of Elishama the secretary. Then he read it aloud to the king and all the officials who were standing beside him. ²² Now the king was staying in the winter house in the ninth month, and a brazier was burning in front of him.

translationWords:

- king
- courtyard, court
- report
- word
- scroll
- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- send, send out, sent

translationNotes:

- **Then they** - The word "they" refers to the officials.
- **deposited the scroll in the room of Elishama** - "put the scroll safely in the room of Elishama"
- **Elishama the secretary** - See how you translated "Elishama the scribe" in [36:12](#).
- **these words** - the words of the scroll which Jeremiah had dictated to Baruch
- **Jehudi** - See how you translated this in [36:14](#).
- **in the ninth month** - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part November and the first part December on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **and a brazier was burning in front of him** - "and the brazier was in front of him with a blazing fire"

- a **brazier** - a fireplace that people can move

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36:23-24

UDB:

²³ Each time Jehudi finished reading three or four columns, the king cut off that section of the scroll with a knife and threw it into the fire. He did that, section by section, until the entire scroll was burned up. ²⁴ Neither the king nor his officials showed that they were afraid that God would punish them. They did not tear their clothes to show that they were sorry for what they had done.

ULB:

²³ It happened that as Jehudi read three or four columns, the king would cut it off with a knife and throw it into the fire in the brazier until all of the scroll was destroyed. ²⁴ But neither the king nor any of his servants who heard all these words were frightened, nor did they tear their clothes.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [fire](#)
- [scroll](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [word](#)

translationNotes:

- **It happened that** - This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **Jehudi** - See how you translated this in [36:14](#).
- **columns** - these are columns of words on the scroll
- **would cut it off** - “would cut that part off”
- **with a knife** - “using a scribe’s knife” or “using the kind of knife that scribes use”
- **brazier** - See how you translated this in [36:22](#).
- **until all of the scroll was destroyed** - “until the scroll was completely gone”
- **all these words** - the words from the scroll that Baruch wrote as Jeremiah dictated
- **nor did they tear their clothes** - People tore their cloths when they were extremely sad. AT: “nor did they mourn by tearing their clothes.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ Elnathan, Delaiah, and Gemariah pleaded with the king not to burn the scroll, but he did not pay any attention. ²⁶ Then the king commanded his son Jerahmeel, Seraiah son of Azriel, and Shelemiah son of Abdeel to arrest Baruch and me. But they were unable to do that because Yahweh had hidden us.

ULB:

²⁵ Elnathan, Delaiah, and Gemariah had even urged the king not to burn the scroll, but he did not listen to them. ²⁶ Then the king commanded Jerahmeel, a relative, Seraiah son of Azriel, and Shelemiah son of Abdeel to arrest Baruch the scribe and Jeremiah the prophet, but Yahweh had hidden them.

translationWords:

- plead, pleading, plea
- king
- scroll
- command, to command, commandment
- Baruch
- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **Elnathan, Delaiah, and Gemariah** - See how you translated these names in [36:12](#).
- **urged the king** - “pleaded with the king” or “entreated the king”
- **Jerahmeel ... Seraiah ... Azriel ... Shelemiah ... Abdeel** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **a relative** - “a relative of the king”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36:27-29

UDB:

²⁷ After the king had burned the scroll on which were written the messages that I had dictated to Baruch, Yahweh said this to me: ²⁸ "Get another scroll, and tell Baruch to write everything again, the same messages that he had written on the scroll that King Jehoiakim burned. ²⁹ Then go to the king and say to him, 'Yahweh says this: You burned the scroll because you did not like what was written on it, that the king of Babylon would surely come with his army and destroy this land and get rid of all the people and the animals.

ULB:

²⁷ Then the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah after the king had burned the scroll and the words that Baruch had written at Jeremiah's dictation, and he said, ²⁸ "Go back, take another scroll for yourself, and write in it all the words that were on the original scroll, the one that Jehoiakim king of Judah burned. ²⁹ Then you must say this to Jehoiakim king of Judah: 'You burned that scroll, saying, "Why have you written on it, "The king of Babylon will certainly come and destroy this land, for he will destroy both man and beast in it?"' "

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Jeremiah
- king
- scroll
- word
- Baruch
- Jehoiakim
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Babylon, Babylonian
- beast

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **at Jeremiah's dictation** - See how you translated this in [36:4](#).
- **Go back, take another scroll for yourself** - "Take another scroll for yourself again"
- **the original scroll** - "the first scroll"
- **Why have you written on it** - Jehoiakim uses this question to emphasize that Jeremiah should not have written that the king of Babylon would come and attack. AT: "You should not have written" or "You were wrong to write." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **for he will destroy** - "and he will destroy"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ Now this is what I, Yahweh, say about you, Jehoiakim: None of your descendants will rule this kingdom. Your corpse will be thrown out on the ground and not buried; it will be under the hot sun during the days and struck by frost during the nights. ³¹ I will punish you and your family and your officials for their sins. And I will cause the people of Jerusalem and the people of the other towns in Judah to experience all the disasters that I promised, because you all would not pay attention to what I said;”

ULB:

³⁰ Therefore Yahweh says this concerning you, Jehoiakim king of Judah: ”No descendant of yours will ever sit on the throne of David. As for you, your corpse will be thrown out into the heat of day and the frost of night. ³¹ For I will punish you, your descendants, and your servants for the iniquity of you all. I will bring on you, on all the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and on every person in Judah all the disasters with which I have threatened you with, but to which you paid no attention.”

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- Jehoiakim
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- descendant, descended from
- throne
- David
- punish, punishment
- iniquity
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **will ever sit on the throne of David** - AT: “will ever rule as the heir of David.” See how you translated “sits on the throne of David” in **29:16**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **your corpse will be thrown out** - AT: “people will throw your dead body outside.” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **your corpse** - “your dead body”
- **into the heat of day** - “so that it is exposed to the dry heat of the daytime”
- **of you all** - “of all of you”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 36:32

UDB:

³² So Jeremiah took another scroll, and again he dictated the messages to Baruch. He wrote everything that had been written on the other scroll, the one that King Jehoiakim had burned in the fire. But this time, Jeremiah added more messages.

ULB:

³² So Jeremiah took another scroll and gave it to Baruch son of Neriah the scribe. Baruch wrote on it at Jeremiah's dictation all the words that had been in the scroll burned by Jehoiakim king of Judah. Furthermore, many other similar words were added to this scroll.

translationWords:

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [scroll](#)
- [Baruch](#)
- [scribe, expert in the Jewish law](#)
- [word](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [king](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **at Jeremiah's dictation** - See how you translated this in [36:4](#).
- **burned by Jehoiakim king of Judah** - "which Jehoiakim king of Judah had burned in the fire"
- **Furthermore, many other similar words were added to this scroll** - AT: "Furthermore, Jeremiah and Baruch added many more words which were similar to the words that had been in the first scroll." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 36 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 37 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Ironic situation

Jeremiah was thrown into prison and beaten for prophesying word of God. Then the king asked him, “Is there any word from Yahweh?” This is a type of irony. The king simply did not agree with God’s original word. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 37:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 37:1-2**UDB:**

¹ After Jehoiakim died, his son Jehoiachin became king for only three months, after which King Josiah's son Zedekiah became the king of Judah. Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, appointed him to be the new king. ² But King Zedekiah and his palace officials and the other people in the land paid no attention to the messages that Yahweh gave me.

ULB:

37 ¹ Now Zedekiah son of Josiah reigned as king instead of Jehoiachin son of Jehoiakim. Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had made Zedekiah king over the land of Judah. ² But Zedekiah, his servants, and the people of the land did not listen to the words of Yahweh that he proclaimed by the hand of Jeremiah the prophet.

translationWords:

- Zedekiah
- Josiah
- reign
- king
- Jehoiachin
- Jehoiakim
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- servant, slave, slavery
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- proclaim, proclamation
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **Jehoiachin** - The Hebrew text has "Coniah," which is a variation of the name "Jehoiachin." Many modern versions have "Jehoiachin" in order to make it clear that the same king is being referred to.
- **of the land** - "of the land of Judah"
- **he proclaimed** - "Yahweh proclaimed"
- **by the hand of Jeremiah the prophet** - AT: "through Jeremiah who was a prophet." (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 37:3-5**UDB:**

³ However, one day King Zedekiah sent Jehucal son of Shelemiah, and Zephaniah the priest, son of Maaseiah, to me. They requested me to pray to Yahweh our God for our nation.

⁴ At that time Jeremiah had not yet been put in prison, so he could go and come wherever and whenever he wanted to, without being hindered.

⁵ At that time, the army of Hophra, the king of Egypt, came to the southern border of Judah. When the army of Babylonia heard about that, they stopped surrounding Jerusalem and left there to fight against the army from Egypt.

ULB:

³ So King Zedekiah, Jehucal son of Shelemiah, and Zephaniah son of Maaseiah the priest sent a message to Jeremiah the prophet. They said, "Pray on our behalf to Yahweh our God." ⁴ Now Jeremiah was coming and going among the people, for he had not yet been put in prison. ⁵ Pharaoh's army came out from Egypt, and the Chaldeans who were besieging Jerusalem heard the news about them and left Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- king
- Zedekiah
- Zephaniah
- priest, priesthood
- send, send out, sent
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- pray, prayer
- Yahweh
- God
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **Jehucal** - This is the name of a person. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **Shelemiah** - See how you translated this name in [36:14](#).
- **Zephaniah son of Maaseiah the priest** - See how you translated this in [21:1](#).
- **on our behalf** - “for us” or “for our sake.” The word “our” refers to King Zedekiah and the rest of the people of Judah.
- **Jeremiah was coming and going among the people** - AT: “Jeremiah was able to go wherever he wanted with everybody else.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **for he had not yet been put in prison** - “because no one had put him in prison”
- **came out** - “had set out”
- **besieging** - See how you translated this word in [32:2](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 37:6-8

UDB:

⁶ Then Yahweh gave this message to me: ⁷ "I, Yahweh, the God of Israel, say this: The king of Judah has sent messengers to you to ask me what is going to happen. Tell the king that even though the army of the king of Egypt came to help him, they are about to return to Egypt. ⁸ Then the army of Babylonia will return here, capture this city, and burn everything in it.

ULB:

⁶ Then the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah the prophet and said, ⁷ "Yahweh, God of Israel, says this: This is what you will say to the king of Judah, because he has sent you to seek advice from me, 'See, Pharaoh's army, which came to help you, is about to go back to Egypt, its own land. ⁸ The Chaldeans will return. They will fight against this city, capture it, and burn it.'

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- send, send out, sent
- seek, sought
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- return

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **you will say** - The word "you" refers to the two men that king Zedekiah had sent to Jeremiah, Jehucal son of Shelemiah, and Zephaniah son of Maaseiah the priest.
- **to seek advice from me** - The word "me" refers to Yahweh.
- **See** - This word adds emphasis to what follows. AT: "Indeed"
- **They will fight against this city, capture it, and burn it** - Compare how you translated "to wage war against it and take it, and to burn it" in [34:22](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 37:9-10

UDB:

⁹ So, this is what Jeremiah said to you Israelites: 'You should not deceive yourselves, thinking that the army from Babylonia has gone and will not return. That is not true. ¹⁰ And even if your soldiers could destroy almost all of the soldiers from Babylonia who are attacking you, and allow only those who were wounded to remain alive in their tents, those men would come out of their tents and completely burn this city.'

ULB:

⁹ Yahweh says this: Do not deceive yourselves by saying, 'Surely the Chaldeans are leaving us,' for they will not leave. ¹⁰ Even if you had defeated the entire Chaldean army that is fighting you so that only wounded men were left in their tents, they would get up and burn this city.'

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [tent](#)

translationNotes:

- **Do not deceive yourselves** - The word "yourselves" refers to King Zedekiah and the rest of the people of Judah.
- **Surely the Chaldeans are leaving us** - The people of Judah think that they will be safe because the Chaldeans had left. AT: "Surely the Chaldeans are leaving us, so we will be safe." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **they would get up** - "the wounded men would get up"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 37:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ When the army from Babylonia left Jerusalem because the army from Egypt was approaching, ¹² Jeremiah started to leave the city. He intended to go to the area where the descendants of Benjamin live, in order to take possession of my share of the property from my family. ¹³ But as he was walking out the Benjamin Gate, the head guard seized Jeremiah and said, “You are deserting us and going to the soldiers from Babylonia!” The man who seized him was Jeriah son of Shelemiah, and grandson of Hananiah.

ULB:

¹¹ So it was when the Chaldean army had left Jerusalem as Pharaoh’s army was coming, ¹² then Jeremiah went out from Jerusalem to go to the land of Benjamin. He wanted to take possession of a tract of land there among his people. ¹³ As he was in the Benjamin Gate, a chief guard was there. His name was Jeriah son of Shelemiah son of Hananiah. He grabbed hold of Jeremiah the prophet and said, “You are deserting to the Chaldeans.”

translationWords:

- Chaldea, Chaldean
- Jerusalem
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Jeremiah
- Benjamin
- possess, possession
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- gate, gate bar
- chief
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **So it was** - “It came about that.” This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **a tract of land** - “a piece of land” or “some land”
- **among his people** - “among his relatives.” Jeremiah was from the town of Anathoth in the land of Benjamin. (See: [1:1](#))
- **Benjamin Gate** - This is the name of the gate.
- **Jeriah** - This is the name of a person. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Shelemiah** - See how you translated this name in [36:14](#).

- **Hananiah** - See how you translated this name in [28:1](#).
- **deserting to the Chaldeans** - “escaping to the Chaldeans”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 37:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ But Jeremiah protested and said, “That is not true! I was not intending to do that!” But Jeriah would not pay attention to what Jeremiah said. He took Jeremiah to the king’s officials. ¹⁵ They were very angry with him. They commanded the guards to beat Jeremiah and then to put him in the house where Jonathan the king’s secretary stayed. They had changed Jonathan’s house to make it become a prison.

ULB:

¹⁴ But Jeremiah said, “That is not true. I am not deserting to the Chaldeans.” But Jeriah did not listen to him. He took Jeremiah and brought him to the officials. ¹⁵ The officials were angry with Jeremiah. They beat him and put him in prison, which had been the house of Jonathan the scribe, for they had turned it into a prison.

translationWords:

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)
- [house](#)
- [Jonathan](#)
- [scribe, expert in the Jewish law](#)

translationNotes:

- **That is not true** - “Lie” or “That is a lie”
- **not deserting** - “not escaping”
- **Jeriah** - See how you translated this name in [37:13](#).
- **officials** - See how you translated this name in [1:18](#).
- **were angry** - “were extremely angry” or “were outraged”
- **Jonathan the scribe** - “Jonathan who was a scribe.” This is the name of a person. (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 General Notes](#)

- **Jeremiah 37 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 37:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ They put Jeremiah in a dungeon in that prison, and he remained there for several days. ¹⁷ Then King Zedekiah secretly sent a servant to him, who took Jeremiah to the palace. There the king asked him, “Do you have any messages from Yahweh?” Jeremiah replied, “Yes, the message is that you will be put into the hands of the king of Babylon.”

ULB:

¹⁶ So Jeremiah was put into an underground cell, where he stayed for many days. ¹⁷ Then King Zedekiah sent someone who brought him to the palace. In his house, the king asked him privately, “Is there any word from Yahweh?” Jeremiah answered, “There is a word: You will be given into the hand of the king of Babylon.”

translationWords:

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [biblical time: day](#)
- [king](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [palace](#)
- [house](#)
- [word](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jeremiah was put into an underground cell** - AT: “the officials put Jeremiah into a room that was under the ground” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **brought him** - “brought Jeremiah”
- **his house** - “the palace of King Zedekiah”
- **You will be given** - The word “You” refers to King Zedekiah and his people.
- **given into the hand of the king of Babylon** - See how you translated this phrase in [32:4](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 37 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 37 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 37:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ Then Jeremiah asked the king, "What crime have I committed against you or against your officials or against the Israelite people, with the result that you have commanded that I be put in a prison? ¹⁹ Your prophets predicted that the army of the king of Babylon would not attack you or this land. Why were their messages not fulfilled? ²⁰ Your majesty, I plead with you to listen to me. Do not send me back to the dungeon in the house of Jonathan your secretary, because if you do that, I will die there."

ULB:

¹⁸ Then Jeremiah said to King Zedekiah, "How have I sinned against you, your servants, or this people so that you have placed me in prison? ¹⁹ Where are your prophets, the ones who prophesied for you and said the king of Babylon will not come against you or against this land? ²⁰ But now listen, my master the king! Let my pleas come before you. Do not return me to the house of Jonathan the scribe, or I will die there."

translationWords:

- Jeremiah
- king
- Zedekiah
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- servant, slave, slavery
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- false prophet
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Babylon, Babylonian
- lord, master, sir
- plead, pleading, plea
- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **How have I sinned against you ... prison?** - Jeremiah uses this question to emphasize that he has not done anything wrong. AT: "I have not done anything wrong to you ... prison." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **this people** - the people of the kingdom of Judah

- **have placed** - “have put”
- **Where are your prophets, the ones who prophesied ... against this land** - Jeremiah uses this question to emphasize that the other prophets were lying but that he had done nothing wrong because he had told the truth. AT: “Your prophets who prophesied ... against this land, were obviously wrong, but now it is clear that I was telling you the truth.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **your prophets** - The word “your” refers to King Zedekiah and the other people of the kingdom of Judah.
- **will not come against you or against this land** - “will not attack you or attack this land”
- **my pleas come before you** - Compare how you translated “their pleas for mercy will come before Yahweh” in [36:7](#).
- **the house of Jonathan the scribe** - See how you translated this in [37:15](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 37:21

UDB:

²¹ So King Zedekiah commanded that Jeremiah not be sent back to the prison cell. Instead, he was allowed to be watched by the guards in the courtyard of the palace. The king also commanded that they should bring him a loaf of fresh bread every day, until there was no bread left in the city. So they put Jeremiah in that courtyard and he remained there.

ULB:

²¹ So King Zedekiah gave an order. His servants confined Jeremiah in the courtyard of the guard. A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers, until all the bread in the city was gone. So Jeremiah stayed in the courtyard of the guard.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [bread](#)

translationNotes:

- **of the guard** - “of the people who were guards”
- **A loaf of bread was given him** - “His servants also gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread”
- **from the street of the bakers** - “from the street where the bakers worked”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 37 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Surrender and live

If the king obeyed God and surrendered to the Babylonians, he would be allowed to live and the city would not be burned. But if he refused, he would be captured and the city burned. This took faith that Yahweh was using this ungodly, Gentile nation. (See: [faith](#) and [ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 38:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 38:1-3

UDB:

¹ Four officials, Shephatiah son of Mattan, Gedaliah son of Pashhur, Jehucal son of Shelemiah, and Pashhur son of Malkijah, heard what Jeremiah had been telling all the people. ² He had been telling them that Yahweh was saying, "Everyone who stays in Jerusalem will die. They will be killed by their enemies' swords or from famines or from diseases. But those who surrender to the Babylonian army will remain alive. They will escape; they will not be killed." ³ Yahweh also says that the army of the king of Babylon will certainly capture this city."

ULB:

38 ¹ Shephatiah son of Mattan, Gedaliah son of Pashhur, Jehucal son of Shelemiah, and Pashhur son of Malkijah heard the words that Jeremiah was declaring to all the people. He was saying, ² "Yahweh says this: Anyone staying in this city will be killed by sword, famine, and plague. But anyone who goes out to the Chaldeans will survive. He will escape with his own life, and live." ³ Yahweh says this: This city will be given into the hand of the army of the king of Babylon, and he will capture it."

translationWords:

- word
- Jeremiah
- declare, declaration
- Yahweh
- sword
- famine
- plague
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian

translationNotes:

- **Shephatiah ... Malkijah** - The names in this list all refer to men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **will be killed by sword, famine, and plague** - "will die by sword, famine, and plague" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **He will escape with his own life** - See how you translated a similar phrase in [21:9](#).

- **This city will be given into the hand of the army of the king of Babylon** - “I will allow the army of the king of Babylon to conquer Jerusalem” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he will capture it** - “his army will capture it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:4-5

UDB:

⁴ So those officials went to the king and said, “This man Jeremiah should be executed! Because of what he is saying, he is discouraging our soldiers who remain in the city. He is also discouraging the people. He is not saying things that will help us; he is saying things that will defeat us.”

⁵ King Zedekiah said, “All right, do to him what you want to; I do not have the power to stop you.”

ULB:

⁴ So the officials said to the king, “Let this man die, for in this way he is weakening the hands of the fighting men who remain in this city, and the hands of all the people. He is proclaiming these words, for this man is not working for safety for this people, but disaster.” ⁵ So King Zedekiah said, “Look, he is in your hand since there is no king able to resist you.”

translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)

translationNotes:

- **he is weakening the hands of the fighting men who remain in this city, and the hands of all the people** - AT: “he is causing the soldiers and all the people in the city to lose courage” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **for this man is not working for safety for this people, but disaster** - AT: “for Jeremiah is not working to help this people, but he is working to hurt this people” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **Look, he is in your hand** - The word “Look” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “See, you have power over him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:6

UDB:

⁶ So those officials took Jeremiah from his cell and lowered him by ropes into a cistern in the courtyard. The cistern belonged to Malkijah, who was a son of the king. There was no water in the cistern, but there was a lot of mud, so he sank down deep into the mud.

ULB:

⁶ Then they took Jeremiah and threw him into the cistern of Malkijah, son of the king. The cistern was in the courtyard of the guard. They lowered Jeremiah down on ropes. There was no water in the cistern, but it was muddy, and he sank down into the mud.

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)

translationNotes:

- **threw him into the cistern** - A “cistern” is a deep hole in the ground used for collecting and storing rain water. AT: “put him into the cistern” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **They lowered Jeremiah down on ropes** - This tells how they “threw” him into the cistern.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:7-9

UDB:

⁷ But Ebed Melech, a palace official from Ethiopia, heard someone say that Jeremiah was in the well. At that time the king was deciding people's cases at the Benjamin Gate. ⁸ Ebed Melech went out of the palace and said to the king, ⁹ "Your majesty, those men have done a very evil thing. They have put the prophet Jeremiah in a well. Almost all the food in the city is gone, so no one will be able to bring him any food, and as a result he will die from hunger!"

ULB:

⁷ Now Ebed Melech the Cushite was one of the eunuchs in the king's house. He heard that they had placed Jeremiah in the cistern. Now the king was sitting at the Benjamin Gate. ⁸ So Ebed Melech went from the king's house and spoke with the king. He said, ⁹ "My master the king, these men have done evil with the way they have treated Jeremiah the prophet. They threw him into a cistern for him to die in it from hunger, since there is no more food in the city."

translationWords:

- Cush
- eunuch
- house
- Benjamin
- gate, gate bar
- lord, master, sir
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **Ebed Melech the Cushite** - This is the name of a man from Cush. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Now the king** - Here the word "Now" marks a break in the main storyline where the narrator tells background information about what the king was doing. (See: [Background Information](#))
- **sitting at the Benjamin Gate** - Zedekiah was probably hearing and judging legal cases. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Benjamin Gate** - This is an entrance into the city of Jerusalem that people named after Benjamin, Jacob's son.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ So the king told Ebed Melech, “Take thirty of my men with you, and pull Jeremiah out of the well, in order that he does not die!”

¹¹ So Ebed Melech took charge of those thirty men; they went into a room in the palace below the room where people had stored things. There they found some old rags and discarded clothing. They took those things and went to the well. They fastened them to a rope and lowered the rope to me.

ULB:

¹⁰ Then the king gave a command to Ebed Melech the Cushite. He said, “Take command of thirty men from here and take Jeremiah the prophet out of the cistern before he dies.” ¹¹ So Ebed Melech took command of those men and went to the king’s house, to a storeroom for clothing under the house. From there he took rags and worn-out clothing and then let them down by ropes to Jeremiah in the cistern.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)

translationNotes:

- **thirty men** - AT: “30 men” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **let them down by ropes** - “used ropes to lower them down”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Then Ebed Melech called down to me, “Put these rags underneath your armpits, to protect you from being injured by the ropes!” So Jeremiah did that. ¹³ Then they pulled him out of the well. So he stayed in the courtyard where the palace guards were.

ULB:

¹² Ebed Melech the Cushite said to Jeremiah, “Put the rags and worn-out clothing under your arms and on top of the ropes.” So Jeremiah did so. ¹³ Then they pulled Jeremiah by the ropes. In this way they brought him up from the cistern. So Jeremiah stayed in the courtyard of the guard.

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)

translationNotes:

- **and on top of the ropes** - “and around the ropes”
- **they pulled Jeremiah** - Here the word “they” refers to some of the thirty men who were with Ebed Melech.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ One day King Zedekiah summoned Jeremiah, and he was brought to the king, who was waiting for him at the entrance of the temple. He said to Jeremiah, "I want to ask you something. I want you to answer me truthfully, and to not conceal anything."

¹⁵ Jeremiah replied, "If I tell you the truth, you will command that I be executed. And if I give you good advice, you will not pay attention to what I say."

¹⁶ But King Zedekiah secretly promised him, "Tell me the truth! And as surely as Yahweh lives, I will not cause you to be executed, and I will not put you into the hands of those who are wanting to kill you."

ULB:

¹⁴ Then King Zedekiah sent word and brought Jeremiah the prophet to himself, to the third entrance in Yahweh's house. The king said to Jeremiah, "I want to ask you something. Do not keep the answer from me." ¹⁵ Jeremiah said to Zedekiah, "If I answer you, will you not certainly kill me? But if I give you advice, you will not listen to me." ¹⁶ But King Zedekiah swore to Jeremiah in private and said, "As Yahweh lives, the one who made us, I will not kill you or give you into the hand of those men who are seeking your life."

translationWords:

- king
- Zedekiah
- send, send out, sent
- word
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- oath, swear, swear by
- Yahweh
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **If I answer you, will you not certainly kill me?** - Jeremiah uses this question to express his belief that the king will kill him if he answers truthfully. AT: "If I tell you the truth, you will certainly kill me" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **As Yahweh lives, the one who made us** - The king says this to emphasize that what he is about to say next is true. AT: “Just as it is true that Yahweh, the one who made us, lives, it is true that”
- **I will not ... give you into the hand of those men** - Here the word “hand” refers to the men’s control or power. AT: “I will not ... allow those men to capture you” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **are seeking your life** - AT: “are trying to kill you” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ So then Jeremiah said to Zedekiah, "This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says: 'If you surrender to the officers of the king of Babylon, you and your family will be spared, and this city will not be burned. ¹⁸ But if you refuse to surrender to them, you will not escape. And the army from Babylonia will capture this city and completely burn it.'"

ULB:

¹⁷ So Jeremiah said to Zedekiah, "Yahweh, God of hosts, God of Israel, says this: If you indeed go out to the officials of the king of Babylon then you will live, and this city will not be burned. You and your family will live. ¹⁸ But if you do not go out to the officials of the king of Babylon, then this city will be given into the hand of the Chaldeans. They will burn it, and you will not escape from their hand."

translationWords:

- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [family](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)

translationNotes:

- **God of Israel** - AT: "God of the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **this city will not be burned** - AT: "the Babylonian army will not burn this city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **this city will be given into the hand of the Chaldeans** - AT: "I will allow the Chaldeans to conquer this city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **you will not escape from their hand** - AT: "you will not escape from their power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:19

UDB:

¹⁹ The king replied, “But I am afraid to surrender to the soldiers from Babylon, because their officers may put me into the hands of the people of Judah who have already joined the soldiers from Babylonia, and those people from Judah will mistreat me.”

ULB:

¹⁹ King Zedekiah said to Jeremiah, “But I am afraid of the people of Judah who have deserted to the Chaldeans, because I might be given over into their hand, for them to treat me badly.”

translationWords:

- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

translationNotes:

- **I might be given over into their hand** - Here “hand” means “control” or “power.” AT: “the Chaldeans may give me to the Judeans” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **for them to treat me badly** - Here the word “them” refers to the Judeans.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Jeremiah replied, "If you obey Yahweh by doing what I tell you to do, they will not put you into the hands of our people. Things will go well for you, and you will remain alive. ²¹ But if you refuse to surrender, I will tell you what Yahweh has revealed to me.

ULB:

²⁰ Jeremiah said, "They will not give you over to them. Obey the message from Yahweh that I am telling you, so that things will go well for you, and so that you will live. ²¹ But if you refuse to go out, this is what Yahweh has shown me.

translationWords:

- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)

translationNotes:

- **They will not give you over to them** - "The Chaldeans will not give you over to the Judeans." Here "you" refers to Zedekiah. (See [Forms of You](#))
- **this is what Yahweh has shown me** - Here the word "this" refers to what Jeremiah will say next.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:22-23**UDB:**

²² All the women who remain in your palace will be brought out and given to the officers of the king of Babylon. Then those women will say to you:

‘You had friends whom you thought you could trust,
but they have deceived you and caused you to make a wrong decision.

Now it is as though you are stuck in mud,
and your friends have abandoned you.’

²³ All of your wives and children in the city will be led out to the soldiers from Babylonia, and you also will not escape. The soldiers of the king of Babylon will seize you, and they will burn down this city.”

ULB:

²² Look! All the women who are left in your house, king of Judah, will be brought out to the officials of the king of Babylon. These women will say to you,

‘You have been deceived by your friends; they have ruined you.

Your feet are now sunk into the mud, and your friends will run away.’

²³ For all of your wives and children will be brought out to the Chaldeans, and you yourself will not escape from their hand. You will be captured by the hand of the king of Babylon, and this city will be burned.”

translationWords:

- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- ruin, ruins
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues speaking with King Zedekiah.
- **All the women who are left ... will be brought out to the officials of the king of Babylon** - AT: “Soldiers will bring all the women who are left ... out to the officials of the king of Babylon” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **You have been deceived by your friends** - AT: “Your friends have deceived you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Your feet are now sunk into the mud** - This means that the king is in a difficult or helpless situation. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **For all of your wives and children will be brought out to the Chaldeans** - AT: “Soldiers will bring your wives and children out to the Chaldeans” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **will not escape from their hand** - AT: “will not escape from their power” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **You will be captured by the hand of the king of Babylon, and this city will be burned** - Here “hand” refers to the king’s power or his army. AT: “The army of the king of Babylon will capture you and will burn the city” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:24-26

UDB:

²⁴ Then Zedekiah said to Jeremiah, "Do not tell anyone what you told me; if you tell anyone, the king's officials may kill you. ²⁵ If my officials find out that I talked to you, perhaps they will come to you and say, 'Tell us what you and the king were talking about. If you do not tell us, we will kill you.' ²⁶ If that happens, just tell them that you pleaded with me not to send you back to the dungeon in Jonathan's house, because you were afraid that you would die if you were put there again."

ULB:

²⁴ Then Zedekiah said to Jeremiah, "Do not inform anyone about these words, so that you do not die. ²⁵ If the officials hear that I have talked with you, and if they come and say to you, 'Tell us what you said to the king and do not hide it from us, or we will kill you,' ²⁶ then you must say to them, 'I made a humble plea before the king that he would not return me to the house of Jonathan to die there.'"

translationWords:

- [Zedekiah](#)
- [word](#)
- [king](#)
- [plead, pleading, plea](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jonathan** - See how you translated this name in [37:15](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 38:27-28

UDB:

²⁷ And that is what happened. The king's officials came to Jeremiah and asked why the king had summoned him. But he told them what the king told him to tell them. So they did not ask Jeremiah any more questions, because no one had heard what the king and Jeremiah had said to each other.

²⁸ So Jeremiah remained being guarded in the courtyard of the palace, until the day that the army of Babylonia captured Jerusalem.

ULB:

²⁷ Then all the officials came to Jeremiah and questioned him, so he answered them as the king had instructed him. So they stopped talking with him, because they had not heard the conversation between Jeremiah and the king. ²⁸ So Jeremiah remained in the courtyard of the guard until the day Jerusalem was captured.

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **until the day Jerusalem was captured** - AT: "until the day that the Babylonian army captured Jerusalem" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 38 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 39 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The prophesied destruction of Jerusalem is over and the actual conquering of the Promised Land by Babylon begins in this chapter. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [Promised Land](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 39:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 39:1-3

UDB:

¹ After King Zedekiah had been ruling Judah for almost nine years, King Nebuchadnezzar came in the tenth month of the year with his army, and they surrounded Jerusalem. ² One and a half years later, after Zedekiah had been ruling for almost eleven years, in the eleventh year and fourth month, soldiers from Babylonia broke through the city wall. Then they rushed in and captured the city. ³ Then all the officers of the king of Babylon came in and sat down at the Middle Gate to decide what they would do to the city. They included Nergal Sharezer, Samgar Nebo, Sarsekim who was one of the chief administrative officers, Nergal Sharezer, the king's advisor, and many other officials.

ULB:

39 ¹ In the ninth year and tenth month of Zedekiah king of Judah, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came with all his army against Jerusalem and besieged it. ² In the eleventh year and fourth month of Zedekiah, on the ninth day of the month, the city was broken into. ³ Then all the officials of the king of Babylon came and sat in the middle gate: Nergal Sharezer, Samgar Nebo, and Sarsechim, an important official. Nergal Sharezer was a high official and all the rest were the officials of the king of Babylon.

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- Zedekiah
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- siege, besiege
- biblical time: day
- gate, gate bar

translationNotes:

- **In the ninth year and tenth month of Zedekiah king of Judah** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars. AT: "In the tenth month of the ninth year that Zedekiah was king of Judah." (See: [Hebrew Months](#))
- **ninth ... tenth ... eleventh ... fourth** - See: [Ordinal Numbers](#)

- **In the eleventh year and fourth month of Zedekiah, on the ninth day of the month** - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. The eleventh day is near the beginning of July on Western calendars. AT: “On the ninth day of the fourth month of the eleventh year that Zedekiah was king.” (See: [Hebrew Months](#))
- **Nergal Sharezer, Samgar Nebo, and Sarsechim** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **in the middle gate** - “in the middle entrance to the city.” It was common for leaders to sit at the gate of the city to discuss important matters.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 39 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 39 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 39:4-5

UDB:

⁴ When King Zedekiah and all his soldiers realized that the army of Babylonia had broken into the city, they fled. They waited until it was dark. Then they went out of the city through the king's garden, through the gate that was between the two walls. Then they started running toward the plain along the Jordan.

⁵ But the soldiers from Babylonia pursued the king, and they caught him on the plains near Jericho. They took him to the king of Babylon, who was at Riblah in the Hamath. There Nebuchadnezzar told his soldiers what they should do to punish Zedekiah.

ULB:

⁴ It happened that when Zedekiah, king of Judah, and all his fighting men saw them, they fled. They went out at night from the city by the king's garden path, through the gate between the two walls. The king went out in the direction of the Arabah. ⁵ But the army of Chaldeans pursued them and overtook Zedekiah in the plains of the Jordan River valley near Jericho. Then they captured him and brought him up to Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, at Riblah in the land of Hamath, where Nebuchadnezzar passed sentence on him.

translationWords:

- Arabah
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- Jordan River
- Jericho

translationNotes:

- **They went out at night from the city by the king's garden path** - "They left the city at night going out on a path in the king's garden"
- **the plains of the Jordan River valley** - This is the flat land at the southern end of the valley.
- **at Riblah in the land of Hamath** - Riblah was a town in the territory of Hamath. They are in Syria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **pursued them and overtook** - "followed and caught"
- **passed sentence on him** - "decided how to punish him"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 39 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 39 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 39:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ They forced Zedekiah to watch while they killed his sons and all the officials from Judah. ⁷ Then they gouged out Zedekiah's eyes. They fastened him with bronze chains and took him to Babylon.

ULB:

⁶ The king of Babylon slaughtered Zedekiah's sons before his own eyes at Riblah. He also slaughtered all the noblemen of Judah. ⁷ Then he put out Zedekiah's eyes and bound him in bronze chains in order to take him to Babylon.

translationWords:

- [slaughter](#)
- [noble, nobleman](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [bronze](#)

translationNotes:

- **before his own eyes** - AT: "as he watched them do it" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he put out Zedekiah's eyes** - "the king's men made Zedekiah blind" or "the king's men blinded Zedekiah"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 39 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 39 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 39:8-10

UDB:

⁸ Meanwhile, the Babylonian army burned the palace and all the other buildings in Jerusalem. And they tore down the city walls. ⁹ Then Nebuzaradan, the captain of the king's bodyguards, forced to go to Babylon most of the other people who remained in the city and the Jews who had joined the soldiers of Babylonia. ¹⁰ But he allowed some of the very poor people to remain in Judah, and he gave them vineyards and fields to take care of.

ULB:

⁸ Then the Chaldeans burned the king's house and the people's houses. They also tore down the walls of Jerusalem. ⁹ Nebuzaradan, captain of the king's bodyguards, took into exile the rest of the people who were left in the city. This included the people who had deserted to the Chaldeans and the rest of the people who were left in the city. ¹⁰ But Nebuzaradan the captain of the king's bodyguards allowed the poorest people who had nothing for themselves to remain in the land of Judah. He gave them vineyards and fields on that same day.

translationWords:

- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [vineyard](#)

translationNotes:

- **Nebuzaradan** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the king's bodyguards** - "Nebuchadnezzar's guards"
- **the rest of the people who were left in the city** - "the people remaining in the city" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 39 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 39 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 39:11-14

UDB:

¹¹ King Nebuchadnezzar had previously told the captain of the guard, Nebuzaradan to find Jeremiah. He said, ¹² “Make sure that no one harms him. Take care of him, and do for him whatever he requests you to do.” ¹³ So he and Nebushazban, who was one of their chief officers, and Nergal Sharezer the king’s advisor, and other officers of the king of Babylon ¹⁴ sent some men to bring Jeremiah out of the courtyard outside of the palace. They took him to Gedaliah who was the son of Ahikam and grandson of Shaphan. Then Gedaliah took Jeremiah to his home, and he stayed in Judah among his own people who had been allowed to remain there.

ULB:

¹¹ Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon had given an order about Jeremiah to Nebuzaradan the captain of the king’s bodyguards. He had said, ¹² “Take him and care for him. Do not harm him. Do for him anything he tells you.” ¹³ So Nebuzaradan captain of the king’s bodyguards, Nebushazban the high eunuch, Nergal Sharezer the high official, and all the most important officials of the king of Babylon sent men out. ¹⁴ Their men took Jeremiah from the courtyard of the guard and entrusted him to Gedaliah son of Ahikam son of Shaphan, to take him home, so Jeremiah stayed among the people.

translationWords:

- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [eunuch](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)

translationNotes:

- **Nebushazban ... Gedaliah ... Ahikam ... Shaphan** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **sent men out** - “sent men out to get Jeremiah” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **among the people** - “among the people who remained in Judah” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 39 General Notes](#)

- **Jeremiah 39 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 39:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ But while Jeremiah was still being guarded in the palace courtyard, Yahweh gave him this message: ¹⁶ "Say this to Ebed Melech, the official from Ethiopia: 'This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says: I will do to this city everything that I said that I would do. Everthing I told you would be done, and you will see it with your own eyes.

ULB:

¹⁵ Now the word of Yahweh had come to Jeremiah while he was under arrest in the courtyard of the guard, and he said, ¹⁶ "Speak to Ebed Melech the Cushite and say, 'Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: See, I am about to carry out my words against this city for disaster and not for good. For they will all come true before you on that day.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Cush
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- word
- good, goodness
- true, truth, come true

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This story happened before the events in the first part of the chapter.
- **Now** - This marks a new section of the story.
- **the word of Yahweh had come to Jeremiah ... he said** - "Yahweh spoke to Jeremiah. He said"
- **Ebed Melech the Cushite** - See how you translated this name in [38:7](#).
- **I am about to carry out my words against this city for disaster and not for good** - "I am bringing disaster against this city just as I said I would"
- **For they will all come true before you on that day** - "For you will see it all happen on that day"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 39 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 39 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 39:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ But I promise to rescue you from the people you are afraid of. This is what I, Yahweh, have promised to you! ¹⁸ You trusted me, so I will save you. You will not be killed by our enemies' swords. You will live. That will surely happen, because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

¹⁷ But I will rescue you on that day—this is Yahweh's declaration—and you will not be given into the hand of the men whom you fear. ¹⁸ For I will certainly rescue you. You will not fall by the sword. You will escape with your life, since you trust in me—this was Yahweh's declaration.”

translationWords:

- [declare, declaration](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [sword](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Jeremiah.
- **that day** - This refers to the day the Babylonians break through the walls of Jerusalem to destroy the city.
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **you will not be put into the hand of the men whom you fear** - Here “hand” refers to power or control. AT: “the men you fear will not harm you” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **You will not fall by the sword** - AT: “No one will kill you with their sword” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **You will escape with your life, since you trust in me** - “Your reward for trusting me is not being killed”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 39 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 39 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 40 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Peace in Judah

After Babylon conquered Jerusalem, this chapter reveals an unfolding peace in the area. Ammon, who was supposed to be Judah's ally against Babylon, probably sought to distract Babylon from attacking them by ruining the peace in the region of Judah. (See: [reveal](#), [revelation](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 40:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 40:1-2

UDB:

¹ The soldiers from Babylonia captured Jeremiah and many other people from Jerusalem and other places in Judah. They planned to take them to Babylon. So they fastened chains around their wrists and took them to Ramah, a town north of Jerusalem. While they were there, Jeremiah was released. This is how it happened: ² Nebuzaradan, the captain of the king's guards, found that Jeremiah was there. He summoned Jeremiah and said to him, "Yahweh your God said that he would cause this land to experience a disaster.

ULB:

40 ¹ This was the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh after Nebuzaradan, the captain of the king's bodyguard, had sent him away from Ramah. That was where Jeremiah had been taken to, and where he had been bound with chains. He had been among all the exiles of Jerusalem and Judah who were to be exiled to Babylon. ² The chief guard took Jeremiah and said to him, "Yahweh your God decreed this disaster against this place.

translationWords:

- word
- Jeremiah
- Yahweh
- send, send out, sent
- Ramah
- bind, bond, bound
- exile, the Exile
- Jerusalem
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Babylon, Babylonian
- chief
- God
- decree

translationNotes:

- **This was the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh** - "This is what Yahweh said to Jeremiah"
- **Nebuzaradan, the captain of the king's bodyguards** - See how you translated this in [39:9](#).
- **That was where Jeremiah had been taken to, and where he had been bound with chains** - AT: "That was where the Babylonian soldiers had taken Jeremiah and put him in chains" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **who were to be exiled to Babylon** - AT: “whom the soldiers were sending to Babylon”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 40:3-4

UDB:

³ And now he has caused it to happen. He has done just what he said that he would do, because you people sinned against Yahweh and refused to obey him. ⁴ But today I am going to take the chains off your wrists and release you. If you want to come with me to Babylon, that will be fine. I will take care of you. But if you do not want to come with me, do not come. Stay here. Look, the entire country is available; you can choose whatever part you want to go to. You can go wherever you think it is best.” Then he took the chains off Jeremiah’s wrists.

ULB:

³ So Yahweh brought it about. He did just as he had decreed, since you people sinned against him and did not obey his voice. That is why this thing has happened to you people. ⁴ But now look! I have released you today from the chains that were on your hands. If it is good in your eyes to come with me to Babylon, come, and I will take care of you. But if it is not good in your eyes to come with me to Babylon, then do not do so. Look at all the land before you. Go where it is good and right in your eyes to go.”

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [voice](#)
- [good, goodness](#)

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh brought it about. He did just as he had decreed** - AT: “Yahweh did what he told you he would do” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **since you people sinned against him and did not obey his voice** - AT: “since you Judeans sinned against Yahweh and did not obey his command” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **this thing has happened** - “this disaster has happened”
- **But now look!** - Nebuzaradan says this to bring Jeremiah’s attention to the present moment.
- **it is good in your eyes** - AT: “you want to”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 General Notes](#)

- **Jeremiah 40 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 40:5-6

UDB:

⁵ He said, “If you decide to stay here, go to Gedaliah. The king of Babylon appointed him to be the governor of Judah. You will be allowed to stay here with the people that he is governing. But you can do whatever you want to.”

Then Nebuzaradan gave Jeremiah some food and some money, and he allowed him to go.

⁶ He returned to Gedaliah at Mizpah, and he stayed in Judah with the people who still remained in the land.

ULB:

⁵ When Jeremiah did not reply, Nebuzaradan said, “Go to Gedaliah son of Ahikam son of Shaphan, whom the king of Babylon has put in charge of the cities of Judah. Stay with him among the people or go wherever it is good in your eyes to go.” The commander of the king’s bodyguards gave him food and a gift, and then sent him away. ⁶ So Jeremiah went to Gedaliah son of Ahikam, at Mizpah. He stayed with him among the people who were left behind in the land.

translationWords:

- [commander, command](#)
- [gift](#)
- [Mizpah](#)

translationNotes:

- **Gedaliah ... Ahikam ... Shaphan** - See how you translated these names in [39:14](#).
- **among the people** - “among the Judeans”
- **it is good in your eyes** - “you think it is good” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **who were left behind in the land** - “who stayed in Judah”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 40:7-8

UDB:

⁷ The Israelite soldiers who had not surrendered to the army of Babylonia were roaming around in the countryside. Then their leaders heard someone say that the king of Babylon had appointed Gedaliah to be the governor of the very poor people who were still in Judah, who had not been taken to Babylon. ⁸ So they went to talk to Gedaliah at Mizpah. Those who went included Ishmael son of Nethaniah, Johanan and Jonathan the sons of Kareah, Seraiah son of Tanhumeth, the sons of Ephai from Netophath, and Jezaniah from Maacah, and the soldiers who were with them.

ULB:

⁷ Now some commanders of Judean soldiers who were still in the countryside—they and their men—heard that the king of Babylon had made Gedaliah son of Ahikam, governor over the land. They also heard that he had put him in charge of the men, women, and children who were the poorest people in the land, those who had not been exiled to Babylon. ⁸ So they went to Gedaliah at Mizpah. These men were Ishmael son of Nethaniah; Johanan and Jonathan, sons of Kareah; Seraiah son of Tanhumeth; the sons of Ephai the Netophathite; and Jaazaniah son of the Maacathite—they and their men.

translationWords:

- [governor, govern, proconsul, government](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [Mizpah](#)

translationNotes:

- **Now** - This marks a new part of the story.
- **those who had not been exiled to Babylon** - “those whom the enemy soldiers had not sent to Babylon” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Ishmael ... and Jaazaniah** - In 40:8 these are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **son of the Maacathite** - This refers to a person from the region of Maacah.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 40:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Gedaliah solemnly promised that the soldiers from Babylonia would not harm them. He said, "Do not be afraid to do things for them. Stay here in this land and do things for the king of Babylon. If you do that, things will go well for you. ¹⁰ As for me, I will stay here at Mizpah to be your representative to the officials from Babylonia who come to talk with us. But you should return to your towns, and eat the things that are produced on your land. Harvest the grapes and the fruit that ripens in the summer and the olives, make wine and olive oil, and store it."

ULB:

⁹ Gedaliah son of Ahikam son of Shaphan, took an oath to them and to their men, and said to them, "Do not be afraid to serve the Chaldean officials. Live in the land and serve the king of Babylon, and it will go well with you. ¹⁰ Look, I am living in Mizpah to meet with the Chaldeans who came to us. So harvest wine, summer fruit, and oil and store them in your containers. Live in the cities that you have occupied."

translationWords:

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [king](#)
- [harvest](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [oil](#)

translationNotes:

- **took an oath to them** - "swore to the Judean commanders"
- **summer fruit** - This refers to seasonal crops.
- **Live in the cities that you have occupied** - "Live in your cities"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 General Notes](#)

- **Jeremiah 40 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 40:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Then the Jews who had fled to Moab, Ammon, Edom, and other nearby countries heard people say that the king of Babylon had allowed a few people to remain in Judah, and that he had appointed Gedaliah to be their governor. ¹² So they began to return to Judah. They stopped at Mizpah to talk with Gedaliah. Then they went to various places in Judea, and they harvested a great amount of grapes and summer fruit.

ULB:

¹¹ Then all the Judeans in Moab, among the people of Ammon, and in Edom, and in every land heard that the king of Babylon had allowed a remnant of Judah to stay, that he had appointed Gedaliah son of Ahikam son of Shaphan over them. ¹² So all the Judeans returned from every place where they had been scattered. They came back to the land of Judah, to Gedaliah at Mizpah. They harvested wine and summer fruit in great abundance.

translationWords:

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- remnant
- appoint, appointed
- Mizpah
- harvest
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- fruit, fruitful

translationNotes:

- **all the Judeans** - See how you translated this in [32:12](#).
- **among the people of** - AT: "all the Judeans among the people of Ammon." (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **a remnant of Judah** - "a remnant of the people of Judah"
- **had appointed ... over them** - "had put ... in charge of them"
- **Gedaliah son of Ahikam son of Shaphan** - See how you translated this in [39:14](#).
- **over them** - "over the people of Judah"

- **where they had been scattered** - “where they had fled to” or AT: “where the Babylonians had driven them.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **wine and summer fruit in great abundance** - “a huge amount of grapes and summer fruit” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **summer fruit** - See how you translated this in [40:10](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 40:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Some time later, Johanan and all the other leaders of the Israelite soldiers who had not surrendered to the army of Babylonia came to Gedaliah at Mizpah. ¹⁴ They said to him, “Do you know that Baalis, the king of the people of Ammon, has sent Ishmael son of Nethaniah to assassinate you?” But Gedaliah did not believe what they said.

ULB:

¹³ Johanan son of Kareah and all the army commanders in the countryside came to Gedaliah at Mizpah. ¹⁴ They said to him, “Do you realize that Baalis king of the people of Ammon sent Ishmael son of Nethaniah to murder you?” But Gedaliah son of Ahikim did not believe them.

translationWords:

- [Jonathan](#)
- [commander, command](#)
- [Mizpah](#)
- [king](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [believe, believe in, belief](#)

translationNotes:

- **Johanan ... Kareah** - See how you translated these names in [40:8](#).
- **Gedaliah** - See how you translated this name in [39:14](#).
- **Do you realize that Baalis king of the people of Ammon sent Ishmael son of Nethaniah to murder you?** - “Certainly, you should realize that Baalis king of the people of Ammon sent Ishmael son of Nethaniah to murder you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Baalis** - This is the name of a king. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Ishmael son of Nethaniah** - See how you translated these names in [40:8](#).
- **Ahikim** - See how you translated this name in [26:24](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 40:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Later Johanan talked with Gedaliah privately. He said, “Allow me to go and murder Ishmael secretly. It would not be good to allow him to come and murder you! If you are killed, what will happen to all the Jews who have returned to this area? They will be scattered, and the other people who remain in Judah will all be killed!”

¹⁶ But Gedaliah said to Johanan, “No, I will not allow you to do that. I think that you are lying about Ishmael.”

ULB:

¹⁵ So Johanan son of Kareah spoke privately to Gedaliah in Mizpah and said, “Allow me to go kill Ishmael son of Nethaniah. No one will suspect me. Why should he kill you? Why allow all of Judah that has been gathered to you to be scattered and the remnant of Judah destroyed?” ¹⁶ But Gedaliah son of Ahikam said to Johanan son of Kareah, “Do not do this thing, for you are telling lies about Ishmael.”

translationWords:

- Mizpah
- remnant
- Judah, kingdom of Judah

translationNotes:

- **Johanan ... Kareah** - See how you translated these names in [40:8](#).
- **spoke privately to Gedaliah** - “spoke to Gedaliah in secret”
- **Gedaliah** - See how you translated this name in [39:14](#).
- **Ishmael son of Nethaniah** - See how you translated this in [40:8](#).
- **No one will suspect me** - “No one will know”
- **Why should he kill you** - “You should not allow him to kill you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Why allow all of Judah** - “Do not allow so many of the people of Judah” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **all of Judah that has been gathered to you** - “the people of Judah that have come to you” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **to be scattered** - “to flee away to many different lands.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **and the remnant of Judah destroyed** - “and allow the remnant of Judah to perish.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Ellipsis](#))
- **the remnant of Judah** - See how you translated this in [40:11](#).
- **Ahikam** - See how you translated this name in [26:24](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 40 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 41 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Life in Judah

This chapter explains what life was like in Judah after the Babylonian conquest. It was a difficult and dangerous time, but the some of the faithful remained in the Promised Land. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#) and [Promised Land](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 41:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 41:1-3

UDB:

¹ Ishmael son of Nethaniah was a member of the king's family. He had been one of King Zedekiah's important officials. In the seventh month of that year, he went to Mizpah with ten other men to talk with Gedaliah. While they were eating together, ² Ishmael and the other ten men jumped up, and with their swords they killed Gedaliah—the man whom the king of Babylon had appointed to be their governor! ³ Ishmael and the other men also killed all the Jews and the Babylonians who his soldiers found with Gedaliah at Mizpah.

ULB:

41 ¹ But it happened that in the seventh month Ishmael son of Nethaniah son of Elishama, from the royal family, and some officers of the king, came—ten men were with him—to Gedaliah son of Ahikam, at Mizpah. They ate food together there in Mizpah. ² But Ishmael son of Nethaniah, and the ten men who were with him rose up and attacked Gedaliah son of Ahikam son of Shaphan, with the sword. Ishmael killed Gedaliah, whom the king of Babylon had put in charge of the land. ³ Then Ishmael killed all the Judeans who were with Gedaliah in Mizpah and the Chaldean fighting men found there.

translationWords:

- royal
- family
- king
- Mizpah
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- sword
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Judea
- Chaldea, Chaldean

translationNotes:

- **it happened that** - This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **in the seventh month** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Ishmael ... Nethaniah ... Elishama ... Gedaliah ... Ahikam** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 41:4-5

UDB:

⁴ The next day, before anyone had found out that Gedaliah had been murdered, ⁵ eighty men from Shechem, Shiloh, and Samaria came to worship at the temple of Yahweh in Mizpah. They had shaved off their beards and torn their clothes and cut themselves to show that they were mourning. And they had brought grain offerings and incense to burn on the altar.

ULB:

⁴ Then it was the second day after the killing of Gedaliah, but no one knew. ⁵ Some men came from Shechem, from Shiloh, and from Samaria—eighty men who had shaved their beard, torn their clothes, and cut themselves—with food offerings and frankincense in their hands to go to Yahweh’s house.

translationWords:

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [Shiloh](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [frankincense](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)

translationNotes:

- **eighty men** - “80 men” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **in their hands** - “Hands” represents the men. AT: “in their possession” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 41:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Ishmael son of Nethaniah went out of the city to meet them, weeping as he went. When he reached them, he said, “Come and see what has happened to Gedaliah!”

⁷ But as soon as they had all entered the town, Ishmael and his men killed most of them and threw their corpses into a well.

ULB:

⁶ So Ishmael son of Nethaniah went out from Mizpah to meet them as they went, walking and weeping. Then it happened that as he encountered them, he said to them, “Come to Gedaliah son of Ahikam!” ⁷ It came about that when they came into the city, Ishmael son of Nethaniah slaughtered them and threw them into a pit, he and the men who were with him.

translationWords:

- [slaughter](#)
- [pit](#)

translationNotes:

- **as he encountered them** - AT: “as Ishmael came closer to the 80 men”
- **It came about that** - This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **Ishmael son of Nethaniah slaughtered them and threw them into a pit, he and the men who were with him** - AT: “Ishmael son of Nethaniah, and the men who were with him, killed most of the 80 men and threw them into a pit”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 41:8-9

UDB:

⁸ There were only ten of them whom they spared. They were not killed because they promised to Ishmael that if he allowed them to remain alive, they would bring him lots of wheat and barley and olive oil and honey that they had hidden. ⁹ The well where Ishmael's men had thrown the corpses of the men whom they had murdered was the deep well that King Asa's men had dug in order that they would have water in the city if the army of King Baasha of Israel would surround the city. Ishmael's men filled that well with corpses.

ULB:

⁸ But there were ten men among them who said to Ishmael, "Do not kill us, for there are provisions of ours in a field: wheat and barley, oil and honey." So he did not kill them with their other companions. ⁹ The cistern where Ishmael threw all the dead bodies that he and Gedaliah had struck down, was the same cistern that King Asa dug when he was being attacked by King Baasha of Israel. Ishmael son of Nethaniah filled it those who were killed.

translationWords:

- wheat
- barley
- oil
- honey, honeycomb
- companion
- Asa
- Baasha
- kingdom of Israel

translationNotes:

- **ten men among them** - The word "them" refers to the 80 men.
- **provisions** - supplies to be used to provide for future needs.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 41:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then Ishmael and his men captured the king's daughters and some of the other people who had been left in Mizpah by the chief Babylonian guard Nebuzaradan so that Gedaliah would take care of them. Ishmael and his men took those people and started back toward the Ammon area.

ULB:

¹⁰ Next Ishmael captured all the other people who were in Mizpah, the king's daughters and all the people who were left in Mizpah whom Nebuzaradan the chief guard had assigned to Gedaliah son of Ahikam. So Ishmael son of Nethaniah captured them and went to cross over to the people of Ammon.

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Mizpah](#)
- [chief](#)
- [assign, assigned](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)

translationNotes:

- **Ishmael ... Nebuzaradan ... Gedaliah ... Ahikam ... Nethaniah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 41:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ But Johanan son of Kareah and all the other leaders of the Israelite soldiers who had not surrendered to the army of Babylonia heard about what Ishmael son of Nethaniah and his men had done. ¹² So they immediately went with all their men to stop them. They caught up with them at the large pool near the city of Gibeon.

ULB:

¹¹ But Johanan son of Kareah and all the army commanders with him heard of all the harm that Ishmael son of Nethaniah had done. ¹² So they took all their men and went to fight against Ishmael son of Nethaniah. They found him at the great pool of Gibeon.

translationWords:

- [commander, command](#)
- [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)

translationNotes:

- **Johanan ... Kareah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **They found him** - "They found Ishmael and his men"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 41:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ When all the people whom Ishmael and his men had captured saw Johanan and the soldiers who were with him, they shouted joyfully. ¹⁴ So all those who had been captured in Mizpah escaped, and they started to help Johanan.

ULB:

¹³ Then it happened that when all the people who were with Ishmael saw Johanan son of Kareah and all the army commanders who were with him, they were very happy. ¹⁴ So all the people whom Ishmael had captured at Mizpah turned around and went to Johanan son of Kareah.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **Then it happened that** - This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **Ishmael ... Johanan ... Kareah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 41:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ But Ishmael son of Nethaniah and eight of his men escaped and fled to the Ammon area. ¹⁶ Then Johanan son of Kareah and the men who were with him gathered together all the people whom they had rescued at Gibeon. They included soldiers and women and children and some of the king's palace officials. They were all people whom Ishmael and his men had captured after they had killed Gedaliah.

ULB:

¹⁵ But Ishmael son of Nethaniah fled with eight men from Johanan. He went to the people of Ammon. ¹⁶ Johanan son of Kareah and all the army commanders with him took from Mizpah all the people who had been rescued from Ishmael son of Nethaniah. This was after Ishmael had killed Gedaliah son of Ahikam. Johanan and his companions took the strong men, the fighting men, the women and children, and the eunuchs who had been rescued at Gibeon.

translationWords:

- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [commander, command](#)
- [companion](#)
- [eunuch](#)
- [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)

translationNotes:

- **Ishmael ... Nethaniah ... Gedaliah ... Ahikam** - See how you translated the names of these men in [41:1](#).
- **Johanan ... Kareah** - See how you translated the names of these men in [41:11](#).
- **who had been rescued from Ishmael** - “he and his army had rescued from Ishmael” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **This was after Ishmael had killed Gedaliah son of Ahikam** - The author stops the story to refer to refer to a previous event so that the order of events are understood. (See: [Background Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 41:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ They took them all to Geruth Kimham village near Bethlehem. And they all prepared to go to Egypt. ¹⁸ They were worried about what the soldiers of Babylonia would do to them when they found out that Ishmael had killed Gedaliah, who had been appointed by the king of Babylonia to be their governor.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then they went and stayed for a while in Geruth Chimham, which is near Bethlehem. They were going to go to Egypt ¹⁸ because of the Chaldeans. They were afraid of them since Ishmael son of Nethaniah had killed Gedaliah son of Ahikam, whom the king of Babylon had put in charge of the land.

translationWords:

- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)

translationNotes:

- **Geruth Chimham** - This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **because of the Chaldeans** - AT: “because they thought the Chaldeans may attack them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **in charge of the land** - AT: “in charge of the land of Judah”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 41 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 42 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Life in Babylon

The remaining army commanders, who scattered after the Babylonian victory, asked Jeremiah to ask Yahweh about where they should go. Yahweh encouraged them to go to Babylon because they would soon return to the Promised Land. They would be punished if they went to Egypt or anywhere else. (See: [Promised Land](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 42:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 42:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then Johanan son of Kereah and Azariah son of Hoshaiiah, and all the other leaders of the Israelite soldiers who had not surrendered to the army of Babylonia, and many other people, including those who were important and those who were not important, came to me. ² They said, "Please listen to our request and pray to Yahweh our God for all of us. Although we were previously a huge number of people, you can see that now we are only a small number of people who have survived. ³ Pray that Yahweh our God will show us what we should do and where we should go."

ULB:

42 ¹ Then all the army commanders and Johanan son of Kereah, Jezaniah son of Hoshaiiah, and all the people from the least to the greatest approached Jeremiah the prophet. ² They said to him, "Let our pleas come before you. Pray for us to Yahweh your God for these people who remain since we are so few in number, as you see. ³ Ask Yahweh your God to tell us the way we should go and what we should do."

translationWords:

- commander, command
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- plead, pleading, plea
- pray, prayer
- Yahweh
- God
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [writing_poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **Johanan ... Kereah ... Jezaniah ... Hoshaiiah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **all the people from the least to the greatest** - This is a way to refer to people from every social level. AT: "people from every social level" (See: [Merism](#))
- **Let our pleas come before you** - AT: "Let us present our urgent request to you"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 42 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 42 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 42:4-6

UDB:

⁴ I replied, “Okay, I will pray to Yahweh our God, like you have requested, and I will tell you what he says. I will tell you everything.”

⁵ They replied to me, “We know that Yahweh our God will be a faithful witness against us if we refuse to do everything that he tells us to do. ⁶ We are requesting you to ask Yahweh our God what we should do. When he replies, we will obey him, whether we like what he says or not. We will do that because we know that things will go well for us if we obey him.”

ULB:

⁴ So Jeremiah the prophet said to them, “I have heard you. Look, I will pray to Yahweh your God as you have requested. Whatever Yahweh answers, I will tell you. I will keep nothing back from you.” ⁵ They said to Jeremiah, “May Yahweh be a true and faithful witness against us, if we do not do everything that Yahweh your God tells us to do. ⁶ Whether it is good or if it is bad, we will obey the voice of Yahweh our God, to whom we are sending you, so that it may be well with us when we obey the voice of Yahweh our God.”

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- faithful, faithfulness
- witness, eyewitness
- good, goodness
- obey, obedient, obedience
- voice
- send, send out, sent

translationNotes:

- **Look** - AT: “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”
- **I will keep nothing back from you** - AT: “I will tell you everything the Lord tells me” (See: [Double Negatives](#))
- **true and faithful** - These words share similar meanings in this context. They describe Yahweh as a witness whom no one will be able to contradict. AT: “trustworthy.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Whether it is good or if it is bad** - The people mention both extremes to emphasize that they will obey no matter what Yahweh’s answer is. AT: “Whatever he answers.” (See: [Merism](#))
- **the voice of Yahweh our God** - Yahweh is referred to by what he uses to respond to their question. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 42:7-10

UDB:

⁷ So I prayed to Yahweh, and ten days later he gave me his reply. ⁸ So I summoned Johanan son of Kareah and all the other leaders of the and all the other people, including those who were important and those who were not important. ⁹ I said to them, "You told me to tell Yahweh, the God of Israel what you were requesting. This is what he replied: ¹⁰ 'You should stay here in this land. If you do that, I will cause your nation to be strong and not be weak. I will cause you to prosper and not be exiled again. I will stop the disasters that I made you experience.

ULB:

⁷ It happened that after ten days, the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah. ⁸ So Jeremiah called to Johanan son of Kareah and all the army commanders with him, and to all the people from the least to the greatest. ⁹ Then he said to them, "Yahweh, the God of Israel, to whom you sent me so I might lay your pleas before him. Yahweh says this, ¹⁰ 'If you go back and live in this land, then I will build you and not tear you down; I will plant you and not pull you up, for I will turn back the disaster that I have brought on you.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- commander, command
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- life, live, living, alive
- turn, turn away, turn back

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **all the people from the least to the greatest** - See how you translated this in [42:1](#).
- **I might lay your pleas before him** - "I would present your urgent request to him"
- **I will build you and not tear you down** - Yahweh refers to the people of Israel like a wall that can be built or torn down. AT: "I will cause you to prosper and no be destroyed" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will plant you and not pull you up** - Yahweh uses another example to express how he will cause the people of Israel to prosper and not be destroyed. He refers to them like a plant in the same way he referred to them as a wall. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **I will turn back the disaster that I have brought on you** - A disaster is here spoken of as something that a person can put onto someone else. AT: "I will prevent the disaster that I have caused to happen to you"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 42:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ But do not be afraid of the king of Babylon anymore, because I will be with you. I will rescue you from his power. ¹² I will be merciful to you by causing him to act kindly toward you. So as a result, he will allow you to stay here in your land.'

ULB:

¹¹ Do not fear the king of Babylon, whom you are fearing. Do not fear him—this is Yahweh's declaration—since I am with you to save you and rescue you from his hand. ¹² For I will give you mercy. I will have compassion on you, and I will bring you back to your land.

translationWords:

- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [save, safe](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [mercy, merciful](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)

translationNotes:

- **to save you and rescue you** - The words “save” and “rescue” mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will, indeed, save. AT: “to save you completely.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **rescue you from his hand** - Here the word “hand” refers to power and authority. AT: “rescue you from his power.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 42:13-14

UDB:

¹³ But if you refuse to obey Yahweh our God, and if you say 'We will not stay here; ¹⁴ instead, we will go to Egypt. There we will not experience any wars, we will not hear trumpets signaling our soldiers to prepare for battles, and we will not be hungry.'

ULB:

¹³ But suppose that you say, "We will not stay in this land"—if you do not listen to my voice, the voice of Yahweh your God. ¹⁴ Suppose that you say, "No! We will go to the land of Egypt, where we will not see any war, where we will not hear the sound of the trumpet, and we will not go hungry for food. We will live there."

translationWords:

- [voice](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [trumpet](#)

translationNotes:

- **if you do not listen to my voice, the voice of Yahweh your God** - To not obey is like the people did not hear Yahweh's command. AT: "if you do not obey my commands, even though I am Yahweh, your God." (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **where we will not see any war, where we will not hear the sound of the trumpet** - Both of these phrases described being at war by the ability to see or hear it. AT: "where we will not experience the hardships of war" (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **we will not go hungry for food** - Being hungry for food is used to describe famine. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 42:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Listen now! you people who are left in Judah! Listen to what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says to you: 'If you are determined to go to Egypt, and if you go and live there, ¹⁶ you will experience those wars and famines that you are afraid of, and you will all die there. ¹⁷ That is what will happen to all you who are determined to go to Egypt and live there. Some of you will be killed by the swords of your enemies, and others of you will die from famines and from diseases. None of you will escape the disasters that I will bring on you.'

ULB:

¹⁵ Now listen to this word of Yahweh, you remnant of Judah. Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this, 'If you actually set out to go to Egypt, to go and live there, ¹⁶ then the sword that you fear will overtake you there in the land of Egypt. The famine that you are worrying about will pursue you to Egypt, and you will die there. ¹⁷ So it will happen that all the men who set out to go to Egypt to live there will die by sword, famine, or plague. There will be no survivor of them, no one to escape the disaster that I will bring on them.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- remnant
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- Egypt, Egyptian
- sword
- famine
- death, die, dead
- plague

translationNotes:

- **the sword that you fear will overtake you** - AT: "You will experience the terrible results of war there." (See: **Metonymy**)
- **The famine that you are worrying about will pursue you to Egypt** - Famine is referred to as something that can pursue something else. AT: "You worry about famine in Israel but if you go to Egypt you will suffer from famine there" (See: **Personification**)
- **all the men** - The men are used to refer to all the people because they are the leaders in their families. AT: "everyone" (See: **Synecdoche**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 42:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ And Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, also says this: ‘Because I was very angry, I severely punished all the people of Jerusalem. I will do the same things to you when you go to Egypt. The result will be that people will curse you. They will be horrified about what has happened to you. They will make fun of you, and you will never see this land again.’

¹⁹ You little group of people of Judah who are still alive, listen to me: Yahweh has told you, ‘Do not go to Egypt.’ So do not forget what I have warned you today.

ULB:

¹⁸ For Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: Just as my wrath and my fury were poured out on the inhabitants of Jerusalem, in the same way my fury will be poured out on you if you go to Egypt. You will become an object of cursing and a horror, an object for speaking curses, and something dishonorable, and you will not see this place again.” ¹⁹ Then Jeremiah said, ”Yahweh has spoken concerning you—the remnant of Judah. Do not go to Egypt! You certainly know that I have been a witness against you today.

translationWords:

- **wrath, fury**
- **Jerusalem**
- **curse, cursed**
- **dishonor, dishonorable**
- **witness, eyewitness**

translationNotes:

- **my wrath and my fury were poured out** - AT: “I poured out my wrath and my fury” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **my wrath and my fury** - The words “wrath” and “fury” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the intensity of his wrath. AT: “my terrible wrath.” (See: **Doublet**)
- **my fury will be poured out on you** - AT: “I will pour my fury out on you” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **an object of cursing and a horror, an object for speaking curses, and something dishonorable.** - These two lines mean basically the same thing and emphasize how badly the nations will treat the people of Judah after Yahweh punishes them. See how you translated similar phrases in **25:18** and **29:18**. (See **Parallelism**)

- **I have been a witness** - Yahweh has been the one who makes sure the people of Israel are punished if they do not keep their promise to obey Yahweh's command.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 42:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ You made a life-and-death mistake when you requested me to pray to Yahweh our God and claimed to be willing to obey everything he said. ²¹ So today I have told you exactly what he said, but I know that you will not obey Yahweh our God now, just as you have not obeyed him previously. ²² You want to go to Egypt and live there. So now, you can be sure of this: All of you will die there. Some of you will be killed by the swords of your enemies and others will die from famines or from diseases.”

ULB:

²⁰ For you fatally deceived yourselves when you sent me to Yahweh your God and said, ‘Pray to Yahweh our God for us. Everything that Yahweh our God says, tell us, and we will carry it out.’ ²¹ For I have reported to you today, but you have not listened to the voice of Yahweh your God or to anything about which he sent me to you. ²² So now, you should certainly know that you will die by sword, famine, and plague in the place where you desired to go to live.”

translationWords:

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [report](#)
- [voice](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [sword](#)
- [famine](#)
- [plague](#)

translationNotes:

- **we will carry it out** - AT: “we will do it”
- **you will die by sword** - War is referred to by a weapon used to fight. AT: “You will die in warfare.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **in the place where you desired to go to live** - AT: “in Egypt, where you thought you would be safe” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 42 General Notes](#)

- **Jeremiah 42 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 43 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

They did not believe Jeremiah

After Jeremiah prophesied the destruction of Judah, the people did not believe him. Judah was conquered and destroyed. Even after this, the people did not believe they would be safe in Babylon as Jeremiah prophesied. This is shocking. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

Babylon invades Egypt

Babylon is described as invading part of Egypt. This would have been unthinkable for the people. It would have gotten their attention.

Other possible translation issues in this chapter

Symbolic actions

Jeremiah's burial of the stones was intended to be a symbolic action for the people. This was supposed to teach the people a lesson. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 43:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 43:1-3**UDB:**

¹ So I finished telling to the people that message from Yahweh our God. ² But then Johanan son of Kareah and Azariah son of Hoshaiah and some other insolent men said to me, "You are lying! Yahweh our God has not told us that we should not go to Egypt! ³ We think that Baruch son of Neriah has urged you to say this, in order that if we stay here, the soldiers from Babylonia will seize us and kill us or take us to Babylonia."

ULB:

43 ¹ It happened that Jeremiah finished proclaiming to all the people all the words of Yahweh their God that Yahweh their God had told him to say. ² Azariah son of Hoshaiah, Johanan son of Kareah, and all the arrogant men said to Jeremiah, "You are telling lies. Yahweh our God has not sent you to say, 'Do not go to Egypt to live there.' ³ For Baruch son of Neriah is inciting you against us to deliver us into the hand of the Chaldeans, for you to cause our death and to make us captives in Babylon."

translationWords:

- Jeremiah
- proclaim, proclamation
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- God
- Yahweh
- Azariah
- arrogant
- send, send out, sent
- Egypt, Egyptian
- life, live, living, alive
- Baruch
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- death, die, dead
- captive, captivity
- Babylon, Babylonian

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)

- **It happened that** - This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **Hoshaiah ... Johanan ... Kareah ... Neriah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **inciting** - to cause someone to want to harm others.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 43 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 43 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 43:4-7

UDB:

⁴ So Johanan and the other leaders of the Judean soldiers and many of the other people who were there refused to obey Yahweh's command to stay in Judah. ⁵ Johanan and all the other leaders gathered together all the people who had returned from the other countries to which they had been scattered. ⁶ They included men, women, children, the king's daughters, and all those whom Nebuzaradan had left with Gedaliah, and they also took Baruch and me. ⁷ They refused to obey Yahweh, and they took us all to Egypt, as far as the city of Tahpanhes.

ULB:

⁴ So Johanan son of Kareah, all the princes of the army, and all the people refused to listen to Yahweh's voice to live in the land of Judah. ⁵ Johanan son of Kareah and all the army commanders took away all the remnant of Judah who had returned from all the nations where they had been scattered to live in the land of Judah. ⁶ They took the men and women, the children and the king's daughters, and every person whom Nebuzaradan, the captain of the king's bodyguards, had let remain with Gedaliah son of Ahikam son of Shaphan. They also took Jeremiah the prophet and Baruch son of Neriah. ⁷ They went to the land of Egypt, to Tahpanhes, because they did not listen to Yahweh's voice.

translationWords:

- prince, princess
- voice
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- commander, command
- remnant
- nation
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **refused to listen to Yahweh's voice** - "would not obey Yahweh's command" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **where they had been scattered** - "where Yahweh had caused them to go and be separated" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Nebuzaradan ... Gedaliah ... Ahikam ... Shaphan** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Tahpanhes** - This is the name of a city.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 43 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 43 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 43:8-10

UDB:

⁸ While we were at Tachpanches, Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ⁹ "While the people of Judah are watching you, take some large rocks and bury them under the brick pavement at the entrance to the king's palace there at Tachpanches. ¹⁰ Then say to the people of Judah, "This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says: "I will summon Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, who does my work, to come with his army to Egypt. I will set up his throne over these stones that I told Jeremiah to bury. And Nebuchadnezzar will set up his tent there to show that he has become the king of Egypt.

ULB:

⁸ So the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah in Tahpanhes and said, ⁹ "Take some large stones in your hand, and, in the sight of the people of Judah, hide them in the mortar in the pavement at the entrance to Pharaoh's house in Tahpanhes." ¹⁰ Then say to them, "Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this, 'See, I am about to send messengers to take Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon as my servant. I will place his throne over these stones that you, Jeremiah, have buried. Nebuchadnezzar will place his pavilion over them.

translationWords:

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- house
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- messenger
- Nebuchadnezzar
- servant, slave, slavery
- throne
- bury, buried, burial

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came to** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **I will place his throne over these stones ... his pavilion over them** - Both the king's "throne" and "pavilion" are used to refer to his royal authority. AT: "I will cause him to rule as king over the people of Egypt. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **pavilion** - a very large tent.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 43 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 43 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 43:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ When his army comes, they will attack Egypt. Then those who I have determined must die, those who I have determined must be captured will be captured, and those who I have determined must be killed by swords will be killed by swords. ¹² Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers will burn down the temples of the gods of Egypt and take away their idols as souvenirs. His troops will clean Egypt like a shepherd cleans lice from his cloak and leave without having been harmed. ¹³ But before they leave, they will have torn down the pillars that are in the temple of their sun god and burned all of the temple of the false Egyptian gods.”

ULB:

¹¹ For he will come and attack the land of Egypt. Anyone who is assigned to death will be given to death. Anyone who is assigned to captivity will be taken captive. Anyone who is assigned to the sword will be given to the sword. ¹² Then I will light a fire in the temples of Egypt's gods. Nebuchadnezzar will burn them or capture them. He will clean out the land of Egypt just as shepherds clean vermin off their clothes. He will go out from that place in victory.[1]Instead of *I will light a fire*, some ancient and modern versions have *he will light a fire*. ¹³ He will break the stone pillars at Heliopolis in the land of Egypt. He will burn the temples of Egypt's gods.”

translationWords:

- assign, assigned
- death, die, dead
- captive, captivity
- sword
- fire
- temple
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- clean, cleanse
- shepherd, to shepherd
- pillar, column

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues telling his message.
- **he will come** - AT: “Nebuchadnezzar will come”
- **Anyone who is assigned to death will be given to death** - AT: “Everyone will die whom I have decided must die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **Anyone who is assigned to captivity will be taken captive** - AT: “The Babylonians will take everyone captive whom I have decided must go into captivity” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **And anyone who is assigned to the sword will be given to the sword** - AT: “Everyone will die in battle whom I have decided will die in battle” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **He will clean out the land of Egypt just as shepherds clean vermin off their clothes** - “He will take everything valuable from Egypt just as a shepherd is careful to get every insect off of his clothes” (See: [Simile](#))
- **Heliopolis** - the name of a city, “Sun City” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 43 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 43 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

The people called Ashtoreth the goddess of the Canaanites, “the queen of heaven.” (See: [Idiom](#) and [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 44:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 44:1-3**UDB:**

¹ This is the message that Yahweh gave me concerning the Judeans who were living in northern Egypt—in Migdol, Tachpanches, and Memphis—and in the region of Pathros in southern Egypt: ² "This is what I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, say: You saw the disaster that I caused the people in Jerusalem and the other towns in Judah to experience. Those towns are now ruined and deserted. ³ That happened because I was extremely angry with them on account of their being very wicked. They burned incense to other gods and worshiped them. They were gods that you previously did not know about, and your ancestors also did not know about them.

ULB:

44 ¹ This was the word that came to Jeremiah concerning all the Judeans who lived in the land of Egypt, the ones staying in Migdol, Tahpanhes, Memphis, and in the land of Patros. ² "Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: You yourselves have seen all the disasters that I brought on Jerusalem and all the cities of Judah. See, they are ruins today. There is no one to live in them. ³ This is because of the wicked things they did to offend me by going to burn incense and to worship other gods. These were gods that neither they themselves, nor you, nor your ancestors knew.

translationWords:

- word
- Jeremiah
- Judea
- life, live, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Jerusalem
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- ruin, ruins
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- incense
- worship
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **This was the word that came to Jeremiah** - “This was the message Yahweh gave to Jeremiah” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Migdol ... Tahpanhes ... Memphis ... Patros** - These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **You yourselves have seen** - The word “yourselves” is used for emphasis a to specify the people of Judea who live in the land of Egypt. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))
- **See** - “Listen” or “Pay attention” or “Be sure you understand this:” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **they did to offend me** - “the people of Jerusalem and all the cities of Judah did to offend me”
- **they themselves** - “the people from the ruined cities” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44:4-6

UDB:

⁴ Many times I sent my prophets who served me, to say to them, ‘Do not do those abominable things that I hate!’ ⁵ But my people would not pay any attention to what I said to them. They would not turn away from their wicked behavior, or stop burning incense to worship other gods. ⁶ So I poured out the consequences of my great anger on them. My punishment fell on the streets of Jerusalem and on the other towns in Judah like a fire. It caused those towns to be ruined and deserted, and they are still like that.

ULB:

⁴ So I repeatedly sent all of my servants the prophets to them. I sent them to say, ‘Stop doing these abominable things that I hate.’ ⁵ But they did not listen. They refused to pay attention or turn from their wickedness in burning incense to other gods. ⁶ So my fury and my wrath were poured out and kindled a fire in the cities of Judah and the streets of Jerusalem. So they became ruins and devastations, as at this present day.”

translationWords:

- send, send out, sent
- servant, slave, slavery
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- abomination, abominable
- turn, turn away, turn back
- wrath, fury
- fire
- ruin, ruins
- devastate, devastation

translationNotes:

- **So I repeatedly sent** - The word “I” refers to Yahweh.
- **my fury and my wrath were poured out** - This describes Yahweh’s punishment as something that he can hold back like water in a container but then pour out when his anger causes him to begin his punishment on those who anger him. AT: “I poured out my fury and my wrath.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **my fury and my wrath** - The words “fury” and “wrath” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of his wrath. AT: “my terrible wrath.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **they became ruins and devastations** - The words “ruins” and “devastations” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the complete devastation of Judah and Jerusalem. AT: “they became completely devastated.” (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ So now I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, ask you: Why are you causing yourselves to experience these disasters? Do you not realize that because of what you are doing, soon there will be no more men or women or children or infants left among you who have come here to Egypt from Judah? ⁸ Why are you provoking me and causing me to be very angry by burning incense to the idols that you have made here in Egypt? If you continue doing this, you will destroy yourselves, and you will cause yourselves to be people whom all the nations on the earth will curse and despise.

ULB:

⁷ So now Yahweh, the God of hosts and the God of Israel, says this, "Why are you doing great wickedness against yourselves? Why are you causing yourselves to be cut off from among Judah—men and women, children and babies? No remnant of you will be left. ⁸ By your wickedness you have offended me with the deeds of your hands, by burning incense to other gods in the land of Egypt, where you have gone to live. You have gone there so that you will be destroyed, so that you will be a curse and a reproach among all the nations of the earth.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- cut off
- remnant
- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- incense
- curse, cursed
- reproach
- nation
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **Why are you doing great wickedness against yourselves? Why are you causing yourselves to be cut off from among Judah—men and women, children and babies?** - Yahweh uses these questions to express to the people of Israel that they should stop doing things that cause them to be punished. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **the deeds of your hands** - The people are referred to by the part of the body used to lit incense. AT: “what you have done” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **you will be destroyed** - AT: “cause me to destroy you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Have you forgotten how I punished your ancestors for the wicked things that they did, and how I punished the kings and queens of Judah for what they did, and you and your wives for the sins that you committed in the streets of Jerusalem and the other towns in Judah? ¹⁰ Up until this day you have not humbled yourselves or revered me. You have not obeyed the laws and decrees that I gave to you and your ancestors.

ULB:

⁹ Have you forgotten the wickedness committed by your ancestors and the wickedness committed by the kings of Judah and their wives? Have you forgotten the evil committed by yourselves and your wives in the land of Judah and the streets of Jerusalem? ¹⁰ To this day, they still are not humbled. They do not honor my law or decrees that I placed before them and their ancestors, nor do they walk in them.”

translationWords:

- king
- humble, humility
- honor, to honor
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- decree
- walk

translationNotes:

- **Have you forgotten the wickedness committed by your ancestors and the wickedness committed by the kings of Judah and their wives?** - Yahweh rebukes the people with this question. “You have forgotten the wickedness that your ancestors committed! You have forgotten the evil that the kings of Judah and their wives committed.” (See: **Rhetorical Question** and **Active or Passive**)
- **Have you forgotten the evil committed by yourselves and your wives ... Jerusalem?** - AT: “You have forgotten the evil that you and your wives committed ... Jerusalem.” (See: **Rhetorical Question** and **Active or Passive**)
- **the streets of Jerusalem** - Jerusalem is referred to by the part of the city where people walk. This means the people did evil things in public places. “Jerusalem” or “the public places of Jerusalem” (See: **Synecdoche**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, say: I am determined to cause all of you to experience disasters and to get rid of everyone in Judah.

¹² You people from Judah who have survived were determined to come and live here in Egypt. So I will get rid of all of you here in Egypt. Every one of you will die, including those who are important and those who are not important. Some of you will be killed by your enemies' swords, some will die from famines. You will become people whom others curse, be horrified about, and make fun of.

ULB:

¹¹ Therefore Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this, "See, I am about to set my face against you to bring disaster to you and to destroy all of Judah. ¹² For I will take the remnant of Judah that has set out to go to the land of Egypt to live there. I will do this so that they will all perish in the land of Egypt. They will fall by sword and famine. From the least to the greatest they will perish by sword and famine. They will die and will become an object of swearing, cursing, reproaching, and a horrible thing.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- face
- Judah
- Egypt, Egyptian
- perish, perishing, perishable
- sword
- famine
- death, die, dead
- oath, swear, swear by
- curse, cursed
- reproach

translationNotes:

- **set my face against you** - A decision is described by someone not moving from the direction they are looking. AT: "decide to be against you" (See: **Idiom**)
- **They will fall** - This is a mild way to say that someone will die. (See: **Euphemism**)
- **by sword** - War is described by the weapon used by most soldiers. (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **From the least to the greatest** - People with the least and the respect in society are used to refer to everyone. (See: **Merism**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44:13-14

UDB:

¹³ I will punish you here in Egypt like I punished others in Jerusalem, some of whom were killed by their enemies' swords and some of whom died from famines or diseases. ¹⁴ You people who did not die in Judah fled here to Egypt to stay here until you could some day you would return to Judah. But very few of you will survive and escape. You are longing to remain alive and return to Judah, but only a very few of you will escape and be able to do that."

ULB:

¹³ For I will punish the people inhabiting the land of Egypt just as I punished Jerusalem with sword, famine, and plague. ¹⁴ No fugitive or survivor of the remnant of Judah who are going to live there in the land of Egypt will return to the land of Judah, even though they want to go back and live there. None of them will return, except for a few who will escape from here."

translationWords:

- [punish, punishment](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [plague](#)

translationNotes:

- **sword, famine, and plague** - The word "sword" is used to refer to war. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **fugitive or survivor** - Both of these words refer to the same people. A fugitive is someone who escapes from someone who wants to kill them or take them captive. (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Then a large group of the people who had started to live in northern Egypt and southern Egypt, including all the men who knew that their wives had been burning incense to other gods, and all the women who were standing there, said this to me: ¹⁶ "You are saying that Yahweh gave messages to you, but we will not pay any attention to your messages! ¹⁷ We will certainly do everything that we said that we would do. We will burn incense to worship our goddess Asherah, the Queen of Heaven, and we will pour out offerings of wine to her, just like we and our ancestors and our kings and their officials have always done in the streets of Jerusalem and in the other towns in Judah. At that time, we had plenty of food, and we were prosperous and we did not have any troubles.

ULB:

¹⁵ Then all the men who knew that their wives were burning incense to other gods, and all the women who were in the great assembly, and all the people who were living in the land of Egypt in Pathros answered Jeremiah. ¹⁶ They said, "About the word that you have told us in Yahweh's name: We will not listen to you. ¹⁷ For we will certainly do all the things that we said we would do: burn incense to the Queen of Heaven and pour out drink offerings to her just as we, our ancestors, our kings, and our leaders did in the cities of Judah and the streets of Jerusalem. Then we will be filled with food and will prosper, without experiencing any disaster.

translationWords:

- incense
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- assembly, assemble
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jeremiah
- word
- Yahweh
- name
- queen
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- drink offering
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

translationNotes:

- **Pathros** - This is the name of a region of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **About the word that you have told us in Yahweh's name: We will not listen to you** - AT: "We will not obey the command you have given us by Yahweh's authority"
- **Queen of Heaven** - This is a name or title given to the moon by the people of Judah in Egypt who worshiped it as a goddess.
- **Then we will be filled with food and will prosper, without experiencing any disaster** - AT: "In those days we had plenty of food, and prospered, and saw no disaster"
- **we will be filled with food** - "we will be well fed"
- **Then we will be filled with food and will prosper, without experiencing any disaster** - The people of Judah thought they would prosper because the Queen of Heaven would bless them if they worshiped her. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ But ever since we stopped burning incense to the Queen of Heaven and giving her offerings of wine, we have had many troubles, and some of our people have been killed by our enemies' swords and some have died from hunger."

¹⁹ And the women said, "Furthermore, we burned incense and poured out wine offerings to the Queen of Heaven, and we also made small cakes that resembled her idol, to offer to her. But our husbands certainly knew about and approved of what we were doing!"

ULB:

¹⁸ When we refrained from doing these things, not offering incense to the Queen of Heaven and not pouring out drink offerings to her, we were all suffering poverty and were dying by sword and famine." ¹⁹ The women said, "When we were making incense offerings before the Queen of Heaven and pouring out drink offerings to her, did we do these things without our husbands knowing about it?"

translationWords:

- [drink offering](#)
- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The remnant of the people living in Egypt continue to speak. Beginning in v 19, the women address Jeremiah.
- **Queen of Heaven** - See background information in [Jeremiah 44:15-17](#).
- **did we do these things without our husbands knowing about it?** - The women are claiming innocence because they had their husbands' knowledge and approval. AT: "our husbands knew what we were doing." (See [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Then I said to all the men and women who had answered me, ²¹ "Do not think that Yahweh did not know that you and your ancestors and your kings and their officials and all the other people in Judah were burning incense to worship idols in the streets of Jerusalem and in the other towns in Judah! He knew about it!

ULB:

²⁰ Then Jeremiah said to all the people—to the men and women, and all the people who answered him—he proclaimed and said, ²¹ "Did not Yahweh remember the incense that you burned in the cities of Judah and the streets of Jerusalem—you and your ancestors, your kings and leaders, and the people of the land? For Yahweh calls this to mind; it comes to his thoughts.

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [king](#)
- [mind](#)

translationNotes:

- **Did not Yahweh remember** - "Yahweh remembered" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **calls this to mind** - This means that Yahweh brought this to his attention and memory. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44:22-23

UDB:

²² It was because Yahweh could no longer endure your wicked actions and the detestable things that you were doing that he caused your land to be a place whose name people say when they curse someone, a land that is ruined and which has no one living in it. And your land is still like that. ²³ It is because you burned incense to worship idols and committed other sins against Yahweh that you experienced all those disasters. It is because you have not obeyed him or obeyed his laws and decrees and commandments.”

ULB:

²² Then he was no longer able to bear it because of your wicked practices, because of the abominations that you did. Then your land became a desolation, a horror, and a curse so there was no longer an inhabitant as at this present day. ²³ Because you burned incense and sinned against Yahweh, and because you would not listen to his voice, his law, his statutes, or his covenant decrees, this disaster against you has happened as at this present day.”

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- abomination, abominable
- desolate, desolation
- curse, cursed
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- voice
- law, principle
- statute, statutes
- covenant
- decree

translationNotes:

- **was no longer able to bear it** - “was no longer able to tolerate it”
- **no longer an inhabitant as at this present day** - AT: “no one living there as there is no one living there today.”
- **burned incense** - Why people burn incense can be stated clearly. AT: “burned a sacrifice to false gods” (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **you would not listen to his voice** - Here “voice” refers to Yahweh’s commands. AT: “you would not obey his commands,” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ Then Jeremiah said to all of them, including the women, "All you people of Judah who are here in Egypt, listen to this message from Yahweh. ²⁵ This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says to you men: 'You and your wives have said that you would continue to do what you promised, to burn incense and pour out wine to the goddess whom you call the Queen of Heaven. And you have proved by your actions that you intend to continue to do that. So go ahead and continue doing what you have promised to do for her.'

ULB:

²⁴ Then Jeremiah said to all the people and all the women, "Hear the word of Yahweh, all of Judah who are in the land of Egypt. ²⁵ Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this, 'You and your wives both have said with your mouths and carried out with your hands what you said, "We will certainly carry out the vows that we made to worship the Queen of Heaven, to pour out drink offerings to her." Now fulfill your vows; carry them out.'

translationWords:

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [word](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [vow](#)
- [worship](#)
- [drink offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **said with your mouths and carried out with your hands what you said** - AT: "said and done what you promised you would say and do"
- **Queen of Heaven** - Refer to background information in [Jeremiah 44:15-17](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)

- **Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 44:26-28

UDB:

²⁶ But now, all you people from Judah who are now living here in Egypt, listen to this message from Yahweh. He says, 'I have solemnly declared, using my great name, that soon none of you people from Judah who are here in Egypt will ever again use my name. There will be none of you who, when you solemnly promise to do something, will ever again say, "I will do it as surely as Yahweh lives." ²⁷ Because I will be watching over you, not to cause good things to happen to you but to cause things to happen that will harm you. Almost everyone from Judah who is now here in Egypt will be killed by their enemies' swords or die from famine until almost all of you have come to an end. ²⁸ Only a very few of you will not die by the sword and will return to Judah. When that happens, all those who came to Egypt will find out whose words were true, theirs or mine.'

ULB:

²⁶ So then, hear the word of Yahweh, all of Judah who are staying in the land of Egypt, 'See, I have sworn by my great name—says Yahweh. My name will no longer be called upon by the mouths of any of the men of Judah in all the land of Egypt, you who now say, "As the Lord Yahweh lives."
²⁷ See, I am watching over them for disaster and not for good. Every person of Judah in the land of Egypt will perish by sword and famine until they are all finished. ²⁸ Then the survivors of the sword will return from the land of Egypt to the land of Judah, only a small number of them. So all the remnant of Judah who went to the land of Egypt to live there will know whose word will come true: mine or theirs.

translationWords:

- oath, swear, swear by
- name
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- life, live, living, alive
- good, goodness
- perish, perishing, perishable
- sword
- famine
- remnant
- know, knowledge, make known
- true, truth, come true

translationNotes:

- **See, I have sworn by my great name—says Yahweh** - Yahweh's "great name" refers to his whole being and reputation. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

- **Every person of Judah ... will perish** - AT: "A very large number of the people from Judah ... will perish" (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **by sword and famine** - The "sword" represents those who will die in battle and "famine" represents those who will die of starvation. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 44:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ And Yahweh also says, 'I will do something that will prove to you that everything that I have said will happen, and that I will punish you here in this place. ³⁰ I will cause Hophra, the king of Egypt, to be captured by his enemies who want to kill him, just like I caused King Zedekiah of Judah to be captured by the soldiers of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon.'" And that is what happened several years later.

ULB:

²⁹ This will be the sign for you—this is Yahweh's declaration—that I am setting against you in this place, so that you will know that my words will certainly attack you with disaster.' ³⁰ Yahweh says this, 'Look, I am about to give Pharaoh Hophra king of Egypt into the hand of his enemies and into the hand of those who seek to kill him. It will be the same as when I gave Zedekiah king of Judah into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, his enemy who sought his life.'"

translationWords:

- sign, proof, reminder
- declare, declaration
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- adversary, enemy
- Zedekiah
- king
- Judah
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Babylon, Babylonian

translationNotes:

- **my words will certainly attack you with disaster** - AT: "what I have said will happen and you will have a disaster." (See: [Personification](#))
- **I am about to give over Pharaoh Hophra, king of Egypt, into the hand of his enemies** - AT: "I will allow Pharaoh Hophra's enemies to capture him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Hophra** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **and the ones seeking his life** - AT: "and the people who want to kill him." (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 44 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 45 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter forms a break in the narrative sequence. It records prophecies that have already occurred. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 45:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 45:1-3

UDB:

¹ After Jehoiakim son of King Josiah had been ruling Judah for almost four years, Baruch son of Neriah wrote down all the messages that the prophet Jeremiah had dictated. Jeremiah gave a message and he said, ² "Baruch, Yahweh, the God of Israel, has a message for you. ³ You have said, 'Terrible things are happening to me! I have endured much pain already. And now Yahweh is causing me to be very sad, in addition to my having pain. I am exhausted from my groaning, and I am unable to rest!'

ULB:

45 ¹ This is the word that Jeremiah the prophet told Baruch son of Neriah. This happened when he wrote in a scroll these words at Jeremiah's dictation—this was in the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah, and he said, ² "Yahweh, God of Israel, says this to you, Baruch: ³ You have said, 'Woe is me, for Yahweh has added agony to my pain. My groaning has wearied me; I find no rest.'

translationWords:

- word
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- scroll
- biblical time: year
- Jehoiakim
- Josiah
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Yahweh
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- woe
- rest

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **Baruch ... Neriah** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **at Jeremiah's dictation** - Baruch wrote down the words that Jeremiah said.

- **in the fourth year of Jehoiakim** - “while Jehoiakim had been ruling Judah for the fourth year”
- **he said** - “Jeremiah said to Baruch”
- **added agony to my pain** - “caused me great pain”
- **My groaning has wearied me** - “I am tired from crying” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 45 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 45 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 45:4-5

UDB:

⁴ But Baruch, this is what Yahweh says: 'I will destroy this nation that I established. This nation is like a tree that I planted and that I will now pull up with its roots. ⁵ So, should you desire that people do things to honor you in a special way? Do not desire that. It is true that I will cause all these people to experience a great disaster, but wherever you go, I will protect you, and you will not be killed.'"

ULB:

⁴ This is what you must say to him: 'Yahweh says this: See, what I built, I am now tearing down. What I planted, I am now pulling up. This is true over all the earth. ⁵ But are you hoping for great things for yourself? Do not hope for that. For see, disaster is coming on all humanity—this is Yahweh's declaration—but I am giving you your life as your plunder everywhere you will go.'"

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- earth, earthly
- hope
- declare, declaration
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **This is what you must say to him** - Yahweh is telling Jeremiah what to say to Baruch.
- **This is true over all the earth** - AT: "This will happen over the entire earth"
- **But are you hoping for great things for yourself?** - AT: "You do hope for great things for yourself" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **For see** - AT: "Be aware"
- **plunder** - things stolen from a place by force
- **your life as your plunder** - AT: "I will allow you to live. That will be the best you can hope for." See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 45 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 45 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 46:3-12, 14-24, which are extended quotations.

This begins a section where Jeremiah prophesies about other nations. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Justice

Much of Jeremiah is concerned with Yahweh's punishment of Judah. Yahweh used Egypt to punish Judah. Because Yahweh is just, he is going to punish Egypt for their evil deeds as well. (See: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [works](#), [deeds](#), [work](#), [acts](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Battle preparations

Jeremiah commands to prepare for battle, even though they will not be able to defend themselves. This punishment is already determined by Yahweh. He is not actually commanding them to prepare for battle. This situation is ironic.

Links:

- [Jeremiah 46:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 46:1-4**UDB:**

¹ These are messages that Yahweh gave to the prophet Jeremiah about other nations.

² After Jehoiakim son of King Josiah, had been ruling Judah for almost four years, this message about Egypt was given to me by Yahweh. It was when the army of King Neco of Egypt was defeated by the army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon at Carchemish by the Euphrates River.

This is what Yahweh said: "The officers of the army of Egypt are saying to their troops,

³ 'Prepare your small and large shields
and march out to fight the battle!

⁴ Put harnesses on your horses,
and get on their backs.

Get into your positions for the battle;
put on your helmets.

Sharpen your spears,
and put on your armor!'

ULB:

46 ¹ This is the word of Yahweh that came to Jeremiah the prophet concerning the nations. ² For Egypt: "This is about the army of Pharaoh Neco, king of Egypt that was at Carchemish by the Euphrates river. This was the army that Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon defeated in the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah:

³ Get the small shields and the large shields ready, and go forward to fight.

⁴ Harness the stallions and get on them, you riders. Take your places, with your helmets on your heads.

Polish the spears and put on your armor.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- nation
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt

- Euphrates River
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Jehoiakim
- son, son of
- Josiah
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- shield
- spear
- armor

translationNotes:

- **For Egypt** - This phrase indicates this message is intended for the nation of Egypt.
- **Carchemish** - Carchemish is a city on the west bank of the Euphrates.
- **Harness** - This means to ready a horse for pulling a chariot: a two wheeled wagon of war.
- **helmets** - A helmet is armor which protects the head in battle.
- **Polish the spears** - This phrase means to “sharpen” the spear.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ But what do I see?

I see that the soldiers of Egypt will be terrified and will be fleeing.
Even the bravest of their soldiers will be running away,
without even looking backward!

I, Yahweh, say that their soldiers will be terrified on all sides!

⁶ Even the fastest runners will try to run away,
but even the greatest of their warriors will not escape.
In the north, by the Euphrates River,
they will stumble and fall.

ULB:

⁵ What am I seeing here? They are filled with terror and are running away,
for their soldiers are defeated.

They are running for safety and are not looking back. Terror is all around—
this is Yahweh's declaration—

⁶ the swift cannot run away, and the soldiers cannot escape.

They stumble in the north and fall beside the Euphrates River.

translationWords:

- terror, terrify
- run, running
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- stumble
- Euphrates River

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah's vision for Egypt continues.

- **What am I seeing here?** - The word “I” here refer to Yahweh. Yahweh asks this sarcastic question to emphasize what he has said regarding the nation of Egypt has come true. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the swift cannot run away, and the soldiers cannot escape** - These two phrases share similar meanings emphasize that no one, not even the strongest and fastest, can escape. AT: “even the swiftest soldier cannot escape.” (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ What group is this that will be covering the land

like the water of the Nile River covers the land when it floods and its waves surge?

⁸ It is the army of Egypt

that will be covering the land like a surging flood,
and they will boast that they will cover the earth
and will destroy cities and the people who live in them.

⁹ You riders of horses, charge into the battle!

You drivers of chariots, drive furiously like a crazy person!
All you warriors from Ethiopia and Libya
who carry your shields,
you warriors from Lydia
who shoot arrows,
you come!

ULB:

⁷ Who is this who rises like the Nile, whose waters toss up and down like the rivers?

⁸ Egypt rises like the Nile, and its waters toss up and down like the rivers.

It says, 'I will go up; I will cover the earth. I will destroy cities and their inhabitants.

⁹ Go up, horses. Be angry, you chariots. Let the soldiers go out,

Cush and Put, men skillful with a shield, and Ludim, men skillful at bending their bows.'

translationWords:

- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- like, likeness
- Nile River, River of Egypt
- water, waters

- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthly
- horse
- angry, anger
- chariot
- Cush
- shield
- bow and arrow

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues quoting Yahweh's declaration to the nation of Egypt.
- **Who is this who rises like the Nile** - AT: "Egypt rises like the Nile." Yahweh asks this question to draw the listener's attention to the nation of Egypt. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Egypt rises like the Nile** - Egypt's army is being compared to the destruction caused by the flooding Nile River.
- **It says** - Here the nation of Egypt is speaking like a person. (See: [Personification](#))
- **'I will go up; I will cover the earth. I will destroy cities and their inhabitants.'** - "I" is nation of Egypt that is proudly declaring that its armies will destroy the earth like a flood.
- **Go up, horses. Be angry, you chariots.** - Yahweh commands the horses and chariots as if they were people. Both the words "horses" and "chariots" are referring to parts of chariots in battle. These phrases are commanding the chariot drivers to charge into battle. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Personification](#))
- **Cush ... Put ... Ludim** - These are biblical names for the countries of Ethiopia, Libya, and Lydia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **bending their bows** - This phrase means to use the bow by pulling the string back with an arrow.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ But, you need to know that this is the day when I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, will get revenge on my enemies.

With my sword I will kill my enemies until I am satisfied;

my sword will be like a monster that drinks the blood of the animals
it kills until it is no longer thirsty.

The enemy soldiers who will be killed in the north beside the Euphrates
River

will be like a sacrifice to me, the Lord Yahweh, commander of the
angel armies.

ULB:

¹⁰ That day will be the day of vengeance for the Lord Yahweh of hosts, and he will avenge himself on his foes.

The sword will devour and be satisfied. It will drink its fill of their blood.
For there will be a sacrifice

to the Lord Yahweh of hosts in the northern land by the Euphrates River.

translationWords:

- biblical time: day
- avenge, revenge, vengeance
- Lord
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- sword
- devour
- blood
- sacrifice, offering
- Euphrates River

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah's quotation of Yahweh's declaration to the nation of Egypt continues.

- **That day** - This phrase refers to the day the Egyptians lose the battle to the Babylonians.
- **his foes** - This word means enemies of Yahweh.
- **sword will devour and be satisfied. It will drink its fill of their blood** - Here the sword is eating as a person would. Both these phrases are saying similar thing and are combined to emphasize that there will be complete destruction. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Personification](#))
- **sword will devour** - The word “sword” here represents the army of the nation of Babylon. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **sacrifice to the Lord Yahweh** - The “sacrifice” here is the nation of Egypt. AT: “Egypt will be a sacrifice to the Lord Yahweh.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ You innocent people of Egypt,

go up to the region of Gilead to obtain medicine;

but it will be useless to take all those medicines;

you will not be healed.

¹² People in the other nations hear how you were humiliated.

People all over the earth hear you wailing.

Your mighty warriors stumble over each other

and they all fall down together.”

ULB:

¹¹ Go up to Gilead and obtain medicine, virgin daughter of Egypt.

It is useless that you put much medicine on yourself. There is no cure for you.

¹² The nations have heard of your disgrace. The earth is filled with your laments,

for soldier stumbles against soldier; both of them fall together.”

translationWords:

- Gilead
- virgin
- Egypt, Egyptian
- heal, cure
- nation
- earth, earthly
- lament, lamentation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh finishes his declaration to Egypt.
- **virgin daughter of Egypt** - AT: “Unspoiled people of Egypt”. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **disgrace** - This word means a condition of feeling ashamed or the loss of respect.
- **The earth is filled with your laments** - AT: everyone can hear your crying. (See: **Hyperbole**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Then Yahweh gave to the prophet Jeremiah this message about King Nebuchadnezzar when he planned to attack Egypt with his army:

¹⁴ "Shout this message throughout Egypt!

Proclaim it in the cities of Migdol, Memphis, and Tahpanes!

'Get into your positions for the battle;

Prepare to defend yourselves,

because everyone around you will be killed.'

ULB:

¹³ This is the word that Yahweh told Jeremiah the prophet when Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came and attacked the land of Egypt:

¹⁴ "Report to Egypt and let it be heard in Migdol and Memphis.

In Tahpanhes they have said, 'Station yourself and take a stand, for the sword is devouring all around you.

translationWords:

- word
- Yahweh
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- report
- sword
- devour

translationNotes:

- **Migdol ... Memphis ... Tahpanhes** - These are important military cities in Egypt. Memphis was the capitol city of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the sword is devouring all around you** - The word "sword" here represents the army of Babylon. The phrase "the sword is devouring" is "causing destruction." AT: "the army of Babylon is causing destruction." (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Why do those whose strength you trust fall down?

They cannot stand up,
because Yahweh will knock them down.

¹⁶ The soldiers from other countries will stumble and fall over each other,
and then they will say to each other,

”Let us get up and go back to our own people, to our own land.
Let us get away from the swords of our enemies!”

¹⁷ There in Egypt they will say,
”The king of Egypt talks loudly,
but when our army had an opportunity to defeat our enemies,
they failed.”

ULB:

¹⁵ Why has your god Apis run away? Why is your bull-god not standing?
Yahweh has thrown him down.

¹⁶ He increases the numbers of those who stumble. Each soldiers falls
against the next one. They are saying, ”Get up. Let us go home.

Let us go back to our own people, to our native land. Let us leave this sword
that is beating us down.”

¹⁷ They proclaimed there, “Pharaoh the king of Egypt is only a noise, one
who has let his opportunity slip away.”

translationWords:

- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- Yahweh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- sword
- proclaim, proclamation
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt

translationNotes:

- **Why has your god Apis run away?** - AT: “Your god Apis has run away.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Apis** - This is one of the chief gods of Egypt. Here “Apis” represents “strength you trust” (UDB) of the nation of Egypt. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Why is your bull-god not standing?** - AT: “Your bull-god is unable to stand.” Apis was represented in idols as a bull. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Yahweh has thrown him down** - AT: “Yahweh has defeated Apis, your bull-god.”
- **this sword that is beating us down** - Here “sword” refers to the army of the nation of Babylon. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Personification](#))
- **Pharaoh the king of Egypt is only a noise, one who has let his opportunity slip away** - These two phrases are saying that the nation of Egypt has become of little importance. AT: “Pharaoh brags much but cannot do what he brags he will.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ I, the King, who is called Yahweh, commander of the angel armies,

say this:

'As surely as I live, an army is coming to fight against the army of Egypt.

They will be extremely powerful,

as though they were as tall as Tabor Hill,

or as high as Mount Carmel, close to the Mediterranean Sea.

¹⁹ All you people who live in Egypt,

pack your possessions and prepare to be exiled.

Memphis will be destroyed;

it will become a ruin, and no people will be living there.

ULB:

¹⁸ "As I live—this is the king's declaration—Yahweh of hosts by name,

someone will come who is like Mount Tabor and Mount Carmel by the sea.

¹⁹ Pack for yourselves bags to carry into exile, you daughters who live in Egypt.

For Memphis will become a waste, a ruin. No one will live there.

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- king
- declare, declaration
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- name
- Carmel, Mount Carmel
- exile, the Exile
- ruin, ruins

translationNotes:

- **someone will come who is like Mount Tabor and Mount Carmel by the sea** - This refers to the nation of Babylon who will be as overwhelming to the nation of Egypt as these two mountains are to the plains that surround them.
- **Pack for yourselves bags** - AT: "prepare to travel"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ Egypt is like a beautiful young cow,

but a powerful king from the northeast is surely coming to attack
it

like a horsefly bites a cow.

²¹ The mercenaries that Egypt has hired are like fat calves because of the
Egyptians' money;

but they also will turn around and run away;

they will not stand there and fight,

because it will be a day when there will be a great disaster for Egypt,
a day when their people will be greatly punished.

²² The soldiers of Egypt will run away,

as silently as a snake slithers away.

The army of the enemy will advance;

they will march along carrying their axes

like men who cut down trees.

ULB:

²⁰ Egypt is a very beautiful young cow, but a stinging insect is coming from
the north. It is coming.

²¹ The hired soldiers in her midst are like a fattened bull, but they will also
turn away and run away.

They will not stand together, for the day of their disaster is coming against
them, the time of their punishment.

²² Egypt hisses like a snake and crawls away, for her enemies are marching
against her.

They are going toward her like woodcutters with axes.

translationWords:

- Egypt, Egyptian
- cow, calf, bull, cattle

- [time](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [serpent, snake, viper](#)
- [ax](#)

translationNotes:

- **Egypt is a very beautiful young cow** - The nation of Egypt is being compared to a beautiful young female cow. It is possible that this comparison is made to have Egypt be the mate of the bull-god Apis. AT: “Egypt is like a very beautiful heifer.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **stinging insect** - This refers the army of the nation of Babylon. A stinging insect would cause painful sores but would otherwise not cause permanent harm to the animal stung. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **soldiers in her midst are like a fattened bull** - The writer compares soldiers to “fattened bulls” because the soldiers are well cared for and readied for slaughter. (See: [Simile](#))
- **They will not stand together** - The writer is saying that the soldiers will not fight as a unit but will run away thinking only of saving themselves.
- **Egypt hisses like a snake and crawls away** - The writer is saying that the nation of Egypt is like snakes that can do nothing but hiss and crawl away in fear when woodcutters disturb their nest. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46:23-24**UDB:**

²³ I, Yahweh, say that they will kill the soldiers of Egypt

as though they were cutting down a forest of trees,

because the enemy soldiers will be as numerous as a swarm of locusts.

²⁴ The people of Egypt will be humiliated;

they will be conquered by people from the northeast.'

ULB:

²³ They will cut down the forests—this is Yahweh's declaration—although it is very dense.

For the enemies will be more numerous than locusts, unable to be counted.

²⁴ The daughter of Egypt will be made ashamed. She will be given into the hand of people from the north."

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- Egypt, Egyptian
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

translationNotes:

- **They will cut down the forests** - The invading army will be like woodcutters cutting down a whole forest. AT: "The Babylonian army will cut down the cities of Egypt." (See: **Metaphor**)
- **They** - This refers to the army of the nation of Babylon invading Egypt.
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - AT: "This is what Yahwah says" (See how you translated this in **Chapter 1:8**)
- **it is very dense** - This refers to the very large number and closeness of cities in Egypt
- **locusts** - This is a type of insect that travels in very large groups and can cause great destruction by eating crops.

- **daughter ... will be made ashamed** - Jeremiah is saying that the people of Egypt will be shamed before the nations and especially because the women and girls will be violated by the soldiers of Babylon. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **the hand of people from the north** - Here this phrase means, “the power of the nation of Babylon that comes from the north.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, say, 'I will punish Amon, the god whom the people of the city of Thebes worship, and all the other gods in Egypt. I will punish the king of Egypt and all those who trust in him. ²⁶ I will cause them to be captured by those who want to kill them—Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, and his army officers. But many years later, people will live in Egypt again. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.'

ULB:

²⁵ Yahweh of hosts, the God of Israel, says, "See, I am about to punish Amon of Thebes, Pharaoh, Egypt and her gods, her kings the Pharaohs, and those who trust in them. ²⁶ I am giving them into the hand of the ones seeking their lives, and into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and his servants. Then after this Egypt will be inhabited as in previous days—this is Yahweh's declaration."

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- punish, punishment
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Egypt, Egyptian
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- life, live, living, alive
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- servant, slave, slavery
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **Amon of Thebes** - "Amon" is the king of the Egyptian gods. "Thebes" is the capital of Egypt, and here represents the entire Egyptian empire. AT: "Amon, god over all of Egypt" (See:

Metonymy and How to Translate Names)

- **I am giving them ... into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and his servants** - Here Nebuchadnezzar represents the whole nation of Babylon, and his “hand” represents “control.” AT: “Yahweh is giving control of Egypt to the nation of Babylon.” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **Then after this Egypt will be inhabited as in previous days** - AT: “After the punishment of Yahweh, the nation of Egypt will return to being an independent nation.”
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in **1:8**

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 46:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ But you people of Israel who serve me,

do not be at all dismayed now,

because some day I will bring you back from distant places;

I will bring your descendants from the land to which they were exiled.

Then you Israelite people will again live peacefully and safely,

and there will not be any nation to cause you to be terrified.

²⁸ I, Yahweh, say to you people of Israel who serve me,

'Do not be afraid,

because I will be with you.

I will completely destroy the nations among whom I have scattered you,

but I will not completely get rid of you.

I will punish you, but I will punish you only as severely as you deserve:

it would be wrong if I did not punish you at all.'"

ULB:

²⁷ "But you, my servant Jacob, do not fear. Do not be dismayed, Israel, for see, I am about to bring you back from far away, and your offspring from the land of their captivity. Then Jacob will return, find peace, and be secure, and there will be no one to terrify him. ²⁸ You, my servant Jacob, do not fear—this is Yahweh's declaration—for I am with you, so I will bring complete destruction against all the nations where I scattered you. But I will not destroy you completely. Yet I will discipline you justly and will certainly not leave you unpunished.'"

translationWords:

- Jacob, Israel
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- offspring
- captive, captivity
- peace, peaceful
- terror, terrify
- nation
- discipline, self-discipline
- just, justice, justly

translationNotes:

- **my servant Jacob, do not fear. Do not be dismayed, Israel** - These two phrases mean the same thing. Together they strengthen the encouragement to the people of Judah not to be afraid. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **will certainly not leave you unpunished** - "will certainly punish you." (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 46 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 47 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 47:2-7, which is an extended quotation.

Jeremiah prophesies about other nations continue in this chapter. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Flood waters

This chapter uses the imagery of a flood to describe the enemies who conquer the Philistines. Their destruction will be swift and complete. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 47:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 47:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave to the prophet Jeremiah a message about the people of Philistia. The message was given to him before the city of Gaza in Philistia was captured by the army of Egypt.

² This is what Yahweh said:

”An army will be coming from the northeast
that will cover the land like a flood.
They will destroy the land and everything in it;
they will destroy people and cities.
People will scream out for help;
and everyone in the land will wail in mourning.

ULB:

47 ¹ This is the word of Yahweh that came to Jeremiah the prophet concerning the Philistines. This word came to him before Pharaoh attacked Gaza.

² ”Yahweh says this: See, floods of water are rising in the north. They will be like an overflowing river!

Then they will overflow the land and everything in it, its cities and its inhabitants! So everyone will shout for help,

and all the inhabitants of the land will lament.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Philistines
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Gaza
- flood
- water, waters
- lament, lamentation

translationNotes:

- **See** - The word “See” alerts us to pay attention to what is about to be said.
- **floods of water are rising in the north. They will be like an overflowing river!** - The two phrases have similar meaning and are combined for emphasis. The “waters” and “river” both represent the army coming from the north (probably the Babylonians). (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **they will overflow the land** - “they” refers to the army from the north.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 47 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 47 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 47:3-4**UDB:**

³ They will hear the sound of the hooves of the enemy horses,

and they will hear the rumble of the wheels of their enemies' chariots.

Men will run away;

they will not stop to help their own children but will be completely weak and helpless .

⁴ It will be the time for all the people of Philistia to be destroyed,

and the time to stop the remaining soldiers from being able to help the people living in the cities of Tyre and Sidon.

I, Yahweh, will destroy the people of Philistia,

those whose ancestors long ago came from Island of Crete.

ULB:

³ At the sound of the stamping of their strong horses' hooves,

at the roar of their chariots and the noise of their wheels,

fathers will not help their children because of their own weakness.

⁴ For the day is coming that will devastate all of the Philistines, to cut off from Tyre and Sidon

every survivor who wants to help them. For Yahweh is devastating the Philistines,

those who remain from the island of Caphtor.

translationWords:

- horse
- hoof, hoofed, hooves
- chariot
- ancestor, father, forefather
- children, child
- devastate, devastation
- Philistines
- cut off
- Tyre, Tyrians
- Sidon, Sidonians

translationNotes:

- **At the sound of the stamping of their strong horses' hooves, at the roar of their chariots and the noise of their wheels** - Together these represent the sounds of an oncoming army. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **roar of their chariots and the noise of their wheels** - These two phrase have similar meanings and combined for emphasis. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Caphtor** - This is the name of an island of the northern region of the Philistines. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 47 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 47 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 47:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ The people of Gaza will be humiliated;

they will shave off all the hair on their heads to indicate that they are ashamed.

The people of the city of Ashkelon will all be silent because they will be mourning.

All you people who live along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea who are still alive,

how long will you gash yourselves because you are mourning?"

⁶ The people of Philistia say, "Yahweh, when will you tell our enemies to stop killing us with their swords?

Tell them to put them back into their sheaths and allow them to stay there!"

⁷ But it would not be right for their swords to stay there,

because Yahweh has commanded their enemies to do something more;

Yahweh intends to tell them to attack all the people living in Ashkelon and in other cities along the coast.

ULB:

⁵ Baldness will come upon Gaza. As for Ashkelon, the people who are left in their valley will be made silent. How long will you cut yourself in mourning? ⁶ Woe, sword of Yahweh! How long will it be until you become silent?

Go back to your scabbard! Stop and be silent.

⁷ How can you be quiet, for Yahweh has commanded you.

He has summoned you to attack Ashkelon and against the coastlands along the sea."

translationWords:

- Gaza
- Ashkelon
- mourn, mourning

- [woe](#)
- [sword](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)

translationNotes:

- **Baldness** - The shaving of the entire head or portions of the head is a sign of great sorrow practiced by idol worshipers in nations such as Philistia.
- **the people ... will be made silent.** - AT: "The people ... will be killed." (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **How long will you cut yourself in mourning** - The cutting of one's skin was another practice done by the idol worshipers when they mourn the dead.
- **sword of Yahweh** - This phrase refers to the army from the north which Yahweh is using to punish the Philistines. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **How long will it be until you become silent** - The people of Philistines use this question to express their deep frustration about the devastation caused by their enemies. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **you** - This refers to the sword of Yahweh as if it was a person. (See: [Personification](#))
- **scabbard** - The case used to protect the blade of a sword.
- **How can you be quiet, for Yahweh has commanded you** - The word "you" refers to the "sword of Yahweh." (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 47 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 47 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 48:1-25, 28-33, 39-47, which are extended quotations.

Jeremiah prophesies about other nations continue in this chapter. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Obeying Yahweh

Moab worshiped and served other gods. Despite this, Yahweh expected every nation to worship and serve him and him alone. They were punished because of it. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 48:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 48:1-2**UDB:**

¹ This is a message about Moab. Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, says,

”Terrible things will happen to the city of Nebo;
it will soon be ruined.

the city of Kiriathaim will be put to shame. It is taken!

The defended fortress will be ruined, and its people will become ashamed.

² No one will boast about Moab again;

the enemies of Moab will plan to destroy the capital city, Heshbon.

They will say, ‘Come, let us cause Moab to no longer be a nation.’

You also, You Madmen! you also will be silenced;

enemy armies will pursue you to kill you.

ULB:

48 ¹ To Moab, Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this,

”Woe to Nebo, for it has been devastated. Kiriathaim has been captured and humiliated.

Her fortress has been crushed and disgraced.

² The honor of Moab is no more. Their enemies in Heshbon plotted disaster against her.

They said, ‘Come and let us destroy her as a nation. Madmen will also perish—a sword will go after you.’

translationWords:

- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- woe
- devastate, devastation
- stronghold, fortress, fortified

- honor, to honor
- adversary, enemy
- nation
- perish, perishing, perishable
- sword

translationNotes:

- **Nebo** - This is the name of one of the mountains in Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Kiriathaim** - This is the name of a city in Moab.
- **Kiriathaim has been captured and humiliated.** - “The enemy has captured the city of Kiriathaim and its people can no longer be proud of it.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **The honor of Moab is no more** - This means that the respect that Moab enjoyed in the past will be gone.
- **Heshbon** - This is the name of the royal city of the king of the Amorites.
- **Madmen will also perish** - “Madman” is a town in Moab. “Their enemies will destroy the city of Madman” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a sword will go after you** - This means an army will invade Moab. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:3-5**UDB:**

³ Listen to the people of Horonaim screaming;

they will be wailing because their town was completely destroyed

.

⁴ All of Moab will be ruined;

even the little children will cry loudly.

⁵ They will cry bitterly

as they climb up Luhith hill.

Others will wail on the road down to Horonaim.

They were so very sad because their town was completely destroyed.

ULB:

³ Listen! A sound of screaming is coming from Horonaim, where there is ruin and great destruction.

⁴ Moab has been destroyed. Her children have made their cries heard.

⁵ They go up the hill of Luhith weeping,

for on the way down to Horonaim, screams are heard because of the destruction.

translationWords:

- ruin, ruins
- children, child

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah continues to tell of the destruction of Moab.
- **Horonaim** - This is the name of a town in the south of Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **ruin and great destruction** - These two terms mean the same thing. Together they emphasize complete destruction. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Her children** - This refers to the people of Moab. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Luhith** - This is the name of a place in Moab.
- **because of the destruction** - AT: "because of the destruction of the town". (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Someone will say to them, 'Flee!

Hide in the desert!'

⁷ But you trusted that because you were rich and powerful, you would be safe;

so you will be captured.

Your god Chemosh and all his priests and officials

will be taken away to distant lands.

ULB:

⁶ Flee! Save your lives and become like a juniper bush in the wilderness.

⁷ For because of your trust in your practices and your wealth, you also will be captured.

Then Chemosh will go away into captivity, together with his priests and leaders.

translationWords:

- save, safe
- life, live, living, alive
- desert, wilderness
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- captive, captivity
- priest, priesthood

translationNotes:

- **Save your lives** - The word "your" refers to the people of Moab.
- **become like a juniper bush** - The people who escape the destruction in the city are compared to a bush which survives the harsh conditions in the desert and has green leaves all year. (See: [Simile](#))
- **trust in your practices** - AT: "to live by following the customs and teachings of your religion"
- **Chemosh** - "Chemosh" is the chief god of the Moabites. Here "Chemosh" represents the nation of Moab. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ All the towns in Moab will be destroyed;

none of them will escape.

Towns in the valleys and on the plateau will all be destroyed,

because Yahweh has said that is what will happen.

⁹ Someone should help all the people in Moab to run away,

so that their land will be empty,

so that no one will live in it any longer.”

¹⁰ May Yahweh punish anyone who will not eagerly do what he desires;

may he curse anyone who refrains from using his sword to kill the people in Moab.

ULB:

⁸ For the destroyer will come to every city; no city will escape.

So the valley will perish and the plain will be devastated, as Yahweh has said.

⁹ Give wings to Moab, for she must certainly fly away.

Her cities will become a wasteland, where there is no one to live in them.

¹⁰ May anyone who is lazy in doing Yahweh’s work be cursed! May anyone who keeps his sword back from shedding blood be cursed!

translationWords:

- **destroyer**
- **perish, perishing, perishable**
- **devastate, devastation**
- **Yahweh**
- **Moab, Moabite, Moabites**
- **waste, wasteland**
- **life, live, living, alive**
- **works, deeds, work, acts**

- [curse, cursed](#)
- [sword](#)
- [blood](#)

translationNotes:

- **So the valley will perish and the plain will be devastated** - These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that every part of the land will be destroyed. AT: “So the destroyer will destroy every city in the valleys and on the plains.” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Merism](#))
- **Give wings to Moab** - This command is an exaggeration, because no one can put wings on people. Also, the idea of flying away represents the idea of rapidly running away. AT: “Help the people of Moab escape,” “It would be good if the people of Moab had wings and could fly away.” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **shedding blood** - AT: “killing people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ The people of Moab have always felt secure;

they have never been exiled.

They are like wine that has been left undisturbed in a container for many days to give it good flavor,

so now it is smells good,

and it tastes good.

¹² But Yahweh says that there will be a time when he will send enemies to attack them;

they will get rid of the people of Moab like people pour out wine on the ground

and then smash the wine jar.

ULB:

¹¹ Moab has felt secure since he was young. He is like his wine that has never been poured from pot to pot. He has never gone into captivity.

Therefore he tastes as good as ever; his flavor remains unchanged. ¹² So see, the days are coming—this is Yahweh’s declaration—when I will send him those who will tip him over and pour out all his pots and shatter his jars.

translationWords:

- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- captive, captivity
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- send, send out, sent

translationNotes:

- **Moab has felt secure since he was young** - Here “he” refers to the entire nation of Moab. (See: [Personification](#))

- **He is like his wine that has never been poured from pot to pot** - The word “he” is the nation of Moab. The nation of Moab is being compared to wine that has not been exiled from its land. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Therefore he tastes as good as ever; his flavor remains unchanged** - These two phrases mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **So see, the days are coming** - “Listen carefully because soon”
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **tip him over and pour out all his pots and shatter his jars** - These two phrase are saying similar things and are combined for emphasis. Both of them refer to the oncoming destruction of the nation of Moab. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Then the people of Moab will be ashamed of their god Chemosh that they had trusted in, because it did not help them,

like the Israelite people were ashamed because their gold statue of a calf was smashed at Bethel.

¹⁴ The soldiers of Moab previously said, "We are warriors; we have fought bravely in battles!"

ULB:

¹³ Then Moab will be ashamed of Chemosh just as the house of Israel was ashamed of Bethel, their object of trust.

¹⁴ How can you say, 'We are soldiers, powerful fighting men'?

translationWords:

- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [house](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [power, powers](#)

translationNotes:

- **How can you say** - The word "you" means the Moabite soldiers.
- **How can you say, 'We are soldiers, powerful fighting men'?** - AT: "No longer can you say, 'We are soldiers, powerful fighting men.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ But now our king, who is called Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says that the country of Moab and all the towns in it will be destroyed.

Their fine young men will all be slaughtered.

¹⁶ Moab will very soon be destroyed.

They will soon experience disaster.

¹⁷ You people who live in nations near Moab,

who know that it is very famous,

should mourn for Moab,

and say, "Its glorious power is completely ended."

ULB:

¹⁵ Moab will be devastated and its cities attacked. For its finest young men have gone down

to the place of slaughter.

This is the king's declaration! Yahweh of hosts is his name.

¹⁶ Moab's disaster is soon to happen; calamity is hurrying quickly.

¹⁷ All you who are around Moab, wail; and all you who know its fame,

shout this, 'Woe, the strong staff, the honored rod, has been broken.'

translationWords:

- devastate, devastation
- slaughter
- king
- declare, declaration
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- name
- woe
- staff
- honor, to honor
- rod

translationNotes:

- **its finest young men have gone down to the place of slaughter.** - AT: "Their fine young men will all be slaughtered." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Moab's disaster is soon to happen; calamity is hurrying quickly** - These two sentences mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Moab's destruction will happen very soon. AT: "Moab's enemies will destroy her very soon." (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **the strong staff, the honored rod, has been broken** - Here the words "staff" and "rod" refer to the power and political support that Moab provided to other nations. AT: "Moab's enemies have broken her great power." (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Doublet](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ You people of the city of Dibon, stop being proud because of being honored,

and sit in the dust where you will thirst for water,
because those who will destroy other places in Moab will attack your city
and destroy your fortifications.

¹⁹ You people of the city of Aroer,

stand along the road and watch.
Shout to the men and women who will be fleeing from Moab,
“What has happened there?”

²⁰ They will reply,

“Moab is ruined and we are disgraced!”
So weep and wail .
Proclaim to Amon that Moab has been destroyed.

ULB:

¹⁸ Come down from your honored place and sit on the dry ground, you daughter living in Dibon.

For the one who will destroy Moab is attacking you, the one who will destroy your strongholds.

¹⁹ Stand on the road and watch, you people who live in Aroer.

Ask the ones who are fleeing and escaping. Say, ‘What has happened?’

²⁰ Moab has been shamed, for it has been shattered. Howl and lament; shout for help.

Tell it to people by the Arnon River that Moab has been devastated.

translationWords:

- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- watch, watchman
- life, live, living, alive
- lament, lamentation

translationNotes:

- **sit on the dry ground, you daughter living in Dibon** - The word “daughter” refers to the people of Dibon. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **one who will destroy Moab** - AT: “the enemies of the people of Moab”
- **Ask the ones** - AT: “ask the people” or “ask the men and women”
- **Howl and lament** - AT: “cry loudly in pain and anger”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:21-25**UDB:**

²¹ Yahweh is punishing the towns of Moab that are on the plateau:

Holon and Jahaz and Mephaath,

²² Dibon and Nebo and Beth Diblathaim,

²³ Kiriathaim and Beth Gamul and Beth Meon,

²⁴ Kerioth and Bozrah.

He is punishing cities that are near each other and towns that are far away from each other.

²⁵ Yahweh says, "The power of Moab will be finished; it is as though it will have a broken arm.

ULB:

²¹ Now punishment has come to the hill country,

to Holon, Jachzah, and Mephaath,

²² to Dibon, Nebo, and Beth Diblathaim,

²³ to Kiriathaim, Beth Gamul, and Beth Meon,

²⁴ To Kerioth and Bozrah,

and to all the cities in the land of Moab—the farthest and the closest cities.

²⁵ The horn of Moab has been hacked off; its arm has been broken—this is Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- **punish, punishment**
- **Yahweh**
- **declare, declaration**

translationNotes:

- **Holon, Jachzah, and Mephaath ... Bozrah** - These are cities in Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **The horn of Moab has been hacked off; its arm has been broken** - Both 'horn' and 'arm' mean the same thing. They mean that Moab has been injured. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ You people of Moab thought you were powerful enough to rebel against me, Yahweh;
so now I will cause you all to stagger like drunken people.

You people of Moab will wallow in your own vomit
and be ridiculed.

²⁷ You people of Moab ridiculed the people of Israel.

Although they were thieves, they were never caught .

You shook your head at them scornfully and despised them .

ULB:

²⁶ Make him drunk, for he acted proudly against me, Yahweh. Now Moab claps his hands in disgust at his own vomit, so he also has become an object for laughter. ²⁷ For did Israel not become an object for laughter to you? Was he found among thieves, that you shook your head at him as often as you spoke about him?

translationWords:

- drunk, drunkard
- proud, pride, prideful
- Yahweh
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- thief, thieves, robber

translationNotes:

- **Make him drunk** - The judgments which God sends upon Moab shall allow the country to be scorned by his enemies, just as a drunken man is the object of men's laughter and mocking. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Now Moab claps his hands in disgust at his own vomit, so he also has become an object for laughter** - God continues to compare Moab to a drunken man. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **For did Israel not become an object for laughter to you?** - AT: "For you used to laugh at and mock My people in the kingdom of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Was he found among thieves, that you shook your head at him as often as you spoke about him?** - AT: "Although they were thieves, they were never caught. You shook your head at them scornfully and despised them. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ You people who live in Moab,

you should abandon your towns and go and live in caves.

Be like pigeons that make their nests in the entrances of caves.”

²⁹ We have all heard that the people of Moab are very proud;

they are extremely proud and conceited.

ULB:

²⁸ Abandon the cities and camp on the cliffs, inhabitants of Moab.

Become like a dove that is nesting over the mouth of a hole in the rocks.

²⁹ We have heard of Moab’s pride—his arrogance,

his haughtiness, his pride, his self-glory and the conceit in his heart.

translationWords:

- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- dove, pigeon
- [arrogant](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **cliffs** - A cliff is a steep side of a mountain.
- **the mouth of a hole in the rocks** - This refers to an opening in the rocks, such as the entrance to a cave.
- **arrogance ... haughtiness ... pride ... self-glory ... conceit in his heart** - All of these words have similar meanings. They are used together to emphasize the extreme pride of the people of Moab.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:30-32**UDB:**

³⁰ But Yahweh says, "I know about that,

but it is useless for them to boast
because it will accomplish nothing.

³¹ So now I will wail for Moab;

I will cry about all its people that they might receive help to survive.
I will moan for the men of the city of Kir Hareseth, the old capital
of Moab.

³² You people of the city of Sibmah, you have many vineyards, and I will be sad when they are destroyed.

It is as though the branches of your vines extend across the Dead
Sea to the city of Jazer, but the enemies of Moab will take your
grapes and wine from you!

ULB:

³⁰ This is Yahweh's declaration—I myself know his defiant speech, which amounts to nothing, like his deeds.

³¹ So I will howl a lament for Moab, and I will shout in sorrow for all of Moab.

I will lament for the people of Kir Heresh.

³² I will weep for you more than I did for Jazer, vine of Sibmah! Your branches passed across the Salt Sea and reached

as far as Jazer. The destroyers have attacked your summer fruit and your wine.

translationWords:

- works, deeds, work, acts
- lament, lamentation
- vine
- Salt Sea, Dead Sea
- destroyer
- fruit, fruitful

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).
- **defiant** - to refuse to obey someone or an instruction, sometimes because of pride
- **I will howl a lament for Moab, and I will shout in sorrow for all of Moab** - Jeremiah is saying the same thing twice for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **howl** - a sad and loud cry that a person makes when he is in pain or deep sorrow
- **Kir Heresh** - This is the name of the old capital city of Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Jazer ... Sibmah** - These are the names of two towns in Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:33**UDB:**

³³ But no one will be joyful or happy in Moab now;

your fruit and grapes that ripen in the summer will soon be destroyed.

There will be no grape juice coming from the winepresses,

so there will be no wine.

People will not shout joyfully

as they tread on the grapes;

people will shout,

but they will not be shouting joyfully.

ULB:

³³ So celebration and rejoicing have been taken away from the fruit trees and the land of Moab.

I have put an end to the wine from their winepresses. They will not tread with joyful shouts. Any shouts will not be shouts of joy.

translationWords:

- rejoice
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- winepress
- joy, joyful

translationNotes:

- **celebration and rejoicing have been taken away** - AT: “no one will be joyful or happy in Moab now;” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **I have put an end to** - “I have stopped”
- **They will not tread** - “They will not stomp.” The word “They” refers to the wine makers of Moab.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ Instead, the sound of their wailing will rise from the city of Heshbon to the town of Elealeh and the village of Jahaz,

from the city of Zoar as far as the town of Horonaim Eglath Shelishiyah.

Even the water in the stream of Nimrim will be dried up.

³⁵ I, Yahweh, say that I will get rid of the people who offer sacrifices on the hilltops,

thos who burn incense to their gods.

ULB:

³⁴ From the shouts at Heshbon as far as Elealeh, their sound is heard at Jahaz, from Zoar to Horonaim and Eglath Shelishiyah, since even the waters of Nimrim have dried up. ³⁵ For I will put an end to anyone in Moab who makes sacrifices on the high places and burns incense to his gods—this is Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- water, waters
- sacrifice, offering
- high places
- incense
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess

translationNotes:

- **Heshbon** - This is the name of the royal city of the king of Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Elealeh ... Jahaz ... Zoar ... Horonaim ... Eglath Shelishiyah** - These are names of other cities in Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Nimrim** - This is the name of a stream or river near the Dead Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:36-37**UDB:**

³⁶ I moan for the people of Moab and Kir Hareseth

like someone playing a funeral song on a flute,

because all their wealth will disappear.

³⁷ The men will shave their heads and their beards to show that they are mourning.

They all will slash their hands and wear rough cloth around their waists.

ULB:

³⁶ So my heart is lamenting for Moab like a flute. My heart is lamenting like flutes for the people of Kir Heres. The riches they gained are gone. ³⁷ For every head is bald and every beard shaved. Incisions are on every hand, and sackcloth is around their waists.

translationWords:

- lament, lamentation
- flute, pipe
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- head
- sackcloth

translationNotes:

- **my heart is lamenting for Moab like a flute** - Jeremiah was comparing his feeling to a sad song. (See: [Simile](#))
- **my heart is lamenting** - The word “heart” refers to the deep emotions felt by Jeremiah. AT: “I am deeply sad for”. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Kir Heres** - Kir-heres was an ancient capital of Moab, about 18 kilometers (11 miles) east of the Dead Sea (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **For every head is bald and every beard shaved. Incisions are on every hand, and sackcloth is around their waists** - These are all things that the people of Moab did when they were mourning or expressing deep sorrow.
- **Incisions** - cuts made on the skin

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:38-39**UDB:**

³⁸ In every home and in the town plazas in Moab there will be people who are mourning,

because I will have destroyed Moab

like someone smashes an old jar that no one wants anymore.

³⁹ Moab will be completely shattered with terror!

And you will hear the people wailing loudly!

They will be disgraced.

Moab will become a nation that people ridicule.

The people in nearby countries will be horrified about what has happened there.

ULB:

³⁸ There is mourning everywhere, on every flat roof of Moab and in Moab's plazas. For I have destroyed Moab like pots that no one wants—this is Yahweh's declaration.

³⁹ How it has been shattered! How they howl in their lamenting! Moab turns it back in shame! So Moab will become an object of derision and a terror to all those who are around him."

translationWords:

- **mourn, mourning**
- **terror, terrify**

translationNotes:

- **every flat roof** - "every housetop"
- **plazas** - open public areas, such as open marketplaces.
- **For I have destroyed** - The word "I" refers to Yahweh
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in **01:8**.
- **shattered** - demolished or destroyed
- **howl** - a sad and loud cry that a person makes when he is in pain
- **So Moab will become an object of derision** - AT: "Moab will become a nation that other nearby nations laugh at"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:40-41**UDB:**

⁴⁰ This is what I, Yahweh, say:

'Look! Their enemies will be swooping down over Moab

like an eagle swoops down to seize an animal.

⁴¹ Its cities will be captured,

its fortresses will be seized.

Even their warriors will be afraid,

like a woman who is about to give birth.

ULB:

⁴⁰ For Yahweh says this, "See, the enemy will come flying like an eagle, spreading out his wings over Moab.

⁴¹ Kerioth has been captured, and its strongholds have been seized.

For in that day the hearts of Moab's soldiers will be like the hearts of women in birth labor.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- eagle
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- labor pains, in labor

translationNotes:

- **the enemy will come flying like an eagle, spreading out his wings** - These phrases compare how a powerful army will descend on Moab and conquer it to the way an eagle swoops down to capture its prey. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Kerioth** - a city in Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Kerioth has been captured, and its strongholds have been seized** - "The enemy has captured Kerioth and seized its strongholds" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **in that day the hearts of Moab's soldiers ... women in birth labor** - This phrase compares the fear that will overwhelm the soldiers of Moab to the fear a woman may feel when she is about to give birth to her child. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:42-44**UDB:**

⁴² Moab boasted against me, Yahweh,

so it will be destroyed.

⁴³ I, Yahweh, say that you people of Moab will be terrified, and fall into pits and traps.

⁴⁴ Those who are terrified and try to run away will fall into deep pits.

Whoever climbs out of a pit will be caught in a trap,
because I will punish them at the time that I have appointed.'

ULB:

⁴² So Moab will be destroyed as a people, since they became arrogant against me, Yahweh.

⁴³ Terror and the pit, and a trap are coming on you, inhabitant of Moab—this is Yahweh's declaration.

⁴⁴ Anyone who flees because of terror will fall into the pit,
and anyone who climbs out of the pit will be caught in the trap, for I will bring this on them
in the year of my vengeance against them—this is Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- arrogant
- I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh
- terror, terrify
- pit
- declare, declaration
- biblical time: year
- avenge, revenge, vengeance

translationNotes:

- **So Moab will be destroyed** - AT: "So the enemy will destroy the people of Moab" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **in the year of** - Here, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:45**UDB:**

⁴⁵ The people will flee as far as the city of Heshbon,
 but they will not be able to go any further,
 because a fire will burn in Heshbon,
 which is the city where King Sihon lived long ago,
 and it will burn up all the people in Moab
 who noisily boasted very much.

ULB:

⁴⁵ The ones who flee will stand in the shadow of Heshbon without any strength, for fire will go out from Heshbon,
 flame from the middle of Sihon. It will devour the forehead of Moab and the top of the heads of the boastful people.

translationWords:

- shadow
- fire
- devour

translationNotes:

- **The ones who flee** - This refers to the people who were able to run away during the destruction of Moab.
- **the shadow of Heshbon** - a safe place within the city of Heshbon. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **for fire will go out from Heshbon, flame from the middle of Sihon** - These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that Moab's destruction will begin and spread out from Heshbon. Heshbon was the capital city of the Amorite king, Sihon. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **the forehead of Moab and the top of the heads of the boastful people** - These phrases refer to the people of Heshbon and its prominent leaders. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **forehead** - the part of the face that is above the eyes, but below the hairline. A symbol of pride. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **top of the heads of the boastful people** - This phrase refers to the prominent people of Moab, such as the princes and leaders. Also a symbol of pride. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 48:46-47**UDB:**

⁴⁶ You people of Moab, terrible things will happen to you!

You people who worship your god Chemosh, you will be destroyed.

Your sons and your daughters will be captured and taken away to other countries.

⁴⁷ But some day, I will enable the people of Moab to return to their land again.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

That is the end of what Jeremiah prophesied about Moab.

ULB:

⁴⁶ Woe to you, Moab! Chemosh’s people are destroyed,

For your sons are taken as captives and your daughters into captivity.

⁴⁷ But I will restore the fortunes of Moab in later days—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

The judgment on Moab ends here.

translationWords:

- woe
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- son, son of
- captive, captivity
- restore, restoration
- judge, judgment

translationNotes:

- **Chemosh’s people are destroyed** - AT: “The people of Chemosh are destroyed by their enemies” or “The enemies of the people of Chemosh destroyed them”. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **Chemosh** - See how you translated this in [48:07](#)
- **later days** - This refers to a time in the future, called the “last days.”
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 48 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 49:1-11, 14-27, 29-33, 37-39, which are extended quotations.

Jeremiah prophesies about other nations conclude in this chapter. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Covenant with Abraham

Ammon is destroyed because it drove the people of the tribe of Gad from their homeland. This is in line with the promises of the covenant Yahweh made with Abraham to curse those who curse Abraham's descendants. (See: [promise](#), [covenant](#) and [curse](#), [cursed](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical questions

There are many rhetorical questions in this chapter. The purpose of these rhetorical questions is to convict those Yahweh addresses. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 49:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 49:1-2**UDB:**

¹ This message is about the people who descended from Ammon. This is what Yahweh says:

”There are plenty of Israelite people left
to occupy the land of the tribe of Gad.

So, why are the people who worship the god Milcom living in those towns?

² There will be a time when I will sound the battle cry
for their enemies to attack their capital city, Rabbah.

Then it will become a heap of ruins,
and all the nearby towns will be burned.

Then the people of Israel will again possess the land
that the people of Ammon took away from them.

ULB:

49 ¹ About the people of Ammon, Yahweh says this,

”Does Israel have no children? Is there no one to inherit anything in Israel?

Why does Molech occupy Gad, and his people live in its cities? [1] Instead of *Molech*, some modern versions have *their king*.

² So look, the days are coming—this is Yahweh’s declaration—when I will sound the signal for battle

against Rabbah among the people of Ammon, so it will become a deserted heap and its daughters will light fires.

For Israel will possess those who possessed him,” says Yahweh.

translationWords:

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess
- Yahweh
- kingdom of Israel
- children, child
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Molech, Moloch
- Gad

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Rabbah](#)
- [fire](#)
- [possess, possession](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **Does Israel have no children? Is there no one to inherit anything in Israel? Why does Molech occupy Gad, and his people live in its cities?** - AT: “There are plenty of Israelites to inherit the land of Israel. The people who worship the false idol, Molech, should not live in Gad.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **So look** - This adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Look and listen”.
- **days are coming** - See how you translated this in [07:32](#).
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:3-4**UDB:**

³ You people of the city of Heshbon, wail,

because the city of Ai will be destroyed.

You women in the city of Rabbah, weep;

put on rough clothing to show you are mourning;

run back and forth in confusion inside the city walls,

because your god Milcom, along with its priests and officials, will be taken away in exile.

⁴ You are very proud of your very fertile valleys,

but they will soon be ruined.

You rebellious people, you trusted in your wealth,

and you said, 'Certainly no army will be able to attack us!'

ULB:

³ "Howl in lament, Heshbon, for Ai will be devastated! Shout out, daughters of Rabbah! Put on sackcloth.

Lament and run about in futility, for Molech is going into captivity, together with his priests and leaders.

⁴ Why are you proud of your strength? Your strength will flow away, faithless daughter,

you who trust in your wealth. You say, 'Who will come against me?'

translationWords:

- lament, lamentation
- Ai
- devastate, devastation
- sackcloth
- captive, captivity
- priest, priesthood
- proud, pride, prideful
- faithless, faithlessness
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

translationNotes:

- **Howl** - cry out loud
- **daughters of Rabbah** - The women in the city of Rabbah
- **Why are you proud of your strength?** - AT: “You should not be so proud because you really are not strong.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Who will come against me?** - “You falsely think that no one can defeat you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ But listen to this: I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies,

will cause you to become terrified.

You will all be forced to flee to other countries from the enemies all around you,

and no one will be able to bring you together again.

⁶ But some day I will enable the Ammonite people to return to their land.

That will surely happen, because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

⁵ See, I am about to bring terror on you—this is the declaration of Yahweh, the Lord of hosts—

this terror will come from all those who surround you. Each one of you will be scattered before it.

There will be no one to gather those running away.

⁶ But after this I will restore the fortunes of the people of Ammon—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- **terror, terrify**
- **declare, declaration**
- **Yahweh**
- **Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host**
- **restore, restoration**
- **Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess**

translationNotes:

- **you** - The word “you” refers to the people of Ammon.
- **be scattered** - AT: “go in different directions”.
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in **01:8**.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ This message is about the people of Edom. This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says:

”It seems that there are no longer any wise people in Teman district in Edom!

There are no people left who can give others good advice.

The people who were wise have disappeared.

⁸ You people of the city of Dedan, in the south of Edom,

turn and flee and hide in deep caves,

because I am causing disaster to happen to all the people of Edom,

I will punish you!

ULB:

⁷ About Edom, Yahweh of hosts says this, ”Is there no longer any wisdom to be found in Teman?

Has good advice disappeared from those who have understanding? Has their wisdom become corrupted?

⁸ Flee! Turn back! Stay in holes in the ground, inhabitants of Dedan.

For I am bringing the disaster of Esau on him at the time that I punish him.

translationWords:

- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- wise, wisdom
- understand, understanding
- turn, turn away, turn back
- Esau
- punish, punishment

translationNotes:

- **Has good advice ... understanding? Has their wisdom become corrupted?** - The same idea is expressed in two different ways. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Has good advice disappeared from those who have understanding?** - “It seems that there are no longer any wise people in Teman district in Edom!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Has their wisdom become corrupted?** - “Their advice is no longer wise.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ Those who harvest grapes

always leave some on the vines.

When thieves come at night,

they surely steal only as much as they want.

¹⁰ But I will cause everything in Edom to be destroyed, and there will be nothing left,

and there will be no place for people to hide.

Many of the children, their relatives and their neighbors, will die,

and Edom will not exist anymore.

¹¹ Leave behind the orphans because I will take care of them,

and the widows also will be able to depend on me to help them.”

ULB:

⁹ If grape harvesters came to you, would they not leave a little bit behind?

If thieves came in the night, would they not steal only as much as they wanted?

¹⁰ But I have stripped Esau bare. I have revealed his hiding places.

So he will not be able to hide himself. His children, his brothers, and his neighbors are destroyed, and he is gone.

¹¹ Leave your orphans behind. I will take care of their lives, and your widows can trust in me.”

translationWords:

- grape
- harvest
- thief, thieves, robber
- Esau
- reveal, revelation
- neighbor
- life, live, living, alive
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about what will happen to Edom.
- **If grape harvesters came** - “Those who harvest grapes always leave some on the vines.” (UDB) (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **If thieves came** - “When thieves come at night, they surely steal only as much as they want.” (UDB) (See: [Rhetorical Questionj](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:12-13

UDB:

¹² And this is also what Yahweh says: "If those who do not deserve to suffer must suffer, you people of Edom must suffer much more! You will not escape being punished. ¹³ I, Yahweh, have solemnly promised, using my own name, that your chief city Bozrah will become a place that people will be horrified about. It will be a heap of ruins. People will make fun of it and use its name when they curse people. All the nearby towns and villages will be ruined forever."

ULB:

¹² For Yahweh says this, "See, those who did not deserve it must certainly drink some of the cup. Do you yourself think you will go without punishment? You will not, for you will certainly drink. ¹³ For I have sworn by myself—this is Yahweh's declaration—that Bozrah will become a horror, a disgrace, a devastation, and an object for cursing. All of its cities will become devastations forever.

translationWords:

- oath, swear, swear by
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- curse, cursed
- devastate, devastation
- forever

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about what will happen to Edom.
- **See** - AT: "Look, listen, or pay attention"
- **drink some of the cup** - AT: "experience punishment" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Do you yourself think you will go without punishment?** - AT: "Certainly, you must be aware that you will personally experience my punishment for your sins. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **you ... yourself** - The words "you" and "yourself" refer to Edom. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)

- Jeremiah 49 General Notes
- **Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions**

Jeremiah 49:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ I heard this message from Yahweh:

”I have sent an ambassador to many nations,
to tell them to gather together to attack Edom.
They must prepare for battle!”

¹⁵ And Yahweh says to the people of Edom,

”I will cause your nation to become very unimportant among the other nations.
They will all despise your country.

ULB:

¹⁴ I have heard news from Yahweh, and a messenger has been sent out to the nations,

‘Gather together and attack her. Get ready for battle.’

¹⁵ ”For see, I have made you small compared to the other nations, despised by people.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- messenger
- send, send out, sent
- nation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah is now speaking to the people of Edom.
- **I have heard** - The word “I” refers to Jeremiah.
- **attack her** - The word “her” refers to Edom.
- **I have made** - The word “I” refers to Yahweh.
- **you** - The word “you” refers to the nation of Edom.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:16**UDB:**

¹⁶ You have caused people of other nations to be terrified,

and you have been very proud,

but you have deceived yourselves.

You live in caves in the rock cliffs;

you think that you are safe there because you live high up there.

But even if you make your homes as high up as the eagles' nests,

I will cause you to come crashing down.

ULB:

¹⁶ As for your fearsomeness, your heart's pride has deceived you, inhabitants of places on the cliff,

you who have occupied the highest hills so that you may make your nest high like an eagle.

I will bring you down from there—this is Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about what will happen to Edom.
- **nest high like an eagle** - AT: "live in safety like an eagle in the heights of the mountains" (See: [Simile](#))
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Edom will become a place about which people are horrified;

people who pass by will be horrified and will gasp
when they see the destruction.

¹⁸ Edom will be destroyed as completely as Sodom and Gomorrah and the nearby towns were destroyed long ago.

As a result, no one—not a single person—will live there anymore.

ULB:

¹⁷ Edom will become a horror to everyone passing by it.

Every such person will tremble and hiss because all of its disasters.

¹⁸ Like the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah and their neighbors,” says Yahweh,

”no one will live there; no person will stay there.

translationWords:

- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Sodom
- Gomorrah
- neighbor
- Yahweh
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Edom.
- **tremble and hiss** - AT: “shake from fear and speak of their displeasure” (See: **Idiom**)
- **Like the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah** - AT: “in the way Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed” (See: **Simile**)
- **no one will live there; no person will stay there** - Yahweh says the same thing twice to emphasize that Edom will be completely uninhabited. (See: **Parallelism**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:19**UDB:**

¹⁹ I will come to Edom suddenly as a lion comes out of the jungle

and leaps on sheep that are eating in good pastures.

I will quickly chase the people of Edom from their land.

And then I will appoint for them a leader whom I will choose;

I can do that because there is no one like me who can object to what I do.

No ruler can oppose me.

ULB:

¹⁹ See, he will go up like a lion from the forests of the Jordan to the green pasturelands.

For I will quickly make Edom run from it, and I will put someone who will be chosen in charge of it.

For who is like me, and who will summon me? What shepherd is able to resist me?"

translationWords:

- lion
- Jordan River
- shepherd, to shepherd

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about what will happen to Edom.
- **See** - AT: "Look, listen, pay attention".
- **like a lion** - This is another way of saying that the attack will be fierce and unexpected. (See: [Simile](#))
- **For who is like me, and who will summon me?** - Yahweh uses the question to point out the smallness of humans. AT: "No one is like me, no one orders me around". (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **summon** - "order someone to come"
- **What shepherd is able to resist me?** - Yahweh uses the question to show no one can defeat him. "Shepherd" here is a metaphor for "king," "ruler." (UDB) (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:20

UDB:

²⁰ Listen to what I have planned to do to the people of Teman and the rest of Edom:

even the little children will be dragged away,

and I will completely get rid of the people who live there.

ULB:

²⁰ "So listen to the plans that Yahweh has decided against Edom,

the plans that he has formed against the inhabitants of Teman.

They will certainly be dragged away, even the smallest flock.

Their pasturelands will be turned into ruined places.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)

translationNotes:

- **the inhabitants of Teman** - the people who live in Teman
- **They will certainly be dragged away, even the smallest flock** - AT: "He will drag them away, even the smallest flock" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Their pasturelands will be turned into ruined places** - AT: "He will turn their pasturelands into ruined places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **pasturelands** - Pastureland is land covered with grass where animals feed on the grass.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ When Edom is destroyed, the noise will be extremely great,

with the result that the earth will shake,

and the wailing of the people will be heard as far away as the Sea of Reeds.

²² Look! The enemy troops will swoop down over Bozrah

like an eagle spreads its wings when it swoops down to seize an animal.

On that day, even the strongest warriors of Edom will be afraid

like a woman who is about to give birth.”

ULB:

²¹ At the sound of their falling the earth shakes. The sound of distressed shouts is heard at the Sea of Reeds.

²² See, someone will attack like an eagle, and swoop down and spread his wings over Bozrah.

Then on that day, the hearts of Edom’s soldiers will become like the heart of a woman in birth labor.”

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- Sea of Reeds, Red Sea
- eagle
- heart
- labor pains, in labor

translationNotes:

- **their** - The word “their” refers to Edom.
- **At the sound of their falling the earth shakes. The sound of distressed shouts is heard at the Sea of Reeds** - The purpose of this exaggeration is to tell the failure of Edom will be severe. (See: **Hyperbole**)
- **See** - AT: “Look, listen, pay attention”.
- **attack like an eagle, and swoop down and spread his wings** - The attack will be vicious and unexpected. (See: **Simile**)

- **Bozrah** - a city (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **become like the heart of a woman in birth labor** - “feel overwhelmed and full of dread” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:23-25**UDB:**

²³ This message is about Damascus. This is what Yahweh says:

”The people in the nearby cities of Hamath and Arpad are will be ashamed,
because they have heard bad news about Damascus.

They are very anxious and restless,

like a sea in a big storm.

²⁴ The people of Damascus have become very weak,

and they all have panicked and run away in terror.

The people are anguished and in pain

like a woman experiences who is about to give birth.

²⁵ That famous city, that I was previously pleased with,

will be abandoned.

ULB:

²³ About Damascus: ”Hamath and Arpad will be ashamed, for they have heard news of disaster.

They melt away! They become as troubled as the sea, which cannot stay calm.

²⁴ Damascus has become very weak. It turns away to flee; terror seizes it.

Distress and pain seize it, like the pain of a woman giving birth.

²⁵ Its people say, ‘How is the famous city, the city over which I have rejoiced, not yet evacuated?’

translationWords:

- Damascus
- Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- terror, terrify
- rejoice

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh tells what will happen to the people of Damascus.
- **Arpad** - This is a Syrian city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **They melt away** - AT: “They are scared!” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They become as troubled as the sea** - Their emotions are compared to a troubled sea. (See: [Simile](#))
- **like the pain of a woman giving birth.** - The suffering of the city is compared to the pain of a woman giving birth. (See: [Simile](#) and [Ellipsis](#))
- **How is the famous city, the city over which I have rejoiced, not yet evacuated?** - AT: “It cannot be that the famous city, the city where there was so much joy and happiness should still have people in it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Its young men will fall in the streets.

Its soldiers will all be killed in one day.

²⁷ And I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, will start a fire to burn the walls that surround Damascus,

and the palaces of King Ben Hadad will be burned down.”

ULB:

²⁶ Therefore its young men will fall in its plazas,

and all the fighting men will perish on that day—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts.”

²⁷ “For I will light a fire on the wall of Damascus, and it will devour the strongholds of Ben Hadad.”

translationWords:

- [perish, perishing, perishable](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [fire](#)
- [devour](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about what will happen to Damascus.
- **its** - The word “its” refers to the Damascus.
- **the declaration of Yahweh of hosts** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).
- **Ben Hadad** - This the name of the king. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ This is a message about the Kedar people and the kingdom of Hazor that Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon is attacking. This is what Yahweh said:

”I will cause an army to advance to attack Kedar
and destroy those people who live east of Judah.

²⁹ Their tents and their flocks of sheep will be captured.

The curtains in their tents and their camels and their other possessions will be taken away.

Everywhere men will shout,

‘We are terrified because terrible things are happening all around us!’

ULB:

²⁸ About Kedar and the kingdoms of Hazor, Yahweh says this to Nebuchadnezzar (now Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon was going to attack these places):

”Arise and attack Kedar and destroy those people of the east.

²⁹ His army will take their tents and their flocks, their tent hangings, and all of their equipment.

They will take their camels from the people of Kedar and call out to them,
”Terror is all around!”

translationWords:

- kingdom
- Yahweh
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- tent
- flock, herd
- camel
- call, calling, called, call out

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah speaks about what will happen to Kedar.
- **Kedar** - The name of a group of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Hazor** - The name of a place in the biblical and modern Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ So I, Yahweh, say, 'Run away quickly!

You people who live in Hazor, go and hide in deep caves,
because King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon wants to attack you with his
army;
he is planning to destroy you!'

³¹ But I say to Nebuchadnezzar,

'Go up and attack that nation whose people feel secure;
they do not have allies who will help them and do not have walls
with gates that have bars in them.

ULB:

³⁰ Flee! Wander far away! Stay in holes in the ground, inhabitants of Hazor—
this is Yahweh's declaration—

for Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon has devised a plan against you. Flee!
Turn back!

³¹ Arise! Attack the nation at ease, who live in safety," says Yahweh.

"They have no gates or bars in them, and its people live by themselves.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- turn, turn away, turn back
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- nation
- life, live, living, alive
- gate, gate bar
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about what will happen to Kedar.

- **Stay in holes in the ground** - “Stay hidden” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **inhabitants of Hazor** - “people who live in Hazor”
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#)
- **devised a plan** - “made a plan”
- **They ... them** - The words “They” and “them” refer to the people who feel safe and secure.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:32-33**UDB:**

³² Your troops will seize their camels and other livestock.

I will scatter in every direction those people who will be in great mourning .

I will bring disasters to them from every direction.

³³ Hazor will become a place where jackals live,
and it will be deserted forever.

No one will live there again;
no people will settle there. ”

ULB:

³² For their camels will become plunder, and the abundance of their property will become war plunder.

Then I will scatter to every wind those who cut the corners of their hair,
and I will bring disaster on them from every side—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

³³ Hazor will become a lair of jackals, a permanent wasteland.
No one will live there; no human being will stay there.”

translationWords:

- **Yahweh**
- **waste, wasteland**

translationNotes:

- **scatter to every wind** - “go in all different directions” (See: **Idiom**)
- **Then I will scatter to every wind those who cut the corners of their hair** - AT: “Then I will send in all different directions those who do not obey my commands” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **No one will live there; no human being will stay there** - These two lines mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Hazor will be completely uninhabited. (See: **Parallelism**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:34-36**UDB:**

³⁴ The prophet Jeremiah received this message from Yahweh when King Zedekiah was starting to rule Judah.

³⁵ This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says:

”The men of Elam are famous archers;

that is how they have made their country very powerful.

But I will get rid of them .

³⁶ I will bring their enemies from every direction

and they will scatter the people of Elam in all of those directions.

The people of Elam will be exiled to every nation on the earth.

ULB:

³⁴ This is the word of Yahweh that came to Jeremiah the prophet about Elam. This happened at the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah king of Judah, and he said, ³⁵ ”Yahweh of hosts says this: See, I am about to break the bowmen of Elam, the main part of their power.

³⁶ For I will bring the four winds from the four corners of the heavens,

and I will scatter the people of Elam to all of those winds. There is no nation

to which those scattered from Elam will not go.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Elam
- reign
- king
- Zedekiah
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- power, powers
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking about what will happen to Elam.
- **bowmen** - men who are skilled with a bow and arrows
- **four winds from the four corners** - “4 winds from the 4 corners”. (See: [Numbers](#))
- **four corners of** - AT: “all directions, everywhere”. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **There is no nation to which those scattered from Elam will not go.** - AT: “The refugees from Elam will be forced to seek refuge absolutely everywhere throughout the world.” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 49:37-39**UDB:**

³⁷ Because I am very angry with the people of Elam,

I will enable their enemies to smash Elam;

I will cause the people of Elam to experience great disasters.

I will enable their enemies, who want to kill them, to pursue them and kill them with swords

until I completely get rid of all of them.

³⁸ I, Yahweh, will judge them there ,

and then I will get rid of their king and his officials.

³⁹ But some day, I will enable the people of Elam to return to their land.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

³⁷ So I will shatter Elam before their enemies and before those who seek their lives.

for I will bring disaster against them, the fury of my wrath—this is Yahweh’s declaration—

and I will send the sword after them until I have annihilated them.

³⁸ Then I will put my throne in Elam and will destroy its king and leaders from there—this is Yahweh’s declaration—

³⁹ and it will happen in later days that I will bring back the fortunes of Elam—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- adversary, enemy
- wrath, fury
- sword
- throne

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about what will happen to Elam.
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **send the sword** - AT: "send their enemies to kill them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **I will put my throne** - AT: "I will establish my rule over" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 49 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 50:1-5, 6-46, which are extended quotations.

Special concepts in this chapter

Babylon destroyed

Babylon will be conquered and the Jews will return to their homeland. At this time, Babylon controlled almost the entire Near East. The fulfillment of this prophecy would have been unthinkable. (See: [fulfill](#) and [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Israel

The author uses the term Israel to refer to the people group from the northern kingdom of Israel and the nation of Israel as a whole. He switches between these definitions several times without explaining telling the reader. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 50:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 50:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave to Jeremiah the prophet a message about Babylon and the country of Babylonia.

² This is what Yahweh says:

”Proclaim a message among the nations;

do not withhold any of it;

raise up a signal flag

to announce that Babylon will be captured.

Its chief god Marduk, whose other name is Bel, will be completely disgraced,

and all the other statues and idols will be shattered.

ULB:

50 ¹ This is the word that Yahweh declared about Babylon, the land of the Chaldeans, by the hand of Jeremiah the prophet,

² ”Report to the nations and cause them to listen. Lift up a signal and cause them to listen. Do not conceal it.

Say, ‘Babylon is taken. Bel is made ashamed. Merodach is dismayed. Its idols are put to shame; its images are dismayed.’

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- declare, declaration
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- report
- nation
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- idol, idolatrous
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **by the hand of Jeremiah** - “through the action of Jeremiah” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **cause them to listen ... cause them to listen** - The repetition of this phrase emphasizes the importance of the command. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Bel is made ashamed. Merodach is dismayed. Its idols are put to shame; its images are dismayed.** - These lines mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh has disgraced the gods of Babylon. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **Bel ... Merodach** - These are the two names for the chief god of Babylon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:3-5**UDB:**

³ The army of a nation will come from the north to attack Babylon

and destroy the city very thoroughly,
with the result that no one will live there again.

Both people and animals will run away.”

⁴ ”But I, Yahweh, say that in the future, when that is about to happen,
the people of Israel and the people of Judah will join together.

They will be weeping

and wanting to worship me, their God.

⁵ They will inquire about the road to Jerusalem,
and then they will start traveling toward it.

They will say to each other,

‘We must return to Yahweh again!’

They will make an everlasting agreement with me that they will
never forget.

ULB:

³ A nation from the north will arise against it, in order to make her land a
desolation.

No one, neither man or beast, will live in it. They will flee away.

⁴ In those days and at that time—this is Yahweh’s declaration—the people of
Israel and the people of Judah

will come together to go with weeping and seek Yahweh their God.

⁵ They will ask the way to Zion and will set off toward it, saying,

We will go and join ourselves to Yahweh in an everlasting covenant that will
not be forgotten.”

translationWords:

- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- desolate, desolation
- beast
- life, live, living, alive
- kingdom of Israel
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- God
- Zion, Mount Zion
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- covenant

translationNotes:

- **arise against it** - The word “it” refers to Babylon.
- **her land** - The word “her” refers to Babylon.
- **live in it** - The word “it” refers to the land of Babylon.
- **In those days and at that time** - See how you translated this in [33:15](#). (See: [Doublet](#))
- **They will ask** - The word “They” refers to people of Israel or people of Judah.
- **join ourselves to Yahweh** - This is figurative language used to explain a spiritual connection to Yahweh. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **that will not be forgotten** - This states that the covenant will be obeyed forever. AT: “that no one will forget” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ My people have been like lost sheep.

Their leaders have caused them to abandon me
like shepherds who have allowed their sheep to wander in the hills
and mountains.

My people are like sheep
that do not know the path to return to the sheepfold.

⁷ All their enemies who found them attacked them.

They said, 'We did not sin by attacking them,
because they sinned against Yahweh;
he is the one who provides what they need;
he is the one to whom they should have remained faithful;
he is the one whom their ancestors confidently expected to help
them.'

ULB:

⁶ My people have been a lost flock. Their shepherds have led them astray in the mountains;

they have turned them around from hill to hill. They went, they forgot the
place where they had lived.

⁷ Everyone who went out to them devoured them. Their adversaries said,
'We are not guilty,

because they sinned against Yahweh, their true home—Yahweh, the hope of
their ancestors.'

translationWords:

- people of God, my people
- flock, herd
- shepherd, to shepherd
- turn, turn away, turn back
- devour

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)
- [hope](#)

translationNotes:

- **lost flock** - This compares the people of Israel to a group of sheep that are lost. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **devoured them** - This compares destroying and taking everything from them to eating eagerly. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they sinned** - The word “they” refers to the people of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ But now, I say to the leaders of my people, 'Depart from Babylon!

Leave the land of Babylonia!

Act like male goats that go in front of the rest of the flock;

lead my people back to their own land.

⁹ Do that because I am going to gather an army of great nations to the north of Babylon.

They will join together to attack Babylon and will capture it.

Their arrows will be like skilled warriors

that always hit what they are aiming at.

¹⁰ Babylonia will be conquered,

and those who conquer it will take away everything they want.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

⁸ Leave from the midst of Babylon; go out from the land of the Chaldeans; be like male goats that leave before the rest of the flock does.

⁹ For see, I am about to set in motion and raise up an group of great nations from the north against Babylon.

They will arrange themselves against her. Babylon will be captured from there.

Their arrows are like a skilled warrior who does not return empty-handed.

¹⁰ Chaldea will become plunder. All those who plunder it will be satisfied—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- goat, kid
- bow and arrow
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **like male goats that leave** - This compares the people whom Yahweh advises to leave as soon as possible from Babylon to male goats that tend to wander from the flock. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Babylon will be captured from there** - “The nations will capture Babylon” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ "You people of Babylon who plundered my chosen people,
now you are very happy.

You run around joyfully like a calf in a meadow,
and are happy like stallions are happy when they are neighing.

¹² But soon your people will be very disgraced as a result of being conquered.
Your country will be the most insignificant nation;
it will be a wilderness, a dry land and a desert plain.

¹³ Because I, Yahweh, am angry with you people of Babylon,
I will cause your city to become completely deserted.
All who pass by will be horrified
and will gasp because of the destruction there.

ULB:

¹¹ You rejoice, you celebrate the plundering of my inheritance;
you jump around like a calf stamping in its pasture;
you neigh like a powerful horse.

¹² So your mother will be greatly ashamed; the one who bore you will be embarrassed.

See, she will be the least of nations, a wilderness, a dry land, and a desert.

¹³ Because of Yahweh's anger, Babylon will not be inhabited, but will be a complete devastation.

Everyone who passes by will shudder because of Babylon and will hiss because all of its wounds.

translationWords:

- rejoice
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- cow, calf, bull, cattle

- [horse](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)

translationNotes:

- **you jump around like a calf stamping in its pasture** - This compares the people of Babylon to a calf who runs around joyfully in a meadow. (See: [Simile](#))
- **stamping** - See how you translated this in Jeremiah [47:3](#).
- **you neigh like a powerful horse** - This compares their happiness to the happiness of stallions that are neighing - making loud noises. (See: [Simile](#))
- **So your mother will be greatly ashamed; the one who bore you will be embarrassed** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of her embarrassment. The words “mother” and “the one who bore you” refer either to Babylonia or to the city of Babylon. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **a wilderness, a dry land, and a desert** - These words have basically the same meaning and emphasize the complete barrenness of the land. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **shudder** - shake violently due to fear
- **hiss** - make a sound like a snake that means great disapproval

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ All you nations that surround Babylon,

prepare to attack it!

Tell your archers to shoot at their enemies;

shoot all of your arrows at them and do not hold back,

because the people of Babylon have sinned against me, Yahweh.

¹⁵ Shout victorious war cries against Babylon from all sides of the city.

The soldiers of Babylon will surrender;

the towers and walls will be torn down.

It is I, Yahweh, who will be getting revenge on the people of Babylon,

and I will use you to get revenge.

Do to the people of Babylon what they have done to others!

ULB:

¹⁴ Arrange yourselves against Babylon all around her. Everyone who bends a bow must shoot at her.

Do not keep back any of your arrows, for she has sinned against Yahweh.

¹⁵ Shout in victory against her all around her. She has surrendered her power; her towers have fallen.

Her walls are torn down, for this is Yahweh's vengeance. Take vengeance on her!

Do to her just as she had done to other nations!

translationWords:

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- power, powers
- avenge, revenge, vengeance

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh tells the enemies of Babylon how to conquer.

- **Everyone who bends a bow** - This refers to the soldiers who use bows and arrows to fight. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **shoot at her** - The word “her” refers to Babylon.
- **Her walls are torn down** - AT: “The nations have torn down her walls” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:16**UDB:**

¹⁶ Take away from Babylon those who plant crops

and those who reap the harvests!

Because of the swords carried by those who will attack Babylon,
the people in Babylon who have come from other countries
should all run away; they should go back to their own countries.”

ULB:

¹⁶ Destroy both the farmer who sows seed and the one who uses a sickle at the time of harvest in Babylon.

Let each person turn back to his own people from the oppressor’s sword; let them flee to their own land.

translationWords:

- sow, sower, plant
- harvest
- turn, turn away, turn back
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- sword

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh tells the enemies of Babylon how to conquer.
- **the one who uses a sickle at the time of harvest** - A “sickle” is farm tool that people use to harvest grain. Together with the previous phrase, Yahweh is saying that all planting and harvesting will stop in Babylon.
- **Let each person turn back to his own people ... let them flee to their own land** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Together they strengthen the command for foreigners to flee Babylon. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **from the oppressor’s sword** - Here the word “sword” refers to the armies that will attack Babylon. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ "The Israelite people are like sheep

that have been scattered by lions.

First the army of the king of Assyria defeated them.

Then the army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon smashed them.

¹⁸ So this is what I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God whom Israel worships, say:

'Now I will punish the king of Babylon and the people of his land,

like I punished the king of Assyria.

ULB:

¹⁷ Israel is a sheep scattered and driven away by lions. First the king of Assyria devoured him;

then after this, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon broke his bones. ¹⁸ Therefore Yahweh of hosts, the God of Israel, says this: See, I am about to punish the king of Babylon and his land, just as I punished the king of Assyria.

translationWords:

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- sheep, ram, ewe
- lion
- king
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- devour
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- punish, punishment

translationNotes:

- **Israel is a sheep scattered and driven away by lions** - AT: "Israel is a sheep that lions scattered and drove away" Yahweh compares Israel to sheep and her enemies to lions. (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

- **devoured him** - This compares the destruction of Israel by Assyria to being eaten eagerly. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **broke his bones** - This compares the destruction of Israel by Nebuchdnezzar to breaking bones. AT: “destroyed Israel”. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **See, I am about to** - The word “See” means to pay special attention to what follows.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ And I will bring the people of Israel back to their own land

where they will eat the food that grows in the fields of the regions
of Carmel and Bashan,

and the people in the hill areas of Ephraim and Gilead will have all they
want to eat.

²⁰ At that time, there will not be people in Israel and in Judah who are still
guilty for having sinned ,

because I will forgive the small group of people whom I enable to
still be alive.”

ULB:

¹⁹ I will restore Israel to his homeland; he will graze on Carmel and Bashan.

Then he will be satisfied in the hill country of Ephraim and Gilead.

²⁰ In those days and at that time, says Yahweh, iniquity will be looked for in
Israel,

but none will be found. I will inquire about the sins of Judah, but none will
be found, for I will forgive the remnant that I spare.”

translationWords:

- restore, restoration
- Carmel, Mount Carmel
- Bashan
- Ephraim
- Gilead
- iniquity
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- forgive, forgiveness
- remnant

translationNotes:

- **I will restore** - The word “I” refers to Yahweh.
- **he will graze on Carmel and Bashan** - “Israel will feed on the foods of Carmel and Bashan.”

- **In those days and at that time** - See how you translated this in [33:15](#). (See: [Doublet](#))
- **iniquity will be looked for in Israel, but none will be found. I will inquire about the sins of Judah, but none will be found** - These two lines mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize that Yahweh will forgive the sins of the people of Israel completely. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **iniquity will be looked for in Israel, but none will be found** - AT: “Yahweh will look for iniquity in the people of Israel, but will not find any” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ "So, I, Yahweh, say to the enemies of Babylonia, 'Attack the people who live in the region of Merathaim

and the people in the region of Pekod of Babylonia.

Pursue them to kill them, and completely get rid of every single one of them,

as I have commanded you to do.

²² Shout your battle cries throughout the land;

shout when you are causing great destruction.

ULB:

²¹ "Arise against the land of Merathaim, against it and the ones inhabiting Pekod.

Put them to the sword and set them apart for destruction—this is Yahweh's declaration—do everything

that I am commanding you.

²² The sounds of battle and enormous destruction are in the land.

translationWords:

- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- sword
- declare, declaration
- command, to command, commandment

translationNotes:

- **Merathaim** - This is another name for Babylon. This is a name that means "double rebellion". (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Pekod** - This is another name for the Chaldeans. This is a name that means "visitation." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Put them to the sword** - This refers to having a sword come down on people to kill them. AT: "kill them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:23-24**UDB:**

²³ The army of Babylon is like the most powerful hammer on the earth,
but it will be completely shattered.

Babylon will be deserted among the other nations.'

²⁴ You people of Babylon, listen,

because I have set a trap for you without your awareness;
you will be caught in that trap,
because you fought against me.

ULB:

²³ How the hammer of all the lands has been cut apart and destroyed.

How Babylon has become a horror among the nations.

²⁴ I have set a trap for you. You were captured, Babylon, and you did not know it!

You were found and seized, since you challenged me, Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [nation](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **How the hammer of all the lands has been cut apart and destroyed** - Here, "the hammer of all the lands" is the powerful army of Babylon that is going to be destroyed. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **horror** - a very strong feeling of fear, dread, and shock
- **You were captured, Babylon** - AT: "I have captured you, Babylon" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **You were found and seized** - AT: "I have found and seized you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ It is as though I have opened the place where I store my weapons,

and I have brought out all the weapons

to use against the people with whom I am angry.

I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, have a lot of work to do

to punish the people of Babylonia.

²⁶ So, you enemies of Babylonia, come from distant lands and attack it.

Break open the places where they store the grain,

and pile up the rubble like heaps of grain.

Destroy everything completely;

do not leave anything that is not destroyed.

ULB:

²⁵ Yahweh has opened his armory and is bringing out the weapons for carrying out his anger.

There is work for the Lord Yahweh of hosts in the land of the Chaldeans.

²⁶ Attack her from far away. Open her granaries and pile her up like heaps of grain.

set her apart for destruction. Leave no remnant of her.

translationWords:

- works, deeds, work, acts
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- grain
- remnant

translationNotes:

- **granaries** - buildings where grain is stored
- **pile her up like heaps of grain** - AT “pile up what is left of her the way heaps of grain are piled up” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Destroy all the young warriors who are as strong as bulls;

take them to where you will slaughter them.

It will be terrible for them,

because it will be time for them to be punished.

²⁸ Listen to the people who have fled and escaped from Babylon

while they tell in Jerusalem how I, Yahweh, have gotten revenge against those who destroyed my temple in Jerusalem.

ULB:

²⁷ Kill all her bulls. Send them down to the place of slaughter.

Woe to them, for their day has come—the time for their punishment.

²⁸ There is the sound of those fleeing, of those who are survivors, from the land of Babylon.

These will report the vengeance of Yahweh our God for Zion, and vengeance for his temple.”

translationWords:

- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- send, send out, sent
- slaughter
- woe
- punish, punishment
- report
- avenge, revenge, vengeance
- Zion, Mount Zion
- temple

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues telling how to destroy the people of Babylon and Chaldea.

- **Kill all her bulls** - The young warriors are compared to bulls because of their strength. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **her bulls** - The word “her” refers to Babylon.
- **them ... their** - The word “them” and “their” refer to the people of Babylon.
- **those ... These** - The word “those” and “These” refer to the survivors from Babylon who will tell others about Yahweh’s vengeance.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ Summon archers to come to attack Babylon;

surround the city

in order that no one will escape.

Do to the people of Babylon what they have done to others ,

because they have defied me, the Holy One of the Israelite people.

³⁰ The young men of Babylon will fall in the streets;

all their soldiers will be killed in one day. This will happen because
I, Yahweh, have declared it!

ULB:

²⁹ "Summon the archers against Babylon—all those who bend their bows.

Camp against her, and let no one escape.

Repay her for what she has done.

Do to her by the measure she has used.

For she had defied Yahweh, the Holy One of Israel. ³⁰ So her young men will fall in the city squares, and all her fighting men will be destroyed on that day—this is Yahweh's declaration."

translationWords:

- bow and arrow
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Holy One
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues telling how to destroy the people of Babylon and Chaldea.
- **her ... she** - The words "her" and "she" refer to Babylon.
- **her fighting men will be destroyed** - AT: "I will destroy her fighting men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:31-32**UDB:**

³¹ I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, say this:

’You arrogant people,
it is now the time;
it is the day when I will punish you.

³² Your land is full of proud people,
but you will stumble and fall,
and no one will lift you up again.

I will light a fire in the cities of Babylonia
that will burn up everything that is nearby.’

ULB:

³¹ ”See, I am against you, proud one—this is the declaration of the Lord Yahweh of hosts—

for your day has come, proud one, the time when I will punish you.

³² So the proud ones will stumble and fall. No one will raise them up.

I will light a fire in their cities; it will devour everything around him.

translationWords:

- proud, pride, prideful
- Lord
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- biblical time: day
- punish, punishment
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- fire
- devour

translationNotes:

- **See** - This word introduces something for special attention.
- **proud one** - This is Yahweh’s description of Babylon.

- **for your day has come ... the time when I will punish you** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second phrase defines the “day” that the first phrase mentions. AT: “for the day when I will punish you has come.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **your day** - This refers to the span of time during the horrible judgment will come onto Babylon. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **I will light** - The word “I” refers to Yahweh.
- **a fire in their cities** - This refers to the way the destruction will come. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:33-34**UDB:**

³³ I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, also say this:

'The people of Israel and Judah were oppressed;

those who captured them guarded them carefully and would not allow them to leave Babylon.

³⁴ But Yahweh is strong, and he will free them.

Yahweh is the Commander of the angel armies;

He will defend his people

and enable them to return to their land where they will have peace,

but the people of Babylonia will not have peace.

ULB:

³³ Yahweh of hosts says this: The people of Israel are oppressed, together with the people of Judah.

All the ones who captured them still hold them; they refuse to let them go.

³⁴ The one who rescues them is strong. Yahweh of hosts is his name. He will truly plead their case,

in order to bring rest to the land, and to bring strife to the ones inhabiting Babylon.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- name
- rest
- strife

translationNotes:

- **The people of Israel are oppressed** - AT: “The Babylonians are oppressing the people of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **captured them** - The word “them” refers to the people of Israel.
- **they refuse** - The word “they” refers to the Babylonians.
- **let them go** - The word “them” refers to the people of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:35-37**UDB:**

³⁵ He will send enemy soldiers carrying swords to strike the people of Babylonia;

they will strike the officials and wise men
and all the other people who live in Babylon.

³⁶ They will strike their false prophets with swords
and they will become foolish.

They will strike the strongest warriors of Babylonia,
and they will all be terrified.

³⁷ They will strike their horses and chariots
and the foreign mercenaries who are in the army of Babylonia,
and they will all become as weak as women.

They will seize all the valuable things there in Babylon
and take them away.

ULB:

³⁵ A sword is against the Chaldeans—this is Yahweh's declaration—
and against the inhabitants of Babylon, her leaders, and her wise men.

³⁶ A sword is coming against those who say words for divination, so that they
reveal themselves as fools.

A sword is coming against her soldiers, so they will be filled with terror.

³⁷ A sword is coming against their horses, their chariots and all of the people
who are in the midst of Babylon,

so they will become like women. A sword is coming against her storerooms,
and they will be plundered.

translationWords:

- sword
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- declare, declaration
- wise, wisdom
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

- [reveal, revelation](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)
- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)

translationNotes:

- **A sword is against the Chaldeans** - “Sword” represents those who use them. AT: “enemy soldiers with swords are coming against the Chaldeans” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [01:8](#).
- **reveal themselves as fools** - The word “reveal” shows that their actions are foolish and will be exposed so everyone can see.
- **they will be filled with terror** - AT: “terror will fill them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they will become like women** - “they will all become as weak as women” (UDB) (See: [Simile](#))
- **storerooms** - A storeroom is a place where valuables are kept.
- **they will be plundered** - AT: “enemy soldiers will plunder them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:38-40**UDB:**

³⁸ Yahweh will cause the streams to become dry.

He will do all those things because the entire land of Babylonia is filled with idols,

and those horrible idols have caused the people who worship them to become crazy.

³⁹ Soon only jackals and other wild creatures will live there;

and it will be a place where ostriches live.

People will never live there again;

it will be uninhabited forever .

⁴⁰ Yahweh God will destroy Babylon like he destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah and the nearby towns;

no one will ever live there again.

ULB:

³⁸ A drought is coming on her waters, so they will become dry.

For she is a land of worthless idols, and they act like people made insane by their dreadful idols.

³⁹ So desert beasts with the jackals will inhabit there, and the young of ostriches will live in her.

For all time, she will no longer be inhabited. From generation to generation, she will not be lived in.

⁴⁰ Just as God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah and their neighbors—this is Yahweh’s declaration—

no one will live there; no person will stay in her.”

translationWords:

- water, waters
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [beast](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [generation](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [Gomorrah](#)
- [neighbor](#)

translationNotes:

- **her waters** - “Waters” represent all the sources of water and other necessities for life, especially the river that went through the city. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **jackals** - A jackal is a wild dog found in Asia and Africa.
- **ostriches will live in her** - “Ostriches” are very large African birds that run fast but cannot fly. The word “her” refers to Babylon.
- **For all time, she will no longer be inhabited. From generation to generation, she will not be lived in.** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Babylon will be completely uninhabited. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **she will not be lived in** - AT: “no one will live in her” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **no one will live there; no person will stay in her** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Babylon will be completely uninhabited. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:41-42**UDB:**

⁴¹ Look! A great army will come from the north.

A great nation far away with many kings is preparing to attack you people of Babylon.

⁴² Their army has bows and arrows and spears;

they are very cruel, and do not act mercifully to anyone.

As they ride along on their horses,

the sound of the horses' hooves is like the roaring of the ocean waves;

they are riding in battle formation

to attack you, you people of Babylon.

ULB:

⁴¹ "See, a people is coming from the north, for a great nation and many kings have been stirred up from a distant land.

⁴² They will pick up bows and spears. They are cruel and have no compassion.

Their sound is like the sea roar, and they are riding on horses in formation as fighting men,

against you, daughter of Babylon.

translationWords:

- nation
- king
- bow and arrow
- spear
- compassion, compassionate

translationNotes:

- **See** - This word says to pay special attention to what Yahweh will say.
- **a great nation and many kings** - This phrase refers to the time when the Medes and Persians conquered Babylon in 539 BC.
- **in formation as fighting men** - the way troops are lined up in battle
- **daughter of Babylon** - This phrase refers to the Babylonian people. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:43**UDB:**

⁴³ The king of Babylon heard their report,
“The enemy is approaching.”
So he was frightened and became weak.
Fear and anguish gripped him,
like a woman who is about to give birth to a baby.”

ULB:

⁴³ The king of Babylon has heard their report and his hands have fallen limp in distress.
Anguish seizes him like a woman in labor.

translationWords:

- [report](#)
- [labor pains, in labor](#)

translationNotes:

- **Anguish seizes him like a woman in labor** - The anguish of the king of Babylon is compared to the kind of anguish a woman experiences when she is in labor. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Anguish** - suffering and grief that would bring one to tears.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:44**UDB:**

⁴⁴ I, Yahweh, will come to Babylon suddenly like a lion comes out of the jungle

and leaps on the sheep that are eating the good pastureland.

I will quickly chase the people of Babylonia from their land.

And then I will appoint for them a leader whom I will choose;

I will do that because there is no one like me who can say that what I have done is not right.

No ruler can oppose me.

ULB:

⁴⁴ Behold! He goes up like a lion from the heights of the Jordan to the enduring grazing place

For I will quickly cause them to run from it, and I will put someone who will be chosen in charge of it.

For who is like me, and who will summon me? What shepherd is able to resist me?

translationWords:

- lion
- Jordan River
- shepherd, to shepherd

translationNotes:

- **Behold** - The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows.
- **He goes up** - The word “he” refers to the invader from the north. (See: [50:41](#))
- **like a lion** - This is another way of saying that the attack will be fierce and unexpected. (See: [Simile](#))
- **I will quickly cause them to run from it** - The word “them” refers to the people of Babylon; the word “it” refers to the invasion.
- **someone who will be chosen** - AT: someone I will chose” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **who is like me, and who will summon me?** - Yahweh uses the question to point out the smallness of humans. AT: “No one is like me, no one orders me around.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **summon** - order someone to come
- **What shepherd is able to resist me?** - Yahweh uses the question to show that no leader is able to come against him or defeat him. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 50:45-46**UDB:**

⁴⁵ Listen to what I have planned to do to the people of Babylon city and the rest of Babylonia:

even the little children will be dragged away,

and I will completely destroy the people who live there.

⁴⁶ When Babylon is destroyed, the noise will be extremely loud,

with the result that the earth will shake,

and the wailing of the people will be heard by the people of other nations.”

ULB:

⁴⁵ So listen to the plans that Yahweh has decided against Babylon,

the plans that he has planned against the land of the Chaldeans. They will certainly be dragged away,

even the smallest flock. Their pasturelands will be turned into ruined places.

⁴⁶ At the sound of conquered Babylon the earth shakes, and their shout of distress is heard among the nations.”

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- flock, herd
- ruin, ruins
- earth, earthly
- nation

translationNotes:

- **the plans that Yahweh has decided against Babylon, the plans that he has planned against the land of the Chaldeans** - These two phrases have the same meaning and are used together for emphasis. AT: “the plans that Yahweh has decided for the people of Babylon and the Chaldeans”. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **They will certainly be dragged away** - This means that the people of Babylon will be taken from their homes whether they like it or not. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **Their pasturelands will be turned into ruined places** - “I will turn their pasturelands into ruined places” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **At the sound of conquered Babylon the earth shakes** - This phrase compares the fall of the once powerful nation of Babylon to an extremely loud noise and earthquake. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **distress** - pain or unhappiness
- **their shout of distress** - “their shout of pain”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 50 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 51:1-64, which is an extended quotation.

The prophesied destruction of Babylon continues in this chapter. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Babylon destroyed

Babylon will be conquered and the Jews will return to their homeland. At this time, Babylon control almost the entire Near East. The fulfillment of this prophecy would have been unthinkable. (See: [fulfill](#))

Covenant with Abraham

Babylon is destroyed because it drove the people of Judah from their homeland. This is in line with the promises of the covenant Yahweh made with Abraham to curse those who curse Abraham's descendants. (See: [promise](#), [covenant](#) and [curse](#), [cursed](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 51:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 51:1-2**UDB:**

¹ This is what Yahweh says:

”I will inspire an army to destroy Babylon like a powerful wind,
and also to destroy the people of Babylonia in Leb Kamai.

² I will send a foreign army to come to get rid of Babylonia
like a strong wind that blows away chaff.

They will attack from every direction
on that day of disaster.

ULB:

51 ¹ ”Yahweh says this: See, I am about to stir up a wind of destruction
against Babylon

and against those who live in Leb Kamai.

² I will send foreigners to Babylon. They will scatter her and devastate her
land,

for they will come against her from all around on the day of disaster.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- Babylon, Babylonian
- life, live, living, alive
- send, send out, sent
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- devastate, devastation

translationNotes:

- **wind of destruction** - AT: “an unstoppable destruction” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Leb Kamai** - This is another word for Babylon.
- **scatter** - To scatter is to separate and send in different directions.
- **on the day of disaster** - The phrase “day of” is a Hebrew idiom for “when.” AT: “when she is destroyed” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:3-4**UDB:**

³ I will tell them, 'Do not allow the archers of Babylon to have time to put on their armor
or draw their bows.

Do not spare the young men of Babylon.

Completely destroy their army.'

⁴ Their soldiers will fall dead in Babylonia;

they will die after being impaled by spears in the streets.

ULB:

³ Do not let the archers bend their bows; do not let them put on armor.

Do not spare her young men; set her whole army apart for destruction.

⁴ For the wounded people will fall in the land of the Chaldeans; those who
are killed will fall in her streets.

translationWords:

- [archer](#)
- [bow and arrow](#)
- [armor](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)

translationNotes:

- **Do not let the archers bend their bows** - "Do not allow the archers time to prepare to shoot"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, whom Israel worships, have not abandoned Israel and Judah.

Even though their land was filled with people who sinned against me, the Holy God of Israel,

I am still their God.

⁶ You people of Israel and Judah, flee from Babylon!

Run to escape!

Do not stay there and be killed when the people of Babylon are punished!

It will be the time when Yahweh gets revenge;

He will do to them what they deserve.

ULB:

⁵ For Israel and Judah are not forsaken by their God, by Yahweh of hosts, although their land is filled with offenses committed against the Holy One of Israel.

⁶ Flee from the midst of Babylon; let each man save himself. Do not perish in her iniquity.

For it is the time of Yahweh's vengeance. He will repay all of it to her.

translationWords:

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Judah
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- God
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- Holy One
- save, safe
- perish, perishing, perishable
- iniquity
- avenge, revenge, vengeance

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Babylon has been like a gold cup in Yahweh's hand, a cup that is full of wine that caused people all over the earth who drank some of it to become drunk.

It is as though the rulers of the nations drank the wine from Babylon, and it caused them to become crazy.

⁸ But suddenly Babylon will be conquered.

Weep for its people!

Give them medicine for their wounds; perhaps they can be healed."

ULB:

⁷ Babylon was a golden cup in the hand of Yahweh that made all the land drunk;

nations drank her wine and became insane.

⁸ Babylon will fall suddenly and be destroyed.

Wail for her! Give her medicine for her pain; perhaps she can be healed.

translationWords:

- gold
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- drunk, drunkard
- nation
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- heal, cure

translationNotes:

- **Babylon was a golden cup** - AT: "Babylon was a strong nation used for judgment" (See: *Metaphor*)
- **insane** - AT: "unable to think clearly"
- **Wail** - This is a loud, long cry of sadness.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ We foreigners would have tried to heal them,

but now they cannot be healed.

So we will not try to help them; we will abandon them,

and return to our own lands,

because it is as though the punishment they are receiving reaches up to the clouds in sky;

it is very great, with the result that no one can measure it.

¹⁰ Yahweh has vindicated us;

so let us proclaim in Jerusalem everything that Yahweh our God has done for us.

ULB:

⁹ 'We wished to heal Babylon, but she is not healed. Let us all leave her and go away,

to our own land. For her guilt reaches up to the heavens; it is piled up to the clouds.

¹⁰ Yahweh has declared our innocence. Come, let us tell in Zion the deeds of Yahweh our God.'

translationWords:

- Babylon, Babylonian
- guilt, guilty
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- innocent
- Zion, Mount Zion
- works, deeds, work, acts
- God

translationNotes:

- **For her guilt reaches up to the heavens; it is piled up to the clouds** - AT: “Babylon is so very guilty” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **Yahweh has declared our innocence** - Yahweh had punished the Israelites for their sins, but now has let them return to him.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ You enemy soldiers, sharpen your arrows!

Fill up your quivers for battle,
because Yahweh has incited your kings of Media and Persia to march with
their armies to Babylon and to destroy it.

That is how Yahweh will get revenge on those foreigners who en-
tered his temple in Jerusalem and defiled it.

¹² Lift up a battle flag close to the walls of Babylon!

Reinforce the guards,
and tell the watchmen to stand in their positions!
Prepare an ambush,

because Yahweh is about to accomplish all that he has planned to
do to the people of Babylon.

ULB:

¹¹ Sharpen the arrows and take up the shields. Yahweh is stirring up
the spirit of the king of the Medes in a plan to destroy Babylon.
This is for Yahweh's vengeance, vengeance for the destruction of his temple.

¹² Raise the banner over Babylon's walls; post the guards.

Place the sentinels; hide soldiers to catch anyone running from the city, for
Yahweh will do what he has planned.

He will do what he has announced against Babylon's inhabitants.

translationWords:

- bow and arrow
- shield
- spirit, spiritual
- king
- Medes, Media
- temple
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- warrior, soldier

translationNotes:

- **inhabitants** - This means people who live in a particular place.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Babylon is a city near the great Euphrates River,

a city in which there are many rich people,
but it is time for Babylon to be finished;
the time for the city to exist is ended.

¹⁴ Yahweh, commander of the angel armies has solemnly promised, using his own name,

”Your cities will be filled with your enemies;

I will cause them to be like a swarm of locusts;
and they will shout triumphantly when they conquer your city.”

ULB:

¹³ You people who live by many streams of water, you people who are rich with treasures,

your end has come. The thread of your life is now cut short.

¹⁴ Yahweh of hosts has sworn by his own life, 'I will fill you with your enemies, like a locust plague;

they will raise a battle cry against you.'

translationWords:

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- oath, swear, swear by
- adversary, enemy
- locust
- plague

translationNotes:

- **live by many streams of water** - “are happy and wealthy” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **The thread ... short** - “Your lives will be ended quickly. (See: **Metaphor** and **Idiom**)
- **like a locust plague** - “with a large number of soldiers” (See: **Simile**)
- **battle cry** - This is a shout that a soldier makes in battle.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Yahweh created the earth by his power;

he established it by his wisdom,

and he stretched out the sky by his understanding.

¹⁶ When he speaks loudly, there is thunder in the sky;

he causes clouds to form in every part of the earth.

He sends lightning with the rain

and releases the winds from his storehouses.

ULB:

¹⁵ He has made the earth by his power; he set in place the world by his wisdom.

By his understanding he stretched out the heavens.

¹⁶ When he thunders, there is the roar of waters in the heavens, for he brings up the mist from the ends of the earth.

He makes lightning for rain and sends out wind from his storehouses.

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- power, powers
- wise, wisdom
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- water, waters
- send, send out, sent
- storehouse

translationNotes:

- **When he thunders, there is the roar of waters in the heavens** - These phrases compare the voice of Yahweh to the loud sound made by thunder and rain. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **storehouses** - A storehouse is a place where things are kept for future use.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ People are as senseless as a beast, and they know very little;

those who make idols are always disappointed,
because their idols do nothing for them.

The images that they make are not real gods;
they are lifeless.

¹⁸ Idols are worthless; they deserve to be ridiculed;
there will be a time when they will all be destroyed.

¹⁹ But the God of Israel is not like those idols;
he is the one who created everything that exists;
we, the tribe of Israel, belong to him;
his name is Yahweh, commander of the angel armies.

ULB:

¹⁷ Every man becomes like an animal without knowledge; every metal-worker is put to shame by his idols.

For his cast poured images are frauds; there is no life in them.

¹⁸ They are useless, the work of mockers; they will perish at the time of their punishment.

¹⁹ But God, the portion of Jacob, is not like these, for he is the molder of all things. Israel is the tribe of his inheritance;

Yahweh of hosts is his name.

translationWords:

- know, knowledge, make known
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- idol, idolatrous
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- life, live, living, alive
- works, deeds, work, acts

- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- perish, perishing, perishable
- punish, punishment
- God
- Jacob, Israel
- tribe
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- name

translationNotes:

- **Every man becomes like an animal without knowledge** - This shows Jeremiah's feeling that people who believe in idols are very stupid! (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **frauds** - AT: "lies in order to cheat"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Yahweh says about the army of Babylonia,

”You are like my weapons of war and my war club;
with your power I shatter nations
and destroy many kingdoms.

²¹ With your power I shatter armies of other nations:

I destroy their horses and their riders, their chariots and their chariot drivers.

ULB:

²⁰ You are my war hammer, my weapon for battle.

With you I will smash nations and destroy kingdoms.

²¹ With you I will smash horses and their riders; with you I will smash chariots and their drivers.

translationWords:

- [nation](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)

translationNotes:

- **You** - AT: “The Babylonian army”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:22-23**UDB:**

²² With your power I shatter men and women,

old people and children,

young men and young women.

²³ With your power I shatter shepherds and their flocks of sheep,

farmers and their oxen,

governors and their officials.”

ULB:

²² With you I will smash each man and woman; with you I will smash the old and the young.

With you I will smash the young men and the virgin girls.

²³ With you I will smash the shepherds and their flocks; with you I will smash the plowmen and their teams.

With you I will smash the governors and officials.

translationWords:

- [virgin](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [plow](#)
- [governor, govern, proconsul, government](#)

translationNotes:

- **you** - AT: “The Babylonian Army.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:24**UDB:**

²⁴ But, Yahweh also says,

”Soon I will repay you people in Babylon and in the rest of Babylonia
for all the evil things that you have done in Jerusalem.

ULB:

²⁴ For in your sight I will pay Babylon and all the inhabitants of Chaldea
for all of the evil that they did in Zion—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **in your sight** - AT: “You Babylonians will certainly see” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - AT: “what Yahweh has solemnly said”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ Babylonia is like a great mountain

from which bandits descend to plunder people all over the earth.

But I, Yahweh, am the enemy of you people of Babylonia.

I will raise my fist to strike you.

I will knock you down from the cliffs

and cause you to be only a huge pile of burned rubble.

²⁶ Your city will be abandoned forever;

even the stones in your city will never again be used for buildings.

Your city will be completely destroyed.”

ULB:

²⁵ See, I am against you, you mountain, you who destroy other people—this is Yahweh’s declaration—destroying all the earth.

I will strike you with my hand and roll you down from the cliffs.

Then I will make you a mountain burned completely through.

²⁶ So they will not take from you any stone to construct a building’s corner or foundation;

for you will become an everlasting devastation—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- foundation, founded
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- devastate, devastation

translationNotes:

- **mountain** - Yahweh talks to Babylon as if it were a mountain which he could address as a person. Since mountains were sometimes the homes of bandits, it is possible that Jeremiah had this idea in mind here. See UDB. AT: “strong nation” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **other** - This refers to all the people Babylon has attacked.
- **cliffs** - A cliff is the steep side of a mountain or hill.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Tell the nations to lift up a battle flag!

Tell them to blow their trumpets of war!

Gather all their armies to fight against Babylon!

Prepare the nations to attack Babylon.

Summon the armies of the kingdoms north of Babylonia—from Ararat, Minni, and Ashkenaz.

Appoint a commander for them,

and bring a great number of horses;

there must be a huge number of horses; that huge number will resemble a swarm of locusts.

²⁸ Prepare the armies of other nations,

armies that will be led by the kings of Media and Persia,

their governors and their officials.

ULB:

²⁷ Lift up a banner over the earth. Blow the trumpet over the nations. Call the nations to attack her:

Ararat, Minni, and Ashkenaz.

Appoint a commander to attack her; bring up horses like swarming locusts.

²⁸ Prepare the nations to attack her: the kings of the Medes and his governors,

all of his officials and all the lands under his rule.

translationWords:

- trumpet
- nation
- report
- kingdom
- Ararat
- appoint, appointed
- commander, command

- locust
- king
- Medes, Media
- governor, govern, proconsul, government
- ruler, rulers, rule

translationNotes:

- **banner** - Large flag for the soldiers to follow in battle. AT: “flag”
- **her** - AT: “Babylon”
- **Minni ... Ashkenaz** - These are names of nations or people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **bring up horses like swarming locusts** - Yahweh compares a great number of horses to a swarm of locusts. AT: “bring many horses with soldiers quickly.” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:29**UDB:**

²⁹ When they attack Babylon, it will be as though the earth will shake and writhe in pain,
because those armies will accomplish everything that Yahweh has
planned to do to Babylon—
to destroy it completely,
with the result that no one will live there again.

ULB:

²⁹ For the land will shake and be in anguish, since Yahweh's plans continue
against Babylon,
to make the land of Babylon a wasteland where there is no inhabitant.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [waste, wasteland](#)

translationNotes:

- **the land will shake** - Yahweh promises such great upheaval that the whole nation will tremble. The "land" represents the people of Babylon living there. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **be in anguish** - Babylon will be in great distress.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:30-32**UDB:**

³⁰ When their enemies attack, the strongest warriors in Babylon will not fight.

They will remain in their barracks, without any strength.

They will be as timid as women.

The enemy soldiers will burn the buildings in the city
and break the bars of the city gates into pieces.

³¹ Messengers will go quickly, one after another,
to tell the king that his city has been captured.

³² The places at which people can cross the river to escape from the city will
be blocked.

The dry reeds in the marshes will be set on fire,
and the soldiers of Babylon will be terrified.

ULB:

³⁰ The soldiers in Babylon have stopped fighting; they stay in their strongholds.

Their strength has failed; they have become women—her homes are on fire, the bars of her gates are broken.

³¹ A messenger runs to proclaim to another messenger, and a runner tells another runner

to report to the king of Babylon that his city has been taken from end to end.

³² So the fords over the river are seized; the enemy is burning the reed marshes,

and Babylon's fighting men are confused.

translationWords:

- warrior, soldier
- fire
- gate, gate bar
- messenger
- proclaim, proclamation

- [king](#)
- [seize](#)
- [reed, reeds](#)

translationNotes:

- **his city has been taken** - “The enemies overcame the whole city.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the fords over the river are seized** - The enemies take control of all the crossing places of the river. (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **fords** - A ford is a shallow part of a river where people can walk across easily.
- **confused** - AT: “Unable to think clearly”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:33**UDB:**

³³ This is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, whom Israel worships, says;

”Babylon is like wheat on the ground where it is about to be threshed
by animals tramping on it.

Very soon their enemies will trample on the city of Babylon.”

ULB:

³³ For Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, says this: The daughter of Babylon is like a threshing floor.

It is time to trample her down. In a little while the time of harvest will come to her.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Babylon, Babylonian
- thresh, threshing
- harvest

translationNotes:

- **The daughter of Babylon** - “Daughter of Babylon” is another name for the residents of Babylon. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **is like a threshing floor** - Yahweh compares threshing to the time of great pressure upon Babylon. (See: [Simile](#))
- **time of harvest will come to her** - The harvest is the result of the actions that the people did before. The result of Babylon’s sins will come. AT: “Babylon will be punished.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ The army of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, has attacked and crushed us Israelites,
and we have no strength left.

It is as though they have swallowed us like a great monster
that filled its belly with all our tasty parts,
and then has spit out what it did not like.

³⁵ So the people of Jerusalem say to Yahweh,

”Cause the people of Babylon to suffer
like they caused us to suffer!

Cause the people of Babylonia to be punished for killing our people!”

ULB:

³⁴ Jerusalem says, ‘Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon has devoured me. He has drained me dry

and has made me into an empty pot. He has swallowed me like a dragon.

He filled his stomach with my good food. He has rinsed me out.’

³⁵ The inhabitants of Zion will say, ‘May the violence done to me and my flesh be on Babylon.’

Jerusalem will say, ‘May my blood be on the inhabitants of Chaldea.’

translationWords:

- Jerusalem
- Nebuchadnezzar
- devour
- Zion, Mount Zion
- family
- turn, turn away, turn back
- guilt, guilty
- blood
- Chaldea, Chaldean

translationNotes:

- **He has drained me dry and has made me into an empty pot** - Babylon has taken everything from Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **He has swallowed me** - Jerusalem compares its destruction to being swallowed. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **like a dragon** - This compares Babylon to a dragon. (See: [Simile](#))
- **He filled his stomach with my good food.** - This states in another way the previous idea that Babylon has taken everything from Israel. “Food” represents all the good things there before. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **He has rinsed me out.** - What Babylon did not like after taking everything he threw away like rinsing out old food out of a cooking pot. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **inhabitants of Chaldea** - AT: “People who live in Chaldea.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:36-37**UDB:**

³⁶ And this is what Yahweh replies to the people of Jerusalem:

”I will be like your lawyer to defend you,
and I will avenge you.

I will dry up the river in Babylon
and all the springs of water.

³⁷ Babylon will become a heap of ruins,
a place where jackals live.

It will become a place that people are horrified about and will ridicule;
it will be a place where no one lives.

ULB:

³⁶ Therefore Yahweh says this: See, I am about to plead your case and bring about vengeance for you.

For I will dry up Babylon’s waters and make her springs run dry.

³⁷ Babylon will become heaps of rubble, a den of jackals, a horror,
an object of hissing, where there are no inhabitants.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- plead, pleading, plea
- avenge, revenge, vengeance
- water, waters

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This begins Yahweh’s reply to Jerusalem’s request in verses 34 and 35.
- **heaps of rubble** - This refers to the buildings becoming piles of trash.
- **den of jackals** - AT: “a home for wild dogs”
- **a horror** - Something that terrifies anybody looking at it. AT: “a terrible place to live”
- **hissing** - This is a sound that shows strong disapproval.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:38-40**UDB:**

³⁸ The people of Babylon will all roar like young lions;

they will growl like baby lions.

³⁹ But while they are extremely hungry,

I will prepare a different kind of feast for them.

I will cause them to drink wine until they are very drunk,

with the result that they will fall asleep.

But they will never wake up from that sleep!

⁴⁰ I will bring them down to a place where they will be slaughtered,

like someone who takes lambs or rams or goats to where they will
be slaughtered for sacrifices.

ULB:

³⁸ The Babylonians will roar together like young lions. They will growl like lion cubs.

³⁹ When they become hot with greed, I will make a feast for them; I will make them drunk so they become happy,

and then sleep an unending sleep and not wake up—this is Yahweh's declaration—

⁴⁰ I will send them down like lambs to the slaughter, like rams with male goats.

translationWords:

- lion
- feast
- drunk, drunkard
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- send, send out, sent
- lamb, Lamb of God
- slaughter
- sheep, ram, ewe
- goat, kid

translationNotes:

- **roar** - This is a loud sound made by a lion.
- **growl** - This is a deep threatening sound that animals make.
- **Yahweh's declaration** - AT: "what Yahweh has solemnly said"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:41-42**UDB:**

⁴¹ People all over the earth now honor Babylon;

they say that it is a great city.

But it will become a place about which people of all nations are horrified.

⁴² The enemies of Babylon will cover the city like huge waves of the sea.

ULB:

⁴¹ How Babylon has been captured! So the praise of all the earth is seized.

How Babylon has become a ruined place among the nations.

⁴² The sea has come up over Babylon! She is covered with its roaring waves.

translationWords:

- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [praise](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [seize](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [nation](#)

translationNotes:

- **The sea ... roaring waves** - Babylon's enemies have overcome her. "Waves" represent many people groups overcoming Babylon. The words "sea" and "water" often represent the nations. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:43-44**UDB:**

⁴³ The towns in Babylonia will be a horror, a dry and desert plain,

and it will be a land in which no one lives

and which no one walks through.

⁴⁴ And I will punish Bel, the god that the people of Babylon worship,

and I will cause the people to give back what they have stolen.

People of other nations will no longer come to worship Bel.

And the walls of Babylon will collapse.”

ULB:

⁴³ Her cities have become a desolation, a dry land and a wilderness,

a land that no one inhabits, and no human being passes through.

⁴⁴ So I will punish Bel in Babylon; I will bring out from his mouth what he swallowed,

and the nations will no longer flow to him with their offerings. The walls of Babylon will fall.

translationWords:

- desolate, desolation
- desert, wilderness
- punish, punishment
- sacrifice, offering

translationNotes:

- **Her cities** - AT: “Babylon’s cities”
- **I will punish Bel** - Bel was the main god of the Babylonians and represents the whole country and the people that worshiped it. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **out from his mouth what he swallowed** - Yahweh compares all the sacrifices and offering to Bel to things he ate. (See: **Personification**)
- **the nations will no longer flow** - Yahweh compares the many nations coming to Babylon to sacrifice to Bel to river that moves along.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:45-46**UDB:**

⁴⁵ Yahweh also says, "My people, come out of Babylon!

Flee to escape!

Run, because I, Yahweh, am extremely angry with the people of Babylon, and I will get rid of them!

⁴⁶ Do not be discouraged or afraid

when you hear reports about what is happening in Babylon.

People will report rumors like that every year,

rumors about violent things being done in the land,

and rumors about leaders fighting against each other.

ULB:

⁴⁵ Go out from her midst, my people. Let each of you save his own life from the fury of my wrath.

⁴⁶ Do not let your hearts be timid or fear the news that is heard in the land, for the news will come one year. After it in the next year there will be news, and violence will be in the land. Ruler will be against ruler.

translationWords:

- people of God, my people
- save, safe
- life, live, living, alive
- wrath, fury
- heart
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- ruler, rulers, rule

translationNotes:

- **news that is heard** - The news that the people listen to. (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **Ruler will be against ruler.** - The rulers represent the nations under their control. (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:47-49**UDB:**

⁴⁷ But it will soon be the time for me to get rid of the carved idols in Babylon.

People all over the land will be ashamed because of being defeated,
and the corpses of their soldiers will lie in the streets.

⁴⁸ Then all the angels in heaven and all the people on the earth will rejoice,
because from the north will come armies that will destroy Babylon.

⁴⁹ Like the soldiers of Babylon killed the people of Israel
and also killed others all over the world,
the people of Babylon must also be killed.

ULB:

⁴⁷ Therefore, see, days are coming when I will punish the carved idols of
Babylon.

All of her land will be ashamed, and all of her slaughtered ones will fall in
her midst.

⁴⁸ Then the heavens and the earth, and all that is in them will rejoice over
Babylon.

For destroyers will come for her from the north—this is Yahweh's declara-
tion.

⁴⁹ "As Babylon has made the killed of Israel fall,
so the killed of all her land will fall in Babylon.

translationWords:

- punish, punishment
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- Babylon, Babylonian
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- slaughter
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- rejoice
- destroyer
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **see** - AT: “pay attention”
- **All of her land** - AT: “All of Babylon’s people” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the heavens and the earth** - Heaven and earth are viewed as if they were people. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - AT: “what Yahweh has solemnly said”
- **the killed** - AT: “the killed people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:50-51**UDB:**

⁵⁰ You Israelite people who have not been killed, get out of Babylon!

Do not wait!

Even though you are in a land far away from Israel,
think about Yahweh, and think about Jerusalem!”

⁵¹ The Israelite people say,

”We are ashamed.

We are completely disgraced,

because foreigners have entered Yahweh’s temple and defiled it.”

ULB:

⁵⁰ Survivors of the sword, go away! Do not stay still.

Call Yahweh to mind from far away; let Jerusalem come to mind.

⁵¹ We are ashamed, for we have heard insults; reproach has covered our faces,

for foreigners have entered the holy places of Yahweh’s house.

translationWords:

- sword
- Jerusalem
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- reproach
- face
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- holy place, most holy place
- house of God, Yahweh’s house

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jeremiah speaks to the Israelite people in verse 50.
- **insults** - AT: “hurtful, negative words”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:52-53**UDB:**

⁵² Yahweh replies, "That is true, but there will soon be a time when I will destroy the carved idols in Babylon,

and throughout Babylonia there will be wounded people who will groan.

⁵³ Even if the walls around Babylon could extend up to the sky,

and if its walls were extremely strong,

I will send armies that will destroy the city.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it."

ULB:

⁵² Therefore, see, days are coming—this is Yahweh's declaration—when I will punish her carved idols,

and the wounded people will groan in all of her land.

⁵³ For even if Babylon went up to the heavens or fortified her highest fortresses,

destroyers would come from me to her—this is Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- [declare, declaration](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [destroyer](#)

translationNotes:

- **groan** - to cry out because of pain or sadness
- **For even ... to her** - "her" refers to Babylon. This is a way of saying that it is impossible for Babylon to escape Yahweh's judgment.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:54-56**UDB:**

⁵⁴ Listen to the people of Babylon shouting for help!

And listen to the sounds of things being destroyed all over Babylonia!

⁵⁵ Yahweh will be destroying Babylon.

He will cause the loud noises in the city to cease.

⁵⁶ Enemy troops will surge against the city like a great wave.

They will capture the city's mighty soldiers
and break their weapons.

That will happen because Yahweh is a God who punishes his enemies justly;
he will punish them as they deserve.

ULB:

⁵⁴ A shout of distress came from Babylon, a great collapse from the land of the Chaldeans.

⁵⁵ For Yahweh is destroying Babylon. He is causing her loud voice to perish. Their enemies roar like the waves of many waters; their noise becomes very strong.

⁵⁶ For the destroyers have come against her—against Babylon!—and her warriors have been captured.

Their bows are broken, for Yahweh is the God of vengeance; he will surely carry out this repayment.

translationWords:

- Chaldea, Chaldean
- voice
- perish, perishing, perishable
- water, waters
- warrior, soldier
- bow and arrow
- God
- avenge, revenge, vengeance

translationNotes:

- **A shout of distress came from Babylon, a great collapse from the land of the Chaldeans**
- The same thought is expressed in two different ways for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **enemies roar like the waves of many waters** - The sound of the enemies coming will be very loud. (See: [Simile](#))
- **her warriors have been captured** - This phrase can be changed to have an active verb. AT: “they captured her warriors.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:57-58**UDB:**

⁵⁷ Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says,

”I will cause the city officials and wise men, the army captains and soldiers, to become drunk.

They will fall asleep,
but they will never wake up again!”

⁵⁸ Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, also says,

”The thick walls around Babylon will be flattened to the ground.

The city gates will be burned.

People from other countries will work hard to save the city,

but it will be in vain,
because everything that they have built will be destroyed by fire.”

ULB:

⁵⁷ For I will make her princes, her sages, her officials, and her soldiers drunk, and they will sleep in an unending sleep and never wake up —this is the King’s declaration: Yahweh of hosts is his name.

⁵⁸ Yahweh of hosts says this: The thick walls of Babylon will be completely demolished, and her high gates will be burned.

Then the peoples coming to her aid will labor uselessly; everything that the nations try to do for her will be burned up.”

translationWords:

- prince, princess
- drunk, drunkard
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- king
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- name
- gate, gate bar
- labor, laborer
- nation

translationNotes:

- **her ... they** - These refer to Babylon.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:59-60

UDB:

⁵⁹ Seraiah, son of Neraiah and grandson of Mahseiah, was an important servant of King Zedekiah. After Zedekiah had been ruling Judah for almost four years, the prophet Jeremiah gave him a message. This was when Seraiah was about to go to Babylon with the king. ⁶⁰ Now Jeremiah had written on a scroll a list of all the disasters that he had written about, disasters that would soon happen to Babylon.

ULB:

⁵⁹ This is the word that Jeremiah the prophet commanded Seraiah son of Neriah

son of Machseiah when he went with Zedekiah king of Judah to Babylon in the fourth year of his reign. Now Seraiah was a chief officer. ⁶⁰ For Jeremiah had written in a scroll about all the disaster that was going to come on Babylon—all these words that were written about Babylon.

translationWords:

- [word](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [reign](#)
- [written](#)
- [scroll](#)

translationNotes:

- **Seraiah ... Neriah ... Machseiah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:61-62

UDB:

⁶¹ Jeremiah said to Seraiah, "When you arrive in Babylon, read aloud everything that I have written on this scroll. ⁶² Then pray, 'Yahweh, you said that you will thoroughly destroy Babylon, with the result that people and animals will no longer live there. You said that it will be desolate forever.'

ULB:

⁶¹ Jeremiah said to Seraiah, "When you go to Babylon, then you will see and you will read these words aloud. ⁶² Then you will say, 'Yahweh, you yourself have declared that you would destroy this place, and that no man or animal will live in it, and it will be desolate forever.'

translationWords:

- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [waste, wasteland](#)

translationNotes:

- **no man or animal will live in it** - These animals are those that are normally with people, because [51:37](#) states that Babylon will be inhabited by jackals or wild animals.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 51:63-64

UDB:

⁶³ Then, when you have finished reading what is written on the scroll, tie it to a heavy stone and throw it into the Euphrates River. ⁶⁴ Then say, ‘In the same way, Babylon and its people will disappear and never exist again, because of the disasters that Yahweh will bring to it.’”

This is the end of Jeremiah’s messages.

ULB:

⁶³ Then when you have finished reading this scroll, tie a stone to it and throw it into the middle of the Euphrates. ⁶⁴ Say, ‘Babylon will sink like this. It will not arise because of the disaster that I am sending against it, and they will fall.’” Jeremiah’s words end here.

translationWords:

- [stone, stoning](#)
- [Euphrates River](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)

translationNotes:

- **Babylon will sink like this** - AT: “Babylon will disappear as this stone disappeared.” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 51 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The chapter returns to a previous sequence of events and records Babylon's conquering of Judah. It also records the destruction of the temple in Jerusalem. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [Jeremiah 52:01 Notes](#)

Jeremiah 52:1-3

UDB:

¹ Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled in Jerusalem for eleven years. His mother was Hamutal, the daughter of a man named Jeremiah from Libnah. ² Zedekiah did many things that Yahweh says are evil, like his father Jehoiakim had done. ³ The events described here happened because Yahweh was angry with the people of Jerusalem and of other places in Judah, and finally he exiled them and said that he did not want to have anything to do with them anymore.

Then Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon.

ULB:

52 ¹ Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he began to reign; he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Hamutal; she was the daughter of Jeremiah from Libnah. ² He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh; he did everything that Jehoiakim had done. ³ Through Yahweh's anger, all these events happened in Jerusalem and Judah, until he drove them from before himself. Then Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon.

translationWords:

- Zedekiah
- reign
- Jerusalem
- name
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh
- Jehoiakim
- angry, anger
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian

translationNotes:

- **Hamutal** - This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Libnah** - This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Jeremiah** - This refers to another man named Jeremiah, not the prophet Jeremiah who wrote this book. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **He** - This refers to Zedekiah.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:4-5

UDB:

⁴ So, on the tenth day of the tenth month, when Zedekiah had been ruling for almost nine years, King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon led his entire army to attack Jerusalem. They surrounded the city and built dirt ramps up to the top of the city walls to enable them to attack the city. ⁵ They continued to surround Jerusalem until Zedekiah had been ruling for almost eleven years.

ULB:

⁴ It happened that in the ninth year of the reign of King Zedekiah, in the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month, Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, came with all his army against Jerusalem. They camped opposite it, and they built a siege wall around it. ⁵ So the city was besieged until the eleventh year of King Zedekiah's reign.

translationWords:

- [biblical time: year](#)
- [biblical time: day](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [siege, besiege](#)

translationNotes:

- **It happened** - This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.
- **in the ninth year** - “in year nine” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **in the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **They camped opposite it** - “Nebuchadnezzar’s army camped opposite Jerusalem”
- **until the eleventh year** - “until year eleven” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:6-8

UDB:

⁶ When Zedekiah had been ruling for almost eleven years, on the ninth day of the fourth month of that year, the famine in the city had become very severe, and there was no more food for the people to eat. ⁷ Then the soldiers of Babylonia broke through a section of the city wall, and all the Israelite soldiers fled. But because the city was surrounded by soldiers from Babylonia, Zedekiah and the Israelite soldiers waited until it became dark. Then they left the city through the gate between the two walls behind the king's garden. Then they ran toward the plain along the Jordan. ⁸ But the soldiers of Babylonia pursued King Zedekiah, and they caught up with him on the plains near Jericho. He was alone because all his men had all deserted him and had scattered.

ULB:

⁶ In the fourth month, on the ninth day of that year, the famine was so severe in the city that there was no food for the people of the land. ⁷ Then the city was broken into, and all the fighting men fled and went out of the city at night by the way of the gate that was between the two walls, by the king's garden, although the Chaldeans were all around the city. So they went in the direction of the Arabah. ⁸ But the army of Chaldeans pursued the king and overtook Zedekiah in the plains of the Jordan River valley near Jericho. All his army was scattered away from him.

translationWords:

- biblical time: day
- biblical time: year
- famine
- gate, gate bar
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- Arabah
- Jordan River
- Jericho

translationNotes:

- **In the fourth month, on the ninth day of that year** - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. The ninth day is near the beginning of July on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **city** - This refers to Jerusalem.
- **was broken into** - The Babylonians broke through the wall around the city. (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **between the two walls** - This refers to the wall of the King's garden and the wall of the city.
- **plains** - "flat land"

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:9-11

UDB:

⁹ The soldiers of Babylonia took him to the king of Babylon, who was at Riblah in the region of Hamath. There the king of Babylon told his soldiers what they should do to punish Zedekiah. ¹⁰ They forced Zedekiah to watch while they killed his sons and all the officials from Judah. ¹¹ Then they gouged out Zedekiah's eyes. They fastened him with bronze chains and took him to Babylon. They put him in a prison, and he remained there until the day that he died.

ULB:

⁹ They captured the king and brought him up to the king of Babylon at Riblah in the land of Hamath, where he passed sentence on him. ¹⁰ The king of Babylon slaughtered Zedekiah's sons before his own eyes, and at Riblah he also slaughtered all the leaders of Judah. ¹¹ Then he put out Zedekiah's eyes, bound him in bronze chains, and brought him to Babylon. The king of Babylon put him in prison until the day of his death.

translationWords:

- [Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **Riblah** - This is a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **before his own eyes** - AT: "before him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:12-14

UDB:

¹² On the tenth day of the fifth month of that year, which was when King Nebuchadnezzar had been ruling for almost nineteen years, Nebuzaradan, who was the captain of the king's bodyguards and one of the king's officials, arrived in Jerusalem. ¹³ He commanded his soldiers to burn down the temple of Yahweh, the king's palace, and all the houses in Jerusalem. They also destroyed all the important buildings in the city. ¹⁴ Then he supervised the soldiers from Babylonia while they tore down the walls on all sides of Jerusalem.

ULB:

¹² Now in the fifth month, on the tenth day of the month, which was the nineteenth year of the reign of King Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, Nebuzaradan came to Jerusalem. He was the commander of the king's bodyguards and a servant of the king of Babylon. ¹³ He burned the house of Yahweh, the king's palace, and all the houses of Jerusalem; also every important building in the city he burned. ¹⁴ As for the walls around Jerusalem, all the army of the Babylonians who were with the commander of the bodyguard destroyed them.

translationWords:

- biblical time: day
- biblical time: year
- king
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- commander, command
- servant, slave, slavery
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- palace

translationNotes:

- **in the fifth month, on the tenth day of the month** - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. The tenth day is near the beginning of August on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the nineteenth year** - "during year nineteen" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Nebuzaradan** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **bodyguards** - This refers to people whose job is to protect someone.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Then Nebuzaradan forced to go to Babylon some of the poorest people, those Israelites who had said they would support the king of Babylon, the rest of the craftsmen, and other people who had remained in Jerusalem. ¹⁶ But Nebuzaradan allowed some of the very poor people to remain in Judah to take care of the vineyards and fields.

ULB:

¹⁵ As for the poorest people, the rest of the people who were left in the city, those who had deserted to the king of Babylon, and the rest of the craftsmen— Nebuzaradan, the commander of the bodyguard, took some of them away into exile. ¹⁶ But Nebuzaradan, the commander of the bodyguard, left some of the poorest of the land to work the vineyards and fields.

translationWords:

- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [vineyard](#)

translationNotes:

- **craftsmen** - This refers to people who makes beautiful objects used in the worship of Yahweh.
- **Nebuzaradan** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the poorest of the land** - AT: “the poorest people of the land”

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ The soldiers from Babylonia broke into pieces the huge bronze pillars that were in front of the temple, and the large bronze water tank, and the ten bronze water carts, and they took all the bronze to Babylon. ¹⁸ They also took away the basins for holding the ashes from the burned sacrifices, the shovels for cleaning out the ashes, the tools for snuffing out the wicks of the lamps, the basins for holding the blood of the sacrificed animals, the dishes for incense, and all the other bronze items that were used when they made sacrifices at the temple. ¹⁹ Nebuzaradan also told his soldiers to take away the small bowls, the dishes for burning incense, the basins, pots, lampstands, bowls for incense, and the bowls used for pouring out the wine offerings. They took all the other items that were made of pure gold or silver.

ULB:

¹⁷ As for the bronze pillars that belonged to the house of Yahweh, and the stands and the bronze sea that were in the house of Yahweh, the Chaldeans broke them into pieces and carried all the bronze back to Babylon. ¹⁸ The pots, shovels, lamp trimmers, bowls, and all the utensils of bronze with which the priests had served in the temple—the Chaldeans took them all away. ¹⁹ The basins and the incense burners, the bowls, pots, lampstands, pans, and basins that were made of gold, and those made of silver—the captain of the king's guard took them away as well.

translationWords:

- bronze
- pillar, column
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- priest, priesthood
- serve, service
- temple
- incense
- lampstand
- gold
- silver

translationNotes:

- sea - This is a basin of water used in the worship of Yahweh.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ The bronze from the two pillars, the large water tank and the twelve statues of oxen that were beneath it, and the water carts, was more than they could weigh. Those things had been made for the temple during the time that Solomon was the king. ²¹ Each of the pillars was 27 feet tall and 18 feet around. They were hollow, and each had sides that were 3 inches thick.

ULB:

²⁰ The two pillars, the sea, and the twelve bronze bulls that were under the stands, things that Solomon had made for the house of Yahweh, contained more bronze than could be weighed. ²¹ The pillars were eighteen cubits high each, and a line around each one measured twelve cubits. Each was four fingers thick and hollow.

translationWords:

- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:

- **cubits** - A cubit is a measurement of length or distance. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **hollow** - This means that the pillars had empty space inside them.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:22-23

UDB:

²² The bronze head on the top of each pillar was seven and one half feet high and was decorated all around with a bronze network of figures that represented pomegranates. ²³ There was a total of one hundred figures of pomegranates on the network at the top, 96 of which could be seen from the ground.

ULB:

²² A capital of bronze was on top of it. The capital was five cubits high, with latticework and pomegranates all around. It was all made of bronze. The other pillar and its pomegranates were the same as the first. ²³ So there were ninety-six pomegranates on the capital's sides, and one hundred pomegranates above the surrounding latticework.

translationWords:

- [pomegranate](#)

translationNotes:

- **capital** - This is the top part of each pillar.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ When Nebuzaradan returned to Babylon, he took with him as prisoners Seraiah the high priest, Zephaniah who was Seraiah's deputy, and the three men who guarded the entrances to the temple. ²⁵ He found some other people who were hiding in the city. So from them he took a commander of the army of Judah, seven of the king's advisors, the army commander's chief secretary who was in charge of recruiting soldiers for the army, and sixty other soldiers.

ULB:

²⁴ The commander of the bodyguard took prisoner Seraiah, the high priest, together with Zephaniah, the second priest, and the three gatekeepers. ²⁵ From the city he took prisoner an officer who was in charge of soldiers, and seven men of those who advised the king, who were still in the city. He also took prisoner the king's army officer responsible for drafting men into the army, along with sixty important men from the land who were in the city.

translationWords:

- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Zephaniah](#)

translationNotes:

- **Seraiah** - See how you translated this man's name in [36:26](#).
- **gatekeepers** - A gatekeeper is a person who guards the gate of a city.
- **drafting** - AT: "conscripting" meaning to bring into service.

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:26-27

UDB:

²⁶ Nebuzaradan took them all to the king of Babylon, who was still at Riblah. ²⁷ There at Riblah in the Hamath region, the king of Babylon commanded that they all be executed.

Many of the people of Judah were forced to leave their own land.

ULB:

²⁶ Then Nebuzaradan, the commander of the bodyguard, took them and brought them to the king of Babylon at Riblah. ²⁷ The king of Babylon put them to death at Riblah in the land of Hamath. In this way, Judah went out of its land into exile.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)

translationNotes:

- **Nebuzaradan** - See how you translated this name of a man in [39:9](#).
- **Riblah** - This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:28-30

UDB:

²⁸ The number of people who were captured and sent to Babylon at that time, when Nebuchadnezzar had been ruling for almost seven years, was 3,023. ²⁹ Then, when he had been ruling for almost eighteen years, his soldiers took 832 more from Jerusalem to Babylonia. ³⁰ When he had been ruling almost twenty-three years, he sent Nebuzaradan to Jerusalem again, and he brought back 745 more Israelites to Babylonia. That was a total of 4,600 Israelites who were taken to Babylonia.

ULB:

²⁸ These were the people who Nebuchadnezzar exiled: in the seventh year, 3,023 Judeans. ²⁹ In the eighteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar he took 832 people from Jerusalem. ³⁰ In the twenty-third year of Nebuchadnezzar, Nebuzaradan, the commander of the king's bodyguard, exiled 745 Judean people. All the exiled people totaled 4,600.

translationWords:

- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [biblical time: year](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **seventh ... eighteenth ... twenty-third** - See: [Ordinal Numbers](#)
- **Nebuzaradan** - See how you translated this name of a man in [39:9](#).
- **3,023 ... 832 ... 745 ... 4,600** - (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:31

UDB:

³¹ After King Jehoiachin of Judah had been in prison in Babylon for almost thirty-seven years, Evil-Merodach became the king of Babylon. He was kind to Jehoiachin and ordered that he be released from prison. That was on the twenty-fifth day of the twelfth month of the year that Evil-Merodach became king.

ULB:

³¹ It happened later in the thirty-seventh year of the exile of Jehoiachin, king of Judah, in the twelfth month, on the twenty-fifth day of the month, that Evil-Merodach, king of Babylon released Jehoiachin king of Judah from prison. This happened in the year that Evil-Merodach began to reign.

translationWords:

- [biblical time: year](#)
- [Jehoiachin](#)
- [biblical time: day](#)
- [reign](#)

translationNotes:

- **in the thirty-seventh year** - (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **in the twelfth month, on the twenty-fifth day of the month** - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. The twenty-fifth day is near the middle of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **It happened** - This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.
- **Evil-Merodach** - He became the king of Babylon after Nebuchadnezzar. His name does not describe him, but is the way his name is pronounced. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

Jeremiah 52:32-34

UDB:

³² He always spoke kindly to Jehoiachin and gave him a position in which he was honored more than all the other kings who had been exiled to Babylon. ³³ He supplied new clothes for Jehoiachin, to replace the clothes that he had been wearing in prison. He also allowed Jehoiachin to eat with him every day, all during the rest of his life. ³⁴ Every day, the king of Babylon gave him some money to buy the things that he needed. That continued until the day that Jehoiachin died.

ULB:

³² He spoke kindly to him and gave him a seat more honorable than that of the other kings who were with him in Babylon. ³³ Evil-Merodach removed Jehoiachin's prison clothes, and Jehoiachin ate regularly at the king's table for the rest of his life, ³⁴ and a regular food allowance was given to him every day for the rest of his life until his death.

translationWords:

- [honor, to honor](#)
- [king](#)
- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **He spoke kindly to him** - AT: "Evil Merodach spoke kindly to Jehoiachin"
- **a seat more honorable** - AT: "a seat at the table that was closer to where Evil Merodach sat."

Links:

- [Introduction to Jeremiah](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 General Notes](#)
- [Jeremiah 52 Translation Questions](#)

translationQuestions

Jeremiah 1

Q? What kind of work did Jeremiah do?

A. Jeremiah was a priest. [1:1]

Q? Who was king when the word of Yahweh first came to Jeremiah?

A. The word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah when Josiah was king. [1:2]

Q? When did Yahweh choose Jeremiah to be a prophet?

A. Yahweh chose Jeremiah before Jeremiah was born. [1:5]

Q? Why did Jeremiah say he was not qualified?

A. He said he was very young. [1:6]

Q? What did Yahweh command Jeremiah to say?

A. Yahweh commanded him to say whatever Yahweh commanded him to say. [1:7]

Q? Why should Jeremiah not be afraid?

A. He should not be afraid because Yahweh was going to be with him and rescue him. [1:8]

Q? What did Yahweh place in Jeremiah's mouth?

A. Yahweh placed his word in Jeremiah's mouth. [1:9]

Q? What did Jeremiah see?

A. He saw an almond branch. [1:11]

Q? What will Yahweh do with his word?

A. He will carry it out. [1:12]

Q? What was the meaning of the pot that Jeremiah saw?

A. The pot was a picture of coming disaster. [1:14]

Q? What will all the tribes of the northern kingdom do when Yahweh calls?

A. They will come and set up thrones all around Jerusalem and Judah. [1:15]

Q? Why will Yahweh pronounce sentence against Jerusalem and Judah?

A. He will pronounce sentence against them because they have disobeyed him. [1:16]

Q? What will the people do after Jeremiah speaks to them?

A. The people will fight against him. [1:19]

Jeremiah 2

Q? What does Yahweh remember about the people of Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh remembers that the people of Jerusalem loved him in the past. [2:2]

Q? What will happen to the people of Israel?

A. Evil will come on them. [2:3]

Q? What does Yahweh want the house of Jacob to tell him?

A. Yahweh wants the house of Jacob to tell him what he did that was wrong. [2:4-5]

Q? What did the people do when God brought them to the land of Carmel?

A. They defiled the land. [2:7]

Q? For whom did the prophets prophesy?

A. The prophets prophesied for Baal. [2:8]

Q? For what have Yahweh's people exchanged their glory?

A. Yahweh's people have exchanged their glory for things that cannot help them. [2:11]

Q? What two evils have Yahweh's people committed?

A. His people have abandoned the springs of living waters and dug out cisterns. [2:13]

Q? What did Israel's enemies do to Israel?

A. They made Israel become slaves. [2:15]

Q? What happened to Israel's cities?

A. His cities are destroyed without any inhabitants. [2:15]

Q? What did the people say after Yahweh broke their yoke and tore their fetters?

A. They said, "I will not serve!" [2:20]

Q? What animal does Yahweh say the people are like?

A. He says they are like camels and wild donkeys. [2:23-24]

Q? What sin will the house of Israel be ashamed of?

A. They will be ashamed of worshiping trees and stones. [2:26-28]

Q? What is Yahweh's declaration?

A. All of you have sinned against me. [2:29]

Q? Why does Yahweh say he has punished the people in vain?

A. He has punished them because they do not accept discipline. [2:30]

Q? What have the people done to the innocent and the poor?

A. They have killed the innocent and the poor. [2:34]

Q? Why do the people think that Yahweh's anger will turn from them?

A. The people think that they have not sinned. [2:35]

Jeremiah 3

Q? What kind of woman does the prophet compare the people to?

A. He compares them to a woman who has left her husband. [3:1]

Q? Why did the rains not come?

A. The rains did not come because the people were not ashamed of their sins. [3:3-5]

Q? What did Israel do on the mountains and under the trees?

A. Israel acted like a promiscuous woman by worshiping idols. [3:6]

Q? What did God do to Israel?

A. He divorced her. [3:8]

Q? What did Judah do after Yahweh divorced Israel?

A. Judah did the same things Israel had done. [3:8-10]

Q? What does Yahweh invite Israel to do?

A. He invites them to return. [3:12]

Q? What must the people do when they return?

A. They must acknowledge their sin. [3:13]

Q? What will Yahweh give them if they return?

A. He will give them shepherds after his heart. [3:15]

Q? How will they think about the ark of the covenant?

A. They will no longer think about it. [3:16]

Q? What will happen in Jerusalem?

A. All the other nations will gather at Jerusalem. [3:17]

Q? Will Judah and Israel still be enemies?

A. No, they will come together. [3:18]

Q? How does Yahweh want to honor the people?

A. He wants to honor them the way a father honors his son. [3:19]

Q? What noise is heard on the plains?

A. The weeping and pleading of the people of Israel is heard on the plains. [3:21]

Q? What has happened to the things the ancestors worked for?

A. Idols have consumed the things that the ancestors worked for. [3:24]

Q? What have the people and their ancestors done?

A. They have not listened to the voice of Yahweh their God. [3:25]

Jeremiah 4

Q? What will happen if Israel returns to Yahweh?

A. The nations will ask for Yahweh's blessing. [4:1]

Q? What will happen because of the people's wickedness?

A. Yahweh will be furious with them and bring disaster from the north. [4:4-6]

Q? What will the lion do to the people?

A. He will destroy their cities. [4:7]

Q? Why would the people wrap themselves in sackcloth?

A. They would do it to show that they were sorry for their sins. [4:8]

Q? Why does Jeremiah think Yahweh has deceived the people?

A. Yahweh has promised the people peace, but someone is attacking them. [4:9]

Q? How can the people of Jerusalem be saved?

A. They must cleanse their hearts from wickedness. [4:14]

Q? Why are the watchmen coming from a distant land?

A. They are coming because Judah has rebelled against Yahweh. [4:16]

Q? Why is Jeremiah in anguish?

A. He hears the alarm for battle. [4:19]

Q? What is the foolishness of the people?

A. They do not know Yahweh. [4:22]

Q? Why was the land that Jeremiah saw empty?

A. The land was empty because Yahweh was angry. [4:26]

Q? What will the people in every city do?

A. They will run away from the attackers and leave the cities empty. [4:29]

Q? What kind of people dress in scarlet and gold jewelry? [4:30]

A. Rich people dress this way.

Q? What will happen to those who are now rich?

A. They will be killed. [4:31]

Jeremiah 5

Q? At what point will God forgive Jerusalem?

A. God will forgive Jerusalem if the prophet can find anyone who is acting justly. [5:1]

Q? Even though God has completely defeated the people, what do they still do?

A. They still refuse to receive discipline. [5:3]

Q? Why does the prophet say that these are only poor, foolish people?

A. They do not know Yahweh's ways. [5:4]

Q? Do the important people know Yahweh's ways?

A. No, they have rebelled against him. [5:5]

Q? What did Jeremiah say about the people's transgressions and acts of faithlessness?

A. Jeremiah said their transgressions were increasing and their acts of faithlessness were unlimited. [5:6]

Q? What have the people said about God?

A. They have said that he is not real. [5:12]

Q? What is Yahweh about to do to the house of Israel?

A. He is about to bring a nation against them from far away. [5:15]

Q? What will the enemies do to the Israelites?

A. The enemies will kill the Israelites' children and eat their food. [5:17]

Q? Why will God harm Israel and Judah?

A. He will harm them because they abandoned Yahweh and worshiped foreign gods. [5:19]

Q? What do the eyes and ears of idols do?

A. They do nothing. [5:21]

Q? What does Yahweh want to do for those who fear him?

A. He wants to bring the rains at the right time so the harvest can be good. [5:23]

Q? Are the wicked among Yahweh's people rich or poor?

A. They are rich. [5:27-28]

Q? How will Yahweh treat the wicked?

A. He will punish them. [5:29]

Q? How do the people feel about what the prophets and priests do?

A. They love it that way. [5:31]

Jeremiah 6

Q? Why should the people of Benjamin find safety by leaving Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh will destroy Jerusalem. [6:2]

Q? When will the enemies attack?

A. They will attack at noon and at night. [6:4-5]

Q? Why does Yahweh want the enemies to attack Jerusalem?

A. He wants them to attack because the city is filled with oppression and wickedness. [6:6]

Q? What will happen if Jerusalem does not accept discipline?

A. Yahweh will destroy Jerusalem. [6:8]

Q? Why can Yahweh not warn the Israelites?

A. They are not able to pay attention. [6:9]

Q? What will happen to the houses, fields, and women?

A. They will be turned over to others. [6:12]

Q? How did the people feel when they committed abominations?

A. They were not ashamed at all. [6:15]

Q? Why is Yahweh about to bring disaster to this people?

A. They paid no attention to his word or his law. [6:19]

Q? What do the frankincense and sweet smells mean to Yahweh?

A. They mean nothing to him. He does not like them. [6:20]

Q? What will the stumbling block do to the people?

A. It will destroy them. [6:21]

Q? What kind of people are coming?

A. Cruel people, fighting men, are coming. [6:22]

Q? Why should the daughter of the people perform a bitter funeral for herself?

A. She should do this because the enemy will destroy her people. [6:26]

Q? What will Jeremiah do as a refiner of God's people?

A. He will inspect and test their ways. [6:27]

Q? What are the people like?

A. They are stubborn like bronze and iron are hard. [6:28]

Jeremiah 7

Q? What does Yahweh promise to do for the people if they will make their ways and practices good?

A. He will continue to let them live in that place. [7:3-4]

Q? What must the people do in order for Yahweh to let them stay in the land?

A. They must make their ways and practices good by practicing justice. [7:5-7]

Q? What must the people not do if they want Yahweh to let them stay in the land?

A. They must not exploit the weak or kill the innocent or worship false gods. [7:5-7]

Q? What do the people say after they do things they know God hates?

A. They go to the temple and say that they are saved. [7:10]

Q? Why did Yahweh want the people to think about Shiloh?

A. He wanted them to remember that he would do to them what he had done to Shiloh because they were guilty of the same sins the people of Shiloh were guilty of. [7:12-14]

Q? Why will Yahweh not listen to Jeremiah's prayers?

A. He will not listen because he has decided to destroy the Israelites. [7:16]

Q? Why will Yahweh destroy the people?

A. Because they are worshiping other gods. [7:18]

Q? What command did Yahweh give the people when they left Egypt?

A. He commanded them to listen to his voice. [7:23]

Q? What did the people do when Yahweh sent prophets?

A. They did not listen or pay attention. They did evil. [7:26]

Q? What is the prophet to say to them?

A. He is to say to them that this is a nation that does not listen to the voice of Yahweh. [7:28]

Q? Why does Yahweh tell Jeremiah to shave off all his hair?

A. Jeremiah was to show that Yahweh had rejected the Israelites. [7:29]

Q? Why did the people build the shrine of Topheth in the valley of Ben Hinnom?

A. They built it so they could burn their sons and daughters in fire there. [7:31]

Q? What will become of the corpses of this people?

A. Birds and wild animals will eat them. [7:33]

Q? What will Yahweh do to the cities of Judah and the streets of Jerusalem?

A. He will make it so there are no happy people there. [7:34]

Jeremiah 8

Q? What will happen to the bones of the people?

A. People will spread the bones all over the ground. [8:1]

Q? Will those who are alive wish they could live or wish they could die?

A. They will wish they could die. [8:3]

Q? What do people who are lost try to do?

A. They try to find a way to return. [8:4]

Q? How did the people feel about their wickedness?

A. No one was sorry for his wickedness. [8:6]

Q? How are Yahweh's people not like birds?

A. Birds know what they are supposed to do, but his people do not know Yahweh's decrees. [8:7]

Q? What have the scribes done?

A. They have written things that deceive the people. [8:8]

Q? What will Yahweh do with their wives and their fields?

A. He will give their wives and fields to other people. [8:10]

Q? Were the people ashamed because of their sins?

A. No, they were not ashamed. [8:12]

Q? What will Yahweh do because they were not ashamed?

A. He will have their enemies kill them. [8:13]

Q? What do the people decide to do?

A. They decide to go to the cities and die. [8:14]

Q? What will Yahweh's strong horses do?

A. They will come and consume the land and its wealth, the city and the ones living in it. [8:16]

Q? What is Yahweh sending to harm them?

A. He is sending snakes to harm them. [8:17]

Q? Where are the people who are screaming?

A. They are in a land far away. [8:18]

Q? Where is Yahweh?

A. Yahweh is in Zion. [8:19]

Jeremiah 9

Q? Why does the prophet want to weep?

A. He wants to weep because so many of his people have been killed. [9:1]

Q? Why does he want to abandon his people?

A. He wants to abandon them because they are adulterers and traitors. [9:2]

Q? What do the sinful people say?

A. They say false things. [9:3]

Q? Why should each of them guard against their neighbors and brothers?

A. They should guard against them because every brother and neighbor is a deceiver. [9:4]

Q? Why are the people exhausted?

A. They are exhausted from committing iniquity. [9:5]

Q? Why does Yahweh want to test his people?

A. He wants to test them because they lie to their neighbors. [9:8]

Q? What will the prophet sing?

A. He will sing funeral songs and mourning songs for the mountains and the meadows. [9:10]

Q? What will Yahweh make of Jerusalem and Judah?

A. He will turn them into ruined places. [9:11]

Q? What will the land be like after it has perished?

A. It will be like the wilderness, and no one will pass through it. [9:12]

Q? What have the people done to displease Yahweh?

A. They have abandoned his law and they do not listen to him. [9:13]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will do to the Israelites?

A. He will make them as unhappy as people who have nothing but bitter things to eat and drink. Then he will drive them from their homes and have them killed. [9:16]

Q? What should the women who are skilled at lamenting do?

A. They should sing sad songs so that the people will cry. [9:17-18]

Q? How do the wailing people in Zion feel?

A. They are greatly ashamed. [9:19]

Q? What should the women teach their daughters?

A. They should teach their daughters a mourning song. [9:20]

Q? Who does the prophet say are going to die?

A. Children and young men are going to die. [9:21]

Q? In what way will the corpses be like dung and grain stalks?

A. There will be no one to bury them. [9:22]

Q? What should people be proud of?

A. People should be proud that they know Yahweh. [9:23]

Q? With what does Yahweh say that he acts?

A. He acts with covenant loyalty, justice, and righteousness. [9:24]

Q? Why will Yahweh punish the Israelites?

A. He will punish the Israelites because they are circumcised only in their body and not in their heart. [9:25-6]

Q? Why will Yahweh punish the other people?

A. He will punish them because even their bodies are uncircumcised. [9:26]

Jeremiah 10

Q? What does Yahweh not want the people of Israel to do?

A. He does not want them to learn the ways of the nations. [10:1-2]

Q? What custom is worthless?

A. Making an idol is worthless. [10:3,5]

Q? Why should the people not fear idols?

A. Idols cannot do anything either good or bad. [10:5]

Q? Who is like Yahweh?

A. No one is like Yahweh. [10:6]

Q? What will happen to the gods that did not make the earth?

A. They will perish. [10:11]

Q? What did the true God do?

A. He established dry land and spread the heavens. [10:12]

Q? What is the difference idols and the true God?

A. Idols are not alive, but God made all things. [10:14-15]

Q? What should the people who have been living under the siege do?

A. They should gather their bundles and leave the land. [10:17]

Q? Why is there no longer anyone to spread out the prophet's tent?

A. They have taken his children away from him. [10:20]

Q? Why have the shepherds become stupid?

A. They do not seek Yahweh. [10:21]

Q? What will happen when the earthquake comes?

A. The cities of Judah will become ruins. [10:22]

Q? How does the prophet ask Yahweh to discipline him?

A. He asks Yahweh to discipline him with justice, not in anger. [10:24]

Q? On whom does the prophet ask Yahweh to pour his fury?

A. He asks Yahweh to pour his fury on the nations that do not know him. [10:25]

Q? Why should they receive Yahweh's fury?

A. They should receive Yahweh's fury because they have destroyed Jacob and Jacob's land. [10:25]

Jeremiah 11

Q? To whom did Yahweh tell Jeremiah to declare the words of this covenant?

A. Yahweh said to declare them to each man of Judah and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem. [11:1]

Q? Why would the people be cursed?

A. They would be cursed if they did not listen to the words of the covenant. [11:3]

Q? To whom was this covenant given?

A. The covenant was given to Israel's ancestors. [11:4]

Q? When was the covenant given?

A. It was given the day Yahweh brought the Israelites out of Egypt. [11:4]

Q? What is the oath God swore to the ancestors?

A. He swore that he would give them the land flowing with milk and honey. [11:5]

Q? Why did God bring all the curses in the covenant against the people?

A. He brought them because the people did not obey the covenant. [11:7-8]

Q? What was the conspiracy among the people of Judah and Jerusalem?

A. They refused to listen to Yahweh and worshiped other gods. [11:10]

Q? When Yahweh brings disaster on the people and they call out to him, how will he answer them?

A. He will not listen to them. [11:11]

Q? How many incense altars to Baal were made in Jerusalem?

A. The people made an altar to Baal on every street. [11:13]

Q? Why does Yahweh command Jeremiah not to pray for the people?

A. He was not to pray because Yahweh would not listen. [11:14]

Q? Why will the people's sacrifices not help them?

A. The sacrifices cannot help them because they have done evil and then been happy about it. [11:15]

Q? What wicked act have the people committed?

A. They have given offerings to Baal. [11:17]

Q? What part of man does Yahweh examine?

A. He examines the heart and the mind. [11:20]

Q? What were the people of Anathoth telling Jeremiah they would do if he kept prophesying in the name of Yahweh?

A. They said they would kill him. [11:21]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to the people who wanted to kill Jeremiah?

A. He said he would kill their young people by war and famine. [11:22]

Jeremiah 12

Q? What is Jeremiah's complaint about wicked people?

A. Things go well for them. [12:1-2]

Q? What does Jeremiah want Yahweh to do to the people?

A. He wants Yahweh to take the people away. [12:3]

Q? Why do the plants wither?

A. The plants wither because of the people's wickedness. [12:4]

Q? Who has betrayed Jeremiah?

A. Jeremiah's brothers and his father's family have betrayed him. [12:6]

Q? Why does God hate his people?

A. They have set themselves against him. [12:7]

Q? What have the shepherds done to the delightful portion?

A. They have turned it into a wilderness. [12:10-11]

Q? Where in the land is there safety for living creatures?

A. There is no safety in the land. [12:12]

Q? Why should the workers be ashamed of their gain?

A. They should be ashamed because of Yahweh's anger. [12:13]

Q? What will happen to the house of Judah when Yahweh has compassion on them?

A. Yahweh will bring them back to their land. [12:15]

Q? What is Yahweh's promise to those nations who learn to swear, "As Yahweh lives"?

A. They will be built up in the midst of Yahweh's people. [12:16]

Q? What will happen if those nations do not listen?

A. Yahweh will uproot them. [12:17]

Jeremiah 13

Q? What does Yahweh tell Jeremiah to do with the linen undergarment?

A. He tells Jeremiah to put the undergarment on and then take it to the Euphrates and hide it. [13:1-4]

Q? What was the quality of the undergarment when Jeremiah dug it out from where he had hidden it?

A. It was no good at all. [13:7]

Q? How are the wicked people like the undergarment?

A. They are good for nothing because they refuse to listen to Yahweh's word. [13:10]

Q? What three things does Yahweh want his people to bring to him?

A. He wants them to bring him fame, praise, and honor. [13:11]

Q? What will Yahweh fill all the people with?

A. He will fill them with drunkenness. [13:14]

Q? What will Yahweh do after he fills the people with drunkenness?

A. He will destroy them. [13:14]

Q? What will happen if the people do not give honor to Yahweh?

A. He will bring darkness. [13:16]

Q? Why should the king and queen mother humble themselves?

A. Their crowns have fallen off. [13:18]

Q? Whom will God place over the people?

A. He will place over them those whom they had taught to be their friends. [13:21]

Q? Why are bad things happening to the people?"

A. Bad things are happening because the people have committed many iniquities [13:22]

Q? What will Yahweh do about the bad things the people have done in secret?

A. He will show them to everyone. [13:27]

Jeremiah 14

Q? What happens when the servants search for water?

A. They do not find any. [14:3]

Q? What happens when there is no rain?

A. There is no grass or vegetation. [14:4-6]

Q? When does Yahweh save Israel?

A. He saves Israel in the time of distress. [14:8]

Q? What does Yahweh tell Jeremiah not to do for the people?

A. Yahweh tells Jeremiah not to pray for good for the people. [14:11]

Q? From where do the deceitful words of the false prophets come?

A. They come from the hearts of the false prophets. [14:14]

Q? What will happen to the false prophets?

A. They will die from war and famine. [14:16]

Q? Where will people die of war?

A. They will die of war in the fields. [14:18]

Q? Where will people die of famine?

A. They will die of famine in the city. [14:18]

Q? What does Jeremiah admit to Yahweh is the iniquity of the ancestors?

A. They had sinned against Yahweh. [14:20]

Q? Why should the people hope in Yahweh?

A. Yahweh has made the heavens and given the spring rain. [14:22]

Jeremiah 15

Q? What did Yahweh say he would not change even if Moses or Samuel pled for the people?

A. He would still not be in favor of this people. [15:1]

Q? What will happen to the people of Judah and Jerusalem?

A. Some will die, some will be killed, some will die from being hungry, and some will be taken far from home. [15:2]

Q? What four things will happen to the people?

A. Some will die in war, dogs will drag some away, birds will eat some, and beasts will eat some. [15:3]

Q? Who will care about Jerusalem?

A. No one will care about Jerusalem. [15:5]

Q? What is Yahweh tired of doing for Jerusalem?

A. He is tired of having mercy on Jerusalem. [15:6]

Q? What will make the mother of seven children ashamed and embarrassed?

A. Yahweh will have the enemy kill her children. [15:9]

Q? When will Yahweh make Jeremiah's enemies beg for help?

A. He will make them beg for help in the time of calamity and distress. [15:11]

Q? Why will Yahweh give the people's wealth to their enemies?

A. He will give it because of all the people's sins. [15:13]

Q? What did Jeremiah do with Yahweh's words?

A. He consumed them. [15:16]

Q? What does Jeremiah need to do to be restored?

A. He needs to repent. [15:19]

Q? What kinds of people will Yahweh rescue Jeremiah from?

A. He will rescue him from the wicked and the tyrant. [15:21]

Jeremiah 16

Q? What command does Yahweh give to Jeremiah?

A. Yahweh commands Jeremiah not to take a wife. [16:2]

Q? What will happen to the children that are born in that place?

A. They will all die. [16:3-4]

Q? What will happen to their corpses?

A. Their corpses will be like dung on the ground and will be food for the birds and beasts. [16:4]

Q? Why does Yahweh command Jeremiah not to go into houses where people are mourning?

A. He commands Jeremiah because both the great people and the small people will die, but no one will mourn for them. [16:5-6]

Q? Why does Yahweh command Jeremiah not to go into houses where people are celebrating?

A. Yahweh commands him because he is going to put an end to celebrations. [16:9]

Q? What will be the people's question when Jeremiah reports his word to them?

A. The people will ask Jeremiah why Yahweh has decreed disaster against them. [16:10]

Q? Who was more wicked, these people or their ancestors?

A. These people were more wicked than their ancestors were. [16:12]

Q? Why will Yahweh pay back double Israel's iniquity and sin?

A. He will do it because they have polluted the land with their idols. [16:18]

Q? What will the nations say about their ancestors when they go to Yahweh?

A. They will say that their ancestors inherited deceit. [16:19]

Jeremiah 17

Q? Where is the sin of Judah engraved?

A. It is engraved on their hearts. [17:1]

Q? Where are the people's Asherah poles located?

A. The Asherah poles are by the leafy trees on the high hills. [17:2]

Q? Where will Judah be enslaved?

A. Judah will be enslaved in a land that they do not know. [17:4]

Q? Who does Yahweh say is accursed?

A. Yahweh says that the person who trusts in mankind is accursed. [17:5]

Q? What is the heart like?

A. The heart is more deceitful than anything else, it is sick, and no one can understand it. [17:9]

Q? What will happen to those who abandon Yahweh?

A. All who abandon Yahweh will be ashamed and cut off. [17:13]

Q? From what job did Jeremiah not run away?

A. Jeremiah did not run from being a shepherd following Yahweh. [17:16]

Q? What did Yahweh want Jeremiah to do when he stood by the gates?

A. He wanted Jeremiah to tell the people to listen to the word of Yahweh. [17:19]

Q? What did Yahweh want the people to stop doing?

A. He wanted them to stop carrying burdens on the Sabbath. [17:21]

Q? What will happen to the city if the people will listen and not do any work on the Sabbath?

A. If they will listen and obey, then the city will remain forever. [17:25]

Q? What will happen if the people do not listen?

A. If the people do not listen, Yahweh will burn Jerusalem up. [17:27]

Jeremiah 18

Q? Where does Yahweh tell Jeremiah to go to hear a word from him?

A. Yahweh tells Jeremiah to go to the potter's house. [18:2]

Q? What happened to the object of clay that the potter molded while Jeremiah was watching?

A. It was ruined in his hand. [18:4]

Q? What will Yahweh do to a nation that turns from evil after it hears his proclamation?

A. He will relent from the disaster that he was planning to bring upon it. [18:8]

Q? What will Yahweh do to a nation that does not listen to his voice?

A. He will not do the good that he had said he would do for them. [18:10]

Q? Why will Yahweh form disaster against the people of Judah and Jerusalem?

A. They are doing wicked things. [18:11]

Q? What will the men of Judah and Jerusalem do after Jeremiah warns them?

A. They will not listen or stop doing evil things. [18:12]

Q? Why will Israel become a horror?

A. The Israelites have forgotten Yahweh and made offerings to idols. [18:15]

Q? Why will everyone who passes by shudder and shake his head?

A. They will do that because Yahweh has made the land a horror. [18:16]

Q? What is the people's plot against Jeremiah?

A. They plan to attack him with their words and no longer pay attention to anything he says. [18:18]

Q? What does Jeremiah ask Yahweh to remember him for?

A. Jeremiah asks Yahweh to remember how Jeremiah had spoken for the people's welfare. [18:20]

Q? What does Jeremiah ask Yahweh to do to his enemies?

A. He asks Yahweh to kill all the men and not forgive their sin. [18:21]

Jeremiah 19

Q? What did Yahweh tell Jeremiah to purchase?

A. He told Jeremiah to go and purchase a potter's clay flask,. [19:1]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Jeremiah he would bring on the kings of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh said he would bring disaster on that place, and make their ears tingle.” [19:3]

Q? Why is God bringing disaster on Jerusalem?

A. He is bringing disaster because the people have abandoned God and profaned his place, and approached other gods, and filled the place with innocent blood. [19:4]

Q? Why did the people build shrines to Baal?

A. They built shrines to Baal in order to burn their sons in the fire as burnt offerings to him. [19:5]

Q? What will the Valey of Ben Hinnom be called?

A. It will be called the Valley of Slaughter. [19:6]

Q? What was Jeremiah to do with the clay flask?

A. He was to break the clay flask in the sight of the men who went with him. [19:10]

Q? What were the unclean people doing on the rooftops?

A. The unclean people were worshipping the stars on the rooftops and pouring out drink offerings to other gods. [19:13]

Q? Why did Yahweh bring disaster on the city and all of its towns?

A. God brought disaster on them because they stiffened their neck and refused to listen to God's words. [19:14-15]

Jeremiah 20

Q? Why did Pashur beat Jeremiah and place him in stocks?

A. He punished Jeremiah because Jeremiah prophesied these words before Yahweh's house. [20:1-2]

Q? What will Yahweh give to the king of Babylon?

A. Yahweh will give him all the wealth of this city and all of its riches, all of its precious items and all the treasures of the kings of Judah. [20:4]

Q? What will happen to Pashur and all the inhabitants of his house?

A. They will go to Babylon and die there. [20:5]

Q? What message did Jeremiah call out and proclaim?

A. He called out and proclaimed, "Violence and destruction." [20:8]

Q? What happened when Jeremiah tried not to proclaim Yahweh's name anymore?

A. His word became like a fire in Jeremiah's heart, a burning in his bones, and he could contain it. [20:7-9]

Q? What will happen to those who watch for Jeremiah to fall?

A. They will stagger, they will not defeat him, and they will have unending shame. [20:10-11]

Q? Why does Jeremiah say to sing and praise Yahweh?

A. Everyone should sing and praise Yahweh because he examines the righteous, sees their mind and heart, does vengeance, and rescues the oppressed person. [20:12-13]

Q? How does Jeremiah say about the day he was born?

A. He curses the day he was born and asks that it not be blessed. [20:14]

Jeremiah 21

Q? What did Pashhur and Zephaniah ask Jeremiah?

A. They asked him to seek advice from Yahweh. [21:1-2]

Q? Why did they want Jeremiah to seek advice from Yahweh?

A. They were hoping Yahweh would do miracles for them. [21:1-2]

Q? What is the message that Jeremiah give Zedekiah?

A. The message is that Yahweh will fight against Zedekiah. [21:3-5]

Q? How will Yahweh fight against King Zedekiah?

A. Yahweh will fight against King Zedekiah with sickness, war, and hunger. [21:6-7]

Q? What did people who wanted to live need to do?

A. They needed to go out of the city and surrender to the Chaldeans. [21:8-9]

Q? What would happen to the people who stayed in the city?

A. They would die. [21:8-10]

Q? What does Yahweh want the king of Judah to do?

A. He wants the king to listen to Yahweh's word, to bring about justice, and to rescue the oppressed. [21:11-12]

Q? Who is Yahweh against?

A. Yahweh is against the people who live in the valley and on the plain. [21:13-14]

Q? What will Yahweh do because of what the people are doing?

A. He will light a fire in the thickets that will burn everything up. [21:13-14]

Jeremiah 22

Q? What does Yahweh tell the King of Judah, his servants, and his people to do?

A. They are to listen to the word of Yahweh, act justly, help those who have been robbed, and rescue the oppressed. They are not to mistreat foreigners, orphans, or widows, and they are not to be violent or kill innocent people. [22:1-3]

Q? What happens if they do not listen to these words of Yahweh's declaration?

A. The royal palace will become a ruin. [22:5]

Q? How will the palace become a wilderness?

A. Yahweh will choose people to come and destroy it. [22:6-7]

Q? Why has Yahweh done these things to the great city?

A. He has done them because the people abandoned the covenant and worshiped other gods. [22:8-9]

Q? Why should the people weep for those who go into captivity?

A. They should weep because the captives will never return or see the land again. [22:10]

Q? What should a good king do?

A. He should do justice even for the poor and needy, do righteousness, and know Yahweh. [22:15-16]

Q? Why will the people not lament for king Jehoiakim?

A. They will not lament because he steals, he kills innocent people, and he oppresses people. [22:17]

Q? What kind of burial will they give Jehoiakim?

A. They will bury him as they bury donkeys. [22:19]

Q? What has been the custom of the people since they were young?

A. They have not listened to Yahweh's voice. [22:21]

Q? What will happen to them when they do not listen?

A. They will lose their shepherds, their friends will become captives, and they will be ashamed and humiliated. [22:22]

Q? What will happen to Jehoiachin?

A. Yahweh will give Jehoiachin to the king of Babylon, and he will die far away from the land. [22:24-26]

Q? What does Yahweh say about Jehoiachin?

A. Jehoiachin will be childless and will not prosper. [22:30]

Jeremiah 23

Q? What do the shepherds of Jeremiah's day do to the sheep?

A. The shepherds destroy and scatter the sheep, drive them away, and do not care for them. [23:1-2]

Q? What does Yahweh declare he will do for his flock?

A. He will gather them, give them a place to graze, and give them good shepherds. [23:3-4]

Q? What will Yahweh do in the coming days?

A. He will raise up a righteous king. [23:5-6]

Q? What will the people say Yahweh has done for them?

A. They will say Yahweh has brought them back from other lands so they can live in their own land. [23:7-8]

Q? Why is Jeremiah's heart broken?

A. His heart is broken because Yahweh's words are holy, but the prophets are liars and the land is full of adulterers. [23:9]

Q? What will happen to the prophets and priests?

A. Yahweh will push them down and disaster will come against them. [23:11-12]

Q? What are the offenses of the prophets?

A. They prophesied by Baal, led Yahweh's people off the right path, committed adultery, deceived the people, and encouraged the people to do evil. [23:13-14]

Q? What does Yahweh make these prophets do?

A. He makes them eat wormwood and drink poisonous water. [23:15]

Q? Why does Yahweh say, “Do not listen to the prophets”?

A. They have lied to the people. [23:16-17]

Q? What is Yahweh’s fury like?

A. His fury is like a storm. [23:19]

Q? What is wrong with the prophets?

A. Yahweh did not send them. [23:21-22]

Q? Where can people go to get away from Yahweh?

A. There is nowhere people can get away from him. He nearby and far away, he can see in every secret place, and he is everywhere in the heavens and the earth. [23:23-24]

Q? What do the prophets want the people to do?

A. They want the people to stop worshiping Yahweh. [23:25-27]

Q? How is the prophet of Yahweh to declare what he hears from Yahweh?

A. He is to declare Yahweh’s word truthfully and not steal words from other people. [23:28-29]

Q? Why is Yahweh against the prophets?

A. He is against them because they deceive people by saying that their own thoughts are the words of Yahweh. [23:31-32]

Q? What does Yahweh want Jeremiah to tell those who ask him for a word from Yahweh?

A. He is to say that there is no word from Yahweh because Yahweh has abandoned the people. [23:33]

Q? Whom will Yahweh punish?

A. He will punish those who say they have a message from Yahweh. [23:34]

Q? Why must the people not talk to each other about Yahweh's declaration?

A. They must not do it because each man is using his own words, and they have perverted the words of the living God. [23:35-36]

Q? How does Jeremiah test any prophet?

A. He asks questions to see if they falsely say that they have received a declaration from Yahweh. [23:37-38]

Q? What happens to the prophets who give false reports?

A. Yahweh will throw them away and put everlasting shame on them. [23:39-40]

Jeremiah 24

Q? What is the vision Yahweh gave Jeremiah?

A. Yahweh showed him a basket of very good figs and a basket of very bad figs. [24:1-3]

Q? Who are the people Yahweh says are like the good figs?

A. Yahweh says the exiles are like the good figs. [24:4-5]

Q? What will Yahweh do to the people who are like the good figs?

A. He will restore them to the land [24:6]

Q? Who are the people Yahweh says are like the bad figs?

A. Zedekiah, the people who remain in the land, and the people who go to Egypt are like the bad figs. [24:8]

Q? What will Yahweh do to the people he says are like the bad figs?

A. He will make things go badly for them, and he will kill them by war, famine, and sickness. [24:8-10]

Jeremiah 25

Q? Who did Jeremiah the prophet proclaim this word to?

A. He proclaimed the word to all the people of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem. [25:1-2]

Q? How long had Jeremiah been proclaiming Yahweh's words?

A. He had been proclaiming them for 23 years. [25:3-4]

Q? How had the people received the words Jeremiah had proclaimed?

A. They had not listened. [25:3]

Q? What did the prophets tell each man?

A. They told each man to turn from his wicked way, not to worship other gods, and not to provoke Yahweh with what they did. [25:5-6]

Q? What harm did Yahweh do because they did not listen?

A. Yahweh sent the people of the north with Nebuchadnezzar to destroy them. [25:7-9]

Q? What sounds will disappear from these nations when they serve the king of Babylon for seventy years?

A. The sound of celebration and the sound of work will disappear. [25:10-11]

Q? What will happen in seventy years?

A. Yahweh will punish the people of Babylon for their iniquity. [25:12-14]

Q? What will all the nations do when Yahweh gives them his cup of fury?

A. They will drink it, stumble about, and rant madly. [25:15-16]

Q? What happened after Jerusalem, the cities of Judah, and her kings and officials drank from the cup that Jeremiah gave them?

A. They turned into ruins. [25:17-18]

Q? What was the final nation to drink of the cup of Yahweh's fury?

A. Babylon was the last to drink of the cup of Yahweh's fury. [25:26]

Q? What will happen if the nations refuse to take the cup from Jeremiah's hand?

A. They will be punished anyway. [25:27-29]

Q? Whom will the disaster from Yahweh kill?

A. It will kill everyone from one end of the earth to the other. [25:32-33]

Q? Why are the shepherds wailing?

A. It is their day to die. [25:34-36]

Q? Why were the peaceful pastures destroyed?

A. Yahweh was angry. [25:37-38]

Jeremiah 26

Q? What does Yahweh tell Jeremiah to proclaim in the courtyard?

A. He tells him to proclaim all of Yahweh's words. [26:1-2]

Q? What can the people do to get Yahweh not to bring disaster on them?

A. If the people listen and turn from their wicked ways, Yahweh will not bring disaster on them. [26:3]

Q? If the people do not listen to the words of Yahweh, what will Yahweh do to their city?

A. Yahweh will turn their city into a curse. [26:4-6]

Q? What happens to Jeremiah after he announces Yahweh's words?

A. The priests, prophets, and people seize him and tell him he will die. [26:7-9]

Q? Where do the people take him to judge him?

A. They take him to the gateway of the New Gate of the temple. [26:10-12]

Q? What will happen if the officials kill Jeremiah?

A. If they kill him, they will be guilty of killing an innocent man. [26:13-15]

Q? What do the officials, people, and elders say about killing Jeremiah?

A. They say that it would be wrong to kill him. [26:16-17]

Q? What did Micah prophesy?

A. Micah prophesied that Zion, Jerusalem, and the temple mount would become ruins. [26:18]

Q? What does the king try to do to Uriah?

A. The king tries to kill Uriah. [26:20]

Q? What does Uriah do?

A. He goes to Egypt. [26:21]

Q? How was Jehoiakim able to kill Uriah?

A. Jehoiakim sent men to Egypt to bring Uriah back, then Jehoiakim killed Uriah with the sword. [26:22-23]

Q? Who keeps Jeremiah from being killed?

A. Ahikam son of Shaphan keeps Jeremiah from being killed. [26:24]

Jeremiah 27

Q? Which kings does Jeremiah get a word from Yahweh for?

A. He gets a message for the kings of Edom, Moab, Ammon, Tyre, and Sidon. [27:1-2]

Q? What is the message for the kings?

A. All their nations will serve Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon. [27:5-7]

Q? What will happen to the nations that do not serve Nebuchadnezzar?

A. Yahweh will punish nations that do not serve Nebuchadnezzar with sword, famine, and plague. [27:8]

Q? What will happen to the people who listen to deceitful prophecy?

A. Yahweh will send them away from their land, and they will die. [27:9-10]

Q? What will the nation that takes the yoke of the king of Babylon receive?

A. They will stay in their land, cultivate it, and make homes. [27:11]

Q? What does King Zedekiah need to do if he wants to live?

A. He needs to serve the King of Babylon. [27:12]

Q? What will happen to Zedekiah if he listens to his prophets?

A. Yahweh will drive him out and he will die. [27:14-15]

Q? What does Jeremiah say to the priests and the people?

A. They are not to listen to the prophets. They are to serve the king of Babylon and live. [27:16-17]

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar take from Judah and Jerusalem?

A. He took Jehoiachin and all the nobles. [27:19-20]

Q? What will happen to the objects in the temple?

A. Nebuchadnezzar will take them to Babylon. [27:21-22]

Jeremiah 28

Q? Briefly what did Hananiah say to Jeremiah in front of the priests and people?

A. Hananiah said that Yahweh had broken the yoke imposed by the king of Babylon. [28:1-2]

Q? How does one know if a prophet is a true prophet sent by Yahweh?

A. The prophet's words will come true. [28:9]

Q? Why does Hananiah break the yoke off Jeremiah?

A. He wants the people to believe that they will be free from Babylon. [28:10-11]

Q? Are Hananiah's words true?

A. No, the people will not be free from Babylon. [28:12-14]

Q? What is Yahweh's message through Jeremiah to Hananiah?

A. Yahweh will kill Hananiah this year because Hananiah told the people to rebel against Yahweh. [28:15-17]

Jeremiah 29

Q? Who did Jeremiah send his scroll to?

A. It was sent to all the people exiled to Babylon. [29:1]

Q? Why did Yahweh tell the captives to seek the peace of the city where they were exiled and to intercede with Yahweh on behalf of that city? **A.** He told them to do this because the exiles would have peace if the city was at peace. [29:7]

Q? What is Yahweh's warning through Jeremiah to the captives?

A. He warns them not to listen to dreams or to prophets whom Yahweh did not send. [29:8-9]

Q? What is Yahweh's plan for the captives after seventy years?

A. He will bring them back to Judah and give them peace. [29:10-11]

Q? When will they find Yahweh?

A. They will find him when they call to him, pray to him, and seek him with all their heart. [29:12-14]

Q? What was Yahweh going to do to the people who stayed in the city and did not go out into captivity?

A. Yahweh said he was about to send sword, famine, and disease on them. [29:16-17]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will do to Ahab and Zedekiah?

A. He will hand them over to Nebuchadnezzar, who will kill them. [29:20-21]

Q? What curse will the captives of Judah in Babylon speak?

A. They will say, “May Yahweh make you like Zedekiah and Ahab, whom the king of Babylon roasted in fire.” [29:22]

Q? Why will Yahweh have Ahab and Zedekiah killed?

A. He will have them killed because of the shameful things they did. [29:23]

Q? Where was Shemaiah when he wrote the letters?

A. He was in Babylon. [29:24]

Q? Where were the people to whom Shemaiah wrote the letters?

A. They were in Jerusalem. [29:25]

Q? What did Shemaiah want Zephaniah to do?

A. He wanted Zephaniah to make prisoners of the prophets. [29:26]

Q? Why did Shemaiah want Zephaniah to rebuke Jeremiah?

A. Jeremiah had said that the people would be in Babylon for a long time. [29:28]

Q? Why will Yahweh punish Shemaiah and his descendants?

A. He will do it because Shemaiah prophesied lies to the people so they would rebel against Yahweh. [29:31-32]

Jeremiah 30

Q? What will Yahweh do for his people?

A. He will restore their fortunes and bring them back to the land. [30:1-3]

Q? Who heard the “trembling voice of dread”?

A. Yahweh, speaking of himself as “we,” was the one who heard the voice. [30:4-5]

Q? Why do the young men have their hands on their loins and have pale faces?

A. The descendants of Jacob will have a time of anxiety. [30:6-7]

Q? How will the Israelites celebrate being freed from enslavement?

A. They will worship Yahweh their God and serve David their king. [30:8-9]

Q? Why should the descendants of Jacob not be dismayed?

A. Yahweh will bring them back from where he had scattered them to be captives. [30:10]

Q? How can Israel’s wound be cured?

A. It cannot be healed. [30:12-13]

Q? Why does Yahweh discipline the Israelites?

A. Yahweh disciplines the Israelites because of their iniquities and sins. [30:14-15]

Q? What will Yahweh do to those who harmed Israel?

A. He will have their enemies consume and capture and plunder them. [30:16-17]

Q? What will Yahweh do for Israel?

A. Yahweh will heal Israel's wounds. [30:17]

Q? What will the people do after the city has been rebuilt?

A. They will sing songs of praise, they will increase in number, and Yahweh will honor them. [30:19]

Q? What will Yahweh do after he establishes Israel's assembly?

A. He will appoint a leader for Israel. [30:20-21]

Jeremiah 31

Q? Whose God will Yahweh be?

A. He will be the God of all the clans of Israel. [31:1]

Q? Why did the people of Israel who survived the sword find Yahweh's favor?

A. They found favor because Yahweh loved them with an everlasting love. [31:2-3]

Q? What will virgin Israel do after Yahweh builds her up?

A. She will go out with happy dances and have good crops. [31:4-5]

Q? Whom has Yahweh rescued?

A. He has rescued the remnant of Israel. [31:7]

Q? Where will Yahweh bring the remnant of Israel back from?

A. He will bring them back from the northern lands and the farthest parts of the earth. [31:8]

Q? Who is "the one who scattered Israel"?

A. Yahweh scattered Israel. [31:10-11]

Q? What will be the signs of Yahweh's goodness?

A. The people will have plenty of food, wine, oil, and livestock. [31:12]

Q? What will the people do when they stop mourning?

A. They will celebrate [31:13]

Q? Why is there wailing and bitter weeping in Ramah?

A. There is wailing and weeping because Rachel's children have died. [31:15]

Q? Why should the people stop weeping?

A. Yahweh will bring their descendants back from the enemy's land. [31:16-17]

Q? Why will Yahweh have compassion on Ephraim?

A. He will have compassion because Ephraim was ashamed of his sins. [31:18-20]

Q? Why will the people say, "May Yahweh bless you"?

A. They will say that because people will live in the cities and farmers and shepherds will live in the country. [31:24]

Q? What will Yahweh do to the houses of Israel and Judah that he uprooted and tore down?

A. Yahweh will watch over them so he can build them up and plant them. [31:27-28]

Q? What is the saying that the people of Israel and Judah will no longer use?

A. The saying is, "Fathers have eaten sour grapes and the children's teeth are dulled." [31:29-30]

Q? Why will the people no longer use that saying?

A. Each man will die for his own sin. [3:30]

Q? What is the new covenant that Yahweh will establish with the house of Israel and Judah?

A. The new covenant is this: Yahweh will write his law on their hearts. [31:33-34]

Q? Israel will be a nation as long as what has not vanished?

A. They will be a nation as long as the sun, moon, stars, and sea have not vanished. [31:35-36]

Q? Yahweh will reject Israel's descendants only when what two things have happened?

A. They will be a nation as long as no one has measured the highest heavens or discovered the earth's foundation. [31:37]

Q? When the city is rebuilt, will it be bigger or smaller than it was?

A. It will be bigger. [31:38-40]

Jeremiah 32

Q? Where was Jeremiah when Yahweh gave a message to him?

A. Jeremiah was imprisoned in the courtyard of the house of the king of Judah. [32:1-2]

Q? What was the Babylonian army doing?

A. It was attacking Jerusalem. [32:2]

Q? Why did Zedekiah imprison Jeremiah?

A. Zedekiah imprisoned him because Jeremiah prophesied that Jerusalem and Zedekiah would be captured by the Babylonians. [32:3-5]

Q? What did Yahweh say, to Jeremiah, was going to happen?

A. Yahweh told Jeremiah that Hanamel son of Shallum your uncle was coming to Jeremiah and would say, "Buy my field that is in Anathoth for yourself, for the right to buy it belongs to you." [32:6-7]

Q? How did Jeremiah go about buying the field?

A. Jeremiah signed and sealed the deed of purchase, weighed the silver in the scales, and gave the sealed scroll to Baruch in the presence of the witnesses. [32:10-12]

Q? What did Jeremiah tell Baruch to do with the sealed scroll?

A. Jeremiah told Baruch to take the scrolls with the receipt of the purchase and place them in a new jar. [32:13-14]

Q? What message of hope did Yahweh want to give through this purchase of land?

A. Yahweh wanted all the people to know that people would again buy houses, fields, and vineyards in the land. [32:15]

Q? How did Yahweh make the heavens and the earth?

A. He made the heavens and the earth by his great strength and with his raised arm. [32:16-17]

Q? How did Yahweh make his name famous?

A. He brought the people of Israel out of the land of Egypt. [32:21]

Q? What did the people of Israel do after Yahweh gave them the land?

A. They did not obey him. [32:23]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Jeremiah to do when the city of Jerusalem was being given into the hand of the Babylonians?

A. He told him to buy a field. [32:25]

Q? Why will Nebuchadnezzar be able to capture the city?

A. Yahweh will give him the city. [31:28]

Q? How long had Jerusalem been a provocation to Yahweh?

A. Jerusalem had been a provocation of Yahweh's wrath since the day that they built it. [32:31-32]

Q? What did the people of Israel do to provoke Yahweh?

A. They turned their backs on Yahweh, placed wicked things in the temple, built shrines for Baal, and sacrificed their children to Molech. [32:33-35]

Q? What does Yahweh promise to do for the people of Judah even though they have been wicked?

A. He promises to gather them from where they are and bring them back to the land. [32:36-37]

Q? How will Yahweh provide for the people of Judah?

A. He will give them one heart and one way to honor him, and he will establish a perpetual covenant with them. [32:38-40]

Q? Just as Yahweh brought disaster on his people, what else was he going to do with them in the future?

A. Yahweh said he would bring on them all the good things that he had said he would do for them. [32:42]

Jeremiah 33

Q? What does Yahweh tell Jeremiah to do?

A. Yahweh tells Jeremiah to call to him. [33:1-3]

Q? What are the Chaldeans (Babylonians) going to do to the houses in the city?

A. They are going to fill the houses with corpses. [33:4-5]

Q? What good news does Jeremiah share with the people of Judah?

A. Yahweh will pardon all the iniquities of the people, heal them, and give them peace. [33:6-8]

Q? What will the city of Jerusalem become for Yahweh?

A. Jerusalem will become for Yahweh an object of joy. [33:9]

Q? How will the cities of Judah change?

A. The cities are desolate now, but shepherds will lead their flocks in them. [33:12-13]

Q? What has Yahweh promised to do for the people of Judah and Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh has promised to make a descendant of David their king so that he can carry out justice and righteousness in the land. [33:14-16]

Q? What does Yahweh promise Jeremiah?

A. He promises that there will always be a man from David's line to rule Israel and a Leviticus priest to offer sacrifices. [33:17-18]

Q? When will Yahweh break his covenant with David?

A. He will never break it. [33:20-21]

Q? How many descendants will David have?

A. David will have more descendants than anyone can count. [33:22]

Q? What have the people declared about Yahweh's punishment of Judah?

A. The people have declared that Yahweh has now rejected the two clans that he chose, so they are no longer a nation. [33:23-24]

Q? When will Yahweh reject the descendants of Jacob?

A. He will never reject them. [33:25-26]

Jeremiah 34

Q? When did Jeremiah receive the word from Yahweh?

A. Jeremiah received Yahweh's word when Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and all of his army were waging war against Jerusalem and her cities. [34:1]

Q? What did Yahweh say to Jeremiah?

A. He said that he was going to give the city to Nebuchadnezzar. [34:2-3]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Zedekiah king of Judah?

A. He told Zedekiah that he would die in peace. [34:4-5]

Q? What happened after the leaders and the people in Jerusalem set the Israelite servants free?

A. The people freed all of their servants but later changed their minds and made their servants slaves once again. [34:10-11]

Q? What did Yahweh command the ancestors of the Israelites to do every seven years?

A. He commanded them to free their slaves every seven years. [34:12-14]

Q? What evil did the people of Judah do?

A. They set their slaves free, but then they forced them to become slaves again. [34:15-16]

Q? How will Yahweh punish them?

A. They will die by the sword, plague, and famine. [34:17]

Q? How did the people show that they agreed to the covenant?

A. They cut a bull in half and walked between the pieces. [34:18-19]

Q? How will Yahweh show he is angry with the people of Judah?

A. He will hand them over to their enemies, who will kill them. [34:20]

Q? What will happen to the city of Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh will bring the army of the king of Babylon back to wage war against Jerusalem and burn it so that there will be no inhabitants. [34:21-22]

Jeremiah 35

Q? What did Yahweh ask Jeremiah to do?

A. Yahweh asked Jeremiah to bring Rechabites to the temple and give them wine to drink. [35:1-2]

Q? How did the clan of the Rechabites respond when they were offered wine to drink?

A. When offered wine to drink the Rechabites refused to drink it. [35:5-6]

Q? Why did the Rechabites refuse to drink wine?

A. The Rechabites refused to drink any wine, for their ancestor, Jonadab son of Rechab, commanded them, 'Do not drink any wine, neither you nor your descendants, forever. [35:6]

Q? Why did Jonadab command the Rechabites to not build houses, sow seeds, or plant vineyards?

A. Jonadab gave them this command because they were to live in tents. [35:7]

Q? How did the Rechabites respond to Jonadab's command?

A. The Rechabites had never drunk wine or built houses. [35:8-11]

Q? Why were the Rechabites living in Jerusalem

A. They were escaping the Chaldean and Aramean armies. [35:11]

Q? How did Yahweh use the Rechabites as a positive example for the men of Judah?

A. Yahweh wanted the men of Judah to obey him the same way the Rechabites obeyed Jonadab. [35:12-14]

Q? What did the prophets tell the men of Judah?

A. The prophets told them to stop doing evil, start doing good, stop worshipping other gods, and come back to the land. [35:15]

Q? What will Yahweh do because the men of Judah have not obeyed him?

A. Yahweh will bring on them all the disasters he has proclaimed against them. [35:17]

Q? What promise does Yahweh give to the family of the Rechabites through Jeremiah?

A. Yahweh promises that there will always be someone from their family to serve him. [35:18-19]

Jeremiah 36

Q? Why did Yahweh want Jeremiah to write his words on a scroll?

A. Yahweh wanted Jeremiah to write his words on a scroll so that the people of Judah would listen to Yahweh and Yahweh could forgive their sin. [36:1-3]

Q? What did Jeremiah command Baruch to do?

A. Jeremiah commanded Baruch to take the scroll with Jeremiah's words and read it to Baruch's family and to the people of Judah. [36:4-6]

Q? Why did Jeremiah want Baruch to read the scroll?

A. Jeremiah hoped that the people would listen and turn from their wicked ways. [36:7-8]

Q? What happened during the fast that was proclaimed in honor of Yahweh?

A. Baruch read Jeremiah's words in the temple so all the people could hear them. [36:9-10]

Q? What did Micaiah do when he heard Baruch read from the scroll?

A. He went to the secretary's office in the palace. [36:12]

Q? What did the officials do when they heard Micaiah's report?

A. They sent Jehudi to bring Baruch to them, and they had Baruch read the scroll to them. [36:13-14]

Q? What happened after Baruch read from the scroll?

A. The men who had heard Baruch read were afraid and decided they must report his words to the king. [36:16]

Q? What advice did the officials give to Baruch after he told them that he had written Jeremiah's words on the scroll?

A. They told him that he and Jeremiah needed to hide and not let anyone know where they were. [36:17-19]

Q? How did the king respond to the reading of the scroll by Jehudi?

A. The king cut off the parts Jehudi had read and threw them in the fire until all the scroll was destroyed. [36:23]

Q? How did the king and his servants show that they would not obey the words in the scroll?

A. They were not frightened, nor did they tear their clothes. [36:24]

Q? What did the king do when several men urged him not to burn the scroll?

A. He did not listen to them. [36:25]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Jeremiah to do after the king had burned the scroll?

A. He told Jeremiah to have Baruch write on a new scroll all the words that were on the original scroll. [36:27-29]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to Jehoiakim?

A. He said he would not let any of Jehoiakim's descendants be king, and he would make sure no one buried Jehoiakim's corpse. [36:30-31]

Jeremiah 37

Q? Who made Zedekiah king?

A. Nebuchadnezzar made him king. [37:1]

Q? How did King Zedekiah respond to Jeremiah when he proclaimed the words of Yahweh?

A. Zedekiah did not listen to the words of Yahweh. [37:1-2]

Q? What did King Zedekiah and Zephaniah ask Jeremiah to do?

A. They asked him to pray to Yahweh for them. [37:3]

Q? Why did the Chaldeans (Babylonians) leave Jerusalem?

A. They wanted to get away from Pharaoh's army, which was coming out of Egypt. [37:5]

Q? Why was Pharaoh's army coming out of Egypt?

A. They were going to help the people of Judah by fighting the Chaldeans. [37:7]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Jeremiah would happen after Pharaoh's army returned to Egypt?

A. He said that the Chaldeans would return, fight against the city, capture it, and burn it. [37:6-8]

Q? Why did Jeremiah leave Jerusalem?

A. He left to take possession of some land. [37:11-12]

Q? What did Jeriah think that Jeremiah was going to do?

A. Jeriah thought that Jeremiah was deserting to the Chaldeans(Babylonians). [37:13]

Q? What did Jeriah do when Jeremiah told him that he was not deserting to the Chaldeans?

A. Jeriah took Jeremiah to the officials, who beat him and put him in prison. [37:14-15]

Q? How did Jeremiah answer King Zedekiah when Zedekiah asked if Jeremiah has a word from Yahweh?

A. Jeremiah told Zedekiah that Yahweh would give Zedekiah to the king of Babylon. [37:16-17]

Q? Why did Jeremiah not want to return to the house of Jonathan the scribe?

A. He was afraid that he would die there. [37:18-20]

Q? How did King Zedekiah respond to Jeremiah's request?

A. He had his servants put Jeremiah in the courtyard of the guard. [37:21]

Jeremiah 38

Q? What will happen to the city?

A. The Chaldeans (Babylonians) will capture it. [38:3]

Q? What will happen to the people who stay in the city?

A. They will die from the sword, famine, and plague. [38:2]

Q? How can people stay alive?

A. They can stay alive by going out to the Chaldeans. [38:2]

Q? Why did the officials want Jeremiah to die?

A. They wanted him to die because he was telling the soldiers to desert to the Chaldeans. [38:4]

Q? What did the officials do to Jeremiah?

A. They put him in a cistern. [38:6]

Q? What did Ebed Melech tell the king concerning Jeremiah?

A. He told the king, the officials had done evil with the way they treated Jeremiah the prophet. They threw him into a cistern for him to die in it from hunger. [38:7-8]

Q? What did king Zedekiah command Ebed Melech concerning Jeremiah?

A. King Zedekiah commanded Ebed Melech to take thirty men and get Jeremiah out of the cistern before Jeremiah died. [38:10]

Q? What did Jeremiah think Zedekiah would do if Jeremiah tells him the truth?

A. He thought Zedekiah would kill him. [38:15]

Q? How did Zedekiah persuade Jeremiah to give him an answer?

A. Zedekiah swore by Yahweh that he would not kill him. [38:16]

Q? What did Jeremiah say to Zedekiah?

A. Jeremiah told Zedekiah that if he went out to the Chaldeans he would live, but if he did not, he and the city would be destroyed. [38:17-18]

Q? Why was King Zedekiah afraid of the people of Judah who had deserted to the Chaldeans?

A. He was afraid that Nebuchadnezzar would allow them to treat him badly. [38:19]

Q? What assurance did Jeremiah give to King Zedekiah?

A. He told King Zedekiah that if Zedekiah obeyed the message from Yahweh, Nebuchadnezzar would not allow the people to treat Zedekiah badly. [38:20]

Q? What would the women do if Zedekiah refused to go out?

A. They would rebuke and taunt him. [38:22-23]

Q? What did Zedekiah tell Jeremiah to say to anyone who asked him what he and Zedekiah talked about?

A. He told Jeremiah to tell them that Jeremiah went to plead with him not to return Jeremiah to Jonathan's house to die. [38:24-26]

Q? What happened when the officials from the house of Judah questioned Jeremiah?

A. Jeremiah told them what Zedekiah told him to say. [38:27-28]

Jeremiah 39

Q? Who came with his army against Jerusalem and attacked it?

A. Nebuchadnezzar did. [39:1]

Q? What city was broken into?

A. The city of Jerusalem was broken into. [39:2]

Q? Who came and sat in the middle gate?

A. All the officials of the king of Babylon came and sat in the middle gate. [39:3]

Q? What did Zedekiah and all his fighting men do when they saw the officials of the king of Babylon in the middle gate?

A. They fled at night from the city. [39:4]

Q? What did the army of the Chaldeans (Babylonians) do when they caught up with Zedekiah?

A. They captured him and brought him to Nebuchadnezzar. [39:5]

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar do when Zedekiah was brought to him?

A. He slaughtered Zedekiah's sons and also slaughtered all the noblemen of Judah. [39:6]

Q? What did the king of Babylon do to Zedekiah?

A. He put out Zedekiah's eyes and bound him so he could take Zedekiah to Babylon. [39:7]

Q? What did the Chaldeans (Babylonians) do to the houses and walls of Jerusalem?

A. They burned them. [39:8]

Q? Whom did Nebuzaradan take into exile?

A. He took into exile the rest of the people who were left in the city and the people who had deserted to the Chaldeans. [39:9]

Q? What people did Nebuzaradan allow to stay in the land of Judah?

A. He allowed the poorest people to remain. [39:10]

Q? What did Nebuzaradan give to the people who remained?

A. Nebuzaradan gave vineyards and fields to the people who remained. [39:10]

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar command Nebuzaradan to do about Jeremiah?

A. Nebuchadnezzar told Nebuzaradan to take care of Jeremiah and to do anything Jeremiah told him to do. [39:11-12]

Q? What did Nebuzaradan, Nergal Sharezer, and the most important officials of the king of Babylon do to Jeremiah?

A. They took Jeremiah from the courtyard of the guard and entrusted him to Gedaliah to take Jeremiah home. [39:14]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Jeremiah to say to Ebed Melech the Cushite?

A. Yahweh told Jeremiah to say to Ebed Melech the Cushite that Yahweh was about to bring disaster on the city. [39:15-16]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to Ebed Melech on the day that Yahweh carried out his words against the city?

A. He said that he would rescue Ebed Melech. [39:17]

Q? For what reason would Yahweh rescue Ebed Melech from the sword?

A. He would rescue Ebed Melech because he trusted in Yahweh. [39:18]

Jeremiah 40

Q? What came to Jeremiah after Nebuzaradan had sent him away from Ramah?

A. The word from Yahweh came to Jeremiah after Nebuzaradan had sent him away from Ramah. [40:1]

Q? What was Nebuzaradan going to do with the people of Jerusalem and Judah?

A. He was going to send them to Babylon. [40:2]

Q? Why did the chief guard tell Jeremiah concerning Yahweh and Jerusalem?

A. The chief guard said that Yahweh had decreed the disaster against that place. [40:2]

Q? Where did the chief guard say that Jeremiah could go?

A. He said that Jeremiah could go with him to Babylon or go wherever he wanted to in the land. [40:4]

Q? To whom did the chief guard say that Jeremiah should go?

A. He said that Jeremiah should go to Gedaliah, who was in charge of the cities of Judah. [40:5]

Q? Where did Jeremiah go and live?

A. Jeremiah went to Gedaliah and lived among the people who were left behind in the land. [40:6]

Q? What did the commanders of the Judean soldiers and their men do when they heard that Gedaliah had been put in charge of those who had not been exiled to Babylon?

A. They went to Gedaliah at Mizpah. [40:7-8]

Q? What did Gedaliah tell the commanders of the Judean soldiers and their men to do?

A. He said that if they would serve the Chaldean officials and the king of Babylon and live in the land it would go well with them. [40:9]

Q? What did Gedaliah tell the commanders of the Judean soldiers and their men to do so they could harvest wine, summer fruit, and oil?

A. He told them that they should live in the cities that they had occupied. [40:10]

Q? What did the Judeans do when they heard that the king of Babylon had allowed a remnant of Judah to stay?

A. The Judeans returned to Judah from every place where they had been scattered, and they harvested wine and summer fruit in great abundance. [40:11-12]

Q? What did Johanan and all the army commanders ask Gedaliah at Mizpah?

A. They asked him if he realized that Baalis king of Ammon had sent Ishmael to murder him. [40:13-14]

Q? What did Gedaliah think about what Jonathan and the army commanders told him?

A. He did not believe them. [40:14]

Q? What did Johanan tell Gedaliah he wanted to do?

A. He wanted kill Ishmael. [40:15]

Q? What did Gedaliah think of Jonathan's words about Ishmael?

A. Gedaliah thought that Jonathan was telling lies about Ishmael. [40:16]

Jeremiah 41

Q? Why did Ishmael and the ten men with him come to eat with Gedaliah?

A. They wanted to kill Gedaliah. [41:1-3]

Q? Whom did Ishmael and his men kill?

A. They killed Gedaliah, all the Judeans who were with him, and the Chaldean soldiers who were there. [41:2-3]

Q? Who came on the second day after Ishmael had killed Gedaliah?

A. Eighty men came from Shechem, Shiloh, and Samaria. [41:4-5]

Q? Where were they going?

A. They were going to the temple. [41:5]

Q? What did Ishmael say to the eighty men?

A. He invited them to visit Gedaliah. [41:6]

Q? What did Ishmael and his men do to the eighty men when they came into the city?

A. They slaughtered the men and threw them into a pit. [41:7]

Q? Why did they not kill ten of the eighty men?

A. The ten men told them that they had provisions. [41:8]

Q? Where did Ishmael throw the corpses of all the people he had killed??

A. He threw them in the pit that King Asa had dug. [41:9]

Q? What did Ishmael do with all the other people who were in Mizpah?

A. Ishmael captured all the other people who were in Mizpah and started to take them to Ammon. [41:10]

Q? What did Johanan and all the army commanders with him do when they heard of what Ishmael had done?

A. They took all their men and went to fight against Ishmael. [41:11-12]

Q? What did all the people who were with Ishmael do when they saw Johanan and all the army commanders who were with him?

A. They were very happy and went to Johanan. [41:13-14]

Q? Where did Ishmael and his men go to get away from Johanan?

A. They went to the people of Ammon. [41:15]

Q? Where did Johanan and the people go after they left Mizpah?

A. They went to Geruth Chimham, which is near Bethlehem. [41:17]

Q? Where did Johanan and the people want to go?

A. They wanted to go to Egypt. [41:17]

Q? Why did they want to go to Egypt?

A. They were afraid of the Chaldeans. [41:17]

Q? Why were Johanan and the people afraid of the Chaldeans?

A. They were afraid because Ishmael had killed Gedaliah. [41:18]

Jeremiah 42

Q? What did all the army commanders and all the people say to Jeremiah?

A. They asked him to pray for them and to tell them the way they should go and what they should do. [42:1-3]

Q? How did Jeremiah answer them?

A. He said he would pray for them and tell them whatever Yahweh answers. [42:4]

Q? Then what did the people say to Jeremiah?

A. They said they would do everything Yahweh told them to do. [42:5-6]

Q? What happened after ten days?

A. After ten days, the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah. [42:7]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do because he was with them?

A. He said that he would save them, give them mercy and compassion, and bring them back to their land. [42:11-12]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen if the people actually went to Egypt to live there?

A. If they went to live in Egypt, Yahweh said they would all die there by sword, famine, and plague. [42:15-17]

Q? What will become of them if they go to Egypt?

A. They will become an object of cursing and they will never return. [42:18]

Q? Why will the people never see the land again?

A. Yahweh has told them not to go to Egypt, and he will be angry with them if they go. [42:19]

Q? Why will the people pay for their lives for going to Egypt?

A. They will pay with their lives because they asked Jeremiah to give them Yahweh's message, but they will not do what Yahweh tells them to do. [42:20-22]

Jeremiah 43

Q? What did Jeremiah finish proclaiming to all the people?

A. He finished proclaiming all the words that Yahweh had told him to say. [43:1]

Q? Of what did Azariah, Johanan, and all the arrogant men accuse Jeremiah?

A. They accused him of telling them lies so that Jeremiah could have the Chaldeans kill them and make them captives in Babylon. [43:3]

Q? What did Johanan and the others do instead of what Yahweh had told them to do?

A. They all went to Egypt. [43:4-7]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Jeremiah to do with the stones?

A. He told him to bury them near Pharaoh's house in Tahpanhes to show that Nebuchadnezzar would sit on a throne there. [43:8-10]

Q? What does Yahweh say will happen to the people when Nebuchadnezzar comes and attacks the land of Egypt?

A. Yahweh says that Nebuchadnezzar will kill some people and take others into captivity. [43:11]

Q? What does Yahweh say Nebuchadnezzar will do to the temples of Egypt's gods?

A. Yahweh says he will burn them or capture them. [43:12-13]

Jeremiah 44

Q? Why does Jeremiah say Yahweh brought disaster on Jerusalem and the cities of Judah?

A. Jeremiah says did it because the people worshiped other gods. [44:2-3]

Q? What had Yahweh's prophets said to the people?

A. The prophets had told the people to stop doing things that Yahweh hates. [44:4]

Q? What did the people do after the prophets spoke to them?

A. They did not listen. [44:5]

Q? What did Yahweh do when the Judeans did not listen to the prophets?

A. Yahweh poured out his fury and his wrath, and he destroyed Judah and Jerusalem. [44:6]

Q? How many of the people who went to Egypt will Yahweh allow to live?

A. He will not allow any of them to live. [44:7]

Q? How did they offend Yahweh?

A. They offended Yahweh with the deeds of their hands, by burning incense to other gods in the land of Egypt. [44:8]

Q? What does Yahweh say is going to happen to them in Egypt?

A. He says he will destroy them. [44:8]

Q? Who does Yahweh say has committed wickedness?

A. He says that the people and their ancestors have committed wickedness. [44:10]

Q? What does Yahweh say will happen to the people who went to Egypt?

A. Yahweh says that he will set his face against them and bring disaster to them and destroy all of them just as he punished Jerusalem: with sword and famine and plague. [44:11-12]

Q? What does Yahweh say about the remnant of Judah?

A. He says that none of them who want to return to Judah will return, though a few will escape from Egypt. [44:14]

Q? What did the people think would happen if they continued to burned incense and pour out drink offerings to the Queen of Heaven?

A. The people thought they would be filled with food and would prosper, without experiencing any disaster if they burned incense and poured out drink offerings to the Queen of Heaven. [44:17]

Q? What was it that Yahweh could no longer bear?

A. He could no longer bear what the people did. [44:22]

Q? What happened to their land after Yahweh could no longer bear what the people did?

A. Their land became a desolation, a horror, and a curse. [44:22]

Q? Why did this disaster happen to them?

A. Because they burned incense to worship idols and sinned against Yahweh, and because they would not listen to him. [44:23]

Q? What did Jeremiah tell those who wanted to fulfill their vows to the Queen of Heaven?

A. He told them to fulfill their vows. [44:25]

Q? What did Jeremiah say the people would do after they fulfilled their vows?

A. He told them that they would never again worship Yahweh, but they would all perish by sword and famine. [44:26-27]

Q? What will happen to those who do not die by the sword?

A. They will return from Egypt to Judah. [44:28]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will do with Pharaoh Hophra?

A. He says he will give Pharaoh Hophra to his enemies. [44:30]

Q? What will the people understand when Hophra dies?

A. They will understand that Yahweh will do to them everything he said he would do. [44:29]

Jeremiah 45

Q? Why did Yahweh give Jeremiah a message for Baruch?

A. He did it because Baruch was saying that Yahweh was making him sad. [45:1-3]

Q? What does Yahweh plan to do to Baruch's nation?

A. He plans to destroy it. [45:4]

Q? What should Baruch not desire?

A. He should not desire people to honor him in a special way. [45:5]

Q? What does Yahweh promise to do for Baruch?

A. Yahweh promises to protect Baruch wherever he goes. [45:5]

Jeremiah 46

Q? Who are the two kings who are going to have a war?

A. Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and Neco king of Egypt were going to war. [46:2]

Q? What does Yahweh tell the army of Egypt to do?

A. He tells them to get their shields, horses, spears, and armor ready and go forward to fight. [46:1-4]

Q? What does Yahweh see the Egyptian army doing?

A. He sees the Egyptian soldiers running for safety but defeated at the Euphrates River. [46:5-6]

Q? What does Yahweh compare the Egyptian army to?

A. The army is like the Nile River when it floods and destroys cities and inhabitants. [46:7-8]

Q? How will Yahweh get his vengeance?

A. He will get his vengeance when the sword devours and is satisfied. That will be like a sacrifice to Yahweh. [46:10]

Q? What does Yahweh tell Egypt to do?

A. They are to go to Gilead for medicine, but it will not cure them. [46:11-12]

Q? What did Yahweh tell the people of Migdol and Memphis to do?

A. He told them to go to Tahpanhes and fight there. [46:13-14]

Q? What has happened to Egypt's gods?

A. Apis the bull-god has run away and Yahweh has thrown him down. [46:15]

Q? What do the soldiers want to do?

A. They want to go to their homes. [46:16-17]

Q? What does Yahweh say Egypt needs to prepare for?

A. He says Egypt needs to prepare for captivity. [46:19]

Q? What animals does the writer say Egypt is like before the battle?

A. Egypt is a beautiful young cow, and the hired soldiers are like a fattened bull. [46:20-21]

Q? What animal does the writer say Egypt is like after the battle?

A. He says Egypt is like a snake. [46:21]

Q? Who will kill the soldiers of Egypt?

A. People from the north will cut them down. [46:23-24]

Q? To whom will Yahweh give Egypt?

A. He will give Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar. [46:25-26]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will do for his people Israel?

A. He will bring them out of captivity, return them to their land where they will find peace and be secure, bring destruction to the nations where they were scattered, discipline them justly, but not destroy them completely. [46:27-28]

Jeremiah 47

Q? What does Yahweh say will happen to the people of Philistia?

A. They will be attacked from the north and they will all lament(weep). [47:1-2]

Q? How will the people of Philistia know the enemy is coming to destroy them?

A. They will hear the sound of horses' hooves and the rumble of the chariots. Men will run away, they will not stop to help their children, and they will be weak and helpless. [47:3-4]

Q? What are the people of Philistia asking Yahweh to do?

A. They are asking him to stop killing them. [47:6-7]

Q? Why will Yahweh not stop the killing?

A. Because he intends to attack all people living in Ashkelon and the cities along the coast. [47:7]

Jeremiah 48

Q? What does Yahweh say about Moab?

A. Devastation will happen to the cities, no one will honor Moab, and their enemies will try to destroy her as a nation. [48:1-2]

Q? Why are people screaming, weeping, and crying?

A. They are doing these things because Moab has been destroyed. [48:3-5]

Q? Why will Chemosh and his priests and leaders go away into captivity?

A. They were putting their trust in their practices and their wealth. [48:7]

Q? What does Yahweh say will happen to the towns in Moab?

A. They will all be destroyed, none of them will escape. [48:8]

Q? What is to happen to their cities?

A. They will become a wasteland where no one lives. [48:9]

Q? What will Yahweh do to anyone who will not kill Moabites for him?

A. Yahweh will curse him. [48:10]

Q? What does Yahweh say will happen to the Moabites?

A. He says he will send enemies to attack them and get rid of them. [48:11-12]

Q? What does Yahweh say will happen to the country of Moab?

A. It will very soon be destroyed. [48:15-16]

Q? What should the people who live near Moab do after Moab is destroyed?

A. They should wail for Moab because their power has been broken. [48:17]

Q? What should the people in the city of Dibon and Aroer do instead of being proud?

A. They should notice they are being attacked and take notice of people who are escaping. They should howl, lament, and shout for help because Moab has been devastated. [48:18-20]

Q? What punishment has come to all the cities in the land of Moab?

A. Yahweh has punished many cities. The horn of Moab has been hacked off; its arm has been broken. [48:21-25]

Q? The Moabites thought they were powerful against Yahweh, but what will Yahweh do to them?

A. Yahweh will judge Moab and their enemies will laugh at them. [48:26-27]

Q? What should the inhabitants do because of their pride?

A. They should abandon the cities and camp on the cliffs in the rocks. [48:28-29]

Q? Why does Yahweh lament, shout in sorrow, and weep for the people in Moab?

A. Yahweh laments because he knows Moab's defiant speech amounts to nothing. [48:30-32]

Q? What has Yahweh done to Moab?

A. He has taken away their celebration and rejoicing. [48:33]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will do to the people of Moab who offer sacrifices and burn incense to their gods?

A. He will get rid of those people. [48:35]

Q? How do the people of Kir Heres express their sorrow because their riches are gone?

A. They shave their heads and beards, cut their hands, and wear sackcloth around their waists. [48:36-37]

Q? Why is there mourning everywhere on the roofs and in the plazas?

A. Because Yahweh has destroyed Moab as people destroy pots that no one wants. [48:38-39]

Q? What does Yahweh say the capture of Kerioth will be like?

A. It will happen quickly, like when an eagle gets its prey. The enemy will seize the strongholds, and the soldiers will be afraid. [48:40-41]

Q? How will Yahweh destroy Moab?

A. Yahweh will cause the people to be terrified and fall into pits and traps. [48:42-44]

Q? Why will the people flee only as far as the city of Heshbon?

A. Because a fire will be burning in Heshbon, and it will burn up all the people in Moab who boasted. [48:45]

Q? What does Jeremiah say will happen to the Moabites?

A. The Moabites will be destroyed and their sons and daughters will be captured and taken to other countries, but someday Yahweh will allow them to return to their land. [48:46-47]

Jeremiah 49

Q? Why should Molech not occupy the land of Gad?

A. Molech should not occupy Gad because it belongs to the children of Israel. [49:1]

Q? What will happen to Rabbah?

A. It will become a deserted heap. [49:2]

Q? What will happen to Molech?

A. The cities will be destroyed and the people will go into captivity. [49:3]

Q? What does the faithless daughter trust in?

A. She trusts in her wealth. [49:4]

Q? Why will the people be terrified?

A. They will be terrified because they will all be forced by the enemy who surround them to scatter to other countries. [49:5]

Q? What will Yahweh do for the Ammon people-group in the future?

A. Yahweh will restore their fortunes. [49:6]

Q? What has happened to the wise people of Edom?

A. The wise people of Edom have gone away. [49:7]

Q? What should the people of Edom do now that their wise people are gone?

A. They should flee and live in holes in the ground. [49:8]

Q? What is Yahweh going to do to Esau?

A. He is going to bring disaster on Esau. [49:8]

Q? What does Yahweh say about the orphans and widows in Edom?

A. He says that he will take care of the orphans and widows. [49:11]

Q? Why should the Edomites already know that Yahweh will punish them?

A. They have seen that even those whom Yahweh is not punishing have suffered. [49:12]

Q? What Yahweh said he will do to Bozrah?

A. He will destroy it. [49:13]

Q? What was Yahweh's messenger going to tell the nations to do?

A. The messenger went out to the nations telling them to get ready for battle and attack Edom. [49:14]

Q? What does Yahweh say to the people of Edom?

A. He says that he has made their nation of Edom small compared to other nations and that people will despise them. [49:15]

Q? Because the Edomites have deceived themselves and think they have safety in the cliff, what will Yahweh do to them?

A. He will bring them down. [49:16]

Q? What does Yahweh compare the horror of Edom to?

A. He compares it to Sodom and Gomorrah and their neighbors, where no one lives. [49:17-18]

Q? What will Yahweh do to the Edomites after he takes them from their land?

A. He will choose someone to be in charge of them. [49:19]

Q? What are the plans that Yahweh has against Edom?

A. He has plans to drag away the inhabitants of Teman and to turn their pasturelands into ruined places. [49:20]

Q? What will it be like when Edom is destroyed?

A. The earth will shake, and people as far away as the Red Sea will hear the shouts of distress. Even the strongest warriors will be afraid. [49:21-22]

Q? What does Yahweh say will happen to the people of Damascus?

A. They will be ashamed and weak. They will turn away and flee in distress. [49:23-24]

Q? What will happen when Yahweh lights a fire on the wall of Damascus?

A. The fire will devour Benhadad's strongholds, and the young men and all the fighting men will die. [49:26-27]

Q? What does Yahweh tell Nebuchadnezzar to do to Kedar?

A. He tells Nebuchadnezzar to attack the people, destroy them, and take their possessions. [49:28-29]

Q? Why will this be an easy attack for Nebuchadnezzar?

A. It will be easy for him because the people have no gates or bars, and they live by themselves. [49:30-31]

Q? Where will the people of Kedar live after Nebuchadnezzar attacks them?

A. They will live in holes in the ground. [49:30]

Q? What will Yahweh do to the people of Hazor when Nebuchadnezzar takes their camels and property as war plunder?

A. He will scatter them and disaster will come on them. [49:32]

Q? Who will live in the city after Nebuchadnezzar attacks it?

A. Only jackals will live in it. [49:33]

Q? When did Jeremiah receive the prophecy about Elam?

A. He got it when King Zedekiah ruled Judah. [49:34]

Q? When Yahweh breaks the bowmen of Elam, where will the people go?

A. The people will go to all parts of the earth. [49:34-36]

Q? What is Yahweh going to do because he is angry with the people of Elam?

A. Yahweh is going to enable their enemies to smash them and bring disaster to them, kill them, and completely get rid of all of them. [49:37-38]

Q? What will Yahweh do for the people of Elam some day?

A. He will allow them to return to their land. [49:39]

Jeremiah 50

Q? What will happen to Babylon?

A. Babylon is taken. Bel and the idols are put to shame. [50:2]

Q? Who will arise against Babylon?

A. A nation from the north. [50:3]

Q? What will the people of Israel do when Babylon is attacked?

A. The people will come together with weeping and seek Yahweh. They will set off toward Zion to renew their eternal covenant with Yahweh. [50:4-5]

Q? Why does Yahweh describe his people as a lost flock?

A. He describes them as a lost flock because their shepherds led them astray and they forgot their homeland. [50:6]

Q? What did their adversaries say about why they were able to devour Yahweh's people?

A. The adversaries said it was because Yahweh's people sinned against Yahweh. [50:7]

Q? Why are the Israelites to leave Babylon before Babylon is captured?

A. They are to leave because great nations from the north are coming to capture Babylon. [50:8-10]

Q? What will happen to Babylon because they took Yahweh's inheritance as plunder?

A. Babylon will be the least of nations, an uninhabited wilderness. [50:11-13]

Q? Because Babylon has sinned against Yahweh what will happen to her?

A. Everyone will shoot at Babylon, Babylon will surrender her power, her towers will fall, her walls will be torn down, and others will do to her just as she had done to other nations. [50:14-15]

Q? What should people who came from other countries do when Babylon is attacked?

A. They should all run away back to their own countries. [50:16]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will do to the nations of Assyria and Babylon?

A. He says he will punish the king of Babylon and his people the same way he punished the king of Assyria. [50:17-18]

Q? What will Yahweh do for this remnant of people that he spares?

A. Yahweh will restore Israel to his homeland, and he will forgive the people's sins. [50:19-20]

Q? What does Yahweh encourage the enemies of Babylon to do?

A. Yahweh wants them to sound the battle cry and bring enormous destruction on Babylon. [50:21-22]

Q? Why will the Babylonian army be seized?

A. It will be seized because it challenged Yahweh. [50:23-24]

Q? What is the work that Yahweh has to do?

A. Yahweh opens his armory, brings out the weapons, and encourages the enemies to attack Babylon, open her granaries, and bring her to destruction. They are to leave no remnant of her. [50:25-26]

Q? What will the Israelite survivors of Babylon talk about?

A. They will talk about how Yahweh punished Babylon by having the warriors slaughtered for what was done to his temple in Zion. [50:27-28]

Q? What will happen to because she defied Yahweh?

A. No one will escape the destruction the enemies of Babylon will bring on her. The enemy is to destroy all of her fighting men because of what she has done to Yahweh. [50:29-30]

Q? What does Yahweh declare will happen to the proud people?

A. He declares that they will stumble and fall. [50:31-32]

Q? Who rescues the oppressed people of Israel?

A. Yahweh of hosts rescues Israel. [50:33-34]

Q? What will enemy soldiers do to Babylonia?

A. They will strike the inhabitants, the officials, the wise men, and all the people. They will strike their false prophets, their strongest warriors, and their horses and chariots. [50:35-37]

Q? What will Babylon become like?

A. Babylon will become like Sodom and Gomorrah. [50:38-40]

Q? What does the king of Babylon hear about the people from the north?

A. The kings hears that they are cruel and have no compassion. [50:41-42]

Q? How does the king of Babylon feel after hearing this report from Jeremiah that an army from the north is coming to overtake Babylon?

A. After hearing the report the king feels like a woman in labor. [50:43]

Q? What will Yahweh do to Babylon?

A. He will chase the people from Babylon and appoint someone to be in charge of it. [50:44]

Q? What does Yahweh plan to do to the people of Babylon?

A. Yahweh plans to completely destroy the people of Babylon. [50:45-46]

Jeremiah 51

Q? What will the foreigners do to Babylon?

A. They will come and destroy Babylon. [51:1-2]

Q? What type of attack will come on Babylon's army?

A. A surprise attack will come so quickly that Babylon's soldiers will not have time to put on their armor. The attackers will destroy the army and the people. [51:3-4]

Q? What does Yahweh remind his people of?

A. Yahweh reminds them that even though his people sinned he is still their God and he has not abandoned them. [51:5]

Q? What does Yahweh tell the people of Israel to do?

A. Yahweh tells his people to run, so they will escape the punishment coming to Babylon. [51:6]

Q? What did Yahweh use Babylon to do to the nations?

A. He used it to make them drunk. [51:7]

Q? What will happen to Babylon?

A. It will fall and be destroyed. [51:7-8]

Q? What will the Israelites do because Babylon will not be healed?

A. The Israelites will leave and go to their land and tell others in Zion that Yahweh has forgiven them of their sins. [51:9-10]

Q? Who is going to march into battle against Babylon because Babylon destroyed Yahweh's temple in Jerusalem?

A. The armies of Media and Persia are going to destroy Babylon. [51:11]

Q? What has Yahweh sworn he will do to the rich people of Babylon?

A. Yahweh will raise a battle cry against them. Their end has come. [51:13-14]

Q? What has Yahweh done by his power, wisdom, and understanding?

A. He has made the earth, set it in place, and stretched out the heavens. [51:15]

Q? What happens when Yahweh speaks?

A. He brings thunder, rain, lightning, and wind to come upon the earth. [51:15-16]

Q? Will making idols satisfy people?

A. No, idols can do nothing for them. They are worthless. [51:17-18]

Q? Who is the God of Israel?

A. He is the one who created everything. His name is Yahweh. [51:19]

Q? What did God say Israel was?

A. God said Israel was his war hammer, his weapon for battle. [51:20]

Q? What does Yahweh say to the people in Babylon?

A. Yahweh says he will repay the people for all the evil things they did in Jerusalem. [51:24]

Q? What will Yahweh do to Babylon because of how they plundered people all over the earth?

A. Yahweh will completely destroy Babylon, and no one will ever live there again. [51:25-26]

Q? What is Jeremiah to tell the nations of Media and Persia?

A. These nations are to summon their armies and prepare to attack Babylon. [51:27-28]

Q? What is Yahweh's plan against Babylon?

A. Yahweh's plan is to make the land of Babylon a wasteland with no inhabitants. [51:29]

Q? How will the Babylonian warriors respond to the battle against them?

A. The warriors will remain confused in their strongholds because places of escape will be blocked, and the city will be set on fire. [51:30-32]

Q? What does Yahweh say Babylon is like?

A. Babylon is like a threshing floor during the time of harvest. [51:33]

Q? What do the people of Jerusalem want Yahweh to do to the people of Babylon?

A. They want Yahweh to cause the Babylonians to suffer like they suffered under King Nebuchadnezzar. [51:34-35]

Q? What is Yahweh's response to the Israelites?

A. He will plead their case and bring vengeance on Babylon. He will make her springs dry and make her a wasteland where no one lives. [51:36-37]

Q? What is Yahweh going to do to the people of Babylon?

A. He is going to prepare a different kind of feast where they become drunk with wine and then are all slaughtered. [51:39-40]

Q? What kind of place will Babylon become?

A. Babylon will become a place of ruin among all nations. [51:41]

Q? What will Yahweh do to the god Bel?

A. Yahweh will punish Bel and make the people of Babylon give back the offerings that were given to Bel, and the walls of Babylon will fall. [51:43-44]

Q? What does Yahweh tell his people who are in Babylon to do?

A. He tells them to run and save their lives from all the violence that will be in the land. [51:45-46]

Q? What happens that causes the heavens and earth to rejoice?

A. The heavens and earth will rejoice because Babylon is destroyed by an army from the north. [51:48-49]

Q? What does Jeremiah tell the Israelite people to do?

A. They are to get out of Babylon, return to Jerusalem, and turn back to Yahweh. [51:50]

Q? What had the Israelites heard about Yahweh's house?

A. They had heard that foreigners had entered the holy places of Yahweh's house. [51:51]

Q? What does Yahweh tell the people that he will do?

A. He tells them that he will send armies to destroy Babylon. [51:52-53]

Q? What do the people hear from Babylon?

A. They hear a shout of distress as Yahweh destroys Babylon. [51:54-56]

Q? What will happen to everything that the nations try to do for Babylon?

A. It will all be useless. [51:58]

Q? Who was King Zedekiah's chief officer?

A. Seraiah was his chief officer. [51:59]

Q? What did Jeremiah write in a scroll?

A. Jeremiah wrote all the disasters that were going to come to Babylon. [51:60]

Q? What was written on the scroll?

A. Yahweh made a declaration that Babylon will be destroyed, have no inhabitants, and become a permanent wasteland. [51:62]

Q? What were Jeremiah's instructions to Seraiah?

A. Jeremiah told Seraiah that when he arrived in Babylon he was to read all the words on the scroll, tie a stone to it, and throw it into the Euphrates River. [51:61, 63]

Q? Why was Seraiah to throw the scroll in the river?

A. When he threw the scroll in the river, the people would understand that Babylon will sink like the scroll because of the disaster Yahweh is sending on her. [51:63-64]

Jeremiah 52

Q? What kind of king was Zedekiah?

A. Zedekiah was an evil king just like Jehoiakim. [52:1-2]

Q? What did king Nebuchadnezzar do while he was near Jerusalem?

A. He camped opposite it and attacked the city for two years. [52:4-5]

Q? Where did the Chaldeans (Babylonians) catch Zedekiah and his men?

A. They caught them in the plains of the Jordan River near Jericho. [52:6-8]

Q? What did the king of Babylon do to Zedekiah and his sons?

A. The king slaughtered Zedekiah's sons before his eyes and then put out Zedekiah's eyes, bound him in chains, and took him to Babylon. [52:9-11]

Q? What did Nebuzaradan do in Jerusalem?

A. He burned the house of Yahweh, the king's palace, and all the houses and important buildings, and he destroyed the walls around Jerusalem. [52:12-14]

Q? What did Nebuzaradan do to the poorest people in Jerusalem?

A. He took some of them into exile and left some to work the vineyards and fields. [52:15-16]

Q? What became of the bronze, gold, and silver in the house of Yahweh?

A. The Chaldeans (Babylonians) took it all away. [52:17-19]

Q? What did Nebuzaradan do to Zephaniah and other city officials?

A. He put them in prison. [52:24-25]

Q? What did the king of Babylon do with the prisoners that Nebuzaradan brought to him?

A. He put them to death. [52:26-27]

Q? How many Judean people were exiled?

A. There were 4,600 people exiled from Jerusalem. [52:28-30]

Q? Who released Jehoiachin king of Judah from prison?

A. Evil Merodach, king of Babylon, released him. [52:31]

Q? How did Evil Merodach treat Jehoiachin when he was released from prison?

A. He spoke kindly to him and gave him a seat of honor. He removed Jehoiachin's prison clothes and had him eat at his table and gave him a regular food allowance for the rest of his life. [52:32-34]

translationWords

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include: lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by, “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “is an abomination to” could include: “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as, “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [Daniel](#), [desecrate](#), [desolate](#), [desolation](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father”
- “Abraham” means, “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- While living in the land of Canaan, when they were very old, Abraham and his wife Sarah had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [chaldea](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **[05-04]** Then God changed **Abram’s** name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham’s** faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[06-01]** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[06-04]** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **[21-02]** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

accuse, accusation, accuser

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

Waiting

acknowledge

Facts:

The term “acknowledge” means to give proper recognition to something or someone.

- To acknowledge God also involves acting in a way that shows that what he says is true.
- People who acknowledge God will show it by obeying him, which brings glory to his name.
- To acknowledge something means to believe that it is true, with actions and words that confirm that.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of acknowledging that something is true, “acknowledge” could be translated as “admit” or “declare” or “confess to be true” or “believe.”
- When referring to acknowledging a person, this term could be translated as, “accept” or “recognize the value of” or “tell others that (the person) is faithful.”
- In the context of acknowledging God, this could be translated as, “believe and obey God” or “declare who God is” or “tell other people about how great God is” or “confess that what God says and does is true.”

(See also: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that involves a married person having sexual relations with someone who is not his spouse. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or the person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term “adulterous” is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as, “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When “adulterous” is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God’s view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of “adulterous” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “immoral” or “like an unfaithful spouse.”

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [covenant](#), [fornication](#), [sexual immorality](#), , [have sex with](#), [have relations with](#), [sleep with](#), [lovemaking](#), [unfaithful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-06]**”Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **[28-02]** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **[34-07]**”The religious leader prayed like this, ”Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.””

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

afflict, affliction

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like, “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as, “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.” physical
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as, “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See: [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ahab

Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Jezebel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-02]** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **[19-03]** **Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **[19-05]** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

Ai

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

- After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites on an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
- An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethel](#), [Jericho](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

alarm, alarmed**Facts:**

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To “be alarmed” is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples to not be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression “sound an alarm” means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise with something like.

Translation Suggestions

- To “alarm someone” means to “cause someone to worry” or “to worry someone.”
- To “be alarmed” could be translated as “be worried” or “be frightened” or “be very concerned.”
- The expression “sound an alarm” could be translated by, “publicly warn” or “announce that danger is coming” or “blow a trumpet to warn about danger.”

(See also: [Jehoshaphat](#), [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living nearby the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **[13-09]** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **[16-06]** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

ambassador, representative

Definition:

An ambassador is a person who is chosen to officially represent his country in relating to foreign nations. It is also used in a figurative sense and is sometimes translated more generally as “representative.”

- An ambassador or representative gives people messages from the person or government that sent him.
- The more general term “representative” refers to someone who has been given the authority to act and speak on behalf of the person he he is representing.
- The apostle Paul taught that Christians are Christ’s “ambassadors” or “representatives” since they represent Christ in this world and teach others his message.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “official representative” or “appointed messenger” or “chosen representative” or “God’s appointed representative.”
- A “delegation of ambassadors” could be translated as “some official messengers” or “group of appointed representatives” or “official party of people to speak for all people.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [messenger](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as, “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Balaam](#), [curse](#), [cursed](#), [Jordan River](#), [Lot](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

anguish

Definition:

The term “anguish” refers to severe pain or distress.

- Anguish can be physical or emotional pain or distress.
- Often people who are in extreme anguish will show it in their face and behaviors.
- For example, a person in severe pain or anguish might grit his teeth or cry out.
- The term “anguish” could also be translated as, “emotional distress” or “deep sorrow” or “severe pain.”

Bible References:

Waiting

appoint, appointed**Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in, “appointed to eternal life.” This means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include, “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as, “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as, “be chosen.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Arabah

Facts:

The Old Testament term “Arabah” often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The “Sea of the Arabah” could also be translated as, “sea located in the Arabah desert region.” This sea is often referred to as the “Salt Sea” or the “Dead Sea.”
- The term “arabah” can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [Red Sea](#), [Sea of Reeds](#), [Jordan River](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Arabia, Arabian

Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term “Arabian” is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham’s son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Esau](#), [Galatia](#), [Ishmael](#), [Shem](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Aram, Aramean, Aramaic

Definition:

“Aram” is the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as “Arameans” and spoke “Aramaic.” Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem’s sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name, “Syria.”
- The term “Paddan Aram” means “plain of Aram” and was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham’s relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in “Paddan Aram.”
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms “Aram” and “Paddan Aram” refer to the same region.
- The term “Aram Naharaim” may mean “Aram of Two Rivers.” This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of “Paddan Aram.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Mesopotamia](#), [Aram Naharaim](#), [Paddan Aram](#), [Rebekah](#), [Shem](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ararat

Facts:

In the Bible, “Ararat” is the name given to a land, a kingdom, and a mountain range.

- The “land of Ararat” was probably located in what is now the northeastern part of the country of Turkey.
- Ararat is most well-known as the name of the mountains that Noah’s ark came to rest on after the waters of the great flood began to recede.
- In modern times, a mountain called “Mount Ararat” is often thought to be the location of the “mountains of Ararat” in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

archer

Definition:

The term “archer” refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

- In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
- Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
- Some languages might have a term for this such as, “bow-man.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#), [covenant](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [holy place](#), [most holy place](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

armor**Definition:**

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means, “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [salvation](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

arrogant

Definition:

The term “arrogant” means to be proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- To be arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: [acknowledge](#), [boast](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Asa

Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913-873 BC.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease which eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ashdod, Azotus

Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- The Greek name for this city was Azotus. It was one of the cities where the evangelist, Philip preached the gospel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Joppa](#), [Philip, the evangelist](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

ash, ashes, dust

Facts:

The term “ash” or “ashes” refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

- In the Bible sometimes the word “dust” is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
- An “ash heap” is a pile of ashes.
- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
- When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- When someone is striving for something worthless, it is said to be like “feeding on ashes.”
- When translating “ashes,” use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
- Note that an “ash tree” is a completely different term.

(See also: [fire](#), [sackcloth](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth

Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. “Ashtoreth” may be another name for “Asherah,” or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term “Asherah poles” refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah’s husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Baal](#), [Gideon](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ashkelon

Facts:

In Bible times, Ashkelon was a major Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. It still exists in Israel today.

- Ashkelon was one of the five most important Philistine cities, along with Ashdod, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The Israelites did not completely conquer the people of Ashkelon, even though the kingdom of Judah occupied its hill country.
- Ashkelon remained occupied by the Philistines for hundreds of years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Philistines](#), [thesea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

assembly, assemble

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” where the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers is sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

(See also: [council](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

assign, assigned**Facts:**

The term “assign” or “assigned” refers to appointing someone to do a specific task.

- The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would “assign” the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
- Moses “assigned” each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
- Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
- Depending on the context, “assign” could be translated as “give” or “appoint” or “choose for the task of.”
- The term “assigned” could be translated as “appointed” or “given the task.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Samuel](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-02]** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-03]** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **[20-04]** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

avenge, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression, “to avenge” someone could also be translated as “to right a wrong” or “to get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by, “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ax**Definition:**

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate “ax.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “tree-cutting tool” or “wooden tool with blade” or “long-handled wood-chopping tool.”
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax falls into the river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that could come loose from the wooden handle.

Bible References:

Waiting

Azariah

Facts:

Azariah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Azariah is best known by his Babylonian name, Abednego. He was one of many Israelites from Judah who were captured by Nebuchadnezzar's army and taken to live in Babylon. Azariah and his fellow Israelites Hananiah and Mishael refused to worship the Babylonian king, so he had them thrown into a blazing furnace as punishment. But God protected them and they were not harmed at all.
- Uzziah king of Judah was also known as "Azariah."
- Another Azariah was an Old Testament high priest.
- In the time of the prophet Jeremiah, a man named Azariah wrongly urged the Israelites to disobey God by leaving their homeland.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [Hananiah](#), [Mishael](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Uzziah](#), [Azariah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Baal

Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [asherah](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [whore](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [19-02] Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- [19-07] Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal**!”
- [19-12] So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

Baasha

Facts:

Baasha was one of Israel's evil kings, who influenced the Israelites to worship idols.

- Baasha was the third king of Israel and reigned for twenty-four years, during the time when Asa was king of Judah.
- He was a military commander who became king by killing the previous king, Nadab.
- During Baasha's reign there were many wars between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, especially with King Asa of Judah.
- Baasha's many sins caused God to eventually remove him from office by his death.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asa](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Babylon, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [Babel](#), [Chaldea](#), [Chaldean](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **[20-07]** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **[20-11]** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

banquet

Definition:

A banquet is large, formal meal that usually includes several food courses.

- In ancient times, kings often served banquet meals to entertain political leaders and other important guests.
- This could also be translated as, “elaborate meal” or “important feast” or “multi-course meal.”

Bible References:

Waiting

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

barren

Definition:

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Baruch

Facts:

Baruch is the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Baruch (son of Zabbal) worked with Nehemiah to repair the walls of Jerusalem.
- Also during the time of Nehemiah, another Baruch (son of Kol-Hozeh) was one of the leaders who settled in Jerusalem after its walls were restored.
- A different Baruch (son of Neriah) was an assistant to the prophet Jeremiah, who helped him with various practical tasks such as writing down the messages God gave to Jeremiah and then reading them to the people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [disciple](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Nehemiah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [oak](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include, “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), [Daniel](#), [livestock](#), [nation](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)
- [Next chunk: review-publish](#) | [publish-current](#)

Bible References:

Waiting

beg, beggar

Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: [plead](#), [pleading](#), [plea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-04]** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **[29-08]** ”The king called the servant and said, ”You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.”
- **[32-07]** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **[32-10]** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **[35-11]** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **[44-01]** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

believe, believe in, belief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

beloved

Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say, “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Benjamin

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called “Luz.”

- After receiving God’s promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as “Bethel” which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name “Bethel” until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as “Luz (later called Bethel)” in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [altar Jacob](#), [Israel Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: [Caleb](#), [David](#), [Micah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-02] David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- [23-04] Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- [23-06] ”The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**”

betray, betrayer

Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [religious leaders](#), [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-11]** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **[38-02]** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **[38-03]** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **[38-06]** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” ... Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **[38-13]** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **[38-14]** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **[39-08]** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

biblical time: day

Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judgment day](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

biblical time: year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [biblical time: month](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

blameless

Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as, “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

Waiting

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

blot out, wipe out

Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s book of life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as, “removed from” or “erased.”

Bible References:

Waiting

body

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say, “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as, “to restrain” or “to prevent” or “to keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase, “bond of peace” means, “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as, “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as, “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translate as, “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow, bow down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow and arrow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

Waiting

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means, “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term, “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bride**Definition:**

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term “bride” is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the “bridegroom” for the Church. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [bridegroom](#), [church](#), [Church](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bridegroom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the “Bridegroom” who will someday come for his “Bride,” the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See: [bride](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bronze**Definition:**

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

burden

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means, “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray, prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

camel**Definition:**

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food, but not the Israelites because God had said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

captive, captivity**Definition:**

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Carmel, Mount Carmel

Facts:

“Mount Carmel” refers to a mountain range that was located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea just north of the Plain of Sharon. Its highest peak is 546 meters high.

- There was also a town called “Carmel” located in Judah, south of the Salt Sea.
- The wealthy landowner Nabal and his wife Abigail lived near the town of Carmel where David and his men helped guard Nabal’s sheep shearers.
- On Mount Carmel, Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal to a contest in order to prove that Yahweh is the only true God.
- To make it clear that this wasn’t just a single mountain, “Mount Carmel” could be translated as, “mountain on the Carmel mountain range” or “Carmel mountain range.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cast out, drive out, throw out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”

(See also: [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [demon-possessed](#), [lots](#), [casting lots](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cedar

Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chaff**Definition:**

Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

- Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called “winnowing.”
- In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.

(See also: [grain](#), [wheat](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [Shinar](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chariot

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-10]** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.
- Rome, Romaning in his **chariot**.

chief**Definition:**

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), spirit, spiritual, believer, beloved other)

Bible References:

Waiting

circumcise, circumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#), [covenant](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [05-03]”You must **circumcise** every male in your family.”
- [05-05] That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: [family](#), [Jethro](#), [Reuel](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

clean, cleanse

Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

comfort, comforter

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [encouragement](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

commander, command

Definition:

the term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- To “command” an army means to lead and be in charge of the army.
- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term “to command” an army could be translated as “to lead” or “to be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [centurion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

commit, committed, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [promise](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

companion

Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with.”

Bible References:

Waiting

compassion, compassionate**Definition:**

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

Waiting

confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [believer](#), [bold](#), [boldly](#), [boldness](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [hope](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- Job 04:4-6
- Philippians 01:25-27
- Proverbs 14:26-27
- Romans 05:1-2

confirm, confirmation

Definition:

The terms “confirm” and “confirmation” refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

- In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

consume

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See: [devour](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

corrupt, corruption

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to corrupt” could be translated as “to influence to do evil” or “to cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term corruption could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

council

Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The “Jewish Council” in Jerusalem, also known as the “Sanhedrin,” had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word “council” could also be translated as “legal assembly” or “political assembly.”
- To be “in council” means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than “counsel,” which means, “wise advice.”

(See also: [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [counsel](#), [counselor](#), [advice](#), [advisor](#), [Pharisee](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [Sadducee](#), [scribe](#), [expert in the Jewish law](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

counsel, counselor, advice, advisor**Definition:**

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, “to counsel” could be translated as “to advise” or “to make suggestions” or “to exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

courtyard, court

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , [New Covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- [07-10] The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- [13-04] Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable to do and say what has been promised and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [grace](#), [gracious](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cow, calf, bull, cattle

Definition:

The term , “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow”, the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [heifer](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

create, creation, Creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something, or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news “to all creation” means to preach the good news “to all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase, “Let all creation rejoice” means, “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as, “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as, “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as, “God, who created you.”

(See: [God](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world was created.

Waiting

creature**Definition:**

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as, “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

crown, to crown**Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

curse, cursed

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- [02-11] “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- [04-04] “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- [39-07] Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- [50-16] Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Cush

Facts:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

- In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
- The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have at different times included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
- Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cut off**Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

Waiting

Damascus

Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future. more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [believer](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Dan

Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel. The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term, “Danites” refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jerusalem](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Daughter of Zion

Definition:

“Daughter of Zion” is a figurative way of referring to the people of Israel. It is usually used in prophecies.

- In the Old Testament, “Zion” is often used as another name for the city of Jerusalem.
- Both “Zion” and “Jerusalem” are also used to refer to Israel.
- The term “Daughter” is a term of endearment or affection. It is a metaphor for the patience and care that God has for his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this could include, “my daughter Israel, from Zion” or “people from Zion, who are like a daughter to me” or “Zion, my dear people Israel.”
- It is best to keep the term “Zion” in this expression since it is used many times in the Bible. A note could be included in the translation to explain its figurative meaning and prophetic use.
- It is also better to keep the term “Daughter” in the translation of this expression, as long as it is understood correctly.

(See also: [Jerusalem](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

declare, declaration

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by, “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as, “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase, “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as, “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

decree

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as, "to order" or "to command" or "to formally require" or "to publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [declare](#), [declaration](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

defile, be defiled

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [unclean](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

delight

Definition:

A “delight” is something that pleases someone greatly or causes much joy.

- To “delight in” something means to “take joy in” or “be happy about” it.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- If a person’s delight is in something it means that he enjoys it very much.
- The expression, “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh’s commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means, “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as, “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as, “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

Bible References:

Waiting

descendant, descended from

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in, “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as, “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- [04-09] ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- [05-10] ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- [17-07] ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- [18-13] The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- [48-13] God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

Waiting

desolate, desolation

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [devastate](#), [devastation](#), [ruin](#), [ruins](#), [waste](#), [wasteland](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

destiny, destine, destined

Definition:

The term “destiny” refers to what will happen to people in the future. If someone is “destined” to do something, it means that what that person will do in the future has been decided by God.

- When God “destines” a nation for wrath, this means that he has decided or chosen to punish that nation because of their sin.
- Judas was “destined” for destruction, which means that God had decided that Judas would be destroyed because of his rebellion.
- Every person has a final, eternal destiny, either in heaven or in hell.
- When the writer of Ecclesiastes says that everyone’s destiny is the same, he means that all people eventually die.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “destine you for wrath” could also be translated as, “decided that you will be punished” or “determined that you will experience my wrath.”
- The figurative expression, “they are destined for the sword” could be translated as, “God has decided that they will be destroyed by enemies who will kill them with swords” or “God has determined that their enemies will kill them with swords.”
- The phrase, “you are destined for,” could be translated using a phrase like, “God has decided that you will be.”
- Depending on the context, “destiny” could be translated as “final end” or “what will happen in the end” or “what God has decided will happen.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

destroyer

Definition:

The term “destroyer” literally means, “person who destroys.”

- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as, “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as, “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

detestable, detest

Facts:

The term “detestable” describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To “detest” something means to strongly dislike it.

- Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
- God used the word “detestable” to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
- The Israelites were commanded to “detest” the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
- God called all wrong sexual acts “detestable.”
- Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all “detestable” to God.
- The term “detest” could be translated as, “strongly reject” or “hate” or “regard as very evil.”
- The term “detestable” could also be translated as “horribly evil” or “disgusting” or “deserving rejection.”
- When applied to the righteous being “detestable to” the wicked, this could be translated as “considered very undesirable to” or “distasteful to” or “rejected by.”
- God told the Israelites to “detest” certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be “unclean” and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as “strongly dislike” or “reject” or “regard as unacceptable.”

(See also: [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

devastate, devastation**Definition:**

The term “devastated” or “devastation” refers to having one’s property or land ruined or destroyed. It also often includes destroying or capturing the people living on that land.

- This refers to a very severe and complete destruction.
- For example, the city of Sodom was devastated by God as punishment for the sins of the people living there.
- The term “devastation” can also include causing great emotional grief resulting from the punishment or destruction.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “devastate” could be translated as “completely destroy” or “completely ruin.”
- Depending on the context, “devastation” could be translated as “complete destruction” or “total ruin” or “overwhelming grief” or “disaster.”

Bible References:

Waiting

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: other)

Bible References:

Waiting

disciple

Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the twelve.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [believer](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[30-08]** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **[38-01]** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **[38-11]** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.

- [42-10] Jesus said to his **disciples**, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."

discipline, self-discipline

Definition:

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as, “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun, “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

Bible References:

Waiting

dishonor, dishonorable

Definition:

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as “to not honor” or “to treat with no respect.”
- The noun, “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: [disgrace](#), [disgraceful](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [magic](#), [magician](#), [sorcery](#), [sorcerer](#), [witchcraft](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

divorce**Definition:**

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term “to divorce” means to formally and legally separate from one’s spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the word for “to divorce” is “to send away” or “to formally separate from.” Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A “certificate of divorce” could be translated as, a “paper stating that the marriage has ended.”

Bible References:

Waiting

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

u

dove, pigeon

Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [olive](#), [innocent](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **[08-07]** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **[16-11]** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **[23-01]** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be, "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as, "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [grain offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include, “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

dung, manure**Definition:**

The term “dung” refers to human or animal solid waste, and is also called feces or excrement. When used as fertilizer for enriching the soil, it is called “manure.”

- These terms can also be used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or not important.
- Dried animal dung is often used for fuel.
- The expression “be like dung on the face of the earth” could be translated as, “be scattered like worthless dung over the land.”
- The “Dung Gate” in the South Wall of Jerusalem was probably the gate where garbage and trash were taken out of the city.

(See also: [gate](#), [gate bar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See: [Daniel](#), [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [birthright](#), [Esau](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Ekron

Facts:

Ekron was a major city of the Philistines, located nine miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea.

- A temple of the false god Baal-zebub was located at Ekron.
- When the Philistines captured the ark of the covenant, they took it to Ashdod, then moved it to Gath and Ekron because God kept causing people to get sick and die in whatever city the ark was taken to. Finally the Philistines sent the ark back to Israel.
- When King Ahaziah fell through the roof of his house and injured himself, he sinned by trying to find out from the false god Baal-zebub of Ekron as to whether or not he would die from his injuries. Because of this sin, Yahweh said that he would die.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Beelzebul](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [Gath](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Elam

Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites” and they lived in a region was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located to the southeast of the Tigris River, in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

Waiting

chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect

Definition:

The term, “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” These could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase, “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as, “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as, “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience,” “bearing up under a trial,” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include, “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, “to endure” could be translated as, “to experience” or “to go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase, “will not endure” could be translated as, “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include, “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

enslave, in bondage

Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To “enslave” also means to take away a person’s freedom.
- Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- In a figurative way, human beings are “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ephraim

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Edom](#), [Edomite](#), [Idumea](#), [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Rebekah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-07]** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **[07-02]** So **Esau** gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **[07-04]** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **[07-05]** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **[07-10]** But **Esau** had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include, “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

eunuch

Definition:

Usually the term “eunuch” refers to a man who has been castrated. The term later became a general term to refer to any government official, even those without the deformity.

- Jesus said that some eunuchs were born that way, perhaps because of damaged sex organs or because of not being able to function sexually. Others chose to live like eunuchs in a celibate lifestyle.
- In ancient times, eunuchs were often kings’ servants who were set as guards over the women’s quarters.
- Some eunuchs were important government officials, such as the Ethiopian eunuch who met the apostle Philip in the desert.

(See also: [Philip the evangelist](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Euphrates River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

evildoer

Definition:

The term “evildoer” is a general reference to people who do sinful and wicked things.

- It can also be a general word for people who do not obey God.
- This term could be translated using the word for “evil” or “wicked,” with the word for “doing” or “making” or “causing” something.

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

exile, the Exile

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as, “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include, “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression, “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- The expression, “keep the faith” could be translated by, “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence, “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by, “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression, “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like, “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[31-07]** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **[32-16]** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”

- **[38-09]** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **[14-12]** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **[15-13]** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **[17-09]** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- **[35-12]** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **[49-17]** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **[50-04]** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

faithless, faithlessness

Definition:

The term “faithless” means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God, which is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “faithless” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “unbelieving” or “disobedient to God” or “not believing.”
- The term “faithlessness” could be translated as “unbelief” or “unfaithfulness” or “rebellion against God.”

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

false god, foreign god, god, goddess

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [Moloch](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

family

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term “family” is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God’s family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies destroying crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as, “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

fast

Definition:

The term “to fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb “to fast” can also be translated as “to refrain from eating” or “to not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-01]** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **[34-08]**”For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **[46-10]** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

Bible References:

Waiting

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

feast

Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as, “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fig**Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow to be as tall as 6 meters high and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

Waiting

fire

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born. Usually the firstborn

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “firstborn” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [son](#), [son of](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “first fruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “first fruits” of all believers in him who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “first fruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fishermen, fishers**Definition:**

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term “fishers” is another name for fishermen.

- Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
- Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
- This term could be translated with a phrase such as, “men who catch fish” or “men who earn money by catching fish.”

Bible References:

Waiting

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

Bible References:

Waiting

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action as in, “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include, “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison, “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor as in, “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The figurative expression, “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears soak my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: [ark](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flute, pipe**Definition:**

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fool, foolish, folly**Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

foreigner, foreign, alien

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from your own.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not only refer to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

Waiting

forever

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forgive, forgiveness

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against a person who did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean, “cancel” as in the expression, “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as, “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [07-10] But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- [13-15] Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- [17-13] David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- [21-05] In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- [29-01] One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- [29-08] I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- [38-05] Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

forsake, forsaken, forsook**Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, it means they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, it means he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used as past tense as in “he has forsaken you” or to refer to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- The project language may find it more clear to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text is talking about forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

Waiting

foundation, founded

Definition:

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fountain, spring

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: [flood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [learned men](#), [astrologers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

free, freedom, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression, “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

fruit, fruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces,” that is, children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural
- , “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression, “fruit of the land” could also be translated as, “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as, “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elisabeth says to Mary, “blessed is the fruit of your womb” she means, “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression, “fruit of the vine” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”

- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as, “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression, “fruitful labor” could be translated as, “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in you.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#)[Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fulfill

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as, “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill” as in “fulfill your ministry” could include, “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-04]** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **[40-03]** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **[42-07]** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **[43-05]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **[43-07]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **[44-05]** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

furnace

Facts:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gad

Facts:

Gad is the name of one of the sons of Jacob, that is, Israel.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The cities, Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written, "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [census](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

gate, gate bar**Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Gaza

Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Philip, the evangelist](#), [Philistines](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#), [Gath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

generation

UNDER REVIEW

Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as, “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as, “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as, “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gibeon, Gibeonite

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: [Gilgal](#), [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-06]** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **[15-07]** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **[15-08]** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gilead

Definition:

Gilead is the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river, where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region is also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glean, gleaning

Definition:

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard to pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God told the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain.
- A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be, “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: [Boaz](#), [grain](#), [harvest](#), [Ruth](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

goat, kid**Definition:**

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
 - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
 - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
 - A sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from the herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of their tendency to wander away from the one taking care of them.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second live goat and send it into the desert as a symbol of the animal bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [herd](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-01] **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15] **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03] "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14] **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07] "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01] "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gomorrah

Facts:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley, near Sodom where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

- The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
- There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
- When Lot's family got captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
- Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: , [Abraham](#), [Abram](#) , [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Lot](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Sodom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

governor, govern, proconsul, government

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. The word “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage people.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” is made up of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for king or emperor, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [province](#), [provincial](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

grace, gracious**Definition:**

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include, “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression, “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as, “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

Waiting

grain

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- The heads of grain are the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [guilt offering](#) , [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

grape

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

ULB exs: take away the guilt of your sin, take away your guilt, guilt offering, punish your guilt, no guilt for murder will attach to him, carry his own guilt, wash away his guilt, be in great guilt, our guilt grows to the heavens

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#)[punish](#), [punishment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **[39-11]** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty!**”
- **[40-04]** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **[49-10]** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites

Facts:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son, Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, which caused them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "people from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Syria](#), [Zedekiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Hananiah

Facts:

Hananiah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament.

- One Hananiah was an Israelite captive in Babylon whose name was changed to “Shadrach.”
- He was given a position as a royal servant due to his excellent character and abilities.
- Once Hananiah (Shadrach) and two other Israelite young men were thrown into a fire in a furnace because they refused to worship the Babylonian king. God showed his power by protecting them from being harmed.
- Another man named Hananiah was listed as a descendant of King Solomon.
- A different Hananiah was a false prophet during the time of the prophet Jeremiah.
- One man named Hananiah was a priest who helped lead a celebration during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Azariah](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [false prophet](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Mishael](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hard, hardness, harden

Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions, “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as, “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include, “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as, “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as, “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as, “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby. See the link to “labor pains” below.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [heart](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

harvest

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb “to harvest” could be translated as, “to gather in” or “to pick up” or “to collect.”

(See: [firstfruits](#), [festival](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “ he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current

heal, cure

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases such as leprosy do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-14]** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **[21-10]** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **[26-06]** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **[26-08]** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **[32-14]** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **[44-03]** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **[49-02]**] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Hebrew

Facts:

The “Hebrews” were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a “Hebrew.”

- The term “Hebrew” also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The Old Testament was originally written in the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Jewish people” or “Israelites.” It is best to keep all three terms in their original context in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jewish](#), [Jewish Leaders](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Hezekiah

Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah got very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God did a miracle and caused time to move backwards.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Judah](#), [Sennacherib](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

high places

Definition:

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- When a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel continuing to worship idols.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars are located.

(See also: [altar](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

high priest

Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiaphas’ father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term “chief priest.”

(See also: [Annas](#), [Caiaphas](#), [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-08]** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **[21-07]** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **[38-03]** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **[39-01]** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **[39-03]** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **[44-07]** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **[45-02]** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **[46-01]** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.

- **[48-06]** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Holy One

Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is, “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as, “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase, “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as, “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

holy place, most holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to the both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It can also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as, “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term, “most holy place” could be translated as, “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include, “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [bread](#), [consecrate](#), [courtyard](#), [court](#), [curtain](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

Honey is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever the bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Jonathan](#), [Philistines](#), [Samson](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

hoof, hoofed, hooves

Facts:

These terms refer to the hard material covering the bottom of the feet of certain animals such as camels, cattle, deer, horses, donkeys, pigs, oxen, sheep, and goats.

- An animal's hooves protect its feet when walking.
- Some animals have hooves that are split into two parts and others do not.
- God told the Israelites that animals which had split hooves and chewed a cud were considered clean to eat. This included cattle, sheep, deer, and oxen.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [camel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [donkey](#), [mule](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hope

Definition:

The term “hope” refers to expecting and strongly desiring something to happen. It can also mean to not be certain that it will happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust” as in, “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term “hope” as “confidence,” especially in the New Testament in contexts that refer to the assurance of receiving what God has promised to people who believe in Jesus as their Savior.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to hope” could also be translated as “to wish” or “to desire” or “to expect.”
- The expression, “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as, “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression, “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as, “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as, “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

~review~DISCUSSION~~

horn, horns

Facts:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term “horn” is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: , [authority](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [deer](#), [doe](#), [buck](#), [roebuck](#), [fawn](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [royal](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

horror, horrified

Definition:

The term “horror” refers to a very intense feeling of fear or terror. The person who is feeling horror is said to be “horrified.”

- Horror is more dramatic and intense than ordinary fear.
- Usually when someone is horrified they are also in shock or stunned.

(See also: [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [terror](#), [terrify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

horse

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, “a house for worshiping God” or “a place for worshiping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

humble, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand our weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- If a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as, “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-02] David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [34-10] ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [God](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image of God](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that are burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made from mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include, “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [frankincense](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
 - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
 - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
 - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#), [trespass](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as, “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- The frequently occurring expression, “innocent blood” could be translated as, “people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed.”
- The expression “shed innocent blood” could be translated as, “kill innocent people” or “kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it.”
- In the context of someone being killed, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as, “not guilty for the death of.”
- When talking about people not accepting the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not” or “not responsible for whether they accept this message.”
- When Judas said, “I have betrayed innocent blood” he was saying, “I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong” or “I have caused the death of a man who was sinless.”
- When Pilate said about Jesus, “I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man,” this could be translated as, “I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-06] After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.

- **[40-04]** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **[40-08]** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God."
-

intercede, intercession

Definition:

The terms “intercede” and “intercession” refer to making requests to someone on behalf of another person. In the Bible this usually refers to praying for other people.

- The expressions “make intercession for” and “intercede for” mean to make requests to God for the benefit of other people.
- The Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit intercedes for us, that is, he prays to God for us.
- A person intercedes for other people by making requests for them to someone in authority.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “intercede” could include, “plead for” or “urge (someone) to do something (for someone else).”
- The noun “intercessions” could be translated as “appeals” or “requests” or “urgent prayers.”
- The phrase “make intercession for” could be translated as, “make requests for the benefit of” or “make an appeal on behalf of” or “ask God to help” or “appeal to God to bless” (someone).

(See also: [pray](#), [prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [forever](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **[05-06]** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[05-09]** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **[06-05]** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **[07-10]** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh

Definition:

Many times in the Old Testament, when God is speaking about himself, he uses his name instead of a pronoun.

- For example, instead of saying, “Honor me,” he says, “Honor Yahweh.”
- To make it clear that God is the one talking about himself, the ULB often translates this by adding a pronoun such as in, “Honor me, Yahweh” or “I, Yahweh say.”
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some translators may decide it is natural and clear in their language to simply follow the literal text and use “Yahweh” with no pronoun added.
- Some may decide to use a pronoun with Yahweh only a few times at the beginning of a portion of text, but then omit the pronoun in the rest of that section. An ULB example of this is Deuteronomy 5:9-16.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- This is a summary of possible ways to translate “Yahweh” when God is talking:
 - “Yahweh” (literal)
 - “I, Yahweh” (or “me, Yahweh”)
 - “I” (or “me”)
 - Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”
- Another option would be to only add the pronoun occasionally, but not at every occurrence.
- The translation of this phrase should sound natural in the language and should make it clear that Yahweh is talking about himself.

(See also: [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning, "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means, "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him, so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[07-01]** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **[07-07]** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **[07-10]** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **[08-01]** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Jehoiachin

Facts:

Jehoiachin was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Jehoiachin became king when he was 18 years old. He only reigned three months and after that he was captured by the Babylonian army and taken to Babylon.
- During his short reign, Jehoiachin did evil things like his grandfather King Manasseh and his father King Jehoiakim had done.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Jehoiakim](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Manasseh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jehoiakim

Facts:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

- The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
- Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
- When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehoiakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
- Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Eliakim](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, which made some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a “fountain of tears,” to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#), [well](#), [cistern](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-17]** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **[21-05]** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- Like all the Canaanites, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-01]** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **[15-05]** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-05] David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- [18-02] In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- [38-02] After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- [42-08] ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Jonathan

Facts:

Jonathan is the name of at least ten men in the Old Testament. The name means, “Yahweh has given.”

- David’s best friend Jonathan is the most well-known man in the Bible with this name. Jonathan was King Saul’s oldest son.
- Other Jonathans mentioned in the Old Testament include: a descendant of Moses; a nephew of King David; several priests, including a son of Abiathar; and an Old Testament scribe in whose house the prophet Jeremiah was imprisoned.

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abiathar](#), [David](#), [Moses](#), [Jeremiah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [scribe](#), [expert in the Jewish law](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jordan River

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on the west from Jordan on the east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. Because it was too deep, God miraculously stopped the water from flowing so they could go across.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Genesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-02]** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **[19-14]** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Josiah

Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Judah](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Passover](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

joy, joyful

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: **rejoice**)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Judea

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broader sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broader sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broader sense of Judea (ex. Luke 1:5) could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense (ex. Luke 1:39) could be translated as “Judea Province” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of the land of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Galilee](#), [Galilean](#), [Edom](#), [Edomite](#), [Idumea](#), [Judah](#), [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-09] David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- [18-13] Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- [19-16] They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

kingdom of Israel

Facts:

The term “kingdom of Israel” refers to the northern part of the nation of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many of Isaelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-11]** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God.
- **[20-02]** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

Judah, kingdom of Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah, kingdom](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-07]** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-13]** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.
- **[20-05]** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.
- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.

- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

labor, laborer

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It often implies that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include, “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or “to work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

labor pains, in labor

Definition:

A woman who is “in labor” is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called “labor pains.”

- In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
- The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: [labor](#), [laborer](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to the young of a sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “the young of a sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [05-07] As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- [24-06] The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- [45-08] He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.

- **[48-08]** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **[48-09]** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

lament, lamentation

Definition:

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to lament” could be translated as, “to deeply mourn” or “to wail in grief” or “to be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

Bible References:

Waiting

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as, “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as, “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

last day, last days, latter days

Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will be an unknown length of time.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as, “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term, “law of Moses” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law, principle](#) , [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament.
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was also thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#), [fir](#), [Phoenicia](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Levite, Levi

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple, Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light,” and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

like, likeness

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression, “the likeness of” could be translated as, “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression, “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as, “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or “to be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as “to be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [perish](#), [perishing](#), [perishable](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lion**Definition:**

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

locust

Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a kind of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies in a swarm which is very destructive, eating all vegetation in its path.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts are referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel’s disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [plague](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lord, master, sir

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-05]** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **[26-03]** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- **[27-02]** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **[31-05]** Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **[43-09]** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- **[47-03]** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **[47-11]** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

Facts:

In the Old Testament, “Lord Yahweh” is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term “Lord” is a divine title and “Yahweh” is God’s personal name.
- “Yahweh” is also often combined with the term “God” to form “Yahweh God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of “Yahweh” is used for the translation of God’s personal name, the terms “Lord Yahweh” and “Yahweh God” can be translated literally. Also consider how the term “Lord” is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as “Yahweh Lord.” Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title “Lord” come before or after “Yahweh”?
- “Yahweh God” could also be rendered as “God who is called Yahweh” or “God who is the Living One” or “I am, who is God.”
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering “Yahweh” as “Lord” or “LORD,” the term “Lord Yahweh” could be translated as “Lord God” or “God who is the Lord.” Other possible translations could be, “Master LORD” or “God the LORD.”
- The term “Lord Yahweh” should *not* be rendered as “Lord LORD” because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

lover

Definition:

The term “lover” literally means “person who loves.” Usually this refers to people who are in a sexual relationship with each other.

- When the term “lover” is used in the Bible, it usually refers to a person who is involved in a sexual relationship with someone he is not married to.
- This wrong sexual relationship is often used in the Bible to refer to Israel’s disobedience to God in worshiping idols. So the term “lovers” is also used in a figurative way to refer to the idols that the people of Israel worshiped. In these contexts, this term could possibly be translated by, “immoral partners” or “partners in adultery” or “idols.” [See Metaphor]
- A “lover” of money is someone who puts too much importance on getting money and being rich.
- In the Old Testament book, Song of Songs, the term “lover” is used in a positive way.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [love](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as, “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Manasseh

Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.

- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.

- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [Dan](#), [Ephraim](#), [Ezra](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [pagan](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Medes, Media

Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called “Medes.”

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Cyrus](#), [Daniel](#), [Darius](#), [Elam](#), [Persia](#), [Persians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

messenger

Facts:

The term, “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Micah

Facts:

Micah was a prophet of Judah around 700 years before Christ, when the prophet Isaiah was also ministering to Judah. Another man named Micah lived during the time of the judges.

- The book of Micah is near the end of the Old Testament.
- Micah prophesied about the destruction of Samaria by the Assyrians.
- Micah rebuked the people of Judah for disobeying God and warned them that their enemies would attack them.
- His prophecy ends with a message of hope in God, who is faithful and saves his people.
- In the book of Judges, the story is told of a man named Micah living in Ephraim who made an idol out of silver. A young Levite priest who came to live with him stealing the idol and other things, taking off with a group of Danites. Eventually the Danites and the priest settled in the city of Laish and they set up that same silver idol to worship.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Dan](#), [Ephraim](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Isaiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [judge](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include, “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [powers](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-08] Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- [19-14] God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- [37-10] Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- [43-06] "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- [49-02] Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Moab, Moabite, Moabites

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as, "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Judea](#), [Lot](#), [Ruth](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mock, ridicule, scoff at

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-12] Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- [39-05] The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- [39-12] The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- [40-04] Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- [40-05] The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Molech, Moloch

Facts:

Molech was the name of one of the false gods that the Canaanites worshiped. Other spellings are “Moloch” and “Molek.”

- People who worshiped Molech sacrificed their children to him by means of fire.
- Some of the Israelites also worshiped Molech instead of the one true God, Yahweh. They followed the evil practices of Molech worshipers, including sacrificing their children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [God](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [worship](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Miriam](#), [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[12-05]** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **[12-07]** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **[12-12]** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **[13-07]** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

mourn, mourning

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

name

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. This "Babylonian Exile" lasted 70 years.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted dreams that King Nebuchadnezzar had.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Meshael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [arrogant](#), [Azariah](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Hananiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Mishael](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **[20-06]** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **[20-08]** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **[20-09]** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that this southern region is not the same location as the present day Negev Desert.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and became his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Beersheba](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Kadesh](#), [Kadesh-Barnea](#), [Meribah Kadesh](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Simeon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

neighbor

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

new covenant

Definition:

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” is explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and they begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, like it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [covenant](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Moses](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-05]** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **[21-14]** Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”

- **[48-11]** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Nile River, River of Egypt

Facts:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well-known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water and food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Goshen](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**.
- **[09-04]** Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**.
- **[09-06]** When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed.
- **[10-03]** God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

noble, nobleman

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a higher political or social class.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer” or “man of noble birth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

oath, swear, swear by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

offspring

Definition:

The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [seed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oil**Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit is green in color, changing to black as they ripen. Olives are used for eating and extracting oil.
- Olive oil was used for cooking, for lighting lamps, and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oppress, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated by, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include, “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

palace

Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pardon

Definition:

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions

- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated in the same way as “forgive” and “forgiveness.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

patient, patience

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [endurance](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **[21-02]** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **[42-08]** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **[42-10]** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[48-11]** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **[50-03]** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

perish, perishing, perishable

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as, “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[08-08]** **Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **[09-02]** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **[09-13]** “I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Ashkelon](#), [David](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pillar, column

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- AS a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [founded](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pit**Definition:**

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as, “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

plead, pleading, plea

Facts:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

Waiting

plow

Definition:

A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen, or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: [bronze](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pomegranate

Facts:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: [bronze](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

[Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

possess, possession

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[32-15]** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **[43-06]** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

praise

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

precious

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as, “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prey, to prey on

Definition:

The term “prey” refers to something that is hunted, usually an animal that is used for food.

- In a figurative sense, “prey” can refer to a person who is taken advantage of, abused, or oppressed by a more powerful person.
- To “prey on” people means to take advantage of them by oppressing them or stealing something from them.
- The term “prey” could also be translated as “hunted animal” or “hunted one” or “victim.”

(See also: [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

prince, princess

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

profane**Definition:**

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb “to profane” could be translated as “to treat as unholy” or “to be irreverent toward” or “to dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

profit, profitable

Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

refers to something good that is gained. Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Promised Land

Facts:

The term “Promised Land” only occurs in the Bible Stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of, “the land God promised.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-01]** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land!**
- **[14-01]** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **[14-14]** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **[15-02]** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **[20-09]** This period of time when God’s people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

{{tag>publish ktobs ktlink}}

promise

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as, “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prostitute, harlot, whore

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [sexual immorality](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression, “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as, “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as, “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as, “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression, “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as, “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **[34-10]** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

proverb

Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include, “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: [Solomon](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- [49-11] Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

queen

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- The term “queen mothAthaliaher” usually refers to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence, as was seen in the case of Athaliah who influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: [Ahasuerus](#), [Athaliah](#), [Esther](#), [king](#), [Persia](#), [Persians ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Sheba](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

quench

Definition:

The term “quench” means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term “quench” in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not “quench the Holy Spirit.” This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit to produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means to do something that prevents the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people.

(See also: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Rabbah

Definition:

Rabbah was the most important city of the Ammonite people.

- In battles against the Ammonites, the Israelites often attacked Rabbah.
- Israel's King David captured Rabbah as one of his last conquests.
- The modern-day city Amman Jordan is now where Rabbah used to be located.

(See also: [Ammon](#), [Ammonites](#), [Ammonitess](#), [David](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Rachel

Facts:

Rachel was one of Jacob's wives. She and her sister Leah were the daughters of Laban, Jacob's uncle.

- Rachel was the mother of Joseph and Benjamin, whose descendants became two of the tribes of Israel.
- For many years, Rachel was not able to have any children. Then God enabled her to give birth to Joseph.
- Years later, when she gave birth to Benjamin, Rachel died and Jacob buried her near Bethlehem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Laban](#), [Leah](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rage**Facts:**

Rage is excessive anger which is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

- Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
- When controlled by rage, people commit acts and say things which are destructive.
- The term “to rage” can also refer to powerful movements, such as a “raging” storm or ocean waves that “rage.”
- The “nations rage” refers to ungodly people who disobey God and rebel against him.
- To be “filled with rage” means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.

(See also: [angry](#), [anger](#), [self-control](#),

Bible References:

Waiting

raise, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before moving to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Benjamin](#), [Rachel](#), [Samuel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ransom

Definition:

The term “ransom” refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, “to ransom” means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of “buy back” is similar to the meaning of “redeem.”
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called “redemption” in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to ransom” could also be translated as, “to pay to release” or “to pay a price to free” or “to buy back” someone.
- The phrase “to pay a ransom” could be translated as “to pay the price (of freedom)” or “to pay the penalty (to free people)” or “to make the required payment.”
- The noun “ransom” could be translated as “a buying back” or “a penalty paid” or “the price paid” (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms “ransom” and “redemption” have the same meaning but are sometimes used slightly differently in English. Other languages may have only one term they will use to translate this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from “atonement.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [redeem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rebel, rebellious, rebellion

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

:(See also: [authority](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [14-14] After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- [18-09] Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- [18-13] Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- [20-07] But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- [45-03] Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

rebuke

Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent the one who committed the wrong from involving themselves further in sin.
- This could be translated by, “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by, “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as, “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

receive

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and to treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” can be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression, “you will receive power” could be translated as, “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could also be translated as, “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “God healed him so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-13] The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- [49-06] He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- [49-10] When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- [49-13] God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

redeem, redemption, redeemer

Definition:

The terms “redeem” and “redemption” refer to buying back something that was previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full payment for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “the buying back.”
- The words, “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may only use one term to translate both these terms.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [ransom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Facts:

The “Sea of Reeds” was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the “Red Sea.”

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God did a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as, “Reed Sea.”

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), , [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-04]** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh’s army and the **Red Sea**.
- **[12-05]** Then God told Moses, ”Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**.”
- **[13-01]** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

reed, reeds

Facts:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

refuge, shelter

Definition:

The term “refuge” refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A “shelter” refers to a physical structure that protects from weather or danger.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
- The term, “city of refuge” in the Old Testament referred to certain cities where a person who accidentally killed someone could run to for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
- A “shelter” is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
- Sometimes “shelter” means “protection” as when Lot said that his guests were “under the shelter” of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because they were in his house.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “refuge” could be translated as “safe place” or “place of protection.”
- Depending on the context, the term “shelter” could be translated as, “something that protects” or “protection” or “protected place.”
- If it refers to a physical structure, “shelter” could also be translated as “protective building” or “ ”
- The phrase “into safe shelter” could be translated as “into a safe place” or “into a place that will protect.”
- To “find shelter” or “take shelter” or “take refuge” could be translated as, “find a place of safety” or “put oneself in a protected place.”

Bible References:

Waiting

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term ”reign is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reject

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by, “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression, “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as, “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of the people rejecting God’s commandments, this could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

remnant**Definition:**

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “leftover” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who survived attacks from outsiders and lived to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as, “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

Waiting

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-02] After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- [17-13] David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- [19-18] They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- [24-02] Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- [42-08] “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- [44-05] “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

report**Definition:**

The term “to report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A report can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression, “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include, “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

shows the interruption of thought and

shows the interruption of thought and

reproach

Definition:

To reproach someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior. A reproach is the negative comment about the person.

- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.
- The word “reproach” can also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- “To reproach” could also be translated as, “to rebuke” or “to accuse” or “to criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [rebuke](#), [shame](#), [shameful](#), [ashamed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rest**Definition:**

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

restore, restoration**Definition:**

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored, has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people are restored to their home country it means they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include: “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- An expression for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it means it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration,” could be translated as, “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

return**Definition:**

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.
- The term “return” could be translated as, “go back” or “give back” or “start doing again.”

(See also: [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reveal, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reward

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because of doing something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement, “the reward of the wicked.” In this context, “reward” refers to punishment or negative consequences from sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-02] But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- [04-08] God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- [17-02] David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [23-01] Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- [50-10] Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

rod**Definition:**

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that is used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms, “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod is also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

royal

Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things which are associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that can be called “royal” include a king’s clothing, palace, throne, or crown.
- A king or queen usually lives in a royal palace.
- A king wears special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king’s robes were colored purple, which was a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus are called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include, “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
- The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), [robe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ruin, ruins**Definition:**

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, “to ruin” could be translated as “to destroy” or “to spoil” or “to make useless” or “to break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

ruler, rulers, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

run, running

Definition:

Literally the term “run” refers to moving very quickly on foot, usually at a much faster pace than walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

- “run in such a way as to win the prize” – refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
- “run in the path of your commands” – means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands.
- “run after other gods” – means to persist in worshiping other gods.
- “I run to you to hide me” – means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

Other figurative meanings of “run”:

- Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as, “flow.”
- The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated as “its border is next to” or “it borders.”
- Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.”
- The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [rest](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **[26-02]** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **[41-03]** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made out of goat hair or camel hair.

- Clothing made out of sackcloth was uncomfortable for the person wearing it. It was worn as a way of showing mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could also be translated as, “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as, “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [ash](#), [ashes](#), [dust](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [mourn](#), [mourning](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- [05-06] "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- [05-09] God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- [17-06] David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- [48-06] Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- [48-08] But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- [49-11] Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Salt Sea, Dead Sea

Facts:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on the west and Moab on the east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, this could be called “Salt Lake.”
- This sea has a high concentration of minerals (or “salts”) which means that nothing can live in its waters. That is where the name “Dead Sea” came from.
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the “Sea of Arabah” and the “Sea of Negev” because of its locations near the regions of Arabah and Negev.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ammon](#), [Ammonites](#), [Ammonites](#), [Arabah](#), , [Jordan River](#), [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#), [Negev](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

salvation

Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word “save” or “rescue” as in, “when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God will rescue his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as, “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as, “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), [safe](#), [Savior](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on the west and the Jordan River on the east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region and moved them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on the north and the region of Judea on the south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Galilee](#), [Galilean](#), [Judea](#), [Sharon](#), [Plain of Sharon](#), [kingdom of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **[27-08]** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **[27-09]** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **[45-07]** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Samuel

Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah was barren, so she prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if hborn as an answer to Hannah’s desperate prayer that God would give her a male child.er prayer was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- When Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to help Eli the priest in the temple to fulfill her promise to God
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet for him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Hannah](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

save, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-08] Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- [11-02] God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- [12-05] Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- [12-13] The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- [16-17] This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- [44-08] “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- [47-11] The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

scribe, expert in the Jewish law

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible to write or copy important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term “scribes” is also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees” and the two groups are frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [Pharisee](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

scroll**Definition:**

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading it, people rolled it up using rods on the ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. This would prevent anyone else from opening the scroll and writing on it.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: [seal](#), [to seal](#), [synagogue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seal, to seal

Definition:

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seed

Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man or woman that combine to cause a baby to grow inside the woman.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared seeds to the Word of God being planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [offspring](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seek, sought

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. The past tense is “sought.” It can also mean “try hard” or “make an effort” to do something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity means to “try to find a time” to do a particular thing
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- to “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “try to get favor” or “to do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seize**Definition:**

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” It could also be translated as, “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated as “overcome” or “suddenly come upon.”
- This term could also be translated as, “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression, “seized and slept with her” could be translated as, “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

send, send out, sent**Definition:**

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as “send word” or “send a message” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently uses the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as, “commissioned me” or “caused me to come” or “appointed me to go.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

serpent, snake, viper

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and which moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous, but they deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before that they had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Eden](#), [garden of Eden](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [offspring](#), [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **[29-03]** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **[35-06]** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **[47-04]** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **[50-04]** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

serve, service**Definition:**

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”¹[comment_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

set apart**Definition:**

The term “set apart” means to be separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- The term “sanctify” means to set apart a person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include, “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shadow

Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sheba

Facts:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what is now the present-day country of Yemen or Ethiopia.
- Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There are also several men named “Sheba” listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba is shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [Beersheba](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Shechem

Facts:

Shechem is a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem is also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem is where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem, which later became his family burial ground and where Jacob's sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, which resulted in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))[Hamor](#)

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Esau](#), [Hamor](#), [Hivite](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sheep, ram, ewe

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

shepherd, to shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- In the Old Testament, God is called the “shepherd” of his people because he takes care of all their needs and protects them. He also leads and guides them.
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus calls himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also refers to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” is used to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The term “pastor” is the same word as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as, “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The expression, “to shepherd (a flock)” could be translated as, “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-11] Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- [17-02] David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- [23-06] That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- [23-08] The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- [30-03] To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

shield

Definition:

A shield is an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. "To shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval in shape and were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal that were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Paul also talks about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that believing in Jesus, and living out that faith in obedience to God, will protect believers from spiritual attacks from Satan.

(See also: [faith](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Shiloh

Facts:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

- The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
- During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
- The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
- Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
- When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethel](#), [dedicate](#), [dedication](#), [Hannah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jordan River](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Samuel](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The “Sidonians” were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and the immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Noah](#), [Phoenicia](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Tyre](#), [Tyrians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

siege, besiege

Definition:

The term “siege” refers to when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from being able to receive any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city means to cause that city to be under a siege.

- When Babylon came to attack Israel, they used a siege tactic on Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege attack, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- The expression “lay siege” means to perform a siege. It has the same meaning as “besiege.”
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

Waiting

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can be reminders of something that was promised:
 - The rainbow God created in the sky was a sign to remind people that he would never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel told shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles done by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as, “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- * **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- * **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- * **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- * **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- * **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- * **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

skull

Definition:

The term “skull” refers to the bony, skeletal structure of the head of a person or animal.

- Sometimes the term “skull” means “head” as in the phrase, “shave your skull.”
- The term, “Place of the Skull” was another name for Golgotha where Jesus was crucified.
- This term could also be translated as, “head” or “head bone.”

(See also: [crucify](#), [Golgotha](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

slander, slanderer

Definition:

To slander means to say negative, defaming things about another person.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- Some of the words translated as “slander” mean: “speak against” or “spread an evil report” or “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#), [blaspheme](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

slaughter

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it.

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter where 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies. because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression, “the slaughter was very great” could also be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include, “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [slay](#), [slain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sleep, asleep, fall asleep

Definition:

These terms have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The expression “fall asleep” refers to the moment when someone starts sleeping, or in its figurative sense, the moment when someone dies.
- To “sleep with the fathers” means to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to sleep” or “to be asleep” could be translated as “to be dead.”
- To “fall asleep” could be translated as “to suddenly be asleep” or “to start sleeping” or “to die,” depending on its meaning.
- note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expression “sleep” or “asleep” does not make sense in the project language.

Bible References:

Waiting

snare, trap

Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. In the Bible, these terms are also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” has a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together in order to catch an animal so it can’t get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- When used figuratively, being caught in a trap or snare is compared to how a person can suddenly become ensnared in a sin in the same way that an animal gets captured by a physical snare or trap.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), , [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

snow**Facts:**

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but may not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of this is the Bible’s mention of snow on Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is white is often compared to the color of snow, as when Jesus’ clothing or hair is described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes being pure and clean. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God completely cleanses his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Lebanon](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well-watered and fertile, so that is where Lot chose to live when he first settled in Caanan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gomorrah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well-known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the beginning years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-14]** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **[18-02]** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **[18-03]** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries. ... When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

son, son of

Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft

Definition:

“Sorcery” or “witchcraft” refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A “sorcerer” is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms “sorcery” and “witchcraft” could also be translated as, “evil spirit power” or “casting spells.”
- Possible ways to translated “sorcerer” could include, “worker of magic” or “person who casts spells” or “person who does miracles using evil spirit power.”
- Note that “sorcery” has a different meaning than the term “divination,” which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [magic](#), [magician](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sow, sower, plant

Definition:

To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively as in, “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result. And if a person does good to others, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term “sow” could also be translated as “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include, “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words depending on what is being planted.
- The expression, “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as, “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [reap](#), [reaper](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

spear

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: [prey, to prey on](#), [Rome, Roman](#), [sword](#), [warrior](#), [soldier](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [13-03] Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- [48-07] All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

staff**Definition:**

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, which was different from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

statute, statutes

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” or ” command” or “law” or “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stiff-necked, stubborn**Definition:**

The term “stiff-necked” is an idiom used in the Bible to describe people who keep disobeying God and refuse to repent. They are very proud and will not submit to God’s authority.

- Similarly, the term “stubborn” means to refuse to change one’s mind or actions even when urged to do so. Stubborn people will not listen to good advice or warnings that other people give them.
- The Old Testament described the Israelites as “stiff-necked” because they did not listen to the many messages from God’s prophets who urged them to repent and turn back to Yahweh.
- If a neck is “stiff” it means that it does not bend easily. The project language may have a different idiom that communicates that a person is “unbending” that is, refusing to change his ways.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “pridefully stubborn” or “arrogant and unyielding” or “refusing to change.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stone, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. The term “stoning” refers to throwing stones and larger rocks at a person in order to kill him.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- The New Testament tells of a time that Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed because of testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a shortage of food because of famine.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things, such as gold and silver, that had been dedicated to Yahweh. Some of these things were used to repair and maintain the temple.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include, “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), [dedicate](#), [dedication](#), [famine](#), [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

strength, strengthen

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to the state of being strong physically, emotionally, or spiritually. To “strengthen” means to make someone or something stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to being able to stand up against some kind of opposing force.
- A person has strength of will if he is able to not give in to temptation.
- One writer of the Psalms calls Yahweh his strength, which means that God helps him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is “strengthened,” it means that people are rebuilding the structure, to reinforce it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase, “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following expressions are examples of how this term is used, along with their meanings, which are also alternate ways they can be translated:
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means, “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means, “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means, “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means, “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means, “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means, “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means, “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means, “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means, “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means, “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means, “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#), [right hand](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

strife

Definition:

The term “strife” refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements and hurt feelings between people.
- Strife sometimes implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “disagreement” or “dispute” or “conflict.”

(See also: [angry](#), [anger](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stronghold, fortress, fortified

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stumble

Definition:

The term “stumble” means to “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, “to stumble” can mean “to sin” or “to falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as, “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [stumbling block](#), [stone of stumbling](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stumbling block, stone of stumbling

Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- In the New Testament, this word literally referred to a stick or other object that would trigger a trap or snare to snap shut on an animal that stumbled over it.
- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as, “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See: [stumble](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means to “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as, “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-13] God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- [38-12] Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- [42-03] He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- [42-07] He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- [44-05] “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- [46-04] God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take apart the tabernacle and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when Solomon's temple in Jerusalem was built.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "tabernacle" means "dwelling place." Other ways to translate it could include, "sacred tent" or "tent where God was" or "God's tent."
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "temple."

(See also: , [altar](#), [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [temple](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Tarshish

Facts:

Tarshish was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a city.

- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.
- The city of Tarshish was a very prosperous port city, whose ships carried valuable products to buy, sell, or trade.
- This city was associated with Tyre and is thought to have been a Phoenician city that was somewhat distant from Israel, perhaps on the southern coast of Spain.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Esther](#), [Japheth](#), [Jonah](#), [Nineveh](#), [Ninevite](#), [Phoenicia](#), [wise men](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [court Zion](#), [Mount Zion house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-06] David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- [18-02] In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- [20-13] When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- [25-04] Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- [40-07] When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

tent

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

terror, terrify**Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” (or “terrors”) is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include, “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

test

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

testimony, testify

Definition:

The terms “testimony” and “testify” refer to making a statement about something that one knows to be true.

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term is often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of the testimony](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

thief, thieves, robber**Facts:**

The terms “thief” and “thieves” refer in general to people who steal money or property from other people. The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him, stealing from them the good things God has planned for them to experience.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [crucify](#), [darkness](#), [destroyer](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

thresh, threshing

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

throne

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

time

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” is often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events take place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- Both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three and a half year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- Phrases such as “second time” or “many times” refer to the number of occurrences that something happened.
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” **Doublet**

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tomb, grave, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the word for a tomb or a grave can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include, “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [buried](#), [burial](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[32-04]** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **[37-06]** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **[37-07]** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **[40-09]** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **[41-04]** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **[41-05]** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

tongue

Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of “tongue” in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- The expression, “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire.
- In the expression “my tongue rejoices,” the term “tongue” refers to the whole person. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The phrase “lying tongues” refers to a person’s voice or speech. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated by “language” or “spiritual language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as, “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as, “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as, “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as, “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

torment**Facts:**

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause someone to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering also may take the form of spiritual and emotional pain as experienced by Job.
- According to the book of Revelation, people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as, “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: [beast](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [Job](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The terms “transgress” and “transgression” refer to breaking a command, rule, or moral code.

- Figuratively, “transgression” can also be described as “crossing a line,” that is, going beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression”, “sin”, “iniquity”, and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance. (See: [parallelism](#))

(See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tremble

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

- This term is also used figuratively to mean “be very afraid.”
- Sometimes the word “tremble” refers to the ground shaking because of a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [earthly](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tribe**Definition:**

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trouble, troubles, troubled

Definition:

The term “trouble” refers to experiences in life that are very difficult and distressing. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.
- The action, “to trouble” someone means “to bother” that person or to cause him distress.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as, “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as, “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as, “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include, “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [affliction](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

true, truth, come true

Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

trumpet

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [earth](#), [earthly](#), [horn](#), [horns](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

turn, turn away, turn back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was also located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the coast.
- Because of its location and valuable natural resources such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers for building a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also gave King Solomon wood and skilled laborers for building the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#), [Sidonians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression, “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include, “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unclean

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unholy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

understand, understanding

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [know](#), [knowledge](#), [make known](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as, “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as, “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as, “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as, “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be, “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also: [godly](#), [godliness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unjust, unjustly, injustice

Definition:

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair, and often, harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unprofitable

Definition:

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: [profit](#), [profitable](#), [worthy](#), [worth](#), [unworthy](#), [worthless](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unrighteous, unrighteousness

Definition:

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unjust](#), [unjustly](#), [injustice](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [unlawful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vain, vanity**Definition:**

The term “vain” describes something that is useless or has no purpose. Vain things are empty and worthless.

- The term “vanity” refers to worthlessness or emptiness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done “in vain,” it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything.
- To “believe in vain” means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty” or “useless” or “hopeless” or “worthless” or “meaningless.”
- The phrase “in vain” could be translated as, “without result” or “with no result” or “for no reason” or “with no purpose.”
- The term “vanity” could be translated as, “pride” or “nothing worthwhile” or “hopelessness.”

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [worthy](#), [worth](#), [unworthy](#), [worthless](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

veil

Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to cover the head or face so that it cannot be seen.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The verb “to veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a more accurate term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as, “thin, cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: [Moses](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means, “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as, “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

virgin

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Mary](#), [the mother of Jesus](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-09]** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **[22-04]** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **[22-05]** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **[49-01]** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

vision**Facts:**

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

voice**Definition:**

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

VOW**Definition:**

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- This word should be translated differently than "oath."

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

walk

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

warrior, soldier**Facts:**

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: [courage](#), [courageous](#), [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

waste, wasteland

Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

Waiting

watch, watchman**Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include, “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

Waiting

watchtower, tower

Definition:

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [watch](#), [watchman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

water, waters

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as, “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as, “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

well, cistern

Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include, “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [strife](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), [chaff](#), [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

winnow, sift**Definition:**

The terms “winnow” and “sift” mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words are also used in a figurative sense to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To “winnow” means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word “sift” refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, “winnow” and “sift” are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term “sift” in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be, “shaking” or “fanning.” If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

witness, eyewitness

Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression, “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person-seeing-it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as, “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as, “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as, “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.

- [39-04] The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- [42-08]"It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- [43-07]"We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

woe**Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says, “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression, “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “(The people in) that city will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression, “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

Waiting

womb**Definition:**

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

Waiting

word**Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, ”The seed is the **word of God**.

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

worship

Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, “**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.””
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless**Definition:**

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated: “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wrong, mistreat, hurt

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means “to cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as, “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-14]** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”

- [13-04] Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- [13-05] "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host

Definition:

The terms “Yahweh of hosts” and “God of hosts” are titles that express God’s authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term “host” or “hosts” is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to “host of the heavens” refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, “Lord of hosts” means the same as “Yahweh of hosts” but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word “Yahweh” is not used in the New Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “Yahweh of hosts” could include, “Yahweh, who rules all the angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler of all creation.”
- The phrase “of hosts” in the terms “God of hosts” and “Lord of hosts” would be translated the same way as in the phrase “Yahweh of hosts” above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term “Yahweh” and prefer to use the capitalized word, “LORD” instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term “LORD of hosts” would be used in the Old Testament for “Yahweh of hosts.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Lord Yahweh](#), [Yahweh God Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

yoke

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zedekiah

Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

- King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
- Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
- A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Ezekiel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Jehoiachin](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Nehemiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zephaniah

Facts:

Zephaniah, son of Cushi, was a prophet who lived in Jerusalem and prophesied during the reign of King Josiah. He lived during the same time period as Jeremiah.

- He rebuked the people of Judah for worshipping false gods. His prophecies are written in the book of Zephaniah in the Old Testament.
- There were several other men in the Old Testament named Zephaniah, most of whom were priests.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

Reason this is a translation issue: The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
 - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”

- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
 - "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"

- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Apostrophe

This answers the question: What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Mountains of Gilboa, Let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling the mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Description

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Reason this is a translation issue: Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to.

Examples from the Bible

Come now, you who are rich, cry out loud because of the miseries coming upon you.
(James 5:1 ULB)

James wrote to the church, which was made up of poor people, as if rich people could hear him, showing his anger about what rich people were doing.

The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, '... on you they will burn men's bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Have the speaker express his feelings toward the thing or idea without speaking directly to it.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, you may preserve the meaning of the apostrophe and let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him.

- **The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, ' ... on you they will burn men's bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)**
 - "The man of God said, "This is what Yahweh says *about this altar*' ... They will burn men's bones on *it*."

Double Negatives

This answers the question: What are double negatives?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21)

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Most languages express the negative near the verb or at the beginning or end of the sentence. Some languages also have prefixes or suffixes that express the negative as in “*unhappy*,” “*impossible*,” and “*useless*.” Some languages can also express the negative with pronouns like “none,” “nothing,” and “no one,” with adverbs like “nowhere,” and with prepositions like “without.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did *not* happen *without* the taking of an oath, (Hebrews 7:20 ULB)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” It emphasizes the negative, and means “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages a double negative simply means a positive. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is attractive.”
- In some language the double negative weakens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is a little bit attractive.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative often strengthens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is very attractive.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
 - **For we do *not* have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
 - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses”
 - **so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
 - “so that they may be fruitful”
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “certainly.”
 - **Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished*** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
 - “Be sure of this—wicked people will *certainly* be punished”
 - **All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)

- "All things were made through him. He made *absolutely* everything that has been made."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Verbs*

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- “King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
 - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
 - “whether we are alive or dead”

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Hendiadys

This answers the question: What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Parts of Speech*

Hendiadys is when a speaker makes a single idea more forceful by connecting two nouns or adjectives with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

Description

Hendiadys is when a speaker expresses a single idea by connecting two words with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

his own *kingdom and glory* (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a kingdom of glory or a glorious kingdom.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys has an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Some languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that one word describes the other.

Examples from the Bible

for I will give you *words and wisdom* (Luke 21:15 ULB)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

if you are willing and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - "For I will give you *wise words*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own glorious kingdom*."

2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - "For I will give you *words of wisdom*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom of glory*."

3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

- **if you are *willing and obedient*** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)
 - "if you are *willingly obedient*"

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

- **if you are *willing and obedient*** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB) - The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."
 - "if you *obey willingly*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Doublet*

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
 - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

Hypothetical Situations

This answers the question: What is a hypothetical situation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*

“If the sun stopped shining...” “What if the sun stopped shining...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...” “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they’ll understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

1. Hypothetical situation in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent.

2. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that people do not mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, *if* he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

3. Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

4. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, “*If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.* For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. *I wish that you were either cold or hot!* (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus' wished that the people were either hot or cold. He was rebuking them.

Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

Also watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/GfFX1wWjJhA>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/jIbY2ikNtHU>).

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - “I am crying my eyes out”

Irony

This answers the question: What is irony and how can I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which a person pretends to say what he really believes, when in fact he is saying what someone else believes, and he does it in a way that shows that other belief is wrong. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief is foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous. He was speaking to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous and who were criticizing him for welcoming sinners. Jesus implied that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will not realize that the speaker is ridiculing the idea.

Examples from the Bible

After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "*Prophecy! Who is the one who hit you?*" (Luke 22:64ULB)

The fact that the soldiers were beating Jesus shows us that they did not believe that he was a prophet. They knew that other people thought that Jesus was a prophet, and they may have also thought that Jesus himself claimed to be a prophet. When they told him to prophecy, they were using irony. They were mocking him and implying that if he really was a prophet, then he should be able to tell who hit him without seeing them.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had any knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not even speak, but he did this to mock the idols and rebuke the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
"the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrase above emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many many years later.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here is another strategy.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is *not* found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
 - **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)
 - "After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "You call yourself a prophet. Then prophesy! Who hit you?"
 - "After blindfolding him, they said to him, "Prophesy! If you were really a prophet, you would be able to tell us who hit you."
 - **I did not come to call *righteous people* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
 - "I did not come to call *people who think that they are righteous* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance."
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.
 - **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)

- “After blindfolding him, they said to him, *”You are not a prophet because you cannot even tell us who struck you!”* ”
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)
 - ” ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols *cannot bring us their own arguments or even come forward to declare to us what will happen*. We cannot hear them because *they cannot speak* to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

***Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!*** (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

- ”Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? *You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation!*”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Litotes*

Litotes

This answers the question: What is litotes?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
 - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
 - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
 - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
 - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
 - “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
 - ”sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
 - “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Reflexive Pronouns

This answers the question: What are reflexive pronouns?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Sentences*

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. This page will help you understand how English shows this and will help you to see how your language handles this.

Description

Reflexive pronouns are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of referring to someone or something more than once in a sentence.
- The reflexive pronouns in English have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- to show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- to show that someone did something alone
- to show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

1. Reflexive pronouns used to that show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence

If *I* should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and *many* went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify *themselves*. (John 11:55 ULB)

2. Reflexive pronouns used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking *Jesus* with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But *Jesus himself* was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

3. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone did something alone

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain *by himself*. (John 6:15 ULB)

4. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone or something was alone

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. *It* was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place *by itself*. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

- **If I should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
 - “If I should *self-testify* alone, my testimony would not be true.”
- **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *purify themselves*.** (John 11:55)
 - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *self-purify*.”

2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

- **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)

- "It was *he who* took our sickness and bore our diseases."

- **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)

- "It was *not Jesus who* was baptizing, but his disciples were."

3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)

4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)

- "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again *alone* up the mountain."

5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)

- "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying *in a different place*."

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
 - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Forms of You

This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd*

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

Biblical Distance

This answers the question: How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Decimal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

Original Measure	Centimeters	Meters
handbreadth	8 centimeters	.08 meters
span	23 centimeters	.23 meters
cubit	46 centimeters	.46 meters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters	.54 meters
stadia	-	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half kubits*; its width will be *one kubit and a half*; and its height will be *one kubit and a half*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*; its width will be *0.7 meter*; and its height will be *0.7 meter*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *3 3/4 feet*; its width will be *2 1/4 feet*; and its height will be *2 1/4 feet*."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half cubits (one meter)*; its width will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*; and its height will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*¹; its width will be *0.7 meter*²; and its height will be *0.7 meter*." The footnotes would look like:
 - ^[1] one meter two and a half cubits
 - ^[2] one cubit and a half

Biblical Money

This answers the question: How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The one owed *five hundred denali*, and the other owed *fifty denali*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

- "The one owed *five hundred silver coins*, and the other owed *fifty silver coins*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

- "The one owed *five hundred days' wages*, and the other owed *fifty days' wages*."

4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*."² (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:

- ^[1] five hundred days's wages
- ^[2] fifty day's wages

5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
 - ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Copy or Borrow Words](#)
- [Translate Unknowns](#)

Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: What are the Hebrew months?

In order to understand this page, it would be good to read

- [Ordinal Numbers](#)

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months they use.
2. Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
3. Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
4. The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile) - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in *the month of Abib*. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day *in the first month of the year*, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of Abib*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in *the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the first month of the year*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."

2. Use the months that people know.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of March*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."
- "It will always be a statute for you that *on the day I choose in late September* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

3. State clearly what season the month occurred.

- "It will always be a statute for you that *in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work"

4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

- "It will always be a statute for you that in *the day I choose in early autumn* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;”

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Paul*”¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) *
 “But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Numbers

This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents),* and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Ordinal Numbers

This answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Numbers*

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the

order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The *fourth* row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably be the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *another* to Jedaiah, *another* to Harim,... *another* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *the next* to Jedaiah, *the next* to Harim,... *the next* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
- **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *the first* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the second* river is Gihon. This one flows**

throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the third* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. *The fourth* river is the Euphrates.(Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

- "A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *one* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the next* river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the next* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The *last* river is the Euphrates."

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

- "They cast *twenty-four* lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals.*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

Background Information

This answers the question: What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Order of Events*
- *Writing Styles*

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. Sometimes a writer may give some background information to help his listeners understand the story. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story. The story teller and translator need to tell the story in a way that people will know whether an event is background information and will be able to understand what order the events happened in.

Description

Every story has a storyline. The storyline tells a series of events mostly in the time order that the events happened. It is full of action verbs that moves the reader along the storyline. Occasionally an author may take a break from the storyline to share something of interest. This break is called **background information**. The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because *their village was going to have a a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!* They walked for hours through low bushes until they found a wild pig. They shot the pig and killed it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope *they had brought with them*, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that *it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.*

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter *was* the best hunter in the village" and "*it was* his own pig."

Sometimes a storyteller makes a break in the story to tell about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig."

A writer may use background information

- to help their listeners be interested in the story.
- to help their listeners understand something in the story.
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story.

- to tell the setting of a story. Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place.
 - when the story takes place.
 - who is present when the story begins.
 - what is happening when the story begins.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to know whether or not the events in the Bible happened in the same order that they are told.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram *was* eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, *was* about thirty years of age. He *was* the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study the grammar and punctuation of your language. Observe how your language presents background information in writings. Follow those same grammar rules when you translate.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.

2. Reorder the information so that that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies applied

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB)- English uses the word “now” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch *for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done.* But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2. Reorder the information so that that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)
 - “When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”
- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch *for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done.* But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.
 - “Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Connecting Words*
- *Introduction of a New Event*

Poetry

This answers the question: What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Writing Styles*

Poetry combines figures of speech with pleasant sounds and deep feelings to make a passage both beautiful and easier to remember.

Description

Poetry is one of various way in which to use words to make the writing more beautiful and to show the feeling. It is used to express a stronger emotional feeling than simple non-poetic forms would express. Poetry is easier to remember and tends to last longer than ordinary speech.

Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as **Metaphor**, **Simile**, **Metonymy**, **Personification**, and **Apostrophe**.
- Parallel lines (See: **Parallelism** and **Parallelism with the Same Meaning**)
- Repetition of some or all of a line
 - **Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars.** (Psalm 148:2-3 ULB)
- Lines of similar length.
 - **Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude.** (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULB)
- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines
 - "Twinkle, twinkle little *star*. How I wonder what you *are*." (from an English rhyme)
- The same sound repeated many times
 - "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is the probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

for you saw my affliction;
you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULB)

This example of **Parallelism with the Same Meaning** has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations;
vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See: **Parallelism**)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;
let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULB)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See: **Personification**)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
(Psalm 136:1-3 ULB)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

**Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,
or stand in the pathway with sinners,
or sit in the assembly of mockers.
But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,
and on his law he meditates day and night.** (Psalm 1:1,2 ULB)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
(The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

”Happy is the person not encouraged *to sin*
Disrespect for God he will not *begin*
To those who laugh at God, he is *no kin*.
God is his constant *delight*
He does what God says *is right*
He thinks of it all day *and night*”

2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

- “This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh’s law, and he meditates on it day and night.”

3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

- “The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh’s law, and they think about it all the time.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Symbolic Language*